BYZANTINE GREEK SERIES · VOLUME 67

The History of Niketas Choniates

Niketas Choniates

ΧΡΟΝΙΚΗ ΔΙΗΓΗΣΙΣ

The History of Niketas Choniates

Part One: John II and Manuel I

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

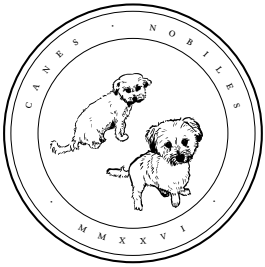


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 67 of the Canes Nobiles Byzantine Greek interlinear texts

The Byzantine Greek text follows Immanuel Bekker's edition,
Nicetae Choniatae Historia (Bonn, 1835), pp. 3–290

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

The text is Bekker's, with his punctuation and capitals.
The chapters are his, numbered within each reign's books.

CONTENTS

JOHN II KOMNENOS

I · Preface 9
II · The Death of Alexios 15
III · Anna's Conspiracy 24
IV · Sozopolis and the Patzinaks 32
V · Serbs, Hungarians, and the Triumph 41
VI · Gangra and Cilicia 51
VII · Anabarza and Syria 59
VIII · Shaizar 68
IX · Isaac's Return and Neokaisareia 74
X · The Deaths of Alexios and Andronikos 83
XI · The Wound 89
XII · John's Choice and Death 97

MANUEL I, BOOK ONE

I · Manuel's Accession 111
II · Ikonion and the German Bride 118
III · John of Poutze and Styppeiotes 124
IV · The Second Crusade Approaches 134

MANUEL I, BOOK ONE

(continued)

V · The Germans at the City 141
VI · The Battle on the Maeander 150

MANUEL I, BOOK TWO

I · The Normans at Corfu, Thebes, and Corinth 161
II · The Siege of Corfu 170
III · The Patriarch Kosmas 177
IV · The Ladder at Corfu 184
V · Venetians and Romans 189
VI · The Storm and the Serbs 198
VII · Hungarians, Scythians, and Sicily 204
VIII · Peace with Sicily 214

MANUEL I, BOOK THREE

I · The Hungarians and Andronikos 220
II · Andronikos' Escape 225
III · Manuel at Antioch 236
IV · Styppeiotes and the Logothete 242
V · Marie of Antioch; Kilij Arslan in the City 251
VI · The Sultan's Gifts and Breach 263

MANUEL I, BOOK FOUR

I · The Hungarian Succession 275
II · Andronikos in Galicia 281
III · Zeugminon Retaken 289
IV · Dese, the Oath, and Andronikos in Cilicia 298
V · Philippa and Theodora 305
VI · The Fall of Alexios the Protostrator 313
VII · Aaron, Skleros, and Sikidites; the New Castles 321

MANUEL I, BOOK FIVE

I · The Statues and the Hungarian War 330
II · Kontostephanos' Speech 336
III · The Victory over the Hungarians 341
IV · Nemanja and the Egyptian Plan 348
V · Damietta 354
VI · Kontostephanos Resolves to Attack 361
VII · The Failure at Damietta 367
VIII · The Birth of Alexios II 371
IX · The Venetians Arrested 376

MANUEL I, BOOK SIX

I · Dorylaion and Myriokephalon 382
II · The Ambush in the Pass 391
III · The Rout at Myriokephalon 399
IV · The Night After 405
V · The Treaty 410
VI · The Return and the Raids 419
VII · The Turkish Defeat on the Maeander 423
VIII · The Last Campaigns 428

MANUEL I, BOOK SEVEN

I · Manuel and the West 437
II · The Treasury and the Foreigners 446
III · Buildings and Monasteries 452
IV · The Pay of Soldiers 458
V · Theological Disputes 462
VI · The God of Muhammad 469
VII · The Death of Manuel 479

I · PREFACE

Niketas opens with the use of history: it records the past so that the living may imitate the good and shun the base, and it keeps the dead from oblivion. He promises a plain and clear style, fit for readers who look to arms rather than rhetoric, and asks pardon for its faults. He will take up the story where earlier writers left it, at the death of the emperor Alexios Komnenos, and will treat John's reign briefly, in summary, since he did not see it himself but heard of it from men who campaigned with him.

Αἱ ἱστορίαι δὲ ἄρα κοινωφελές τι χρῆμα τῷ βίῳ
the histories and after-all of-common-benefit some thing for-the life
ἐφεύρηνται, εἴπερ ἐκ τούτων οὐκ ὀλίγα ἔστι
have-been-invented if-indeed from these not few(-things) it-is(-possible)
ξυλλέγειν τὰ βελτίω τοῖς ἠρημένοις. εἰδυῖαι γὰρ
to-gather the better(-things) for-the(-ones) having-chosen(-them) knowing for
τὰ ἀρχαῖα καὶ ἔθη αὗται διατρανοῦσιν ἀνθρώπεια
the ancient(-things) and customs these make-clear human
καὶ πολυπειρίαν ὑποτιθέασιν, ὁπόσοι τῶν ἀνδρώπων
and wide-experience they-supply all-who of-the men
μεγαλογνώμονες καὶ τοῦ καλοῦ αὐτόφυτον τρέφοντες
(are)-high-minded and of-the good self-grown nourishing
ἔρωτα· καὶ κακία δὲ παρ᾽ αὐταῖς κωμῳδουμένη καὶ
(a)-love and vice too with them being-mocked and
ἀγαθοπραξία ἐξαιρομένη μετρίους ὡς τὰ πολλὰ καὶ
well-doing being-exalted moderate as the most and
ἐπιδιδόντας τοὺς παρ᾽ ἑκάτερα τιθέασι ῥέποντας, ὅσοι
advancing the(-ones) toward each-side they-make inclining as-many-as
τέως οὐχ ὑπ᾽ αἰσχίστης συνηθείας καὶ φαυλοτάτης ἕξεως
meanwhile not by most-shameful habit and most-paltry disposition

ἀνεπιστρόφως ἔχουσι τοῦ πολυεράστου χρήματος ἀρετῆς,
heedlessly are of-the much-beloved thing virtue
ἐπεὶ καὶ ἀθανάτοις ἐοίκασι δήπουθεν θνητοὶ καὶ ἐπίκηροι
since also to-immortals they-are-like surely mortal and perishable
γεγονότες καὶ πάλαι τὸ ζῆν ἐκτοξεύσαντες, ὅσους
having-been and long-ago the to-live having-shot-out as-many-as
παρειλήφει τὸ ἱστορεῖν. ὀρθῶς γὰρ ἢ τοὐναντίον φαύλως
had-taken-in the to-write-history rightly for or the-contrary basely
βεβιωκότες εὖ τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς ἀκούουσιν. καὶ τοῦ
having-lived well both and shamefully they-are-spoken-of and of-the(-one)
μὲν ἐς ᾅδου βέβηκεν ἡ ψυχή, πρὸς δὲ τὰ ἐξ ὧν
indeed to Hades has-gone the soul to and the(-things) from which
ἡρμόσθη τὸ σῶμα ἐπαλινδρόμησε· τὰ δὲ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ
was-fitted-together the body ran-back the(-things) and by him
βεβιωμένα, κἂν ὅσια εἴη κἂν δίκαια, κἂν ἀθέμιτα
lived-out whether holy they-be whether just whether lawless
κἂν ἐφύβριστα, κἂν ἐβίω εὐδαιμόνως κἂν κακοπραγῶν
whether outrageous whether he-lived happily whether faring-ill
ἀνεχρέμψατο τὴν ψυχήν, ἡ ἱστορία διαπρυσίως βοᾷ. ὥστε
he-coughed-up the soul the history piercingly cries so-that
καθ᾽ ἕτερόν τινα τρόπον καὶ λόγον καὶ βίβλος ζώντων
in another some manner and reckoning also (a)-book of-(the)-living
ἡ ἱστορία λεχθήσεται, καὶ σάλπιγξ περίτρανος τὰ
the history will-be-called and (a)-trumpet very-clear the(-things)
γραφόμενα, τοὺς πάλαι τεθνεῶτας οἷον τῶν σημάτων
written the(-ones) long-ago having-died as-it-were from-the tombs
ἐξανιστῶσα καὶ ὑπ᾽ ὄψιν τιθεῖσα τοῖς βουλομένοις.
raising-up and under sight placing for-the(-ones) wishing
ἀλλὰ τοιάδε μὲν ἡ ἱστορία, ὡς ἐπιτρέχοντά με εἰπεῖν,
but such indeed the history as running-over(-it) me to-say
αὐτοῖς δὲ τοῖς ἐπιοῦσιν οὐμενοῦν οὐδαμῶς χαρίεσσα.
to-them and the(-ones) coming-upon(-it) no-indeed in-no-way graceful

μὴ οὕτω μανείη τις ὡς ἥδιον ἡγεῖσθαί τι ἕτερον
not so may-be-mad anyone as sweeter to-think anything other
ἱστορίας· ἃ γὰρ οἱ πολυετεῖς τῶν ἀνθρώπων καὶ
than-history what-things for the long-lived of-the men and
Τιθωνοῦ παλαίτεροι καὶ τρικόρωνοι, εἰ τῷ βίῳ ἔτι
than-Tithonus older and thrice-crow-aged if in-the life still
περιῆσαν, ἤδεσαν ἂν καὶ ἐξηγοῦντο τοῖς φιλακροάμοσι,
they-survived knew — and would-relate to-the lovers-of-hearing
τὰ τῆς μνήμης ἐμπυρεύοντες καὶ τὰς τῶν πράξεων
the(-things) of-the memory kindling and the of-the deeds
ῥυσσὰς ἀνασκάλλοντες, ταῦτα δήπου προθείη καὶ ὁ
wrinkles stirring-up these(-things) surely would-set-forth also the
φιλίστωρ, κἂν οὐδέπω παρηλλάχει τὸν μείρακα. διὰ
history-lover even-if not-yet he-had-passed the youth because-of
ταῦτ᾽ οὖν καὶ αὐτὸς τὰ τοῖς κατ᾽ ἐμὲ χρόνοις
these(-things) then also I-myself the(-things) in-the in my times
γεγενημένα καὶ ἀνόπιν ἔτι βραχύ, μνήμης καὶ διηγήσεως
having-happened and back still (a)-little of-memory and of-narration
ἄξια ὄντα καὶ τοσαῦτα τὸ πλῆθος καὶ τοιαῦτα τὸ
worthy being and so-many in-the number and such in-the
μέγεθος, οὐκ ἔγνων δεῖν σιγῇ παρελθεῖν. οὐκοῦν καὶ
size not I-judged to-be-needful in-silence to-pass-by therefore also
διὰ τῆσδέ μου τῆς ξυγγραφῆς δῆλα ταῦτα τοῖς
through this my the history clear these(-things) to-the(-ones)
ἔπειτα καθιστῶ. ἐπειδὴ δέ, ὡς καὶ ἄλλοι τε ξυμβαλεῖν
after I-make since and as also others both to-infer
ἔχουσιν καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ συνορῶν οὐχ ἥκιστά εἰμι, τὰ
are-able and I-myself too perceiving not least am the(-things)
τοῦ ἱστορεῖν τὸ τῆς διηγήσεως ἀσαφὲς καὶ περιβολαῖς
of-the writing-history the of-the narration obscure and with-amplifications
καὶ περιόδοις ἐπεστραμμένον ὡς μὴ συνᾷδον αὐτοῖς οὐ
and with-periods twisted as not agreeing with-them not

προσίενται, φιλοῦσι δὲ τὸ σαφὲς ὡς οὐ μόνον κατὰ τὸν
admit love and the clear as not only according-to the
εἰπόντα σοφὸν ἀλλὰ καὶ συμβαῖνόν σφισι μάλιστα, οὐδὲ
having-said sage but also fitting for-them most not-even
τούτου πάμπαν ἔξωθεν τοῦ καλοῦ πίπτοντ᾽ ἂν εὕρῃ τις
of-this altogether outside of-the beauty falling — would-find anyone
τὰ γραφόμενα, οἷα καὶ ἡμῶν μὴ τὸ κομπηρὸν
the(-things) written inasmuch-as also we not the boastful
καὶ δυσφραδὲς καὶ κρημνώδεσιν ἀποδιειλημμένον λέξεσιν
and hard-to-express and with-precipitous broken-up words
ὡς ἐπίπαν ἀσπασαμένων, εἰ καὶ χαίνοντές εἰσιν εἰς τοῦτο
as on-the-whole having-welcomed if even gaping are for this
πολλοί, εἴτ᾽ οὖν ἀληθέστερον εἰπεῖν ἐκλείποντες τὰ
many or then more-truly to-say failing-in the(-things)
τῶν πάλαι καὶ σήμερον καὶ ὅσα τι καὶ ἐπιτήδευμα
of-the of-old and today and as-much-as somewhat also (a)-pursuit
προυργιαίτατον ἐξησκηκότες διὰ μακροῦ, ἐκ τοῦ πλείονος
most-useful having-practiced for long for the most-part
δὲ κἂν τούτῳ δρᾶν τῇ ἱστορίᾳ προθεμένων τὰ
and even in-this to-do for-the history having-proposed the(-things)
πρόσφορα, μηδ᾽ ὑπερβάθμιον πόδα τείνειν ἠγαπηκότων ἢ
fitting nor overstepping (a)-foot to-stretch having-loved or
ὅλως τοὺς ἄξονας αὐτῆς ὑπεράλλεσθαι. ὑπὲρ γὰρ ἅπαν
wholly the tablets its to-leap-over beyond for every
ἕτερον τὸ μὴ τὴν φράσιν ἁπλοῦν, ὡς ἔχω εἰπών, καὶ
other the not the phrasing simple as I-am(-able) having-said and
πρόχειρον εἰς κατάληψιν αὐτῇ διαβέβληται, καὶ ἠγαπήθη
ready for comprehension by-it has-been-slandered and was-loved
σφόδρα τὸ ἄκομψον καὶ ὡς ἔχον φύσεως διηγούμενον,
greatly the unadorned and as being of-nature narrating
καὶ δαιμονίως τὸ εὔληπτον περιπτύσσεται. τέλος γὰρ
and marvelously the easily-grasped it-embraces (an)-end for

σκοπιμώτατον τὴν ἀλήθειαν ἔχουσα, καὶ τῆς τε ῥητορικῆς
most-aimed-at the truth having and of-the both rhetorical
δεινότητος καὶ τῆς ποιητικῆς λογοποιίας ἀφεστῶσα κατὰ
cleverness and of-the poetic story-making standing-apart by
διάμετρον, καὶ τὰ τούτων διωθεῖται χαρακτηριστικά. καὶ
diameter and the of-these thrusts-away distinctive(-marks) and
ἄλλως δὲ κἂν οὐ βραχὺ τὸ σεμνὸν ἡ ἱστορία καὶ
otherwise too even-if not small the solemnity the history and
τὸ αἰδέσιμον ἐπισύρηται, ἐρῶσα δ' ὅμως προκεῖσθαι
the venerable drag-along loving and nevertheless to-be-set-before
σκαπανεῦσί τε καὶ σιδηρεῦσι καὶ πολλῆς γέμουσι
for-diggers both and for-smiths and of-much for-(those)-full-of
τῆς ἀσβόλης καὶ συνήθης εἶναι τοῖς πρὸς ὅπλα καὶ
the soot and familiar to-be to-the(-ones) toward arms and
Ἄρεα βλέπουσι, μηδὲ γυναιξὶ χερνήτισι δυσχολαίνουσα
Ares looking nor with-women hand-workers being-peevish
διαξαινούσαις τὰ κατ' αὐτήν, ταῖς χαριεστέραις χαίρει
carding the(-things) about her in-the more-graceful rejoices
τῶν φράσεων, καὶ τὸ φᾶρος τῶν λέξεων εἰλικρινὲς καὶ
of-the phrasings and the cloak of-the words pure and
ἀπέριττον περικεῖσθαι φιλεῖ, οὐ μὴν κεκομψευμένον καὶ
unaffected to-wear loves not indeed adorned and
ἔξαλλον· καὶ ἡ μὲν ἱστορία, ὡς ἔνι μάλιστα, μετὰ τοῦ
outlandish and the indeed history as is-possible most with the
σαφοῦς καὶ εἰς ἐπίτομον ἐπιτροχασθήσεται· ὁ δὲ λόγος
clearness and into (the)-concise will-run-on the and account
εὐγνωμονῶν συγγνώμην αἰτεῖται παρ' οἷς εἰς χεῖρας
being-considerate pardon asks from(-those) whom into hands
πεσεῖται, εἰ μὴ φιλοτίμως, δι' ἃ εἴρηται, καὶ ἁβρῶς
it-will-fall if not ambitiously for what-things has-been-said and delicately
ἐκπεπόνηται, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄλλως νῦν πρώτως ἡμεῖς τῆς
it-has-been-worked-out since also otherwise now first we the

ὑποθέσεως ἐπιβαίνομεν τῆσδε, οἷά τινα ἐρήμην καὶ ἀστιβῆ
subject set-foot-on this as-if some deserted and untrodden
διιέναι ἐγχειροῦντες ὁδόν, ὃ καὶ δύσεργόν ἐστι καὶ
to-go-through attempting road which also hard-to-do is and
πολλῷ ὑπερκείμενον τοῦ ἴχνεσιν ἑτέρων προωδευκότων
by-much lying-above the in-the-tracks of-others having-gone-before
ἑφομαρτεῖν, ἢ γοῦν ὡς διὰ λείας καὶ βασιλικῆς
to-follow or at-any-rate as through smooth and royal
βαδίζειν ὁδοῦ, λέγω δὴ τῆς ἑτέρων ἱστορίας, εὐθυπόρως
to-walk road I-mean indeed the of-others history straight-going
τε καὶ ἀπλανῶς. ἀρχὴ δέ μοι τοῦ λέγειν ὅσα
both and unwandering (the)-beginning and for-me of-the to-tell what-things
μετὰ τὸ πέρας εὐθὺς τῆς ζωῆς ἅμα καὶ τῆς
after the end at-once of-the life at-the-same-time and of-the
ἀρχῆς τοῦ ἐκ Κομνηνῶν ἄρξαντος πρώτως Ἀλεξίου
rule of-the(-one) from (the)-Komnenoi having-ruled first Alexios
συμβέβηκεν, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐς τόνδε τὸν ἄνακτα τὸ λέγειν
have-happened since also to this the lord the to-tell
συνεπεράναντο ὁπόσοι τῶν πρὸ ἡμῶν τῇ συγγραφῇ
concluded as-many-as of-the(-ones) before us to-the history
προδήλως ἐπέβαλον, ἵν' εἶεν τὰ ῥηθησόμενα
manifestly applied(-themselves) that might-be the(-things) going-to-be-said
παρ' ἡμῶν συναφῇ πως τοῖς ὑπ' ἐκείνων λεχθεῖσι,
by us joined somehow to-the(-things) by them said
καὶ ὁ λόγος οὕτω διαπλεκόμενος τρόπον τινὰ ὁλκῷ
and the account thus interwoven in-manner some to-(a)-course
εἰκάζοιτο ῥεύματος ἐκ μιᾶς πηγῆς ἐκδιδόντι, ἢ γοῦν
might-be-likened of-(a)-stream from one spring issuing or at-any-rate
τὸ τῶν κρίκων ἀλληλένδετον ὑποκρίνοιτο, τῇ τῶν ἀεὶ
the of-the rings interlinking might-imitate by-the of-the always
προσεχῶν ἐφάψει προϊόντων ἐς ἄπειρον. ἐν κεφαλαιώδεσι
adjacent fastening going-forward to infinity in summary

δ᾽ ἐπιτομαῖς τὰ κατὰ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Ἰωάννην
and abridgments the(-things) about the autocrat John
τὸ ἱστορεῖν διηγήσεται, ὃς Ἀλεξίῳ διάδοχος γεγένηται
the to-write-history will-narrate who to-Alexios successor has-become
τῆς ἀρχῆς, οὐδ᾽ ἐμβραδυνεῖ ταῖς κατ᾽ αὐτὸν ἀφηγήσεσιν,
of-the rule nor will-it-linger on-the about him narratives
ὥσπερ ἐν τοῖς ἑφεξῆς ἐργάσεται λόγοις, οἷα καὶ
as in the following it-will-do books inasmuch-as also
ἡμῶν μὴ τὰ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐπὶ τῷδε παρειλημμένα
we not the(-things) by-the eyes for this received
συγγραφομένων, κἀντεῦθεν μηδ᾽ ἀποτάδην ἐχόντων ταῦτα
writing-history and-hence nor at-length being-able these(-things)
διεξιέναι, ἀλλ᾽ ἅπερ εἰς ἀκοὴν ὠτίου εἰλήφαμεν ἐκ τῶν
to-go-through but what into hearing of-(the)-ear we-have-received from those
ὅσοι τῶν καθ᾽ ἡμᾶς τὸν βασιλέα τουτονὶ ἐθεάσαντο
as-many-as of-the(-ones) in our(-time) the emperor this-here saw
καὶ συνωμάρτουν ἐκείνῳ πρὸς ἐναντίους χωροῦντι καὶ
and accompanied him against opponents going and
τὰς μάχας συνετολύπευον. ἄμεινον δ᾽ ἐντεῦθεν ἄρξασθαι.
the battles wound-up-together better and thence to-begin

II · THE DEATH OF ALEXIOS

Alexios I has three sons, but his wife Irene favors their daughter Anna and her husband, the Caesar Nikephoros Bryennios, and slanders John as rash and dissolute. Alexios feigns not to hear and at last asks her which emperor before him, having a fit son, passed him over for a son-in-law, and says the Romans would laugh at him if he did. As he lies dying in the Mangana, John slips the seal ring from his father's hand, gathers his supporters, and is acclaimed. He forces his way into the palace, and Alexios dies after a reign of thirty-seven years; John, fearing his rivals, does not follow the bier.

Τῷ ἄνακτι Ἀλεξίῳ τῷ Κομνηνῷ υἱοὶ τρεῖς καὶ θυγατέρες
to-the lord Alexios the Komnenos sons three and daughters
τέσσαρες ἐγεγένηντο. ἦν δὲ τῶν μὲν ἀνδρῶν ὁ Ἰωάννης
four had-been-born was and of-the indeed males — John
κατὰ γένεσιν προφερέστερος, πρωτογενὴς δ' ἁπάντων
in birth preeminent first-born and of-all
τῶν ἐξ ὀσφύος τῷ Ἀλεξίῳ ἡ θυγάτηρ Ἄννα
the(-children) from (the)-loins — to-Alexios the daughter Anna
καθεωρᾶτο, ἥτις εἰς λέχος τῷ Βρυεννίῳ Νικηφόρῳ
was-seen who into (the)-bed — to-Bryennios Nikephoros
συνέζευκτο, τιμηθεῖσα Καισάρισσα. ὁ βασιλεὺς τοίνυν
had-been-joined honored (as)-Caesarissa the emperor therefore
καὶ τοκεὺς Ἀλέξιος μάλιστα τῶν ἄλλων παίδων τῷ
and parent Alexios most of-the other children —
Ἰωάννῃ προσέκειτο. ἀμέλει τοι καὶ τοῦτον ἐπικρίνας τῆς
to-John was-attached indeed surely also this(-one) having-chosen of-the
βασιλείας διάδοχον καταλείψειν ἐρυθροῦ τέ οἱ πεδίλου
empire successor to-leave of-red both to-him of-sandal
μετεδεδώκει καὶ βασιλέα ἐδεδώκει ἀναγορεύεσθαι. ἡ δὲ
he-had-given-a-share and emperor he-had-granted to-be-proclaimed the and
μήτηρ καὶ βασιλὶς Εἰρήνη τῇ θυγατρὶ Ἄννῃ τὴν πᾶσαν
mother and empress Irene to-the daughter Anna the whole
ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου χαριζομένη ῥοπὴν οὐκ ἀνίει παρὰ τῷ
from the opposite(-side) granting weight not let-up beside the
συλλέκτρῳ Ἀλεξίῳ τὸν Ἰωάννην ἐνδιαβάλλουσα, προπετῆ
bedfellow Alexios — John slandering rash
τοῦτον ἀποκαλοῦσα, καὶ ὑγρὸν τὸν βίον ἐπιτωθάζουσα,
him calling and loose the life mocking
παλίνστροφόν τε τὸ ἦθος καὶ μηδαμῇ μηδὲν ὑγιὲς
unstable both the character and in-no-way anything sound
ἔχοντα, καὶ τιθεμένη διὰ παντὸς ἀσχολίας πάσης
having and making through all occupation all

ἀνώτερον σπούδασμα ὅπως μετάθοιτο τὴν γνώμην ὁ
higher (an)-endeavor how might-change the judgment the
βασιλεὺς ἣν εἶχεν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ κυρωσάμενος. ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ καὶ
emperor which he-had on him having-ratified in-places and also
λόγου πρόφασιν τὸν Βρυέννιον παρεισφέρουσα, παντοίοις
of-speech (a)-pretext — Bryennios bringing-in with-all-kinds
αὐτὸν ἐπαίνοις κατέστεφεν ἅτε εἰπεῖν ἱκανώτατον καὶ
him praises she-crowned inasmuch-as to-speak most-able and
οὐκ ἐλάττονα διαπράξασθαι, καὶ μαθημάτων ἐλευθερίων
not less to-accomplish and of-learning liberal
μεταλαχόντα, ῥυθμίζειν τὸ ἦθος εἰδότων καὶ πρὸς
having-partaken to-regulate the character knowing and toward
βασιλείαν ἀδιαλώβητον οὐ βραχέα συναιρομένων τοῖς
empire unimpaired not slightly contributing to-the(-ones)
ἄρχειν μέλλουσιν. ὁ δ᾽ Ἀλέξιος ταῦτα ἐνωτιζόμενος καὶ
to-rule being-about — and Alexios these(-things) hearing and
τὸ μητρῷον φίλτρον ἐπιστάμενος, πῇ μὲν ἄλλοις ἐκ
the maternal love knowing in-one-place indeed to-other from
τοῦ σχεδὸν κατεπείγουσι πράγμασι χαρίζεσθαι τὸν νοῦν
the near pressing affairs to-devote the mind
πλαττόμενος οὐδὲ προσέχειν ὅλως τοῖς λεγομένοις
feigning nor to-attend at-all to-the(-things) said
προσεποιεῖτο, πῇ δ᾽ ἐς σκέψιν ἀπολύων τὰ
pretended in-another and into consideration dismissing the(-things)
εἰσηγούμενα μὴ ἂν τὴν αἴτησιν αὐτῆς παραβλέψασθαι
proposed not — the request her to-overlook
ἰσχυρίζετο. ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ τοιοῦτόν τι παθηνάμενος
insisted sometimes and also such something being-moved
εἴρηκεν „ὦ γύναι, κοινωνέ μοι λέχους καὶ βασιλείας,
said O woman partner of-me of-bed and of-empire
οὐ τὰ πρὸς χάριν παύσῃ τῆς σῆς ὑποτιθεμένη
not the(-things) for favor will-you-stop of-the your proposing

μοι θυγατρός, ἁρμονίαν τε καὶ τάξιν ἐπιχειροῦσα λύειν
to-me daughter (the)-harmony both and order attempting to-loosen
ἐπαινετήν, ὡς εἴπερ θεοβλαβείας μετέσχηκας; βάλλ' ἐς
praiseworthy as if-indeed of-god-sent-madness you-have-partaken throw-it to
τύχην ἀγαθήν· ἢ μᾶλλον δεῦρο κοινῇ συνδιασκεψώμεθα,
fortune good or rather come in-common let-us-consider-together
καὶ γνωσόμεθα τίς ἐξ ἁπάντων τῶν πρώην τὰ Ῥωμαίων
and we-shall-know who of all the formerly the of-(the)-Romans
σκῆπτρα παρειληφότων, υἱὸν ἔχων ἁρμόδιον εἰς ἀρχήν,
scepters having-received (a)-son having fitting for rule
τοῦτον μὲν παρεβλέψατο, γαμβρὸν δὲ ἀνθείλετο; εἰ δέ
this(-one) indeed overlooked (a)-son-in-law and chose-instead if and
ποτε καὶ τοιόνδε τι ξυμβέβηκεν, οὐ νόμον ὦ γύναι τὸ
ever also such something has-happened not (a)-law O woman the
σπάνιον ἡγησόμεθα. ἐπ' ἐμοὶ δὲ καὶ μάλα καπυρὸν γελάσειε
rare(-case) we-shall-consider at me and also very loudly would-laugh
τὸ Παν ρώμαιον, καὶ τῶν φρενῶν κριθείην ἀποπεσών,
the All-Roman(-people) and from-the wits I-would-be-judged having-fallen
εἰ τὴν βασιλείαν οὐκ ἐπαινετῶς εἰληφὼς ἀλλ' αἵμασιν
if the empire not praiseworthily having-taken but with-bloods
ὁμογενῶν καὶ μεθόδοις Χριστιανικῶν ἀφισταμέναις θεσμῶν,
of-kinsmen and with-methods from-Christian departing statutes
δεῆσαν ταύτης ἀφεικέναι διάδοχον, τὸν μὲν ἐξ
it-being-needful of-this to-leave (a)-successor the(-one) indeed from
ὀσφύος ἀποπεμψαίμην, τὸν δὲ Μακεδόνα εἰσοικισαίμην,"
(the)-loins I-should-send-away the and Macedonian I-should-bring-into-the-house
τὸν Βρυέννιον οὕτω λέγων, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἐξ Ὀρεστιάδος
— Bryennios thus saying since also from Orestias
ὥρμητο· μία δ' αὕτη τῶν εὐδαιμόνων καὶ κρατίστων παρὰ
he-had-come one and this of-the prosperous and strongest among
Μακεδόσιν πόλεων. τοιαῦτα πρὸς τὴν βασίλισσαν Εἰρήνην
Macedonians cities such(-things) to the empress Irene

ἐμβριθῶς ὁ Ἀλέξιος φάμενος, ὅμως καὶ πάλιν τὸν
weightily — Alexios having-said nevertheless also again the(-one)
μηδαμῶς ἀπειπόντα ὑποκρινόμενος, διῆγε τὴν γυναῖκα
in-no-way having-refused pretending put-off the wife
σκηπτόμενος ἀεὶ τὸν σκεπτόμενον· ἦν γάρ, εἰ καί τις
alleging always the considering he-was for if even anyone
ἄλλος, κρυψίνους ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος, καὶ σοφὸν ἡγούμενος ἀεὶ
else secretive the man this and wise thinking always
τὸ περίεργον, μηδὲ τὰ πολλὰ ἐξαγγελτικὸς τοῦ ποιητέου
the meddlesome nor the most proclaiming of-the to-be-done
δεικνύμενος. ἐγγίζοντος δέ οἱ τοῦ τέρματος τῆς ζωῆς
showing-himself approaching and for-him of-the end of-the life
ὁ μὲν ἔκειτο πνέων τὰ λοίσθια ἐν τοῖς κατὰ τὴν μονὴν
he indeed lay breathing the last in the at the monastery
τῶν Μαγγάνων λαμπροτάτοις οἰκοδομήμασιν, ὁ δὲ παῖς
— of-Mangana most-splendid buildings the and son
Ἰωάννης τὸν πατέρα ὁρῶν τῇ τελευτῇ πλησιάζοντα,
John the father seeing to-the end drawing-near
καὶ τὴν μητέρα εἰδὼς ἀποστέργουσαν καὶ τῇ ἀδελφῇ
and the mother knowing being-hostile and for-the sister
τὴν βασιλείαν μνωμένην, κοινοῦται τὸ ποιητέον τοῖς
the empire wooing shares the to-be-done with-the(-ones)
ἐκ τῆς συγγενείας ἐκείνῳ φίλα φρονοῦσιν, ὧν τὰ
of the kinship to-him friendly minded of-whom the
κράτιστα ἦν ὁ ἀδελφὸς Ἰσαάκιος. καὶ δὴ λαθὼν
strongest was the brother Isaac and indeed having-escaped-notice-of
τὴν μητέρα εἴσεισι τὸν κοιτῶνα τὸν πατρικόν, καὶ
the mother he-enters the bedchamber the paternal and
προσπεσὼν ὡς δῆθεν θρηνήσων ὑφαιρεῖται λάθρα
having-fallen-upon(-him) as supposedly going-to-lament he-takes-away secretly
τῆς ἐκείνου χειρὸς τὸν σφραγιστῆρα δακτύλιον. εἰσὶ
from-the his hand the seal ring there-are

δ' οἳ κατὰ γνώμην τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτόν φασι τόδε
and those-who by (the)-judgment of-the father him say this
πεποιηκέναι, ὡς δίδωσιν ἐννοεῖν τὰ μετὰ βραχὺ
to-have-done as gives to-understand the(-things) after (a)-little
ῥηθησόμενα. αὐτίκα τοίνυν ὁ Ἰωάννης τοὺς συνίστορας
going-to-be-said at-once therefore — John the accomplices
ἠθροικὼς καὶ τὸ πραχθὲν ἠγγελκὼς ἐπὶ κέλητος μεθ'
having-gathered and the deed having-announced on (a)-horse with
ὅπλων πρὸς τὸ μέγιστον ἀρχεῖον ἐξώρμησε, κατ' αὐτὴν
arms to the greatest palace he-set-out at the-very
τὴν τῶν Μαγγάνων μονὴν καὶ τὰς ἀγυιὰς ὁμοίως τῆς
the — of-Mangana monastery and the streets likewise of-the
πόλεως ὑπὸ πλήθους τοῦ σύμφρονος καὶ τῶν κατὰ φήμην
city by (a)-crowd the like-minded and of-the by report
τῶν δρωμένων συναλιζομένων ἀστυπόλων βασιλεὺς
of-the(-things) being-done gathering citizens emperor
αὐτοκράτωρ ἀνευφημούμενος. ἡ βασιλὶς δὲ Εἰρήνη
autocrat being-acclaimed the empress and Irene
καὶ μήτηρ τοῦ Ἰωάννου πρὸς τῶν οὕτω γινομένων
and mother — of-John at the(-things) thus happening
ἐκθαμβηθεῖσα στείλασα μετεπέμπετο τὸν υἱόν, καὶ παρῄνει
astounded having-sent summoned the son and advised
τῶν ἐν χερσὶν ἀποσχέσθαι. ὡς δ' ἦν ὅλος
from-the(-things) in hands to-refrain as and he-was wholly
τῶν δρωμένων ὁ Ἰωάννης καὶ κατ' οὐδένα τρόπον
of-the(-things) being-done — John and in no way
τῆς μητρὸς ἐπεστρέφετο, τὸν Βρυέννιον ἐπιρρώννυσιν
to-the mother turned — Bryennios she-encourages
ἐπιθέσθαι τῇ βασιλείᾳ συναρηγούσης αὐτῆς. ὡς δ' οὐδ'
to-attack the empire helping her as and not-even
οὕτω τὰ κατὰ σκέψιν ἑώρα προβαίνοντα, πρόσεισι
thus the(-things) according-to plan she-saw advancing she-approaches

τῷ ἀνδρὶ ἐπὶ κλίνης ἐρριμμένῳ καὶ βραχείαις ἀναπνοαῖς
the husband on (a)-bed lying and with-short breaths
τὸν ζῶντα ὑποσημαίνοντι, καὶ βαλοῦσα ἑαυτὴν τῷ
the living(-man) indicating and having-thrown herself on-the
σώματι καταβοᾶται λαμπρῶς τοῦ υἱέος, ὡς κρήνη
body cries-out loudly against-the son as (a)-spring
μελάνυδρος τὰ δάκρυα χέουσα, ὅπως αὐτοῦ τοῖς ζῶσιν
dark-watered the tears pouring how him among-the living
ἔτι συνταττομένου τὴν βασιλείαν οὗτος κλωπεύει, εἰς ἔργα
still being-ranked the empire this(-one) steals to deeds
βλέψας νεώτερα. ὁ δὲ οὐδέν τι πρὸς τὰ λεγόμενα
having-looked newer he and nothing at-all to the(-things) said
ἀπεκρίνατο, ἄλλοις καιριωτέροις, οἷα εἰκός, τὸ τῆς ζωῆς
answered with-other more-timely as likely the of-the life
βραβεύων λειπόμενον, τῆς τε μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ ἐκδημίας
arbitrating remainder of-the both after not much departure
φροντίζων καὶ τοῖς ψυχαγωγοῖς ἀγγέλοις ῥέπων τὰ
thinking and to-the soul-guiding angels inclining the
ὄμματα. ἐγκειμένης δὲ λιπαρεστέρως τῆς βασιλίδος καὶ μὴ
eyes pressing and more-insistently the empress and not
ἐνεγκεῖν ὅλως ἐχούσης τὰ παρὰ τοῦ παιδὸς γινόμενα,
to-bear at-all being-able the(-things) by the son happening
βραχύ τι παρεμφήνας καὶ βεβιασμένον μειδίαμα ὁ
little something having-shown and forced smile —
Ἀλέξιος τὰς χεῖρας ἀνέσχεν εἰς οὐρανόν, ἴσως μὲν ἐπὶ
Alexios the hands raised to heaven perhaps indeed at
τοῖς ἀφηγηθεῖσι διαχυθεὶς καὶ θύων ὑπὲρ τούτων θεῷ
the(-things) related gladdened and offering for these(-things) to-God
χαριστήρια, εἰπεῖν δὲ καὶ κέρτομον καὶ σεσηρὸς τῇ
thanksgivings to-say and also mocking and grinning(-thing) at-the
γυναικὶ ἐνιδὼν ὡς λόγους ἀνακινούσῃ περὶ ἀρχῆς ὅτε
wife having-looked as words stirring-up about rule when

ψυχῆς ἐφειστήκει διάστασις ἐκ τοῦ σώματος, ἢ καὶ τὸ
of-soul was-at-hand (the)-parting from the body or also the
θεῖον ἐξιλεούμενος ἐφ᾽ οἷς που καὶ παρεσφάλη τοῦ
divine propitiating for what-things somewhere also he-erred-from the
δέοντος. ἡ γυνὴ δ᾽ οὖν ἐκ τοῦ ἀναμφιλέκτου χαίρειν
needful the wife and then from the indisputable to-rejoice
οἰηθεῖσα τὸν ἄνδρα δι᾽ ὅσα παρ᾽ αὐτῆς ἠνώτιστο,
having-supposed the husband because-of what-things from her he-had-heard
ὡς ἤδη τῶν προτέρων ἐλπίδων διεψευσμένη παντάπασι
as already of-the former hopes deceived altogether
καὶ διασφαλεῖσα τῶν ὑποσχέσεων, βύθιον στενάξασα
and having-failed of-the promises deep having-groaned
εἴρηκεν „ὦ ἄνερ, καὶ ζῶν παντοίαις μεθοδείαις ἐκέκασο,
said O husband both living with-all-kinds-of craftiness you-excelled
ἀντίφθογγον τὴν γλῶτταν πλουτῶν τοῖς νοήμασι, καὶ νῦν
contradicting the tongue being-rich in-the thoughts and now
δὲ ὡσαύτως τοῦ βίου ἀπαλλαττόμενος ἀμεταπτώτως ἔχεις
too likewise from-the life departing unchangeably you-are
οἷς καὶ πρώην προσέκεισο.“ καὶ ταῦτα μὲν
in-the(-things)-which also formerly you-were-devoted-to and these(-things) indeed
ἐφέρετο τῇδε, ὁ δέ γε Ἰωάννης κατὰ τὸ μέγα ἀρχεῖον
went thus — and at-least John at the great palace
γενόμενος οὐχ εὕρισκε ῥαδίαν τὴν εἴσοδον, οἷα τῶν
having-arrived not found easy the entrance inasmuch-as the
φυλάκων μὴ πρὸς μόνην ὑπενδιδόντων τὴν τοῦ δακτυλίου
guards not to alone yielding the of-the ring
ὑπόδειξιν, ἀλλὰ προσεπιζητούντων καὶ ἄλλο τι τεκμήριον
showing but seeking-besides also other some proof
τοῦ κατὰ κέλευσιν πατρικὴν ἐκεῖσε παραγένεσθαι. αἱ πύλαι
of-the by command paternal there to-have-come the gates
τοίνυν τοῦ παλατίου χαλκείαις ῥάβδοις πλατείαις θάτερα
therefore of-the palace with-bronze rods broad on-the-other

τῶν ἄκρων μετεωρισθεῖσαι βραχύ τι κατὰ γῆς
of-the ends raised little somewhat on (the)-ground
βάλλονται, κἀντεῦθεν αὐτός τε μετὰ ῥαστώνης εἰσεληλύθει
are-thrown and-thence himself both with ease had-entered
καὶ συνεισήει τὸ ὁπλοφόρον καὶ συγγενές· οὐ βραχεῖς
and entered-with(-him) the armed(-men) and kin not few
δὲ καὶ τῶν ἐκ τοῦ ξύγκλυδος ὄχλου συνομαρτούντων
and also of-the(-ones) from the promiscuous crowd following
ἔνδον εἰσήρρησαν, οἳ καὶ διαρπάζειν τὸ προστυχὸν
inside burst-in who also to-plunder the(-thing) at-hand
ἐπεβάλοντο. τῶν δὲ πυλῶν αὖθις ἐπικλεισθεισῶν οἵ τ'
set-about of-the and gates again having-been-shut the(-ones) both
ἐκτὸς τοῦ ἐπεισρέειν ἐπαύσαντο, καὶ τὸ εἰσεφρηκὸς
outside from-the flowing-in stopped and the(-crowd) having-burst-in
ἐξιέναι μὴ συγχωρούμενον ἐφ' ἡμέρας συχνὰς ἐκεῖσε τῷ
to-go-out not permitted for days many there with-the
βασιλεῖ συνδιέτριβεν. ἦγε μὲν οὖν τότε πέμπτην
emperor spent(-time) was-passing indeed then then fifth
καὶ δεκάτην ὁ Αὔγουστος μήν· νυκτὸς δ' ἐπιούσης
and tenth(-day) the August month of-night and coming-on
ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἀλέξιος τοῦ ζῆν ἀπενήνεκται, ἄρξας
the emperor Alexios from-the to-live was-carried-off having-ruled
ἐνιαυτοὺς ἑπτὰ καὶ τριάκοντα, καὶ ἥμισυ μηνὸς σὺν
years seven and thirty and (a)-half of-month with
τοῖς τέσσαρσι. κατὰ δὲ τὴν ἕω εὐθὺς μεταστέλλεται
the four(-months) toward and the dawn at-once summons
ἡ μήτηρ τὸν Ἰωάννην εἰς τὴν τοῦ πατρικοῦ σκήνους
the mother — John to the of-the paternal tabernacle
ἐξιέναι πομπαίαν πρόοδον, αὐτίκα μάλα ἀρθησομένου τε
to-go-out procession going-forth at-once very going-to-be-raised both
καὶ ἀχθησομένου εἰς ἣν ἐκεῖνος ἐδείματο Χριστῷ τῷ
and going-to-be-carried to which he built to-Christ the

φιλανθρώπῳ μονήν. οὐκ εἶχε δ' αὐτῇ καὶ πειθόμενον,
lover-of-men monastery not she-had and her also obeying
ἀλλ' ἦν πρὸς τὴν μετάκλησιν ἀνανεύων, οὐ θέσμια
but he-was to the summons refusing not (the)-ordinances
μητρὸς παρορῶν ἢ τὴν πατρικὴν τιμὴν ἀπωθούμενος,
of-(the)-mother overlooking or the paternal honor pushing-away
ἀλλ' ὅτι τὸ νεοπαγὲς ὑπεβλέπετο τῆς ἀρχῆς καὶ τοὺς
but because the newly-set he-eyed-with-suspicion of-the rule and the
ἀντιζήλους ἐδεδίει θερμὸν ἔτι ἐγκυμονοῦντας τῆς βασιλείας
rivals he-feared warm still conceiving of-the empire
τὸν ἔρωτα. ὅθεν αὐτὸς μὲν ὡς οἱ πολύποδες τῶν πετρῶν
the love whence himself indeed as the octopuses to-the rocks
ἐξείχετο τῶν ἀρχείων, τὸ δὲ πλεῖστον τῆς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ
clung to-the palace the and most of-the with himself
συγγενείας διαφῆκεν εἰς τὴν πρόοδον τοῦ πατρός.
kin he-sent to the procession of-the father

III · ANNA'S CONSPIRACY

John secures the palace and shares his seat, table, and acclamation with his brother Isaac, already sebastokrator. His closest friend is John Axouch, a Turk captured as a boy at Nicaea. Within a year Anna and her kinsmen plot to kill John and crown Bryennios, but Bryennios is slack and the plot is discovered. John gives Anna's property to Axouch, who begs him to restore it to his sister, and John does so. Irene, no party to the plot, says an emperor must be sought when there is none, not removed when there is one.

Ἡμερῶν δὲ συχνῶν διαγενομένων τὴν εἰς τὰ ἀρχεῖα
days and many having-passed the to the palace
πάροδόν τε καὶ ἔξοδον ἀνῆκε τῷ βουλομένῳ παντί,
access both and exit he-let-free to-the wishing all

τῶν τε κοινῶν πραγμάτων ἐφήπτετο καθάπερ ἡρεῖτο,
of-the both common affairs he-took-hold as he-chose
ὡς ἤδη ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ καθεστώς. ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς
as already in the safety established but also to-the(-ones)
ἐκ γένους καὶ οἰκειώσεως αὐτῷ προσεγγίζουσι κατὰ
from family and connection to-him drawing-near according-to
τὸ ἀνάλογον αὐτοῖς προσφερόμενος ἁρμοδίους ἑκάστῳ
the proportion to-them behaving fitting to-each
ἀπένεμε τιμάς, τῷ γε μὴν Ἰσαακίῳ τῷ κασιγνήτῳ
he-assigned honors to-the at-least indeed Isaac the brother
προστετηκὼς συμφυὴς καὶ ὁμόπνους ἐδείκνυτο, καὶ ὡς
devoted of-one-growth and of-one-breath he-showed(-himself) and as
φιλοῦντι μὲν ὑπὲρ ἅπαντας, μάλιστα δ' ὡς τὰ πάντα
loving(-him) indeed beyond all most and as the all(-things)
ἢ τὰ πλείω εἰσενέγκαντι πρὸς τὴν ἐπίβασιν τῆς ἀρχῆς·
or the more having-contributed toward the accession of-the rule
τοῦτον γὰρ καθισταμένης ἔτι τῆς βασιλείας καθέδρας
this(-one) for being-established still of-the empire of-seat
τε καὶ τραπέζης ἐξ ἴσου κοινωνὸν παρελάμβανε,
both and of-table on equal(-terms) (a)-partner he-took
καὶ μετεδίδου τῆς ἀναρρήσεως, ὁποία ἐπιπρεπὴς τῷ
and gave-a-share of-the acclamation such-as befitting to-the
τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος ἀξιώματι, ᾧ πρὸς τοῦ πατρὸς
of-the sebastokrator dignity with-which by the father
Ἀλεξίου τετίμητο Ἰσαάκιος. καὶ φροντιστὰς δὲ τῶν
Alexios had-been-honored Isaac and as-overseers too of-the
δημοσίων πραγμάτων προυβάλλετο ἐκ τοῦ καθ' αἱμά
public affairs he-put-forward from the(-ones) by blood
οἱ προσεγγιζόντων τὸν Κομνηνὸν Ἰωάννην, ὃν καὶ
him approaching — Komnenos John whom also
τῷ τοῦ παρακοιμωμένου τετίμηκεν ἀξιώματι, καὶ τὸν
with-the of-the parakoimomenos he-has-honored dignity and —

Ταρωνίτην Γρηγόριον ὄντα πρωτοβεστιάριον. ἀλλ' ὁ
Taronites Gregory being protovestiarios but the(-one)
μὲν ὅτι μὴ τῷ δακτύλῳ τὸ πᾶν διεπέττευε, σοβαρὰν
indeed because not with-the finger the whole moved-about haughty
προφαίνων ὀφρὺν καὶ φρονηματώδης ὡς οὔ τις ἄλλος
displaying (a)-brow and proud as not anyone other
δεικνύμενος, τὸν φροντιστὴν τῶν κοινῶν ἀπεφορτίσατο
showing(-himself) the overseer of-the common(-affairs) unloaded
τάχιον· ὁ δὲ Γρηγόριος τῆς προκειμένης ἐχόμενος, μηδὲ
quickly — and Gregory of-the lying-before holding nor
μακρὰ βιβὰς ἢ γοῦν ἐκτείνων πόδας ὑπερβαθμίους,
long striding or at-any-rate stretching feet overstepping
μονιμωτέρας ἰσχύος μετείληχε. παρεζεύχθη δ' ἐς ὕστερον
more-lasting strength obtained was-yoked-beside and at later(-times)
τουτωῖ καί τις Γρηγόριος ἕτερος, ᾧ Καματηρὸς
to-this(-one) also (a)-certain Gregory other to-whom Kamateros
ἡ ἐπίκλησις. ὁ δ' ἀνὴρ οὗτος ἐλλόγιμος μέν, τὸ δὲ
the surname the and man this learned indeed the and
γένος οὐκ εὐπρεπὴς οὐδ' ἐπίπαν εὐπάρυφος, τῷ βασιλεῖ
family not seemly nor altogether purple-bordered to-the emperor
δὲ προσληφθεὶς Ἀλεξίῳ καὶ τοῖς ὑπογραμματευομένοις
and having-been-taken-up Alexios and to-the(-ones) serving-as-secretaries
καταλεγεὶς τὰς ἐπαρχίας ἀμφεποτᾶτο, κἀκ τοῦ τάσσειν
having-been-enrolled the provinces he-flitted-about and-from the to-assess
φόρους ταύταις πλοῦτον τιθαιβώσσων βαθὺν ἠράσθη
taxes on-them wealth fostering deep he-desired
κατὰ κῆδος βασιλεῖ συναφθῆναι. οὐκοῦν καὶ
by marriage-alliance with-(the)-emperor to-be-joined therefore also
προσπλακεὶς μιᾷ τῶν ἐκείνου συγγενῶν λογοθέτης τῶν
having-been-entwined with-one of-the his relatives logothete of-the
σεκρέτων προυβέβλητο. ἴσχυε δ' ὑπὲρ πάντας παρὰ
sekreta he-was-put-forward was-strong and beyond all with

τῷδε τῷ βασιλεῖ καὶ τὰς πρώτας ἐκαρποῦτο τιμὰς ὁ
this the emperor and the first enjoyed honors —
Ἀξοῦχος Ἰωάννης. ἦν δ' οὗτος Πέρσης τὸ γένος, τῆς
Axouch John was and this(-man) (a)-Persian by-the race of-the
δὲ Βιθυνῶν προκαθημένης πόλεως Νικαίας τῆς τῶν
and of-Bithynians presiding city Nicaea from-the of-the
Περσῶν δυναστείας ἀπαλλαγείσης, ὅτε Βαϊμοῦνδος τῆς ἐς
Persians dominion having-been-freed when Bohemond the to
Παλαιστίνην πορείας εἴχετο, συνέχεται καὶ αὐτὸς καὶ τῷ
Palestine journey was-on is-seized also himself and to-the
βασιλεῖ Ἀλεξίῳ δῶρον παρέχεται. ἡλιξ δ' ὢν Ἰωάννῃ
emperor Alexios (as-a)-gift is-presented of-like-age and being to-John
τῷ βασιλεῖ συμπαίστωρ αὐτῷ προσείληπτο, καὶ τῶν
the emperor (a)-playmate to-him was-attached and of-the
οἰκιδίων καὶ προκοίτων ὁ προσφιλέστατος κρίνεται. ἐπεὶ
household-servants and chamberlains the dearest is-judged when
δ' ἐπέβη τῆς βασιλείας, πᾶσαν ὑπερανέβη πρεσβυτέραν
and he-mounted-to the empire all he-surpassed earlier
παραδυνάστευσιν, μέγας τιμηθεὶς δομέστικος, ὡς καὶ
power grand honored domestic so-that also
πολλοὺς τῶν ἐριτίμων κατὰ γένος βασίλειον ἀποβαίνειν
many of-the most-honored in race imperial to-dismount
τοῦ ἵππου καὶ τούτῳ ἀπονέμειν προσκύνησιν κατὰ
from-the horse and to-this(-man) to-render obeisance by
συγκυρίαν ὑπαντιάζοντας. ἦσαν δὲ τῷ ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ οὐ
chance meeting(-him) were and to-the man this not
μόνον χεῖρες δεδιδαγμέναι πρὸς πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς
only hands taught for war but also for
εὐποιίαν τῶν δεομένων ὀξεῖαί τινες καὶ εὐκίνητοι.
beneficence of-the(-ones) needing quick some and nimble
ἀτὰρ τὸ εὐγενὲς τῆς γνώμης καὶ ἐλευθέριον τὸ μὴ
but the nobility of-the judgment and freedom the(-thing) not

ἔχον οὕτω τοῦ γένους τὰ πολλὰ συνεσκίαζε, καὶ ποθεινὸν
being thus of-the race the most overshadowed and longed-for
παρὰ πᾶσι τὸν Ἀξοῦχον ἀπειργάζετο.
among all — Axouch made
Ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω ἐνιαυτὸς ἀκριβῶς τῷ βασιλεῖ διεγένετο, καὶ
but not-yet (a)-year exactly for-the emperor passed and
καττύεται τούτῳ παρὰ τῶν ἐκ γένους ἐπιβουλή,
is-stitched-together for-this(-one) by the(-ones) of (the)-family (a)-plot
καθ᾽ ὃν οὐκ ἔχει τις τρόπον εἰπεῖν, κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ
in which not is-able anyone manner to-say against him
βαρυμηνιώντων καὶ ὄμμα οἱ ἐπιρριπτούντων βάσκανον.
being-greatly-wrathful and (an)-eye on-him casting evil
ἀμέλει τοι καὶ σύστρεμμα τεκτήναντες πονηρὸν καὶ πίστεις
indeed surely also (a)-band having-framed wicked and pledges
δόντες ἀλλήλοις τῷ Βρυεννίῳ πάντες προστίθενται, καὶ
having-given to-one-another — to-Bryennios all attach(-themselves) and
παραχωροῦσι τούτῳ τῆς βασιλείας ὡς λογικῶν μετόχῳ
yield to-this(-one) the empire as of-learned partaking
παιδεύσεων καὶ εἶδος τυραννικὸν προφαίνοντι καὶ κατὰ
studies and (a)-form tyrant-like displaying and by
κῆδος προφερεστέρῳ βασιλικόν· ὡς γὰρ φθάσαντες
marriage-alliance more-eminent imperial as for anticipating
εἴπομεν, τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀδελφῇ τῇ Καισαρίσσῃ Ἄννῃ
we-said to-the of-the emperor sister the Caesarissa Anna
συνέζευκτο, ἥτις δὴ τῆς τῶν ἐπιστημῶν πασῶν ἐπόχου
he-had-been-joined who indeed of-the of-the sciences all mounted(-over)
φιλοσοφίας ἐδείκνυτο μέλημα καὶ πρὸς πᾶσαν ἐρρύθμιστο
of-philosophy showed(-herself) (the)-care and to all had-been-trained
μάθησιν. τάχα δ᾽ ἂν καὶ νυκτὸς ἐπέθεντο μεθ᾽ ὅπλων
learning perhaps and — also by-night they-would-have-attacked with arms
τῶν φονουργῶν αὐλιζομένῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ κατὰ τὸ μικρὸν
the murderous bivouacking the emperor at the little

ἄποθεν τῶν χερσαίων πυλῶν ἱππήλατον Φιλοπάτιον, δώροις
off of-the land gates horse-riding Philopation with-gifts
προδιαφθείραντες ἁδροῖς τὸν ἐπὶ τῶν εἰσόδων τῆς πόλεως,
having-first-corrupted great the(-one) over the entrances of-the city
εἰ μὴ τὸ εἰωθὸς ὑπόνωθρον καὶ χαλαρὸν πρὸς βασιλείας
if not the accustomed sluggish and slack toward of-empire
ἐπίθεσιν τῆς ἐγχειρήσεως ἔπαυσε τὸν Βρυέννιον, αὐτόν τε
attempt from-the undertaking had-stopped — Bryennios him both
μένειν κατὰ χώραν παραβιάσαν τῶν ξυνθηκῶν λαθόμενον,
to-stay in place having-compelled from-the compacts having-forgotten
καὶ κατασβέσαν τὸ θερμὸν τῶν συνελθόντων φρόνημα,
and having-quenched the hot of-the(-ones) having-come-together spirit
ὅτε καὶ λέγεται τὴν Καισάρισσαν Ἄνναν πρὸς τὸ χαῦνον
when also is-said the Caesarissa Anna at the slackness
τοῦ ταύτης ἀνδρὸς δυσχεναίρουσαν ὡς πάσχουσαν δεινὰ
of-the her husband being-indignant as suffering terrible(-things)
διαπρίεσθαι καὶ τὴν φύσιν τὰ πολλὰ ἐπιμέμφεσθαι, ὑπ᾽
to-be-sawn-through and the nature the most to-blame under
αἰτίαν τιθεῖσαν οὐχὶ μικρὰν ὡς αὐτῇ μὲν ἐνδιασχοῦσαν
charge placing not small as for-her indeed having-split
τὸ ἄρθρον καὶ ἐγκοιλάνασαν, τῷ δὲ Βρυεννίῳ τὸ μόριον
the member and having-hollowed — and for-Bryennios the part
ἀποτείνασαν καὶ σφαιρώσασαν. φωραθέντων δ᾽ ἡμέρας
having-stretched-out and having-rounded having-been-detected and by-day
τῶν ὁμοτῶν οὐδένες μὲν αὐτῶν ἐς τὸ σῶμα διελωβήθησαν
the conspirators none indeed of-them in the body were-mutilated
ἢ καθυπεβλήθησαν μάστιξι, τῶν δὲ οὐσιῶν ἐστέρηνται
or were-subjected to-whips of-the and properties were-deprived
ἁπαξάπαντες. μετὰ δέ τινα καιρὸν καὶ αὗται τοῖς πλείοσιν
all after and some time also these to-the more
αὐτῶν ἀπεδόθησαν, ἐξ αὐτῆς τῆς πρωτεργάτιδος τῆς
of-them were-given-back from the-very the first-worker of-the

ἐπιβουλῆς Ἄννης τῆς Καισαρίσσης τοῦ βασιλέως ἀρξαμένου
plot Anna the Caesarissa the emperor having-begun
φιλανθρωπεύεσθαι. ἀρχὴν δ' ἔσχε τοιάνδε τὸ οὕτωσὶ
to-show-humanity (a)-beginning and had such the thus
γεγονός. τὴν ἐν χρυσῷ καὶ ἀργύρῳ καὶ πλούτῳ παντοδαπῷ
having-happened the in gold and silver and wealth of-all-kinds
καὶ ποικίλοις ἐσθήμασιν οὐσίαν τῆς Καισαρίσσης καθ' ἕνα
and varied garments property of-the Caesarissa in one
δόμον συνειλεγμένην ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἐπιστὰς ἐθεᾶτο,
house gathered the emperor John having-stood-by beheld
ναὶ μὴν καὶ εἰπὼν ὡς „ἡ τάξις ἐπ' ἐμοί πως ἀντέστραπται·
yes indeed also having-said that the order in me somehow has-been-reversed
τὸ μὲν γὰρ συγγενὲς πολέμιον εὕρηται, τὸ δ' ἀλλότριον
the indeed for kin hostile has-been-found the and stranger
φίλιον· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο χρεὼν καὶ τὰ τῶν πλούτου
friendly and because-of this needful also the(-things) of-the wealth
πρὸς τοὺς φιλοῦντας μεταρρυῆναι" πάντα εἰληφέναι τὸν
to the(-ones) loving to-flow-over all to-have-taken the
μέγαν προσετετάχει δομέστικον. ὁ δὲ εὐχαριστήσας ἐπὶ
grand he-had-ordered domestic he and having-thanked for
τούτοις τῷ βασιλεῖ φιλοδωρίαν μεγίστην μεταδιώκοντι,
these(-things) the emperor beneficence greatest pursuing
ἤτησεν ἐνδοθῆναί οἱ τὰ εἰκότα διαλεχθῆναι. ὡς οὖν
asked to-be-granted to-him the fitting(-things) to-say as then
ἔλαβε τὸ ἐνδόσιμον, „εἰ καὶ βιαίων" ἔφη „πραγμάτων καὶ
he-took the leave if even of-violent he-said deeds and
πολλῆς ἀδικίας γεμόντων ἦρξεν ὦ βασιλεῦ ἡ σὴ ἀδελφὴ
of-much injustice full began O emperor the your sister
καὶ ἔργοις αὐτοῖς τὸ συγγενὲς ἀπωμόσατο, ἀλλ' οὐχὶ
and by-deeds themselves the kinship she-abjured but not
καὶ τὴν ἐκ τῆς φύσεως κλῆσιν καθάπερ καὶ τὴν σχέσιν
also the from the nature name just-as also the relation

ἀπεβάλετο. ἀγαθοῦ τοίνυν βασιλέως εἰσέτι κασίγνητος
she-cast-off of-good therefore emperor still sister
μένουσα ἐκ μετανοίας τὸ φίλτρον αὖθις ἀνακαλέσεται,
remaining from repentance the love again she-will-recall
ὃ νῦν ἐκ παρανοίας ἀπώλεσε, τῇ φύσει χρησαμένη
which now from madness she-lost the nature using
συλλήπτορι. φεῖσαι οὖν ὦ δέσποτα τῆς τῷ σῷ κράτει
(as)-helper spare then O master the to-the your might
προσκεκρουκυίας ὁμογενοῦς, καὶ κόλασον τῷ φιλανθρώπῳ
having-offended kinswoman and punish with-the clemency
λαμπρῶς ἤδη τῆς σῆς ἀρετῆς ἡττᾶσθαι ὁμολογοῦσαν· δὸς
openly already the your virtue to-be-worsted confessing give
δὲ αὐτῇ καὶ τὰ κατ᾽ ὄψιν προκείμενα, οὐχ ὡς ὄφλημα
and to-her also the(-things) before sight lying not as debt
δίκαιον ἀλλ᾽ ὡς δόμα ἑκούσιον, ἐπεὶ καὶ δικαιότερον
just but as gift voluntary since also more-justly
ταῦτα ἐμοῦ κτήσαιτο, κλῆρον ὄντα πατρῷον κἀπὶ
these(-things) than-I she-would-acquire (an)-inheritance being paternal and-to
τὸ γένος αὖθις διαβησόμενα.” τούτοις ὁ βασιλεὺς πεισθείς,
the family again going-to-pass-over by-these the emperor persuaded
ἢ ἀληθέστερον εἰπεῖν αἰδεσθείς, σὺν προθυμίᾳ περατοῖ τὴν
or more-truly to-say shamed with eagerness completes the
παραίφασιν, φάμενος ὡς „εἴην ἀνάξιος τοῦ ἄρχειν, εἰ
advice saying that I-should-be unworthy of-the to-rule if
σὺ περὶ τὸ γένος τοὐμὸν κριθείης φιλανθρωπότερος καὶ
you toward the family my should-be-judged more-humane and
κέρδους περιττοῦ καὶ προχείρου ἀνώτερος.” ἀμέλει τοι
than-gain excessive and ready higher indeed surely
καὶ δίδωσι πάντα τῇ Καισαρίσσῃ καὶ σπένδεται. Εἰρήνη
also gives all to-the Caesarissa and makes-peace Irene
δὲ ἡ μήτηρ καὶ βασιλὶς κατ᾽ οὐδένα τρόπον ἐλήλεγκται
and the mother and empress in no way has-been-convicted

τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς μετέχουσα κατὰ τοῦ υἱοῦ· μᾶλλον μὲν
of-the plot partaking against the son rather indeed
οὖν ἐσέπειτα καὶ σοφόν τι λόγιον γνωματεῦσαι λέγεται,
then afterward also wise some saying to-have-pronounced is-said
μαθοῦσα τὰ μελετώμενα, ὡς δεῖ βασιλέα μὲν οὐχ
having-learned the(-things) being-planned that one-must (an)-emperor indeed not
ὑπόντα ζητεῖν, παρόντα δὲ μὴ μετακινεῖν, καὶ ὡς „οἵας
being-there to-seek being-there and not to-remove and as such
μοι τὰς ὀδύνας οἱ σφαγεῖς ἐχάλκευον τοῦ υἱοῦ, δριμυτέρας
for-me the pains the slaughterers were-forging of-the son sharper
δήπουθεν ὧν ἐν τῷ τίκτειν ὠδίνων πεπείραμαι, ὅτι καὶ
surely than-the in the to-give-birth pangs I-have-experienced because also
πρὸς φῶς αἱ μὲν κατήπειγον τὸ κυοφορούμενον,
toward light the(-ones) indeed were-urging the(-child) being-carried
αἱ δ' ἐξ ᾅδου κευθμώνων διὰ μέσων μου τῶν
the(-ones) and from Hades' recesses through (the)-middle of-my the
σπλάγχνων χωροῦσαι λυπεῖν ἀθάνατα ἤμελλον."
bowels going to-grieve deathlessly were-about

IV · SOZOPOLIS AND THE PATZINAKS

John marches against the Turks who hold the cities on the Maeander, subdues and walls Laodikeia, and captures Sozopolis by a feigned flight, Paktiarios drawing its garrison out into an ambush; Hierakokoryphitis and other forts fall. Then the Scythians cross the Ister and plunder Thrace. John beguiles them with gifts and attacks at dawn; they fight behind a ring of wagons, and he weeps before the icon of the Mother of God. His guard breaks the wagon wall, and the Scythians are routed and enslaved.

Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τοὺς Πέρσας ὁρῶν παρ᾽ οὐδὲν θεμένους
the and emperor the Persians seeing for nothing having-set
τὰς πρὸς τὸν ἑαυτοῦ πατέρα ξυνθήκας, καὶ παμπληθεὶ
the with the his-own father compacts and in-full-force
τῶν πόλεων καταθέοντας ὁπόσαι περὶ Φρυγίαν καὶ
the cities overrunning as-many-as about Phrygia and
ποταμὸν τὸν Μαίανδρον ἵδρυνται, ἔαρος ἐπιστάντος ἔξεισι
(the)-river the Maeander are-situated spring having-come goes-out
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν, καὶ συμβαλὼν μάχαις πολλάκις ἐκράτησε,
against them and having-engaged in-battles often prevailed
τήν τε Λαοδίκειαν χειρωσάμενος τείχεσι περιέβαλε, καὶ
the both Laodikeia having-subdued with-walls he-surrounded and
τὸν Ἀλπιχαρὰν μετανάστην ἔθετο, ὃς τὴν ταύτης φρουρὰν
— Alpicharas (a)-wanderer he-made who the its garrison
ἐπεπίστευτο. καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πρὸς τὸ δέον καταστησάμενος
had-been-entrusted-with and the rest to the needful having-set
νόστου ἐμνήσατο, καὶ μικρόν τι τῷ Βυζαντίῳ ἐνδιατρίψας
of-return he-thought and little some — in-Byzantium having-stayed
σκηνίτης γίνεται πάλιν, τῶν ἀρχείων ἀπαναστάς. ἦν
tent-dweller becomes again from-the palace having-risen-up he-was
γὰρ τὰς τῶν βαρβάρων ἐπιδρομὰς φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ὡς
for the of-the barbarians incursions guarding-against and as
ἔχον λυμαίνεσθαι τὸ ἀνέτοιμον ὑφορώμενος. ὅθεν χρονίζειν
able to-do-harm the unready suspecting whence to-linger
ἡρεῖτο μᾶλλον τῇ θυραυλίᾳ, δύο τὰ κάλλιστα κατορθοῦν
he-chose rather in-the camping-out two the finest(-things) to-achieve
ἐντεῦθεν οἰόμενος, τήν τε φυλακὴν τῶν οἰκείων χωρῶν, ἣν
hence thinking the both guarding of-the own lands which
ὡς τὰ πολλὰ βραβεύει τὸ ὕπαιθρον, καὶ τὴν ἐς τὰ πολέμια
as the most decides the open-air and the for the war-like
ἔργα τριβήν τε καὶ ἄσκησιν τῶν ταγμάτων ἀφισταμένων
deeds practice both and exercise of-the units departing

τοῦ οἰκουρεῖν, καὶ ὡς βαφῇ σίδηρος, τοῖς ἐκ τῆς
from-the keeping-at-home and as by-dipping iron by-the from the
καυστηρᾶς δρόσου ἱδρῶσι παγιουμένων. χειρωσόμενος
burning dew sweats being-hardened going-to-subdue
τοίνυν ἀπῄει τὴν κατὰ Παμφυλίαν Σωζόπολιν. ὡς δὲ
therefore he-went-off the in Pamphylia Sozopolis as and
δυσάλωτος ἐδόκει τις εἶναι διά τε τὸ ἐγκαθήμενον
hard-to-take seemed somehow to-be because-of both the sitting
ἔνδον ὁπλιτικὸν καὶ τὸ δυσέμβολον τῆς θέσεως καὶ
inside infantry and the hard-to-attack of-the position and
περίκρημνον, τοιόνδε τι μηχάνημα κατὰ θεῖον σκοπον
precipitous such some device according-to divine aim
μέτεισι. δύναμιν ἱππικὴν Πακτιαρίῳ τινὶ παραδοὺς
he-pursues (a)-force of-horse to-Paktiarios (a)-certain having-handed-over
ἐντέλλεταί οἱ συνεχῶς τῇ Σωζοπόλει ἐνιππάζεσθαι κἀπὶ
he-commands him continually — at-Sozopolis to-ride and-at
τοῖς τείχεσιν ἀφιέναι βέλεμνα, εἰ δ' ἐπεξέλθοιεν οἱ
the walls to-let-fly missiles if and should-come-out the
πολέμιοι, φεύγειν ἀμεταστρεπτὶ μηδ' ἐφεστάναι πρὸς
enemies to-flee without-turning nor to-stand-firm for
πόλεμον, παριέναι δ' οὕτω καὶ τὰς μικρὸν ἄποθεν τῆς
battle to-pass-by and thus also the (a)-little off of-the
πόλεως συνεπτυγμένας καὶ λοχμώδεις ἀτραπούς. ὁ μὲν
city folded and thicket-covered paths he indeed
οὖν κατὰ τὴν βασιλικὴν παραίφασιν ἔπραττεν· ὡς δὲ
then according-to the imperial advice did as and
ἡ ἐπιδίωξις ἐπὶ πολὺ καὶ πολλάκις πρὸς τῶν Περσῶν
the pursuit for much and often by the Persians
ἐγίνετο ἐκχεομένων τῆς Σωζοπόλεως, κατασοφίζεται τὸ
happened pouring-out — of-Sozopolis outwits the
ἀντίπαλον ὁ Πακτιάριος, ὑποκαθίσας λόχον ἐν
opposing(-side) — Paktiarios having-set-in-ambush (a)-company in

τοῖς στενοῖς. ἐν μιᾷ γοῦν τῶν καταδρομῶν οἱ μὲν
the narrows on one at-any-rate of-the sallies the indeed
Τοῦρκοι μὴ προσκεψάμενοι τὸ ἐνέδρευμα συντονώτερον
Turks not having-foreseen the ambush more-vigorously
ὁμοῦ καὶ πορρώτερον ὀπίσω τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐδίωκον,
at-once and farther behind the Romans pursued
ὡς καὶ τὰς δυσχωρίας ἀπερισκέπτως παραδραμεῖν· οἱ
so-that also the rough-places carelessly to-run-past the
δ' ἐλλοχῶντες Ῥωμαῖοι ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπεριμερίμνως τοὺς
and lying-in-ambush Romans when they-saw carelessly the
Πέρσας ὀπίσω τῶν ἐκ τῆς συμμορίας σφῶν ἐπιόντας
Persians behind the(-ones) from the company their coming-on
ἀνέτῳ παντὶ ῥυτῆρι καὶ πρὸς οὐδὲν ἕτερον ἀφορῶντας
with-loose all rein and to nothing other looking
ἢ τὸ καταλήψεσθαι τοὺς ἐκδιδράσκοντας, αὐτίκα δὴ
than the to-catch the(-ones) running-away at-once indeed
μάλα αὐτοὶ ἀναστάντες εὐθὺ τῆς Σωζοπόλεως ἴενται.
very themselves having-risen straight — for-Sozopolis go
μετὰ βραχὺ δὲ καὶ τῶν φευγόντων ἐπιστραφέντων ἐν
after (a)-little and also of-the fleeing having-turned-about in
μέσῳ συλληφθέντες οἱ Τοῦρκοι, καὶ μήτε τῇ πόλει
(the)-middle caught the Turks and neither to-the city
προσεπεγγίσαι δυνάμενοι διὰ τοὺς ἐκ τῶν λόχων
to-approach being-able because-of the(-ones) from the ambushes
προδραμόντας Ῥωμαίους πρὸς τὴν τῶν εἰσόδων κατάληψιν,
having-run-ahead (the)-Romans for the of-the entrances seizure
μήτε διαδρᾶναι τοὺς ὄπισθεν ἐπιφανέντας ἰσχύοντες,
nor to-escape the(-ones) behind having-appeared being-able
οἱ μὲν σαγηνεύονται, οἱ δὲ καὶ ξίφους γίνονται
some indeed are-netted others and also of-(the)-sword become
πάρεργον, οὐ πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ τῇ τῶν ἵππων ἀρετῇ
(a)-by-work not many and also by-the of-the horses excellence

διασώζονται. καὶ οὕτως ἥλω πρὸς Ῥωμαίων Σωζόπολις
are-saved and thus was-taken by (the)-Romans Sozopolis
ἑνὶ βουλεύματι τοῦ βασιλέως σοφῷ. ἐκ δὲ τοῦδε τὸ
by-one plan of-the emperor wise from and this the
φρούριον παρεστήσατο ὃ Ἱερακοκορυφῖτις ὠνόμασται,
fort he-brought-over which Hierakokoryphitis has-been-named
καὶ πλεῖστα ἕτερα πολίχνια καὶ ἐρύματα ὑπηγάγετο, πάλαι
and very-many other small-towns and fortifications he-subdued of-old
μὲν Ῥωμαίοις ὑπόφορα, τοῖς δὲ Πέρσαις τότε σπενδόμενα.
indeed to-(the)-Romans tributary to-the and Persians then allied
Περὶ δὲ τὸ πέμπτον ἔτος τῆς αὐτοῦ βασιλείας
about and the fifth year of-the his reign
Σκυθῶν διαβάντων τὸν Ἴστρον καὶ τὰ Θρακῷα μέρη
Scythians having-crossed the Ister and the Thracian parts
ληϊζομένων καὶ τὰ ἐν ποσὶν ἀφανιζόντων τοῦ
plundering and the(-things) at feet destroying than-the
τῶν ἀκρίδων ἀκριβέστερον ἔθνος, ἔξεισι κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
of-the locusts more-thoroughly (the)-people goes-out against them
τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς ἀθροίσας δυνάμεις καὶ ὡς ἐνῆν
the Roman having-gathered forces and as was-possible
ὁπλισάμενος γενναιότερον, οὐ διὰ τὸ πλῆθος μόνον
having-armed more-nobly not because-of the number only
τῶν πολεμίων μηδ᾽ ὑποπῖπτον σχεδὸν ἀριθμῷ, ἀλλὰ
of-the enemies nor falling-under almost to-number but
καὶ διὰ τὸ χρᾶσθαι μεγαλαυχίᾳ καὶ σὺν κόμπῳ
also because-of the to-use boastfulness and with vaunting
τραχύτερον ἐπιέναι τὸ βάρβαρον, εἰς μνήμην ἄγων,
more-roughly to-advance the barbarian(-host) into memory leading
ὡς ἔοικε, τὰ πονηθέντα οἱ πρότερον, ἡνίκα
as it-seems the(-things) suffered by-them before when
τὰ Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα διεῖπεν ὁ Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος,
the of-(the)-Romans scepters wielded — Komnenos Alexios

ὅτε εἶχετο Θράκη καὶ τὰ πλεῖστα τῆς Μακεδονίας
when was-held Thrace and the most of-the Macedonia
ἠρήμωτο. τὰ μὲν οὖν πρῶτα στρατηγικῇ μεθόδῳ
had-been-laid-waste the indeed then first with-generalship method
χρώμενος ὁ βασιλεὺς δι᾽ ἀποστολῆς ὁμογλώττων
using the emperor through (a)-sending of-same-tongued(-men)
τοῦ τῶν Σκυθῶν ἀποπειρᾶται στρατεύματος, εἴ πως
of-the of-the Scythians tries army if somehow
ἐς ὁμολογίας ξυμβαῖεν καὶ τοῦ διὰ μάχης χωρεῖν
to agreements they-might-come and from-the through battle to-go
ἀποσταῖεν πάντες ἢ γοῦν ἔνιοι, εἰς πλείους διηρημένοι
might-stand-off all or at-any-rate some into more divided
φυλὰς καὶ διακριδὸν στρατήγια βάλλοντες. ἐφελκυσάμενος
tribes and separately camps pitching having-drawn-over
οὖν τόνδε τὸν τρόπον τινὰς τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς τὰ πρῶτα
then in-this the manner some of-the among them the first
φερόντων, πᾶσαν φιλοφροσύνην ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖς ἐπιδείκνυται,
carrying all friendliness on them he-displays
οὐ μόνον περιττὰς ἑστιάσεις αὐτοῖς παραθέμενος, ἀλλὰ
not only lavish banquets for-them having-set-before but
καὶ σηρικοῖς καταγοητεύσας ἱματισμοῖς καὶ κυπέλλοις καὶ
also with-silk having-bewitched garments and with-cups and
λέβησιν ἀργυρέοις ὑπαγαγόμενος. καὶ τοῖς δελέασι τούτοις
cauldrons silver having-won-over and with-the baits these
τὰ τῶν Σκυθῶν ὑποχαυνώσας φρονήματα, ἔγνω μὴ καιρὸν
the of-the Scythians having-slackened spirits resolved not (the)-time
εἶναι μελλήσεως, ἀλλ᾽ ἐπάγειν αὐτοῖς τὰς δυνάμεις
to-be for-delay but to-lead-against them the forces
κἀκ τοῦ αὐτίκα συντάξασθαι, ἕως ἔτι τὰς γνώμας
and-from the at-once to-engage while still the minds
ἔχοντές εἰσιν ἀμφιβόλους καὶ ῥέπουσι πρὸς ἀμφότερα, καὶ
having they-are in-doubt and inclining toward both and

Ῥωμαίοις μὲν διανοούμενοι σπείσασθαι διὰ τά
with-(the)-Romans indeed intending to-make-truce because-of the(-things)
σφισιν ἐπαγγελλόμενα, θαρροῦντες δὲ καὶ τὸν πόλεμον ὡς
to-them promised trusting and also the war as
τοῦ νικᾶν ἐθάδες πάλαι γενόμενοι. ἄρας τοίνυν ἐκ τῶν
of-the to-win accustomed long having-become having-set-out therefore from the
τῆς Βερόης μερῶν (ἐκεῖσε γὰρ ἐστρατοπεδεύετο) κνεφαῖος
— *of-Beroe parts there for he-was-encamped at-dawn*
τοῖς Σκύθαις συρρήγνυται. γίνεται τοίνυν φρικαλέα τις
with-the Scythians he-clashes happens therefore shuddering some
συμβολή, καὶ καταπληκτικωτέρα τῶν πώποτε μάχη
encounter and more-astounding than-the ever battle
συνίσταται· οἵ τε γὰρ Σκύθαι γενναίως ἐδέξαντο τὸ
is-joined the both for Scythians nobly received the
ἡμέτερον στράτευμα τῇ τῶν ἵππων ἐπελάσει καὶ τῇ
our army with-the of-the horses charge and with-the
τῶν τοξευμάτων ἐπαφέσει καὶ ταῖς βοαῖς ἐν ταῖς ἐμβολαῖς
of-the arrows discharge and with-the cries in the attacks
δυσαντίβλεπτοι δεικνύμενοι, καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι καθάπαξ ἐν τῷ
hard-to-face showing(-themselves) and (the)-Romans once-for-all in the
ἀγῶνι γενόμενοι ὡς ἡττήσοντες ἢ θανούμενοι προύθεντο
contest having-come as going-to-be-worsted or going-to-die resolved
μάχεσθαι. καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἑταίρους ἔχων
to-fight and himself too (the)-emperor the companions having
μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ὅσον περὶ τὴν τοῦ σώματος φυλακὴν
with himself and as-much-as about the of-the body guard
ἀποτέτακτο, ἀεί πως ἐπεβοήθει τοῖς κάμνουσι μέρεσιν.
had-been-assigned always somehow helped the laboring parts
αὐτὸ μέντοι τὸ Σκυθικὸν κατὰ τόνδε τὸν πόλεμον τοιοῦτόν
it however the Scythian(-host) in this the war such
τι ἐκακοτέχνησεν ἐκ προσκέψεως, ποριζούσης αὐτῷ
something devised by forethought providing for-it

τῆς ἀνάγκης τὰ δέοντα. συναγαγὸν δὴ πᾶσαν ἅμαξαν
the necessity the needful(-things) having-gathered indeed every wagon
εἰς σχῆμα περιφερὲς αὐτὰς διατίθησι, καὶ τούτων ἄνωθεν
into shape circular them arranges and these above
στήσαντες μοῖραν οὐκ ὀλίγην ἐκ τοῦ σφῶν στρατεύματος
having-stood part not small from the their army
ὅσα καὶ χαρακώματι ἀπεχρῶντο τῷ μηχανήματι, καὶ
just-as also as-(a)-palisade used the device and
πολλὰς δι' αὐτῶν ἐγκαρσίους παρόδους ῥυμοτομήσαντες,
many through them crosswise passages having-cut
βιαζόμενοι μὲν ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων καὶ τὰ νῶτα πρὸς τὴν
being-forced indeed by (the)-Romans and the backs toward the
τάξιν τῶν προσώπων μετατιθέντες ὥσπερ τεῖχος ἐχυρὸν
order of-the faces changing as-if (a)-wall strong
τὰς ἁμάξας εἰσέτρεχον καὶ διετίθουν οὕτω τὴν φυγὴν πρὸς
the wagons ran-into and arranged thus the flight toward
τὸ εὖ, εἶτ' αὖθις ἐκεῖθεν μετ' ἀνοχὴν ὡσεὶ διὰ πυλῶν
the well then again thence after (a)-respite as-if through gates
ἀνακλινομένων ἐκπίπτοντες ἔργα χειρὸς ἀνδρείας ἐδείκνυον.
opening falling-out deeds of-hand brave they-showed
καὶ ἦν τὸ γινόμενον τοῦτο τειχομαχία τις ἀκριβὴς
and was the happening this wall-fighting (a)-certain exact
ἐν μέσῃ πεδιάδι σχεδιασθεῖσα παρὰ Σκυθῶν, ὡς
in (the)-middle-of (the)-plain improvised by Scythians so-that
συμβαίνειν ἐκ τοῦδε τὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐπ' ἀτελέστοις
to-happen from this the(-things) of-(the)-Romans on unfinished(-things)
μογεῖν. ἦν οὖν τηνικαῦτα τὸν Ἰωάννην ὁρᾶν σοφόν
to-toil it-was-possible then at-that-time — John to-see wise
τι χρῆμα τοῖς ὑπ' αὐτὸν καθιστάμενον· οὐ γὰρ ἀγαθὸς
some thing to-the(-ones) under him being-made not for good
μόνον καὶ ποικίλος τὸ ἦθος ἐδείκνυτο σύμβουλος,
only and varied in-the character showed(-himself) (an)-adviser

ἀλλὰ καὶ πρῶτος παρεῖχε πέρατι ὁπόσα στρατηγοῖς
but also first provided (an)-end to-what-things to-generals
καὶ τάγμασιν ὑπετίθετο. τὸ δὲ δὴ καινὸν καὶ πολλὴν
and units he-proposed the and indeed new and much
ἐκείνῳ μαρτυροῦν τὴν εὐσέβειαν, ὁπότε τῶν Ῥωμαίων
to-him bearing-witness the piety whenever of-the Romans
αἱ φάλαγγες ἔκαμνον ἐπιβριθόντων τῶν πολεμίων καὶ
the phalanxes were-weary pressing-hard the enemies and
συμπιπτόντων παραβολώτερον, τὴν τῆς θεομήτορος εἰκόνα
falling-upon more-recklessly the of-the Mother-of-God image
παρεστῶσαν ἔχων, μετ᾽ οἰμωγῆς ἐμβλέπων, ἐλεεινοῖς τοῖς
standing-by having with wailing looking-on with-pitiable the
σχήμασι θερμότερα τῶν ἐναγωνίων ἱδρώτων κατέλειβε
gestures hotter than-the of-contest sweats he-poured-down
δάκρυα. καὶ ἦν οὔκουν εἰς κενὸν διαπραττόμενος οὑτωσί,
tears and he-was not-then in vain doing thus
ἀλλ᾽ ἐκ τοῦ μάλα αὐτίκα τὴν ἐξ ὕψους θωρακιζόμενος
but from the very at-once the from on-high being-armored
δύναμιν τὰς Σκυθικὰς ἐτροποῦτο παρεμβολάς, ὡς Μωϋσῆς
power the Scythian he-routed camps as Moses
πρότερον τῇ τῶν χειρῶν ἐκτάσει τὰς Ἀμαληκίτιδας
formerly by-the of-the hands stretching-out the Amalekite
ἴλας ἐνέκλινεν. ἀναλαβὼν δὲ καὶ τοὺς ὑπασπιστάς, οἳ
troops turned having-taken-up and also the shield-bearers who
περιμήκεσιν ἀσπίσι καὶ πέλυξιν ἑτεροστόμοις φράγνυνται,
with-long shields and axes single-edged are-fenced
ὡσεὶ τεῖχος ἄρρηκτον τοῖς Σκύθαις ἀντιπροβάλλεται.
as-if (a)-wall unbreakable to-the Scythians he-puts-forward
ἀμέλει καὶ ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν διαλυθέντος τοῦ ἐκ τῶν ἁμαξῶν
indeed also by them having-been-broken-up the from the wagons
ἐρύματος, καὶ εἰς χεῖρας οὕτω τοῦ πολέμου συνερχομένου,
fortification and into hands thus the war coming-together

γίνεται τῶν ἐναντίων τροπὴ καὶ φυγὴ ἀκλεὴς καὶ
happens of-the opponents (a)-rout and flight inglorious and
Ῥωμαίων εὐθαρσὴς ἐπιδίωξις. κατὰ χιλιοστύας τοίνυν
of-(the)-Romans bold pursuit by thousands therefore
πίπτει τὸ ἁμαξόβιον, καὶ διαρπάζονται χάρακες· τὸ
falls the wagon-living(-host) and are-plundered (the)-camps the
δὲ συλληφθὲν δορυάλωτον καὶ ἀριθμοῦ κρεῖττον ὁρᾶται,
and captured spear-won(-host) also than-number greater is-seen
ὥσπερ καὶ τὸ προσρυὲν αὐτόμολον τῷ πόθῳ
just-as also the(-host) flowing-to(-them) deserting through-the longing
τῶν ζωγρηθέντων ὁμογενῶν, ὡς ἐκ τούτου καὶ κώμας
of-the captured kinsmen so-that from this also villages
συνοικισθῆναι καθ' ἑσπέριόν τινα λῆξιν Ῥωμαϊκήν, ὧν
to-be-settled in western some region Roman of-which
καὶ εἰσέτι μικρά τινα ἐμπυρεύματα σώζονται, οὐκ ὀλίγους
also still small some embers are-preserved not few
δὲ καὶ εἰς σπείρας καταλεγῆναι συμμαχικάς, ἀποδοθῆναι
and also into cohorts to-be-enrolled allied to-be-given-back
δὲ καὶ μοίρας πλείονας συνειλημμένας ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς.
and also parts more seized by the army

V · SERBS, HUNGARIANS, AND THE TRIUMPH

John founds a feast for the victory and subdues the Serbs, settling captives in the province of Nicomedia. He crowns his son Alexios co-emperor. The Hungarians sack Branitzova, angered by his welcome to Almos, King Stephen's brother, and break the treaties; John brings a fleet into the Ister, defeats them, takes the Frankochorion and Zeugminon, and makes peace. He then takes Kastamon and returns to a triumph in a silver chariot, setting on it the icon of the Mother of God while he walks before it carrying the cross; when Kastamon is lost again, and Mas'ud deserts their alliance, he recovers it and turns on Gangra.

Τοιαύτην νίκην περιφανῆ κατὰ Σκυθῶν ὁ Ἰωάννης
such (a)-victory conspicuous over Scythians — John
ἀράμενος καὶ μέγιστον στήσας τρόπαιον τὰς εὐχὰς τῷ
having-won and (a)-very-great having-set-up trophy the vows —
θεῷ ἀποδίδωσι, τὴν τῶν Πατζινάκων λεγομένην ἐς ἡμᾶς
to-God he-pays the of-the Patzinaks called to us
τελετὴν εἰς ἀναμνηστήρια ἀποτάξας τῶν πεπραγμένων
festival for memorials having-assigned of-the(-things) done
καὶ χαριστήρια. μικρὸν δὲ ὕστερον καὶ κατὰ τοῦ τῶν
and thank-offerings (a)-little and later also against the of-the
Τριβαλλῶν ἔθνους (εἴποι δ' ἄν τις ἕτερος Σέρβων)
Triballians people would-say and — someone other of-Serbs
κακουργοῦντος καὶ τὰς σπονδὰς συγχέοντος στρατείαν
doing-evil and the treaties confounding (a)-campaign
ἐκήρυξε, καὶ συμβολῆς γενομένης κατὰ κράτος ἡττήσας
he-proclaimed and (an)-encounter having-happened by force having-defeated
καὶ τοῦτο τὸ βάρβαρον πρὸς σπονδὰς ὑπηγάγετο, μηδ'
also this the barbarian(-people) to treaties he-brought nor
ἄλλως δεικνύμενον ἀξιόμαχον, οἷα καθυποκύπτον
otherwise showing(-itself) (a)-match-in-battle inasmuch-as stooping-under
ἀεὶ ταῖς ἐκ γειτόνων ἀρχαῖς. καὶ λείαν ἐκεῖθεν ἐλάσας
always to-the from (the)-neighbors rulers and booty thence having-driven
οὐ σταθμητήν, καὶ πλείστων ὠφελειῶν ἐμπλήσας τὸ
not to-be-weighed and with-very-many spoils having-filled the
στράτευμα, εἰς τὴν ἕω διαβιβάζει τὸ τοῦ πλήθους
army to the east he-carries-across the of-the multitude
αἰχμάλωτον, καὶ κατὰ τὴν Νικομήδους ἐπαρχίαν ἀποτάξας
captive and in the of-Nicomedes province having-assigned
αὐτῷ κατοίκησιν καὶ γῆν διαρκεστάτην ἀποδασάμενος τὸ
to-it dwelling and land most-sufficient having-distributed the

μὲν τοῦ δορυκτήτου λεὼ τοῖς στρατεύμασιν ἐγκατέμιξε,
indeed of-the spear-won people with-the armies he-mixed-in
τὸ δὲ παρῆκεν εἰς δασμοφόρησιν.
the and he-left for tribute-paying
Καὶ πατὴρ δ' ἀρρένων παίδων ὁ βασιλεὺς οὗτος
and father too of-male children the emperor this
φανεὶς τῷ μὲν προήκοντι κατὰ γένεσιν (Ἀλέξιος
having-appeared to-the indeed first in birth Alexios
τῷδε τὸ ὄνομα) πορφυρίδος μετέδωκε, καὶ πεδίλοις
to-this(-one) the name of-the-purple he-gave-a-share and with-sandals
ἐρυθροῖς ὑποδεῖσθαι διαφῆκε τὰ ἄρθρα τοῦ σώματος,
red to-be-shod let the limbs of-the body
καὶ συνευφημεῖσθαί οἱ παρεῖχεν, ὁπηνίκα Ῥωμαίων
and to-be-acclaimed-with to-him he-granted when of-(the)-Romans
αὐτοκράτωρ ἐκεῖνος ὑπὸ τῶν συνειλεγμένων ὄχλων
autocrat he by the assembled crowds
ἀνηγορεύετο· τὸν δὲ μετ' αὐτὸν Ἀνδρόνικον Ἰσαάκιόν
was-proclaimed the and after him Andronikos Isaac
τε τὸν ἐπὶ τῷδε καὶ τὸν ἐφεξῆς τέταρτον Μανουὴλ
both the(-one) after this(-one) and the next fourth Manuel
σεβαστοκρατορικαῖς ὑπεξαίρει τιμαῖς. φασὶ δὲ ὡς κατ'
with-sebastokrator's he-distinguishes honors they-say and that in
ὄναρ ὁ βασιλεὺς θεάσαιτο τὸν νεοστεφῆ υἱὸν τὸν Ἀλέξιον
(a)-dream the emperor saw the newly-crowned son — Alexios
θηρίῳ ἔποχον λέοντι, καὶ τοῦτον ἐκ τῶν ὤτων ἡνιοχεῖν
on-(a)-beast mounted (a)-lion and this(-one) by the ears to-drive
μηδενὸς ἑτέρου ὑπόντος ἐπιτηδείου πρὸς διεξαγωγὴν τοῦ
no other being-there suitable for management of-the
θηρός. ἦν δὲ ἡ σύγκρισις τοῦ ἰνδάλματος, ὡς μέχρι καὶ
beast was and the interpretation of-the image that as-far-as also
προσρήματος ψιλοῦ καὶ γυμνῆς πραγμάτων ἀνακηρύξεως
to-(a)-name bare and to-(a)-naked of-affairs proclamation

ἐπιτευξεῖται τῆς βασιλείας ὁ παῖς, τῆς δὲ μείζονος
will-attain of-the empire the son of-the and greater
ἀποπεσεῖται κυριαρχήσεως, ὃ καὶ μικρῷ συμβέβηκεν
will-fall-short-of dominion which also (a)-little has-happened
ὕστερον· θανάτῳ γὰρ τὴν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐστείλατο.
later by-death for the from men he-departed
Περὶ δὲ θέρειον ὥραν τὸν Ἴστρον διαβάντες οἱ Οὖννοι
about and (the)-summer season the Ister having-crossed the Huns
τήν τε Βρανίτζοβαν ἐξεπόρθησαν, κατερείψαντες τὰ τείχη
— both Branitzova sacked having-thrown-down the walls
καὶ τοὺς λίθους μετενεγκάμενοι εἰς τὸ Ζεύγμινον, καὶ τὴν
and the stones having-carried-off to — Zeugminon and —
Σαρδικὴν ἐληΐσαντο, τὰς ἐπὶ φιλίᾳ τῇ πρότερον ὁμολογίας
Sardike plundered the in friendship the former agreements
ἀποσεισάμενοί τε καὶ διαξάναντες. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν ἐνδόμυχος
having-shaken-off both and having-torn-up was and the indeed inward
αἰτία ταυτησὶ τῆς διαφορᾶς τὸ τὸν Ἀλμούζην παρὰ
cause of-this the difference the — Almos to
βασιλέα ἐλθεῖν καὶ προσδεχθῆναι παρ' αὐτοῦ ἀσμενέστατα,
(the)-emperor to-come and to-be-received by him most-gladly
κασίγνητον ὄντα Στεφάνου τοῦ τῶν Οὔννων κατάρχοντος,
brother being of-Stephen the of-the Huns ruling
ἡ δ' εὐπρόσωπός τε ἅμα καὶ πρόδηλος ἀφορμὴ τὸ
the and specious both at-once and evident pretext the
τοὺς οἰκήτορας Βρανιτζόβης ληστρικῶς ἐπιτίθεσθαι τοῖς
the inhabitants of-Branitzova like-robbers to-attack the(-ones)
παραβάλλουσιν ἐκεῖθι Οὔννοις κατ' ἐμπορίαν καὶ δρᾶν
putting-in there Huns for trade and to-do
ἐπ' αὐτοῖς τὰ χείριστα. ἅτε δ' ἀπροόπτως τοῦ
to them the worst(-things) inasmuch-as and unforeseen the
κακοῦ τοῦδε ξυνενεχθέντος, τότε μὲν τῇ κατὰ τὴν
evil this having-happened then indeed in-the at —

Φιλιππούπολιν ἐνδημίᾳ τὰ τῆς προμηθείας βασιλεὺς
Philippopolis sojourn the(-things) of-the forethought (the)-emperor
ἐπεμέτρησεν, Οὔννους ἐκεῖθεν μετανάστας θέμενος· τῷ δ'
measured-out Huns thence emigrants having-made in-the and
ἐπιόντι καιρῷ πρὸς παρασκευὴν τῶν οἰκείων καὶ ἄμυναν
coming time for preparation of-the own(-men) and defense
τῶν πολεμίων χρησάμενος τὰς δυνάμεις συνήθροισε
against-the enemies having-used the forces he-gathered
καὶ νῆας ταχυναντούσας ἡτοίμασε, καὶ ταύτας ἐς τὸν
and ships swift-sailing prepared and these into the
Ἴστρον διὰ τοῦ Πόντου κατακολπίσας ὑδραῖος ὁμοῦ
Ister through the Pontus having-brought-in-by-the-gulf by-water at-once
καὶ χερσαῖος τοῖς ἀντιπάλοις ἐφίσταται. διελθὼν δὲ τὸν
and by-land the opponents he-comes-upon having-crossed and the
ποταμὸν μετὰ τῆς στρατηγίδος τριήρους, καὶ τὸν στρατὸν
river with the flagship trireme and the army
καταστησάμενος ἐς τὸ πέραν, ἱππομαχίᾳ καὶ δοράτων
having-set to the far(-side) by-horse-battle and of-spears
ἀγκοινήσει τὸ συνελθὸν Οὐννικὸν διεσκέδασε. χρονίσας δ'
bending the gathered Hunnic(-host) he-scattered having-lingered and
ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ καὶ καρτερικώτατος φανεὶς ἑαυτοῦ τοῦ
in the enemy(-land) and most-enduring having-appeared of-himself —
τε Φραγγοχωρίου ἐκράτησεν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ τῆς τῶν Οὔννων
both of-Frankochorion he-mastered which is of-the of-the Huns
γῆς τὸ πιότατον, ἐς πεδία ὑπτιάζον ἱππήλατα, μεταξὺ
land the richest into plains spreading-out for-horse-riding between
τῶν ποταμῶν Σαούβου καὶ Ἴστρου ἀναπεπταμένον, καὶ
the rivers Sava and Ister lying-open and
τὸ Ζεύγμινον παρεστήσατο, καὶ κατ' αὐτὸν ἐλάσας τὸν
— Zeugminon he-brought-over and against the-very having-driven the
Χράμον λείαν πλείστην περιεβάλετο. ἔπειτα καὶ τούτῳ
Chramon booty very-much he-gained then also with-this

τῷ γένει μεθ' ἑτέρας συμπλοκὰς σπεισάμενος, τά τε
the race after other engagements having-made-peace the(-things) both
πρὸς εἰρήνην εὖ διαθέμενος, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν βαρβαρικόν,
for peace well having-arranged and the rest barbarian(-world)
ὁπόσον καθ' ἑσπέραν Ῥωμαίοις ἄγχουρον, εἰς φιλίαν
as-much-as in (the)-west to-(the)-Romans bordering into friendship
ἄκον ὑπαγαγόμενος ἐν οἷς πολλάκις εὐρόησε κατὰ τὸν
unwilling having-brought in which often he-prospered in the
πόλεμον, δεῖν ᾠήθη καὶ τὰ ὑπερόρια φῦλα, καθ'
war (it-was)-needful he-thought also the beyond-the-borders tribes in
ὃν ἂν καὶ δύναιτο τρόπον, ὑποποιήσασθαι, καὶ τούτων
which — also he-could way to-win-over and of-these
μάλιστα ὁπόσα τῇ ἐμπορίᾳ καὶ ἀγυρτείᾳ προσκείμενα
especially as-many-as to-the trade and peddling devoted
μετὰ πλοίων ἐς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου καταίρουσιν. οὐκοῦν
with ships to the(-city) of-Constantine put-in therefore
καὶ εἶχεν οἰκειωσάμενος τὴν παράλιον Ἰταλίαν, ὅλα λαίφη
also he-held having-made-his-own the coastal Italy full sails
διαπετῶσαν ἐς τὴν βασιλίδα τῶν πόλεων. ἠρεμησάντων δ'
flying to the queen of-the cities having-been-quiet and
οὕτω τῶν καθ' ἑσπέραν γενῶν, ἐς τὴν ἕω διαβιβάσας
thus the in (the)-west races to the east having-carried-across
τὸ στράτευμα τοῖς τὴν Κασταμόνα κατέχουσι
the army against-the(-ones) — Kastamon holding
Περσαρμενίοις ἐπιθέσθαι ἔγνωκεν, ὅθεν διὰ τῆς τῶν
Persarmenians to-attack he-decided whence through the of-the
Βιθυνῶν καὶ Παφλαγόνων ἐπαρχίας ἐλάσας ἐκεῖσέ τε
Bithynians and Paphlagonians province having-driven there both
παραγίνεται, καὶ κλίμαξιν ὅτι πλείσταις χρησάμενος
arrives and with-ladders as very-many having-used
καὶ κυκλῷ περιστήσας τὰς ἑλεπόλεις αὐτῆς τε τῆς
and in-(a)-circle having-set-round the city-takers it-itself both —

Κασταμόνος κρατεῖ, καὶ τὸν ταύτης σατραπεύοντα
Kastamon masters and the of-this being-satrap
Περσαρμένιον ἀπειπόντα περὶ τῶν ὅλων φυγάδα δείκνυσιν.
Persarmenian having-given-up about the whole (a)-fugitive he-shows
οὐκ ὀλίγον δὲ πλῆθος Περσῶν ἐκεῖθεν ἀπαγαγὼν
not small and (a)-number of-Persians thence having-led-off
αἰχμάλωτον πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον ἐπανέζευξε. τοίνυν καὶ
captive to — Byzantium he-returned therefore and
κηρύξας ἐπὶ τῷ τροπαίῳ τουτωῖ θρίαμβον, ἅρμα
having-proclaimed for the trophy this (a)-triumph (a)-chariot
διειλημμένον ἀργύρῳ παγῆναι προσετετάχει· καὶ ἦν τὸ
set-with silver to-be-fixed he-had-ordered and was the
ἅρμα θαυμάσιον οἷον γενόμενον, καὶ λίθοι τῶν μὴ πάνυ
chariot wondrous such-as having-been-made and stones of-the not very
τιμαλφῶν ἐνιαχοῦ αὐτὸ ἤγαλλον. ἐνστάσης δὲ τῆς ἡμέρας
precious in-places it adorned having-come and the day
καθ' ἣν ἡ πρόοδος ὥριστο, ἅπας πέπλος τὰς ἀγυιὰς
on which the procession had-been-fixed every robe the streets
κατηγλάϊζε χρυσοϋφής τε καὶ περιπόρφυρος. οὐδὲ τὰ τοῦ
made-splendid gold-woven both and purple-bordered nor the —
Χριστοῦ καὶ τῶν ἁγίων ἀπῆν ἐκεῖθεν εἰκάσματα, ὁπόσα
of-Christ and of-the saints was-absent thence images as-many-as
ἱστουργικὴ χεὶρ ἐπίπλοις ἐνετυπώσατο, ἃ καὶ εἴρηκεν
weaving hand on-coverings imprinted which also would-have-said
ἄν τις ἔμψυχα, οὐκ ἐνυφαντά. ἦν δὲ τοῦ ἄγασθαι ἄξια
— anyone alive not woven were and of-the to-be-admired worthy
καὶ τὰ περὶ τὴν πάροδον ἑκατέρωθεν πρὸς ὑποδοχὴν
also the(-things) about the route on-each-side for reception
τῶν θεωμένων διὰ ξύλων πήγματα καὶ ἴκρια. χῶρος δὲ
of-the spectators through timbers structures and stands (the)-space and
τῆς πόλεως ἦν, ὃς οὑτωσὶ διεσκεύαστο ὁ διήκων ἐκ
of-the city was which thus had-been-arranged the(-one) reaching from

τῶν ἑῴων πυλῶν τῆς πόλεως ἐς αὐτὸ τὸ μέγα παλάτιον.
the eastern gates of-the city to the-very the great palace
καὶ δὴ τὸ μὲν τέτρωρον εὐπρεπές, καὶ εἷλκον
and indeed the indeed four-horse(-chariot) seemly and drew
τοῦτο πίσυρες ἵπποι καλλίτριχες χιόνος λευκότεροι. ὁ δὲ
this four horses fair-maned than-snow whiter the and
βασιλεὺς τὴν τοῦ ἅρματος ἐπίβασιν παρεικὼς τὴν τῆς
emperor the of-the chariot mounting having-yielded the of-the
θεομήτορος εἰκόνα τούτῳ ἐπανεβίβασεν, ἐφ' ᾗ καὶ ἦν
Mother-of-God image on-this set-up at which also he-was
γεγηθὼς καὶ τὴν ψυχὴν ἐκλείπων αὐτήν, καὶ τὰς νίκας ὡς
rejoicing and the soul leaving it and the victories as
συστρατηγέτιδι ἀμάχῳ ἐπιγραφόμενος, καὶ δοὺς ἄγειν
to-(a)-fellow-general invincible ascribing and having-given to-lead
τὰ χαλινὰ τοὺς παρ' ἐκείνῳ δυναμένους τὰ μέγιστα,
the reins the(-ones) with him able the greatest(-things)
καὶ τοῖς ἐκ γένους ἐγγίζουσιν ἀμφιπονεῖσθαι τὸ ἅρμα
and to-the(-ones) of (the)-family near to-tend the chariot
ἐνδούς, προῆγεν αὐτὸς σταυρικὸν σημεῖον χειριζόμενος
having-granted went-before himself (the)-cross sign handling
καὶ ποσὶ τὴν πορείαν ποιούμενος· καὶ τὸν ἐκ τῆς τοῦ
and on-feet the journey making and the from the —
θεοῦ σοφίας παρωνυμούμενον ναὸν εἰσιών, καὶ τὴν ἐπὶ τοῖς
of-God wisdom named temple entering and the for the
κατωρθωμένοις ἀνθομολόγησιν κυρίῳ τῷ θεῷ ἀπονείμας
successes thanksgiving to-(the)-Lord — God having-rendered
τοῦ λεὼ παντὸς ἐνώπιον, τῷ ἀρχείῳ οὕτως παρέβαλεν.
of-the people all before to-the palace thus he-came
Οὐ πολλοῦ δὲ διαλιπόντος καιροῦ, ἀλλ' ὥστε καὶ
not much and having-passed time but so-that also
αὐτὸν ἐποφθῆναι τοῖς ὑπηκόοις καὶ θεάτροις διαχυθῆναι,
him to-be-seen by-the subjects and with-spectacles to-be-gladdened

προσειπεῖν δὲ καὶ τὸν στρατιώτην τὰ οἴκοι χρόνιον
to-greet and also the soldier the(-things) at-home after-long
καὶ διαναπαῦσαι τὸν ἵππον καὶ τὴν λόγχην ἀκέσασθαι, αὖθις
and to-rest the horse and the lance to-mend again
κατὰ Κασταμόνος ἐστράτευσεν. ὁ γὰρ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον
against Kastamon he-campaigned the for the time that
τῆς Καππαδοκῶν χώρας κρατῶν Περσαρμένιος Ταϊσμάνιος
of-the of-Cappadocians land mastering Persarmenian Taismanios
μετ᾽ ἰσχύος μείζονος ἐπιὼν τειχομαχίᾳ τὴν πόλιν εἶλε
with strength greater having-come-against by-wall-assault the city took
καὶ τῷ ξίφει κατὰ τῶν φυλάκων Ῥωμαίων ἐχώρησεν. ὁ
and with-the sword against the guards Roman went the
βασιλεὺς τοίνυν ἐκεῖσε παραγενόμενος τὸν μὲν Ταϊσμάνιον
emperor therefore there having-arrived — indeed Taismanios
ἐξ ἀνθρώπων εὗρε γεγενημένον, Μουχούμετ δέ τινα
from men found having-become Muhammad and (a)-certain
τὴν Κασταμόνα διέποντα, διάφορον τῷ τῆς Ἰκονίου
— Kastamon governing at-odds with-the — of-Ikonion
πόλεως ἀρχηγῷ Μασούτ. συμφόρῳ γοῦν τῷ καιρῷ
city ruler Mas'ud useful at-any-rate the occasion
πρὸς σύναρσιν τῶν καθ᾽ αὐτὸν πραγμάτων ὁ βασιλεὺς
for support of-the according-to himself affairs the emperor
χρώμενος σπένδεται τῷ Μασούτ, καὶ συμμαχίαν εἰληφὼς
using makes-treaty — with-Mas'ud and alliance having-received
ἐκεῖθεν ἔπεισι τῷ Μουχούμετ. ὁ δὲ πρὸς ἀμφίστομον
thence attacks — Muhammad he and against two-mouthed
στράτευμα οὔκουν ἑαυτὸν εἰδὼς ἀξιόμαχον ὕπεισι τὸν
army not-then himself knowing (a)-match-in-battle submits-to the
ὁμόφυλον Μασούτ, καὶ καταλύσας τὴν ἔχθραν ἄλλοις
kinsman Mas'ud and having-ended the enmity with-other(-things)
τε πολλοῖς οἷς ἐκείνῳ διὰ γραμμάτων ἐσήμανεν, ἀλλὰ
both many which to-him through letters he-signified but

δὴ καὶ τῷ εἰπεῖν ὡς προσρυεὶς τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων,
indeed also with-the to-say that having-gone-over to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans
εἰ μὴ καταλλαγεῖεν αὐτοί, κακῶς διάθοιτο τὰ
if not they-should-be-reconciled themselves badly would-dispose the(-affairs)
Περσῶν, πείθει τὸν Ἰκονιέα Μασοὺτ ἀποσχέσθαι μὲν
of-Persians persuades the Ikonian Mas'ud to-keep-away indeed
βασιλέως, ἐκείνῳ δὲ προσρέψαι καὶ λῦσαι τὴν συμμαχίαν.
from-(the)-emperor to-him and to-incline and to-dissolve the alliance
οὗ μετὰ βραχὺ συμβάντος, καὶ νυκτὸς οἰχομένων τῶν
which after (a)-little having-happened and by-night departing the(-ones)
τῷ βασιλεῖ παρὰ τοῦ σουλτὰν ἐκπεμφθέντων ἐπικούρων
to-the emperor by the sultan sent allies
Περσῶν, οὐκ εὔοδα τὸ ἐκ τοῦδε Ῥωμαίοις τὰ
Persian not prosperous the from this for-(the)-Romans the(-things)
τῆς προκειμένης στρατείας γεγόνασιν. ὅθεν ἀναχασάμενος
of-the proposed campaign became whence having-withdrawn
ἐκεῖθεν καὶ κατὰ τὸ πόλισμα στρατοπεδευσάμενος ὃ περὶ
thence and at the small-town having-encamped which about
τὸν Ῥυνδακὸν ποταμὸν αὐτὸς ἐδείματο, αὖ πάλιν τῆς
the Rhyndakos river himself built in-turn again of-the(-war)
κατὰ τοῦ Μουχούμετ ἀκμαιότερον ἥψατο, καὶ Ῥωμαίοις
against — Muhammad more-vigorously he-took-hold and for-(the)-Romans
ἐπανασωσάμενος Κασταμόνα οὐδὲ τῆς Γάγγρας ἀπέσχετο.
having-recovered Kastamon not-even — from-Gangra he-kept-away
μία δέ ἐστιν αὕτη τῶν περιφανῶν καὶ μεγίστων Ποντικῶν
one and is this of-the conspicuous and greatest Pontic
πόλεων, οὔπω πρώην Πέρσαις καθυποκύψασα.
cities not-yet formerly to-Persians having-submitted

John besieges Gangra and his engines sling light round stones that bring the houses down on the people; with their governor Taismanios dead, the defenders surrender and a Roman garrison is left, but the Turks soon starve it back. He then marches into Cilicia against Leon the Armenian, who was attacking Seleukeia, passes the Cilician Gates, reaches Adana, and takes Tarsus. At the fort of Baka an Armenian named Constantine mocks the emperor in Greek and challenges a champion; Eustratios of the Macedonian unit is chosen, splits Constantine's shield with one stroke, and drives him back.

ταύτῃ τοι καὶ νόμῳ πολέμου τὰ περὶ τὴν πόλιν
thus surely and by-law of-war the(-places) about the city
ταύτην ὑπαγαγόμενος πρότερον, ἔπειτα ἐπ' αὐτὴν χάρακα
this having-subdued first then against it (a)-palisade
ἔβαλε. τοῦ δ' ἐντὸς Περσικοῦ μηδὲν μέτριον φρονοῦντος ἢ
he-threw of-the and inside Persian(-host) nothing moderate thinking or
καθ' ὁμολογίαν τε καὶ σπονδὰς τῷ βασιλεῖ συγχωροῦντος
by agreement both and treaties to-the emperor granting
τὴν εἴσοδον, τὸ τεῖχος ὁ στρατὸς περιβάλλει, εἶτα
the entrance the wall the army surrounds then
τειχομαχίαις χρησάμενος, ἧπερ ἦν ἐπίμαχος ὁ περίβολος,
with-wall-assaults having-used where was assailable the circuit-wall
συνεχῶς ἔτυπτε τοῦτον. μὴ προχωροῦντος δὲ τοῦ ἔργου
continually struck this not advancing and the work
διὰ τὴν τῶν ἐπάλξεων ὀχυρότητα καὶ τὸ ἐπὶ πολὺ
because-of the of-the battlements strength and the for much
ἐκθύμως μάχεσθαι τοὺς ἐνόντας, βάλλειν τὰ τείχη
furiously to-fight the(-ones) within to-strike the walls
παρεὶς κατὰ τῶν οἰκιῶν ἐγνώκει διασφενδονᾶν τοὺς
having-given-up against the houses he-decided to-sling the
λίθους, προφαινομένων ἐκ τῶν ἔξωθεν κολωνῶν ἐφ'
stones appearing from the outside hills on

ὧν Ῥωμαῖοι κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἐπὶ
which (the)-Romans were-encamped the(-men) indeed then at
τῶν μηχανῶν λίθους στρογγύλους καὶ κούφους διὰ
the engines stones round and light because-of
τὸ εὐσύνοπτον ἐς ὅτι πορρωτάτω διαφιέντες, ὡς δοκεῖν
the easily-seen to as farthest letting-fly so-as to-seem
ἵπτασθαι τούτους, οὐ μὴν ἀπὸ μηχανημάτων ἵεσθαι, τοὺς
to-fly these not indeed from engines to-be-shot the
δόμους κατέσειον· οἱ δ' ἐπὶ γόνυ κλινόμενοι καὶ τοὺς
houses shook the(-houses) and on knee bending and the
ὀρόφους διαλυόμενοι τὸ ἐνοικοῦν πλῆθος ἔκτεινον, ὡς
roofs breaking-up the dwelling-in multitude killed so-that
ἐντεῦθεν εἶναι καὶ τὴν ἐν ταῖς ἀμφόδοις ἐπισφαλῆ πάροδον
hence to-be also the in the streets unsafe passage
καὶ τὸ ἔνδον ἡσυχῇ καθῆσθαι πάντῃ ἀσύμφορον. διὰ
and the inside quietly to-sit wholly inexpedient because-of
ταῦτα τοίνυν καὶ τὴν τοῦ βασιλέως προσεδρείαν, οὐχ
these(-things) therefore and the of-the emperor siege not
ἥκιστα δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ μαλακῷ θανάτῳ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀφάνισιν
least and the on (a)-soft death from men disappearance
τοῦ τῆς Γάγγρας ἐπιστατοῦντος Ταϊσμανίου, ἑαυτοὺς καὶ
of-the — of-Gangra overseer Taismanios themselves and
τὴν πόλιν τῷ αὐτοκράτορι ἐνεχείρισαν. ὁ δὲ αὐτὴν εἰσιὼν
the city to-the autocrat they-entrusted he and it entering
καὶ τὸ πολὺ τῶν Περσῶν ἐκεῖθεν ἀπαγαγών, καὶ δισχιλίους
and the most of-the Persians thence having-led-off and two-thousand
ὁπλίτας Ῥωμαίους φρουροὺς τῇ Γάγγρᾳ ἐγκαταστήσας,
hoplites Roman (as)-guards — in-Gangra having-installed
τὴν βασιλεύουσαν εἴσεισι. πλὴν οὐδὲ ταυτηνὶ τὴν πόλιν
the reigning(-city) he-enters however not-even this the city
ἐφ' ἡλίοις ἡ Κωνσταντίνου μακροῖς ἔβλεψεν ὑπ' αὐτὴν

κληρουμένην καὶ ταῖς λοιπαῖς ἐνταττομένην ὑπηκόοις
allotted and with-the other enrolled subject
πόλεσιν· ἀλλ' ἐπιβρῖσαν τὸ Περσικὸν μεῖζον τοῦ
cities but having-pressed-hard the Persian(-host) greater than-the
προτέρου καὶ λίαν ἐπικρατέστερον, καὶ βαλὸν χάρακα,
former and very more-powerful and having-thrown (a)-palisade
λιμῷ παρεστήσατο, ἄλλοις καιρίοις ἐπισπωμένου τοῦ
by-famine brought-over(-it) by-other timely(-matters) being-drawn-off the
βασιλέως καὶ τούτοις τὸν νοῦν προσέχοντος.
emperor and to-these the mind attending
Τὸ δ' ἀπὸ τοῦδε κατὰ τῆς Κιλίκων στρατείαν ἐκήρυξε,
the and from this against the(-land) of-Cilicians (a)-campaign he-proclaimed
τὸν Λεβούνην, ὃς Ἀρμενίας ἦρχε, μετιέναι ποθῶν ὡς ἄλλα
— Leon who Armenia ruled to-pursue longing as other
τε κατήκοα Ῥωμαίοις πολίσματα χειρωσάμενον, ἀλλὰ
both subject to-(the)-Romans small-towns having-subdued but
δὴ καὶ Σελευκείας ἐπιβῆναι πειρώμενον. ἀγηοχὼς τοίνυν
indeed also on-Seleukeia to-set-foot trying having-brought therefore
τὰς οὔσας δυνάμεις καὶ νεαλεῖς ἄλλας αὐταῖς προσθέμενος,
the existing forces and fresh others to-them having-added
καὶ τὰ ἐφόδια ἱκανὰ πρὸς χρονίαν ἐκδημίαν ἐνθέμενος,
and the provisions sufficient for long absence having-put-in
ταῖς Κιλικίαις πύλαις ἐφίσταται· καὶ ταύτας ἀμαχεὶ
at-the Cilician gates he-arrives and these without-battle
παρελθὼν Ἀδάνης ἐπέβη, καὶ κρατεῖ τῆς Ταρσοῦ. οὐ
having-passed Adana he-set-foot-on and masters — Tarsus not
μέχρι δὲ τούτου περιγράψας τὸ πρόθυμον περὶ τῆς
as-far-as and this having-limited the zeal about the
ὅλης Ἀρμενίας διαγωνίζεται, ὅθεν πῇ μὲν ὁμολογίᾳ
whole Armenia he-contends whence in-one-place indeed by-agreement
χειρούμενος τὰ τῶν φρουρίων ἐπικαιρότατα, πῇ δὲ
subduing the(-ones) of-the forts most-important in-another and

διὰ μάχης αὐτὰ ὑπαγόμενος, ἐγκρατὴς ἁπάσης τῆς χώρας
through battle them bringing-under master of-all the land
γίνεται. ἐπιστὰς δὲ σὺν ἄλλοις καὶ ἀποτόμῳ τινὶ
becomes having-arrived and with others also at-sheer (a)-certain
ἐρύματι ὅπερ Βακὰ ὀνομάζεται, ἐπεὶ μὴ χεῖρας προύτεινον
fortification which Baka is-named since not hands held-out
αὐτῷ οἱ ἐντὸς οὔτε μὴν προυχώρουν εἰς εἰρηναίας
to-him the(-ones) inside nor indeed came-forward to peaceful
ξυμβάσεις, διαλαμβάνει τοῦτο παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,
agreements he-surrounds this with-all the army
βαλὼν χάρακα, μὴ ἂν ἐκεῖθεν ἀπᾶραι τὸ παράπαν
having-thrown (a)-palisade not — thence to-depart the whole
ἰσχυριζόμενος, εἰ μὴ τοῦ πολίσματος ἐγκρατὴς ὀφθήσεται,
insisting if not of-the small-town master he-shall-be-seen
κἂν εἰ πολιωθῆναί οἱ ξυμβαίη τῇ προσεδρείᾳ
even if to-grow-gray for-him it-should-happen in-the siege
τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ ταῖς χιόνων παλυνθῆναι πολλάκις
the head and with-the of-snows to-be-sprinkled often
καταφοραῖς, εἰς νοῦν ἄγων ἅμα τοῖς πολιορκουμένοις
fallings to mind bringing together-with the besieged
ὅσα μὲν εὖ πάθοιεν παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὑπενδόντες καὶ
what-things indeed well they-would-fare from him yielding and
ἐκστάντες αὐτῷ τοῦ ἐρύματος, οἷοις δ᾽ αὖ χειρίστοις
standing-aside for-him from-the fortification to-what and in-turn worst
ὑποβληθεῖεν πολέμου νόμῳ ἁλόντες καὶ τὴν στρατιὰν
they-would-be-subjected of-war by-law taken and the army
ἰδόντες εἰσρυεῖσαν ἔνδοθεν. ἦν δ᾽ ἀσπίσι ταῦτα ἐπᾴδων
having-seen flowing-in within he-was and to-asps these(-things) chanting
ἑκοντὶ κωφευούσαις πρὸς τὰ ὑποψαλλόμενα παρὰ
willingly deaf to the(-things) being-sung by
σοφοῦ φαρμακοῦ, καὶ σμήχων ἄντικρυς διηλέγχετο
(a)-wise charmer and washing outright he-was-proven(-to-wash)

τὸν Αἰθίοπα. οἱ γὰρ τοῦ φρουρίου Βακὰ τὴν ἐστιστασίαν
the Ethiopian the for of-the fort Baka the hearth-keeping
πεπιστευμένοι καὶ πάντες μὲν ἀκαταπλήκτως εἶχον
having-been-entrusted-with and all indeed undaunted were
πρὸς τὸν ἀγῶνα, Κωνσταντῖνος δέ τις μάλιστα, τοῦ
toward the contest Constantine and (a)-certain especially of-the
τῶν Ἀρμενίων γένους τὰ πρῶτα κληρούμενος καὶ τῶν
of-the Armenians race the first(-place) holding and the
πολλῶν ὑπερφέρων χειρὸς γενναιότητι· οὐ γὰρ μόνον τὸ
many surpassing of-hand in-nobility not for only the
ἐνοικοῦν πλῆθος ἐπισυνίστησι καὶ διανίστησι πρὸς τὸν
dwelling-in multitude he-rallies and rouses for the
κατὰ Ῥωμαίων πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸς τοῦ φρουρίου
against (the)-Romans war but also himself from-the fort
πολλάκις προοπτανόμενος κἀπὶ τοῦ γηλόφου μεθ' ὅπλων
often showing-himself and-on the hill with arms
ἱστάμενος, ἐφ' οὗπερ ἡ μὲν φύσις τὴν πέτραν ἀνέδωκεν,
standing on which the indeed nature the rock sent-up
ἡ δὲ τέχνη τείχεσιν αὐτὴν περιέβαλε καὶ ἐκράτυνεν,
the and art with-walls it surrounded and strengthened
ὕβρεσι τὸν βασιλέα Ἑλληνίδι ἔπλυνε γλώττῃ, ἔς τε τὴν
with-insults the emperor in-Greek he-washed tongue to both the
ἄκοιτιν καὶ τὰς θυγατέρας ὁ στόμαργος ἐρεσχελῶν καὶ
wife and the daughters the loud-mouthed(-man) mocking and
λόγους ἀπρεπεῖς ἀφιείς. ὁ βασιλεὺς μὲν οὖν συλλαβεῖν
words unseemly letting-fly the emperor indeed then to-seize
τὸν αἰσχρορρήμονα βάρβαρον καὶ δίκας λαβεῖν ἐξ ἐκείνου
the foul-mouthed barbarian and penalties to-take from him
ἐγλίχετο· ὁ δὲ τῇ σφετέρᾳ πεποιθὼς ῥώμῃ, καὶ μέγα
longed he and on-the his-own trusting strength and greatly
τῷ δραστηρίῳ κατακομπάζων τῆς φύσεως, ἔτι καὶ τὴν
in-the active vaunting of-the nature still also the

βασιλέως κατεμωκᾶτο παράταξιν καὶ προυκαλεῖτο ἀναίδην
of-(the)-emperor mocked array and challenged shamelessly
τὸν ἐπιλέγδην ἐκείνῳ συμπλακησόμενον. ἀμέλει καὶ
the(-one) chosen with-him going-to-engage indeed also
βασιλεὺς ἐπιτάττει τοῖς ταξιάρχαις ἐκ τοῦ αὐτίκα τῶν
(the)-emperor orders the taxiarchs from the at-once of-the
ἀλκίμων τινὰ στρατιωτῶν ἀντιτάξαι τῷ Ἀρμενίῳ ἀντίμαχον
brave some soldiers to-set-against the Armenian (an)-opponent
ἀξιόμαχον. ὡς οὖν Εὐστράτιός τις ἐκ τοῦ τῶν
a-match-in-battle as then Eustratios (a)-certain from the of-the
Μακεδόνων ἐπεκρίθη τάγματος, ἀσπὶς αὐτῷ ἐς ἀνδρόμηκες
Macedonians was-chosen unit (a)-shield to-him to man-length
κατιοῦσα δίδοται καὶ σπάθη νεόσμηκτος ἐγχειρίζεται. οὕτω
coming-down is-given and (a)-sword newly-polished is-put-in-his-hand thus
δ' ὁπλισθεὶς Εὐστράτιος ἀφίσταται μὲν τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν
and armed Eustratios departs indeed from-the Roman
ἰλῶν, περὶ δὲ τοῦ γηλόφου τὰ κράσπεδα ἐπιστὰς
troops on and the hill the skirts having-stood
ὑποκαταβῆναι βραχὺ τὸν Ἀρμένιον προυκαλεῖτο, ὅπως
to-come-down (a)-little the Armenian he-challenged that
ἐν ἰσοπέδῳ διαγωνίσωνται, εἴπερ ἀληθῶς τὴν μοναθλίαν
on level-ground they-might-contend if-indeed truly the single-combat
αἱρεῖται καὶ μὴ ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἐμπληξίας ἰὼν εἰκῇ πρὸς τοῖς
he-chooses and not for very-far of-frenzy going rashly besides the
ἄλλοις καὶ τοῦτο σοβαρεύεται. ὕβριν τοίνυν οἰκείαν ὁ
other(-things) also this he-swaggers (an)-insult therefore of-his-own —
Κωνσταντῖνος τὰ τοῦ Μακεδόνος ἡγησάμενος ῥήματα,
Constantine the(-things) of-the Macedonian having-considered words
ὡς καταιβάτης πρηστὴρ ἢ δορκάς ὀρεσίτροφος θάμνων
as descending thunderbolt or (a)-roe mountain-bred through-thickets
διαλλομένη τῷ Εὐστρατίῳ προσρήγνυται, οὕτω μὲν
leaping — at-Eustratios dashes thus indeed

τηλίκος τὸ τοῦ σώματος μέγεθος ὢν οὕτω δὲ θαρσαλέος
so-great the of-the body size being thus and bold
πολεμιστής, ἀσπίδα προβεβλημένος ἴσην πάντοθεν καὶ
(a)-warrior (a)-shield having-held-before equal on-all-sides and
λευκήν, χάραγμα σταυρικὸν περὶ τὸ μέσον ἔχουσαν. οὐκοῦν
white (a)-mark of-the-cross about the middle having therefore
καὶ τὴν δεξιὰν ξιφηφοροῦσαν τονώσας, ἐπ᾽ εὐθείας τε
also the right sword-bearing having-tensed in straight both
καὶ ἐγκαρσίως κατὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος πλήττων οὐκ ἀνίει
and crosswise against the shield striking not let-up
τὸν Μακεδόνα, οἰστρώδει προπετείᾳ χρώμενος, καὶ ἦν
the Macedonian with-frenzied rashness using and it-was
ἀεὶ προσδόκιμος μέγα τι κακὸν τὸν ἄνδρα ἐργάσασθαι.
always expected great some evil the man to-work
καὶ βασιλεὺς παντάπασιν ἀπεγνώκει, μὴ μόνον τῶν
and (the)-emperor altogether had-despaired not only of-the
χρηστοτέρων ἐλπίδων ἀποβουκολούμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ μὴ
better hopes being-cheated but also the not
τεθνάναι τὸν Μακεδόνα λαμπρῶς ἀπειπάμενος. καὶ τοιῷδε
to-have-died the Macedonian plainly having-renounced and with-such
μὲν οὖν ὁρμήματι ῥοθίῳ τοῦ Κωνσταντίνου ἐπικειμένου,
indeed then charge with-rush — Constantine pressing
ὅμως τὸν Εὐστράτιον φωναῖς ὑπήλειφον οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ
nevertheless — Eustratios with-cries anointed the Romans and
ἀντιπλήττειν αὐτὸν ὑπεφώνουν. ὁ δὲ πολλάκις ἀνατείνας
to-strike-back him urged he and often having-raised
τὴν χεῖρα, καὶ δόκησιν παρασχόμενος ὡς πλήξειε
the hand and (an)-impression having-given that he-would-strike
τὸν ἀντίπαλον, ὑπεστέλλετο παρὰ δόξαν, οἷά τινος
the opponent drew-back contrary-to expectation as-though some
Τελχῖνος τὴν δεξιὰν ἐκείνῳ τοῦ πλήττειν ἀπάγοντος καὶ
Telchine the right from-him from-the to-strike leading-away and

πρὸς τὸ δρᾶν ἐκτεινομένην ἐπέχοντος. ὀψὲ δέ ποτε μετὰ
to the doing stretched-out holding-back late and ever after
πολλὴν τοῦ ξίφους ταλάντευσιν τὴν χεῖρα κατενεγκὼν ὁ
much of-the sword swinging the hand having-brought-down the
Μακεδὼν διχῇ τὸν Κωνσταντίνου θυρεὸν διαιρεῖ, χρῆμά τι
Macedonian in-two the of-Constantine shield divides thing some
πέλωρον ὄντα καὶ ἀτεχνῶς Ἑκτόρειον· πρὸς ὅπερ Ῥωμαῖοι
monstrous being and simply Hectorean at which (the)-Romans
μὲν ἐπηλάλαξαν μετὰ πλείστης δὴ τῆς ἐκπλήξεως,
indeed shouted-aloud with very-much indeed the astonishment
ὁ δ' Ἀρμένιος τὸ φυλακτήριον ὅπλον οὕτως ἀέλπτως
the and Armenian the guarding weapon thus unexpectedly
ἀποβαλόμενος, μηκέτι μένειν ἐπὶ τοῦ μεταιχμίου δυνάμενος,
having-lost no-longer to-stay on the no-man's-land being-able
ποσὶ τὴν σωτηρίαν ἐπρίατο, ἐπαναδραμὼν εἰς τὸ γήλοφον
with-feet the safety bought having-run-back to the hill
ὡς τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς τρέχων σὺν ὀξυτέρῳ ὁρμήματι.
as the(-race) for life running with sharper rush
τοῦ δὲ λοιποῦ κατὰ χώραν μένων οὔτε Ῥωμαίων
for-the and rest in place remaining neither against-(the)-Romans
κατεφρυάττετο, οὔτε μὴν ἐς τὸν ἄνακτα καὶ τὸ γένος
snorted nor indeed against the lord and the family
θρασυστομῶν σαπρολογίας ἰέναι προέθετο βέλεμνα ἐν τῷ
being-bold-of-mouth rotten-talk to-let-fly proposed missiles in the
τὰ χείλη τείνειν κατὰ νευρὰν καὶ τοὺς ὀδόντας ὡσεὶ
the lips to-stretch along (the)-string and the teeth as
τόξον διατιθέναι κέρασιν ἁρμοζόμενον. ἐρωτηθεὶς δὲ πρὸς
(a)-bow to-arrange with-horns fitted asked and by
τοῦ βασιλέως ὁ Μακεδὼν ὅ τι δρῶν καὶ διανοούμενος
the emperor the Macedonian what — doing and intending
τὴν μὲν χεῖρα πολλάκις ἀνέτεινεν ὡς πλήξων τὸν
the indeed hand often he-raised as going-to-strike the(-one)

ἀνθιστάμενον, τὸ δὲ ξίφος ἅπαξ κατήνεγκε, σκοπὸν εἶναί
opposing the and sword once brought-down aim to-be
οἱ διὰ μιᾶς ἔφατο τοῦ ξίφους καταφορᾶς τὴν ἀσπίδα
for-him by one he-said of-the sword stroke the shield
καὶ τὸν αὐτὴν ἀνέχοντα διελεῖν Ἀρμένιον· ὡς δ'
and the(-one) it holding to-divide Armenian as and
ἐπιτελὲς οὐκ εἶχε τὸ ἐννοούμενον διὰ τὸ μὴ ἐν
accomplishment not he-had the(-thing) intended because-of the not at
χρῷ τὸν διάφορον τὸν θυρεὸν ἀνέχειν ἀλλὰ προβεβλῆσθαι
(the)-skin the opponent the shield to-hold but to-hold-it-forward
κατὰ πολὺ τοῦ σώματος ἀφεστῶτα, ἔγνω μὴ ἐλινύειν
by much from-the body standing-off resolved not to-hold-back
διακενῆς, τοῦ δ' οὖν ὅπλου καὶ μάλα καθικέσθαι καιρίως,
in-vain the and then weapon and very to-come-down opportunely
εἶθ' οὕτως μετελθεῖν τὸν πολέμιον ἄτερ ἀσπίδος γενόμενον.
then thus to-go-after the enemy without shield having-become
θαυμάσας τοίνυν ἐπὶ τοῖς εἰρημένοις τούτοις ὁ
having-marveled therefore at the(-things) said these the
βασιλεὺς δωρεαῖς μεγίσταις ἠμείψατο τὸν Εὐστράτιον.
emperor with-gifts very-great rewarded — Eustratios

VII · ANABARZA AND SYRIA

Baka soon submits, and Constantine the Armenian, sent in chains to Byzantium, kills his guards and escapes, but is caught again and betrayed to the emperor. Earlier, at Anabarza, the Armenians had burned the reed screens of John's engines and jeered, until a second battering took the town. He then enters Hollow Syria, makes Prince Raymond of Antioch his liegeman, marches with him and the count of Tripoli, takes Piza, and marches on Chalep, whose garrison sallies again and again and is always driven back; short of food and water he withdraws, takes Pherep, and moves on to Kapharda.

Οὐ πολλαὶ δ' ἡμέραι παρίππευσαν, καὶ ὑποκύπτει τῷ
not many and days rode-by and submits to-the
βασιλεῖ καὶ βίᾳ ἐνδίδωσι καὶ τοῦτο τὸ φρούριον,
emperor and by-force surrenders also this the fort
καὶ συλληφθεὶς ὁ Κωνσταντῖνος ἀπάγεται δορυάλωτος,
and seized — Constantine is-led-away spear-captured
σιδήρῳ τοὺς πόδας ἀσφαλισθείς. ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ναῦς
with-iron the feet secured then and also (a)-ship
τριήρης τοῦτον εἰσδέχεται κατενεχθέντα εἰς θάλασσαν·
trireme him receives brought-down to (the)-sea
ἥτις μετὰ μικρὸν τὰ ἀπόγεια λύσασα ἤμελλε διακομίσαι
which after (a)-little the shore-cables having-loosed was-about to-carry
τὸν δεσμώτην ἐς τὸ Βυζάντιον. τολμητίας δ' ὢν καὶ
the prisoner to — Byzantium daring and being and
θερμουργὸς ὁ Ἀρμένιος, τοῖς φύλαξι νυκτὸς ἐπιθέμενος,
hot-headed the Armenian on-the guards by-night having-fallen
πλείστους ὅσους διαχειρίζεται, καὶ τῶν δεσμῶν
very-many as-many-as he-kills and from-the bonds
ἀνεθεὶς ὑπὸ τῶν συνόντων αὐτῷ θεραπευτήρων
having-been-released by the(-ones) being-with him servants
φυγὰς οἴχεται. ἀλλ' οὔπω νεωτέροις ἐπεφύη πράγμασι,
(a)-fugitive goes-off but not-yet to-newer he-had-grown affairs
καὶ συσχεθεὶς αὖθις καταπροδίδοται βασιλεῖ.
and having-been-caught again is-betrayed to-(the)-emperor
Οὐ μόνον δὲ κατὰ τὴν ἅλωσιν τοῦ Βακὰ μετ' ἐργωδίας
not only and at the capture — of-Baka with toil
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐκονίσατο, ἀλλὰ καὶ κατὰ τὴν Ἀνάβαρζαν
the emperor was-in-the-dust but also at — Anabarza
πρότερον πλεῖστα ἐμόγησεν. ἡ γὰρ πόλις αὕτη κουροτρόφος
earlier very-much he-labored the for city this nurse-of-youths
οὖσα καὶ πολυάνθρωπος, ἐρυμνοῖς τε διειλημμένη τείχεσι
being and populous with-strong both enclosed walls

καὶ πετρῶν ἀποτόμων ὕπερθεν ἱδρυμένη, τότε μᾶλλον
and of-rocks sheer above set then more
ἀσφαλεστέρα γεγένηται παρὰ τῶν εἰς αὐτὴν ὡς εἰς
secure became from the(-ones) into it as into
κρησφύγετον συνελθόντων, ἁπάντων ὄντων καταφράκτων
(a)-refuge having-gathered all being mail-clad
καὶ κρατίστων, ἐπιτειχίσματα προσειληφυῖα καὶ μηχαναῖς
and strongest outworks having-acquired and with-engines
παντοίαις διαληφθεῖσα. βασιλεὺς μὲν οὖν μέρος τῆς αὐτοῦ
of-all-kinds equipped (the)-emperor indeed then (a)-part of-the his
στρατιᾶς προπέπομφεν εἰς αὐτήν, καὶ τοῦτο Περσικοῖς
army sent-ahead to it and this in-Persian
κατειλεγμένον τέλεσιν, ὧν ἠὐμοίρησε πρότερον τὴν
enrolled companies with-which he-was-blessed earlier —
Γάγγραν παραστησάμενος, πεῖραν λαβεῖν ἐντεῦθεν τῆς
Gangra having-brought-over (a)-trial to-take hence of-the
τῶν Ἀρμενίων γνώμης βουλόμενος καὶ ἀκριβῶς γνῶναι
of-the Armenians mind wishing and exactly to-know
πρὸς οἷς εἰσίν. οἱ δὲ καὶ πρὸς μόνην τὴν θέαν
at what(-point) they-are they and also at only the sight
τούτων θυμῷ ὑπερζέσαντες ὡς ἀπολουμένων αὐτίκα
of-these with-anger having-boiled-over as going-to-perish at-once
καὶ μηδὲ τὴν πρώτην αὐτῶν ὑποστησομένων ὁρμήν,
and not-even the first their going-to-withstand rush
τὰς πύλας ἀνακλίναντες κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐξερρύησαν, καὶ
the gates having-opened against them they-poured-out and
συμβολῆς γενομένης ἡττῶσί τε τούτους τὰ νῶτα
(an)-encounter having-happened they-defeat both them the backs
στρέψαντας καὶ ἐπὶ πλεῖστον καταδιώκουσι. συστάντων
having-turned and for very-far pursue having-rallied
δὲ μετὰ βραχὺ τῶν φευγόντων Περσῶν ἐν τῷ τὴν
and after (a)-little the fleeing Persians in the the

ὄψιν μεταβαλεῖν οἷα καὶ Ῥωμαϊκῶν αὐτοῖς ἐπαρηξάντων
face to-change as also Roman them having-helped
ταγμάτων, ἡ μάχη παλίνστροφος γίνεται, καὶ ἄκοντες
units the battle turned-back becomes and unwilling
εἰς τὸ τεῖχος ἐγκλείονται οἱ Ἀρμένιοι· μικρῷ δὲ ὕστερον
into the wall are-shut-in the Armenians (a)-little and later
καὶ τοῖς τείχεσιν αἱ μηχαναὶ προσάγονται, καὶ οἱ λίθοι
also to-the walls the engines are-brought-up and the stones
ἐκσφενδονῶνται σφαιροειδεῖς καὶ τὰς βάρεις βάλλουσιν.
are-slung spherical and the houses they-strike
ἀλλ' οὐδὲ τὸ βάρβαρον ἐπὶ τούτοις ἤρεμον ἦν, τῶν
but not-even the barbarian(-host) at these(-things) quiet was from-the
δ' ἐπάλξεων ἄνωθεν ἐξ ἀντιπάλου στῆσαν καὶ αὐτὸ
and battlements above from opposite having-set also it
μηχανήματα βάρη τε λίθων ἠκόντιζεν εἰς τὸ στράτευμα
engines weights both of-stones hurled into the army
καὶ σιδήρια σπινθηρακίζοντα ἐξετίνασσε, καὶ ἦν κατὰ
and irons sparkling shook-out and was in
τοῦτο Ῥωμαίων ὡς ἐπίπαν ἐπικρατέστερον. ὅθεν τὰ
this than-(the)-Romans as on-the-whole more-powerful whence the
μὲν πρῶτα πλεῖστοι τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐσίνοντο· εἶτα καὶ
indeed first very-many of-the Romans were-harmed then also
εἰς παράλογον ὡς εἰπεῖν καὶ συώδη ὁρμὴν ὑποθήξαντες
into unreasonable as to-say and swinish rush having-whetted
ἑαυτοὺς οἱ Ἀρμένιοι ἐξιόντες καταπιμπρῶσι τὰς ἑλεπόλεις,
themselves the Armenians going-out burn the city-takers
εὐφυᾶ πρὸς ἁφὴν εὑράμενοι τοῦ πυρὸς τὰ ἐκ δονάκων
well-suited for kindling having-found of-the fire the from reeds
ἐπισυνθέματά τε καὶ πήγματα, ἃ πρὸς ἔρυμα τῶν
coverings both and structures which for protection of-the
μηχανῶν προετέτατο. τὰ δ' ἐπὶ τούτοις καγχασμοὶ
engines had-been-stretched-before the(-things) and after these guffaws

τῶν ἀντιπάλων καὶ βρασμοὶ σώματος πρὸς διάχυσιν
of-the opponents and shakings of-body for merriment
καὶ Ῥωμαίων παλίγλωσσοι χλευασμοὶ καὶ στομφασμοὶ
and of-(the)-Romans back-answering mockeries and boastings
κατὰ βασιλέως καὶ λῆροι μακροί. ἀνοχῆς δὲ γενομένης
against (the)-emperor and drivel long (a)-truce and having-happened
καὶ τῆς μάχης ληξάσης ἐπὶ βραχὺ τά τε πετροβόλα
and the battle having-ceased for (a)-little the both stone-throwers
ἐπισκευάζονται πρὸς Ῥωμαίων ὄργανα, καὶ τὰ τούτων
are-repaired by (the)-Romans engines and the of-these
προταθέντα παραπετάσματά τε καὶ ἱμαντώματα ἐκ
stretched-before screens both and bindings from
πηλίνων πλίνθων συντίθενται, καὶ οὕτω τῇ ἑξῆς τὰ
clay bricks are-put-together and thus on-the next(-day) the
τείχη πάλιν ἐτύπτετο. ἀμέλει καὶ ὡς τὰ παρὰ τῶν
walls again were-struck indeed also as the(-things) by the
Ἀρμενίων ἐκτινασσόμενα φλογερὰ σιδήρια κατὰ μηδὲν
Armenians shaken-out fiery irons in nothing
τὰς μηχανὰς ἐλυμαίνοντο, εἰς κενὸν συνέβαινε σχάζειν
the engines harmed into vain it-happened to-let-go
τὰ τούτων διανοήματα καὶ εἰς κοπετὸν μεταπίπτειν τὸν
the their designs and into lamentation to-fall the
πρώην τωθασμὸν καὶ καταγέλων. ὁ γὰρ σφενδονούμενος
earlier jeering and mockery the for being-slung
ἐκ τῶν ἔσωθεν μύδρος εἰ καὶ ἦν ἀντήρης καὶ πρὸς τὰς
from the inside red-hot-iron if even it-was hard and to the
πληγὰς ἀνένδοτος, ἀλλ᾽ οὖν ἐπεγχρίπτων τῷ μανῷ καὶ
blows unyielding but then falling-upon the porous and
πλαδῶντι διακένῳ τε καὶ γηΐνῳ καὶ σομφώδει προβλήματι
moist empty both and earthy and spongy screen
ἄπρακτος ἠκοντίζετο· εἶχε μὲν γὰρ ὑποχαλῶν τὸ
ineffective was-hurled it-had indeed for giving-way the(-thing)

βαλλόμενον, σβεννύμενος δ' οὖν ὅμως ἕδρα οὐδὲν ὧν
struck being-quenched and then nevertheless it-did nothing of-which
ἕνεκα διηφίετο. ὅθεν κατὰ πολλὰ μέρη διαρραγέντος τοῦ
for-the-sake it-was-let-fly whence in many parts having-been-broken the
περιβόλου τῆς πόλεως εὐέφοδα τὰ ἔνδον γίνεται, καὶ
circuit-wall of-the city easy-to-approach the inside becomes and
τῷ τρόπῳ τούτῳ ὑποκλίνεται βασιλεῖ τὸ πρὶν ἀναιδὲς
in-the manner this bows to-(the)-emperor the formerly shameless
καὶ βρέμον τοῖς ὅπλοις μέγα πολέμιον, καὶ τὴν πόλιν
and roaring with-the arms great enemy and the city
Ἀναβάρζαν ἀνάγκῃ μᾶλλον ἢ γνώμῃ αὐτῷ παραδίδωσιν,
Anabarza by-necessity rather than by-will to-him hands-over
οὐκ ἐκ τοῦ παραχρῆμα δέ, ἀλλὰ μετὰ πεῖραν δευτέραν
not from the instant and but after trial (a)-second
καὶ τὴν πολλάκις ἀντίταξιν καὶ τὴν ἐς τὸ προσεχὲς ἕτερον
and the repeated array-against and the to the adjacent another
τεῖχος ἀναχώρησιν καὶ τὴν αὖθις ἐκ τοῦδε καθάπερ ἀπὸ
wall withdrawal and the again from this as from
τοῦ πρώτου μεθ' αἵματος ἔκκρουσίν τε καὶ ἀποσάλευσιν.
the first with blood repulsion both and dislodging
Ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ τὰ πέριξ ταυτησὶ τῆς πόλεως φρούρια
likewise and also the around this the city forts
μετελθὼν ἐς τὴν κοίλην Συρίαν ἄπεισι, καὶ τὴν
having-gone-after to the Hollow Syria goes-off and the
καλλίπολιν Ἀντιόχειαν εἰσιών, ἣν δίεισιν Ὀρόντης καὶ
beautiful-city Antioch entering which goes-through (the)-Orontes and
περιβομβεῖ Ζέφυρος ἄνεμος, ὑπτίαις χερσὶ παρά τε
roars-around (the)-Zephyr wind with-upturned hands by both
τοῦ πρίγκιπος Ῥαϊμούνδου καὶ τοῦ πλήθους παντὸς τῶν
the prince Raymond and the multitude all of-the
ἀστυνόμων προσδέχεται. ἐφ' ἱκαναῖς δ' ἡμέραις τῇ πόλει
citizens is-received for sufficient and days in-the city

ἐνδιατρίψας, καὶ λίζιον ἑαυτῷ τὸν πρίγκιπα δείξας, σὺν
having-stayed and liege to-himself the prince having-shown with
αὐτῷ δὲ καὶ τὸν Τριπόλεως κόμητα, ἔγνω προσβαλεῖν
him and also the of-Tripoli count resolved to-attack
ταῖς περὶ τὴν Ἀντιόχου ἱδρυμέναις καὶ παρ᾽ Ἀγαρηνῶν
the about the(-city) of-Antiochos situated and by Hagarenes
κατεχομέναις Συροφοινίσσαις πόλεσι. τοίνυν καὶ τῷ
held Syro-Phoenician cities therefore also the
ποταμῷ προσεγγίσας Εὐφράτῃ ἀφικνεῖται εἴς τι πολίχνιον
river having-approached Euphrates arrives at some small-town
ἐγχωρίως Πιζὰ καλούμενον, ἔνθα καὶ πολλὴν ἐνδειξαμένων
locally Piza called where also much having-displayed
τῶν πολεμίων περὶ τὴν συμβολὴν γενναιότητα ὑπονοστεῖ
the enemies about the encounter nobility retreats
τὸ Ῥωμαϊκόν, καὶ μέχρι τινὸς καταδίωξις γίνεται
the Roman(-host) and to some(-point) pursuit happens
μέρους τοῦ προελάσαντος μὴ ἀντισχεῖν ἔχοντος πρὸς
of-(the)-part the having-ridden-ahead not to-hold-out being-able against
πάθος μανικὸν καὶ φορὰν παράλογον τῶν ἐναντίων.
(a)-passion mad and (a)-charge unreasonable of-the opponents
μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ δὲ ἐγγυτέρω τοῦ βασιλέως φανέντος
after not much and nearer the emperor having-appeared
ἐκ τῆς περὶ αὐτὸν φάλαγγος συχνοὶ τοῖς ἀντιπάλοις
from the about him phalanx many with-the opponents
συρρήγνυνται· οἱ δὲ μὴ ἐνεγκόντες τὴν κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
clash they and not having-borne the against them
ἐπέλασιν τῶν Ῥωμαίων συγκλείονται εἴσω τοῦ τειχισμοῦ,
charge of-the Romans are-shut-in inside the wall
καὶ οὐκέτι ἐπεκτρέχειν προέθεντο. τεῖχος μὲν οὖν καὶ
and no-longer to-sally-out proposed (a)-wall indeed then and
περίτειχος ὑπῆν τῷ πολίσματι, καὶ βαθεῖα τάφρος
outer-wall was-under for-the small-town and (a)-deep ditch

ἐν μέρει τοῦτο περιεζώννυε, καὶ λίθος αὐτοφυὴς ἐνιαχοῦ
in part this girded and stone native in-places
κατεφράγνυε· πολλὰ δὲ τῶν πυργωμάτων ὑπενδόντα ταῖς
fenced(-it) many and of-the towers having-given-way to-the
τῶν λίθων νιφάσι καὶ πρὸς γῆν καταρρεύσαντα
of-the stones snow-showers and to (the)-ground having-collapsed
τῶν ἐκ τῆς Ἄγαρ καθεῖλε τὸ φρόνημα. ἐντεῦθεν οἱ
of-the(-ones) from — Hagar brought-down the spirit thence the
τολμητίαι καὶ φυσῶντες ἄμετρα, εἰς δειλίαν τιθεμένων
daring(-ones) and puffing-up immoderate(-things) into cowardice being-put
αὐτοῖς τῶν ὀχυρωμάτων, ὑπέρ τε τῆς οἰκείας ἀντιβολοῦσι
for-them the strongholds for both the own they-entreat
ζωῆς καὶ τῶν ἐνόντων πάντων αὐτὴν ἀλλάσσονται,
life and of-the(-things) within all it they-exchange
βασιλεῖ τὰς χεῖρας προτείναντες. ἐκ δὲ τούτου μοῖραν
to-(the)-emperor the hands having-held-out from and this (a)-part
διαφεὶς στρατεύματος κατὰ τῶν ἐπέκεινα τοῦ Εὐφράτου
having-sent-off of-(the)-army against the beyond the Euphrates
πόλεων καὶ φρουρίων πλῆθος λαφύρων συνέλεξε, καὶ
cities and forts (a)-mass of-spoils he-collected and
τὸ Πιζὰ τῷ τῆς Ἐδέσσης δωρησάμενος κόμητι, τὸ
— Piza to-the — of-Edessa having-given count —
Βέμπετζ παραλλάξας ὡς εὐκαταγώνιστον κριθὲν κἀπὶ
Bempetz having-passed-by as easy-to-overcome judged and-on
πεδίου κείμενον ὑπτιάζοντος, κατὰ τοῦ Χάλεπ καὶ τοῦ
(a)-plain lying level against — Chalep and —
Φέρεπ ἐξώρμησε, τοῦτο αἰτησαμένου τοῦ τῆς Ἀντιοχείας
Pherep he-set-out this having-requested the of-the Antioch
πρίγκιπος, ἐπεὶ καὶ οὗτος τῷ βασιλεῖ συνεστράτευεν.
prince since also he with-the emperor campaigned
ἐπιστὰς δὲ τῷ Χάλεπ (τὸ δ' ἐστὶν ἡ πάλαι λεγομένη
having-arrived and — at-Chalep it and is the of-old called

Βέρροια) ὁρᾷ πολυάνθρωπον πόλιν καὶ στέγουσαν ἔνδον
Berrhoea he-sees (a)-populous city and holding inside
πλεῖστον ὅσον ὁπλιτικόν, οἳ καὶ ἐξιόντες τοῦ τείχους ἅμα
very-much as infantry who also going-out of-the wall at-once
θέᾳ Ῥωμαίων συμπλέκονται μετὰ ῥύμης τοῖς περὶ
with-(the)-sight of-(the)-Romans engage with rush with-the about
τὸν βασιλέα στρατεύμασι. τὸ δὲ ἧττον ἀπενεγκάμενοι τὸν
the emperor armies the and worse having-carried-off the
περίβολον ὑπεισήεσαν. οὐχ ἅπαξ δὲ ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὸ πάλιν
circuit-wall went-in not once and but in the again
καὶ πάλιν ἐπεκδρομὰς θέμενοι κατ᾽ οὐδεμίαν τὸ κράτος
and again sallies having-made in none the victory
ἤραντο· ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ αὐτῷ βασιλεῖ περιόντι τὴν
they-won sometimes and also against-the-very emperor going-round the
πόλιν καὶ κατασκοποῦντι τὸ τεῖχος δι᾽ ἐκηβόλων λάθρα
city and spying-out the wall through archers secretly
ἐπιβουλεύσαντες, καὶ τῆς προθέσεως ταύτης ἐξέπεσον.
having-plotted also from-the purpose this they-fell
οὐδὲν δέ τι δράσειν ἐξ ὑπογυίου δυνάμενος, καὶ διὰ τὴν
nothing and at-all going-to-do on short-notice being-able and because-of the
ὀχυρότητα μὲν ταυτησὶ τῆς πόλεως καὶ τὴν ἔνδον εὔοπλον
strength indeed this the city and the inside well-armed
καὶ εὔιππον στρατιάν, οὐχ ἧττον δὲ καὶ τὸ ἐπιλιπεῖν τὰ
and well-horsed army not less and also the to-run-short the
ἐφόδια καὶ τὴν πυρὸς ὁμοῦ καὶ ὕδατος ὑποσπάνισιν, ἐκεῖθεν
provisions and the of-fire at-once and of-water scarcity thence
μεθίσταται. καὶ τὸ Φέρεπ ἐξ ἐφόδου παραστησάμενος,
he-moves-away and — Pherep from (the)-assault having-brought-over
καὶ τοῦτο κόμητί τινι τῆς Ἀντιοχέων ἀποχαρισάμενος
and this to-count (a)-certain of-the of-Antiochenes having-granted
πόλεως, πρὸς ἑτέραν πόλιν μεταχωρεῖ κατὰ φράσιν
city to another city he-moves-over in phrasing

ἐγχώριον Καφαρδὰ λεγομένην. μεγίστης δὲ χώρας αὕτη
native Kapharda called of-greatest and land this
προκαθέζεται, καὶ περὶ αὐτὴν αὐχεῖ καθυπείκοντα οὐκ
presides and about it boasts submitting not
ἐλάχιστα φρούρια, στερρότητι τειχέων κομπάζουσα.
least forts in-strength of-walls vaunting

VIII · SHAIZAR

John sacks Istrion and besieges Shaizar, driving its defenders behind the inner wall. The city might have fallen, but reports that Edessa is besieged by the Persians draw him away, and he accepts rich gifts, among them a table and a stone cross taken from Romanos Diogenes. Zangi's Turks harass his withdrawal and lose two leaders as captives; Antioch welcomes him, and he returns through Cilicia, sends a force against Ikonion, and ends a campaign of three years.

Ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην διὰ βραχέος χειρωσάμενος μεταβαίνει
but also this through (a)-short(-time) having-subdued he-passes
πρὸς τὰ πορρώτερα, καὶ τῆς πρὸς τὸ Σέζερ πορείας
to the farther(-places) and of-the to — Shaizar march
ἁπτόμενος στρατοπεδεύει περὶ τὸ Ἴστριον (πόλις δὲ καὶ
taking-hold he-encamps about — Istrion (a)-city and also
τοῦτο τῆς μέσης τῶν ποταμῶν) ἄποθεν μικρῷ τοῦ Σέζερ
this of-the between the rivers off (by)-little — from-Shaizar
κείμενον καὶ τοῖς πᾶσι κατεσκευασμένον ἄριστα. ὁδοῦ
lying and in-the all(-things) equipped best of-(the)-road
δὲ πάρεργον καὶ τούτου διαφθαρέντος καὶ πρὸς ἁρπαγὴν
and (a)-by-work also this having-been-destroyed and for plunder
διαφεθέντος τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ τούτων μάλιστα τοῖς
having-been-let-go to-the soldiers and of-these especially to-the(-ones)
ἐκ καταλόγων τῶν Σκυθικῶν ὑφ' ὧν ἑάλωκεν, ἐκεῖθεν
from (the)-rolls the Scythian by whom it-was-taken thence

ἀπαναστὰς τῷ Σέζερ πρόσεισιν. οἱ δ' ἐκ τοῦ
having-departed — Shaizar he-approaches the(-ones) and from the
ἄστεος τοῦδε, καὶ τῶν ἀγχούρων σατραπῶν συνελθόντων,
town this and of-the neighboring satraps having-come-together
πλείστους ὅσους τοὺς ὁπλιτεύοντας συνειλόχασιν, ὅθεν
very-many as-many-as the armed(-men) assembled whence
καὶ πρὸς ἕνα συνασπισμὸν συνιόντες καὶ ὁμαιχμίαν
also into one shield-locking coming-together and alliance
κρατυνάμενοι μίαν προσυπήντων, τὸν ἐκεῖσε περικλώμενον
having-strengthened one they-went-to-meet the there winding
ποταμὸν διαβάντες, ἀλλὰ καὶ δοράτια ἐκ καλάμων
river having-crossed but also spears of reeds
κραδαίνοντες ταῖς τοῦ βασιλέως συμπλέκονται φάλαγξιν,
brandishing with-the of-the emperor engage phalanxes
ἵπποις ὠκύποσιν ἐποχούμενοι. καὶ συρρήξεως γενομένης
on-horses swift-footed mounted and (a)-clash having-happened
πολλάκις τὴν νίκην ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀποφέρεται, καὶ οἱ
often the victory the emperor carries-off and the(-ones)
μὲν τῶν πολεμίων κατὰ τοῦ ὕδατος ἀκοντίζονται, οἱ
indeed of-the enemies into the water are-hurled the(-ones)
δ' ἐμπείρονται δόρασιν, οὐδαμῶς ἐπαρκεσάντων σφίσι τῶν
and are-pierced by-spears in-no-way having-sufficed for-them the
ἐνσειομένων δονάκων, ἀλλ' ἀσθενῆ καὶ λεπτὴν ἐπικουρίαν
shaken reeds but weak and slight help
καὶ τὸ ὅλον εἰπεῖν καλαμίνην παρεχομένων αὐτοῖς. ἐντεῦθεν
and the whole to-say reedy providing to-them thence
εἰς τὸ τεῖχος ἀναχωρήσαντες οὐκέτι ἐπεξόδους εἰργάζοντο,
into the wall having-withdrawn no-longer sallies they-made
ἐκ δὲ τῶν γηΐνων ὀρόφων προφαινόμενοι καὶ πολλὴν
from and the earthen roofs appearing and much
ἐντεῦθεν τὴν σύναρσιν ἔχοντες Ῥωμαίοις ἀντεφέροντο,
thence the support having against-(the)-Romans fought

τὴν ἑαυτῶν χώραν ἀνέντες εἰς τὸ ἀδεῶς ἐκπορθεῖσθαι καὶ
the their-own land having-let-go to the fearlessly to-be-sacked and
λῃΐζεσθαι καὶ χειροῦσθαι τὰ φρούρια. οὕτω δὲ τούτων
to-be-plundered and to-be-subdued the forts thus and these
πραττόντων, ὁ βασιλεὺς τὰς φάλαγγας διηυκρινηκὼς
doing the emperor the phalanxes having-sorted
καὶ κατὰ γένος καὶ φατρίας διῃρηκώς, ὡς φῦλα φύλοις
and by race and clans having-divided that tribes to-tribes
ἀρήγωσιν, εἰς μίαν μοῖραν τὸν Μακεδόνα καθίστησιν,
may-help into one part the Macedonian(-unit) he-sets
ἑτέραν τὸ τῶν ἐκλεκτῶν, ἄλλην τὸ Σκυθικόν, ἔτι δὲ τὸ
another the of-the picked(-men) another the Scythian(-unit) still and the(-unit)
ἐκ Περσίδος ὁρμώμενον καὶ προσχωρῆσαν Ῥωμαίοις κατὰ
from Persia setting-out and having-gone-over to-(the)-Romans in
πολέμους τοὺς πρότερον. καὶ τῷ ἀμιγεῖ καὶ πολυμερεῖ
wars the earlier and by-the unmixed and many-parted
τῷδε τῶν στρατευμάτων, διαφόρους προφαινόντων τὰς
this of-the armies different displaying the
ὁπλίσεις, φόβῳ πλείονι ληφθὲν τὸ πολέμιον τῆς ἄγαν
armaments with-fear greater seized the enemy(-host) from-the very
ἐνστάσεως καθυφίησι, καὶ τὸν ἐκτὸς προέμενον τειχισμὸν
resistance relaxes and the outer having-given-up wall
πρὸς περίβολον τὸν ἔνδον μεθίσταται. ἐπὶ πολλαῖς οὖν
to circuit-wall the inner moves-over for many then
ἡμέραις ἀγχέμαχοι συνέβαινον συμπλοκαὶ καὶ πεῖραι καὶ
days close-fighting happened engagements and trials and
διαμάχαι, καὶ μονομαχίαι τῶν ἀρίστων, καὶ περιφυγαὶ
fights and single-combats of-the best and escapes
καὶ ὑποχωρήσεις καὶ καταδιώξεις ἐξ ἑκατέρων. ἀλλ᾽ ἀεὶ
and retreats and pursuits from both(-sides) but always
τὰ μὲν Ῥωμαίων ἐπικρατέστερα κατεφαίνετο, τὸ
the(-things) indeed of-(the)-Romans more-powerful appeared the(-side)

δ᾽ ἐναντίον κἂν ἔπιπτεν ἀπὸ ξίφους πλειόνως, κἂν ἐκ
and opposing whether fell from sword greatly whether from
τόξων εἰς θάνατον ὕπνωττε, κἂν τοῖς ἐκ μηχανῶν λίθοις
bows into death slept whether by-the from engines stones
εἰς μέρη διῄρητο καὶ πρὸς γῆν τὰ τείχη καὶ τὰ τούτων
into parts was-divided and to (the)-ground the walls and the their
καθῃρεῖτο θωράκια, ὅμως ἔμενεν ἔτι ἀκράδαντον ἐς
were-pulled-down parapets nevertheless it-remained still unshaken to
μυριοπληθὲς ἀριθμούμενον, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν τῶν
countless-number numbered besides — and for the-very the
ψυχῶν καὶ τέκνων καὶ γυναικῶν, πρὸς δὲ καὶ πλούτου
souls and children and wives besides and also wealth
πολλοῦ, καὶ τούτου παντοδαποῦ, διαγωνιζόμενον. καὶ
much and this of-all-kinds contending and
τάχ᾽ ἂν ἥλω καὶ ἡ πόλις ἥδε καὶ βασιλεῖ
perhaps — would-have-been-taken also the city this and to-(the)-emperor
καθυπέκυψε καὶ παντὸς τοῦ πλούτου κεκένωτο, καὶ
would-have-submitted and of-all the wealth had-been-emptied and
Ῥωμαῖοι τῇ ταύτης χειρώσει κλέος ἤραντο τῶν
(the)-Romans by-the its subjugation glory would-have-won than-the
πρώην ἐπικυδέστερον, εἰ μὴ ἀγγελίαι τινὲς ἀπαίσιοι καὶ
former(-ones) more-glorious if not reports some ill-omened also
ἄκοντα ἐκεῖθεν τὸν βασιλέα μεθείλκυσαν, αἳ τὴν Ἔδεσσαν
unwilling thence the emperor drew-away which — Edessa
ᾔδον κυκλωθῆναι παρὰ Περσῶν καὶ κινδυνεύειν παθεῖν
sang to-have-been-encircled by Persians and to-be-in-danger to-suffer
τὰ χείριστα μὴ βασιλέως αὐτῇ τὴν ταχίστην ἀρήξαντος.
the worst(-things) not (the)-emperor it the quickest(-way) helping
οὐκοῦν ἐκ τῶν πολιορκουμένων δῶρα μεγαλοπρεπῆ
therefore from the besieged gifts magnificent
κομισάμενος, καὶ ταῦτα ἐξ ὕλης τιμαλφεστέρας τῶν
having-received and this from material more-precious than-the

ἁπασῶν, καὶ ἵππους ἐριαύχενας εὐγενεῖς καὶ νήματα
all and horses high-necked noble and threads
Σηρικὰ διαπλεχθέντα χρυσῷ καὶ τράπεζαν ἀξιοθέατον, πρὸ
Seric interwoven with-gold and (a)-table worth-seeing before
δὲ τούτων σταυρὸν εἰς χεῖρας δεξάμενος πάγκαλόν τι
and these (a)-cross into hands having-received all-beautiful some
χρῆμα καὶ ξενίζον τῇ θέᾳ, λυχνίτῃ λίθῳ κεκολαμμένον,
thing and strange to-the sight with-lychnite stone carved
ἐν ᾧπερ αὐτοφυῶς ἡ τέχνη διύφανε γράμματα εἰς
in which naturally the art wove letters into
κάλλος φιλόνικον τοῦ θείου εἰκάσματος, καὶ ὀφθαλμῶν
beauty vying-with of-the divine image and of-eyes
ἀτεχνῶς τρυφήν, λύει τὴν πολιορκίαν, τῆς πρὸς
simply (a)-delight he-raises the siege of-the(-road) to
Ἀντιόχειαν ἁψάμενος. ἔφασκον δὲ οἱ κατὰ τὸ Σέζερ
Antioch having-taken-hold said and the(-ones) at — Shaizar
Σαρακηνοὶ πάλαι ποτὲ τοὺς προγόνους αὐτῶν ἐκ τῶν
Saracens of-old once the ancestors their from the
προσενεχθέντων δώρων τῷ βασιλεῖ δορύκτητα σχεῖν
presented gifts to-the emperor spear-won to-have-had
τὸν ἐκ λίθου ἀκτινώδους σταυρὸν καὶ τὴν πολυτελῆ τε
the of stone radiant cross and the costly both
καὶ οἵαν ἐκπλῆξαι τράπεζαν, ἡνίκα Ῥωμανὸν εἷλον τὸν
and such-as to-astound table when Romanos they-took the
Διογένην τὴν αὐτοκράτορα Ῥωμαίων ἀρχὴν χειρίζοντα,
Diogenes the autocratic of-(the)-Romans rule handling
τήν τε βασίλειον ἐκείνου σκηνὴν ἐσκύλευσαν καὶ τοῦ
the both imperial his tent despoiled and of-the
χάρακος κεκρατηκότες τὰ ἐνόντα διείλοντο· ἐν δὲ
camp having-mastered the(-things) within divided in and
τῇ ἐκ τοῦ Σέζερ ἀπάρσει τοῦ βασιλέως Ῥωμαίοις κατ᾽
the from — Shaizar departure of-the emperor on-(the)-Romans in

οὐρὰν ἐπιτίθενται τὰ τοῦ Ζακῆ καὶ τινῶν ἀρχηγῶν
rear attack the(-armies) — of-Zangi and of-some leaders
ἄλλων διασήμων Περσικὰ στρατεύματα, θρυπτικώτατα τοῖς
other notable Persian armies most-delicately on-the
μικροῦ ποδηνέμοις ὀχήμασι προδεικνύμενα, καὶ Ῥωμαίων
by-little wind-footed mounts showing(-themselves) and of-(the)-Romans
ὀλιγωρότατα τύφῳ ἐμπλήκτῳ βαρβαρικῷ. τῶν γε
most-contemptuous with-swelling frenzied barbarian of-the at-least
μὴν ἐλπίδων διαμαρτόντα οὐχ ὅπως οὐδέν τι γενναῖον
indeed hopes having-failed not only nothing at-all noble
ἔπραξαν, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ κόμπου καὶ τῆς μεγαληγορίας
they-did but also of-the boasting and of-the big-talk
δίκην ἀμοιβὸν ὑπὸ τῆς θείας τίσαντες δίκης καὶ δύο τῶν
penalty requiting from the divine having-paid justice also two of-the
ἡγεμόνων ζωγρίας προσαπεβάλοντο· ἦσαν δ' οὗτοι ὁ
leaders alive they-lost-besides were and these the
υἱὸς τοῦ Ἀταπακὰ καὶ ὁ τοῦ Σαμοὺχ Ἀμηρὰ κασίγνητος.
son of-the Atabeg and the — of-Samuch emir brother
εἰσιὼν δ' ὁ βασιλεὺς τὴν Ἀντιόχου μεγαλώνυμον πόλιν
entering and the emperor the of-Antiochos great-named city
τὸ ἀστυκὸν πλῆθος ὅλον ἑαυτοῦ ἀνηρτήσατο, ὡς καὶ
the town multitude whole on-himself hung so-that also
μεθ' ἱερῶν ἐκτύπων καὶ πλείστης ὅτι φιλοκαλίας τῶν
with holy images and very-much as of-beauty of-the
ἀγυιῶν λαμπρὸν ἐκείνῳ σχεδιάσαι τὸ εἰσιτήριον. ἐκ δὲ
streets brilliant for-him to-improvise the entry from and
ταύτης μετὰ φωνῶν εὐφήμων καὶ προπέμψεων αἰνεσίμων
this with cries auspicious and escorts praiseworthy
εἰς τὰ τῆς Κιλικίας ὅρια παραβαλών, κἀκεῖθεν ἐξορμήσας
into the — of-Cilicia borders having-come and-from-there having-set-out
τῆς πρὸς τὸ Βυζάντιον φερούσης ἅπτεται. καὶ γοῦν
the(-road) to — Byzantium leading he-takes and at-any-rate

κατὰ τάξιν προϊὼν καὶ τῆς αὐτοῦ στρατηγίας ἐχόμενος
in order going-forward and of-the his generalship holding
στέλλει κατὰ τῶν Ἰκονιέων Περσῶν ἀπόμοιράν τινα τοῦ
he-sends against the Ikonian Persians detachment some of-the
στρατεύματος· οὗτοι γάρ, ὁπότε τῆς Συρίας ἐπέβαινε
army these for when — Syria set-foot-on
βασιλεύς, τῷ καιρῷ χρησάμενοι πρὸς ἐπίθεσιν ἐκδρομαῖς
(the)-emperor the occasion having-used for attack with-sallies
κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐχρήσαντο. τῷ τοι καὶ τοῦ δυσμενοῦς
against (the)-Romans used for surely also of-the hostile
στίφους περιγενόμενος ἔκειρε τὴν πολεμίαν, ἅλωσιν
band having-prevailed he-ravaged the enemy(-land) (a)-capture
ἀνθρώπων καὶ ζώων ἔλασιν παντοίων, ὁπόσα ὑπὸ ζυγὸν
of-men and of-beasts (a)-driving of-all-kinds as-many-as under yoke
καὶ ὄχησιν, ἐργασάμενος. καὶ τοιοῦτοι μὲν οἱ πρὸς
and riding having-made and such indeed the toward
ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον ἀγῶνες τοῦδε τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, δι᾽
rising (the)-sun contests of-this the autocrat through
ἐκστρατείας μιᾶς πᾶσαν μὲν γλῶτταν πᾶσαν δὲ γνώμην ἐς
campaign one every indeed tongue every and mind to
ἑαυτοὺς ἐφελκύσαντες, ἐν ᾗ καὶ τριετὴς χρόνος ἐξίκετο.
themselves having-drawn in which also (a)-three-year time came-to(-pass)

IX · ISAAC'S RETURN AND NEOKAISAREIA

John's brother Isaac, long a fugitive among foreign peoples and the sultan of Ikonion, sees that he gains nothing and returns with his son John; the emperor receives them with kindness. After driving the Turks from the Sangarios and building Ochyrai, John marches through Paphlagonia against Gabras and Muhammad, winters at Kinte in bitter cold that kills his horses, and then moves on Neokaisareia. Against the Turks his younger son Manuel charges without his father's knowledge, and John praises him in public and later beats him in his tent for his rashness.

Τότε δὲ προσερρύη τῷ βασιλεῖ τῷδε καὶ ὁ
then and went-over to-the emperor this also the
σεβαστοκρατορῶν κασίγνητος Ἰσαάκιος, ὃν φθάσαν
sebastokrator brother Isaac whom anticipating
εἴρηκε τὸ λέγειν συνάρασθαί οἱ τὰ περιττὰ εἰς τὴν
said the account to-have-helped him the most(-things) toward the
τῆς βασιλείας κατάσχεσιν. κατὰ γὰρ μικρολυπίαν τοῦ
of-the empire seizure by for petty-grievance from-the
ὁμογνίου διαζευχθεὶς καὶ φυγὰς ἀπάρας ἐκ τῆς
kinsman having-been-separated and (a)-fugitive having-departed from the
Ῥωμαίων, συνέκδημον καὶ συμπλανήτην ἔχων τὸν Ἰωάννην
of-(the)-Romans fellow-traveler and fellow-wanderer having — John
τὸν τῶν παίδων ἐκείνου πρωτότοκον (ἀνὴρ δ' οὗτος
the of-the children his first-born man and this(-one)
ὁπλιτοπάλας καὶ πολεμόκλονος, φυήν τ' ἀρίστην καὶ
fighting-in-arms and war-loving (a)-build both best and
εἶδος προφαίνων ἀξιοθέατον), πλείστοις μὲν καὶ ἄλλοις
(a)-form displaying worth-seeing to-very-many indeed also other
προσέμιξεν ἔθνεσι, σὺν αὐτοῖς δὲ καὶ τῷ τῆς
he-mixed-with peoples with them and also with-the(-one) of-the
Ἰκονιέων σατραπεύοντι μητροπόλεως. καὶ ἦν μὲν ὁ
of-Ikonians being-satrap metropolis and was indeed —
Ἰσαάκιος οὗτος ὁρμαίνων ἀεὶ χώραις ἐπιθέσθαι Ῥωμαϊκαῖς
Isaac this eager always on-lands to-attack Roman
καὶ Σατὰν γενέσθαι τῷ Ἰωάννῃ, χρημάτων δ' ἀπορῶν καὶ
and (a)-Satan to-become — to-John of-money and lacking and
τὸν βασιλέα Ἰωάννην ὁρῶν ταῖς κατὰ πόλεμον πράξεσι
the emperor John seeing in-the in war deeds
διὰ παντὸς περικλεέστον οὐδένα εὕρισκε τοῖς κατὰ
through all very-famous nobody he-found to-the(-things) according-to
σκοπὸν ἐκείνῳ συμβαίνοντα. μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν καὶ πάντας
aim for-him agreeing rather indeed then also all

εἶχεν ἀποπηδῶντας καὶ πρὸς τὴν πρώτην τῆς ἀποστασίας
he-had leaping-away and at the first of-the revolt
ἐνήχησιν δυσχεραίνοντας, καὶ τὴν ἐπιχείρησιν ἀπαγορεύοντας
sounding being-displeased and the attempt forbidding
ὡς ἀσύμφορον κἀκείνῳ καὶ μηδ' αὐτοῖς ἐφικτὴν ὁπωσοῦν.
as inexpedient for-him-also and not-even to-them attainable in-any-way
ὅθεν τοὺς τοπάρχας περιιών, καὶ παρ' οἷς κατέλυε δι'
whence the toparchs going-round and among whom he-lodged with
αἰδοῦς ἀγόμενος ὡς τὸ εἶδος τυραννικώτατος καὶ τὸ
respect being-treated as in-the form most-tyrant-like and in-the
γένος ἐπισημότατος, ὀψὲ συνεὶς ὡς διακενῆς τῆς
race most-distinguished late having-understood that in-vain from-the
συγγενείας ἀποδιίσταται, βίον ἀντλῶν πονηρόν, πρὸς τὸν
kinship he-stands-apart (a)-life drawing wretched to the
ὁμόσπορον ἐπανέλυσε. καὶ βασιλεὺς ἀσμένως αὐτόν τε καὶ
brother he-returned and (the)-emperor gladly him both and
τὸν υἱέα προσβλέπει, καὶ ὄψιν καὶ λόγους ἀμφοῖν δίδωσι,
the son looks-on and sight and words to-both gives
καὶ χαριέντως προσπλέκεται· ἰσχυρὸν γάρ τι χρῆμα
and graciously embraces(-them) strong for some thing
πόθος συγγενείᾳ διυφαινόμενος, κἂν ἀπορραγείη μικρόν
(is)-longing with-kinship interwoven even-if it-be-broken-off little
τι τῆς συμφυΐας φιλυπόστροφος ταχέως γίνεται. ἀμέλει
some from-the union fond-of-returning quickly it-becomes indeed
καὶ τὸ πρώην φίλτρον διατηρήσας ἀλώβητον οὐδέν τι
also the former love having-kept unimpaired nothing at-all
παλίγκοτον ὑπέτυφεν ἐν ψυχῇ, ὁποῖα οἱ ἐν ἀρχαῖς
spiteful smoldered in soul such-as the(-ones) in offices
φιλοῦσι τεχνάζεσθαι, τὸν χόλον ἐνθάπτοντες καὶ ἐναύοντες
love to-contrive the wrath burying and kindling
εἰς τὴν κατὰ καιρὸν φρυκτώρησιν καὶ κατάπρησιν·
for the at (the)-right-time beacon-signal and burning

τὴν δὲ Κωνσταντίνου σὺν αὐτῷ εἰσιὼν οὐ πλεῖον τῷ
the(-city) and of-Constantine with him entering not more for-the
τῆς νίκης περιόντι ἢ τῇ τοῦ κασιγνήτου ἐπανόδῳ
of-the victory surplus than for-the of-the brother return
ἠγαλλιᾶτο. καὶ τὸ ὑπήκοον δὲ κατεκίρνα πως τὰ ἐγκώμια
he-exulted and the subject(-people) and blended somehow the praises
τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως τούτῳ προμηθεύματι, οὐ μόνον τοῖς
with-the of-the emperor this foresight not only in-the
αὐτοῦ τροπαίοις καλλωπιζόμενον καὶ θῦον θεῷ χαριστήρια
his trophies priding-itself and offering to-God thanksgivings
τῷ καὶ πορεύσαντι τοῦτον καὶ νικητὴν ἀνασώσαντι,
to-the(-one) also having-brought this(-one) and victor having-restored
ἀλλὰ καὶ τῇ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἀφίξει ἐπευφραινόμενον.
but also in-the of-the brother arrival rejoicing-besides
Μὴ πολυωρήσας δὲ τῷ Βυζαντίῳ, τῶν Περσῶν εἰσβαλόντων
not having-lingered and — in-Byzantium the Persians having-invaded
τοῖς κατὰ ποταμὸν τὸν Σαγγάριον ἐπιδρόμοις τόποις,
the along (the)-river the Sangarios open-to-raids places
ὑπεριδὼν καχεξίας σώματος, ὡς εἶχεν ἐξώρμησεν,
having-disregarded of-ill-health of-body as he-was he-set-out
ὅθεν τοὺς πολεμίους διαθροήσας τῇ παρουσίᾳ καὶ
whence the enemies having-dismayed by-the presence and
θρεμμάτων ἀγέλας ἐλάσας παντοδαπῶν ἐπανῆλθεν εἰς
of-flocks herds having-driven of-all-kinds he-returned to
τὸ Λοπάδιον. μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ δὲ καὶ τῆς γυναικωνίτιδος
— Lopadion after not much and also the women's-quarters
ἐξιούσης τὴν πόλιν, τὰς Ὀχυρὰς ἐδείματο, τὴν ἐκ
going-out(-of) the city — Ochyrai he-built the from
τῶν πολεμίων ἐκεχειρίαν εἰς τὸ μὴ πάντῃ ἀξύμφορον
the enemies truce to the not altogether inexpedient
Ῥωμαίοις διατιθείς. ἐμβραδῦναι δὲ τοῖς τόποις τούτοις
for-(the)-Romans arranging to-linger and in-the places these

διανοούμενος τὴν στρατιὰν ἀθροισθῆναι διετετάχει. καὶ
intending the army to-be-gathered he-had-ordered and
ἡ μὲν ἐκ θεσπισμάτων βασιλείων συνήγετο, αὐτὸς δὲ
it indeed from decrees imperial was-assembled himself and
κατὰ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον ὡς οὐδέποτε τοῖς στρατευομένοις
in this the deed as never to-the(-ones) campaigning
ἀσυγγνώμων ἔδοξε καὶ βαρὺς καὶ τὸ πλέον μηδὲ μέτρα
unforgiving seemed and heavy and the more not-even (the)-measures
ἐκστρατείας εἰδώς, ὡς εἴπερ ἐλάθετο ἢ οὐκ ἐνενόησεν ὡς
of-campaigning knowing as if-indeed he-forgot or not he-considered that
τρισσὸν ἔτος ἐν τοῖς ἑῴοις πολέμοις Ῥωμαῖοι διήνεγκαν.
(a)-third year in the eastern wars (the)-Romans endured
τὸ δὲ πρὸς ἄρρηκτον ἐκείνου ἔχθος ἔτι μᾶλλον
the(-thing) and to unbreakable his hatred still more
ἐκμῆναν ἦν ὅτι πολλοὶ τῶν εἰς Συρίαν συναναβάντων
maddening was that many of-the(-ones) to Syria having-gone-up-with
ἐκείνῳ στρατιωτῶν μήπω τὰ οἴκοι βλέψαντες, ἀλλὰ
him soldiers not-yet the(-things) at-home having-seen but
νόσῳ σώματος καὶ σπάνει τῶν ἀναγκαίων καὶ φθορᾷ
by-sickness of-body and by-want of-the necessities and by-loss
τῶν ὀχημάτων ἐν τῇ ὁδοιπορίᾳ χρονίσαντες, ἠναγκάζοντο
of-the mounts in the journey having-lingered were-compelled
μὴ τῶν πατρίδων βαίνειν εὐθύ, ἀλλ' ἔνθα κατασκηνοῖ
not to-the homelands to-go straight but where encamps
βασιλεὺς μεταβαίνειν ὑπὸ τῶν ἐπιμελῶς τὰς ὁδοὺς
(the)-emperor to-move by the(-ones) carefully the roads
τηρούντων καὶ τὰς θαλαττίους περαιώσεις ἐπισκοπούντων.
watching and the sea crossings overseeing
ὁ δὲ μὴ ἀγνοεῖν ἔχων τὸ τοῦ γογγυσμοῦ αἴτιον,
he and not to-be-ignorant being-able the of-the grumbling cause
τὸν οὐκ εἰδότα πλαττόμενος, ἵνα μὴ λέγοιμι τὸν
the(-one) not knowing feigning that not I-may-say the(-one)

μηδαμῶς ἐμπαζόμενον ὑποκρινόμενος, ἐκείνους μὲν εἴα
in-no-way heeding pretending them indeed he-let
κενοφωνεῖν, αὐτὸς δὲ τῆς προθέσεως εἴχετο, βούλεσθαι
talk-emptily himself and to-the purpose held wishing
λέγων ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιώτας συσπουδαστὰς καὶ μηδαμῶς
saying to-have the soldiers fellow-zealots and in-no-way
ταῖς συνεχέσιν ἐκδημίαις ἀπαυδοῦντας καὶ ἀποκναίοντας.
at-the continual absences refusing and growing-weary
προθέμενος δὲ μετελθεῖν τοὺς κατὰ τὸ θέμα τῶν
having-proposed and to-go-after the in the theme of-the
Ἀρμενιακῶν παρεισφθαρέντας βαρβάρους, ἅμα δὲ
Armeniakoi having-slipped-in barbarians at-the-same-time and
καὶ Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Γαβρᾶν κατασχεῖν χρόνον ἤδη
also Constantine the Gabras to-restrain time already
συχνὸν τὴν Τραπεζοῦντα ὑποποιησάμενον καὶ ἤθεσι
long — Trapezous having-won-over and with-manners
τυραννικοῖς αὐτὴν διεξάγοντα, διὰ τῆς τῶν Παφλαγόνων
tyrannical it governing through the of-the Paphlagonians
συναγκείας τὴν πορείαν τίθησιν ἀεὶ τῶν τοῦ Πόντου
defile the journey he-sets always the of-the Pontus
παραλίων τόπων βαδίζειν ἐχόμενα, δυοῖν ἕνεκα, τοῦ τ'
coastal places to-walk holding-to for-two for-the-sake of-the both
ἐκ τῆς οἰκείας χώρας τὴν στρατιάν οἱ πορίζεσθαι
from the own land the army for-him to-provide
τὰ βιώσιμα, καὶ εἰ δεήσει συρρῆξαι πόλεμον,
the(-things) for-living and if it-shall-be-needful to-join war
κατὰ μίαν μοῖραν ἔχειν αὐτὸν ἐπικείμενον, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἐξ
on one side to-have him lying-before(-him) but not from
ἑκατέρων μερῶν περικείμενον κἀντεῦθεν πρὸς περικύκλωσιν
both sides lying-around and-from-there for encirclement
ἐπιτήδειον. ἦν γὰρ ὁ τῆς Καισαρείας τότε κρατῶν
suitable was for the of-the Caesarea then ruling

Μουχούμετ, περὶ οὗ εἰπεῖν ἔφθημεν, πλείστην ὅτι
Muhammad about whom to-speak we-anticipated very-much as
περιβεβλημένος ἰσχύν, μέρος τε τῆς Ἰβηρίας ὑπαγαγόμενος
having-put-on strength part both of-the Iberia having-subdued
καὶ ἔνια τῆς τῶν ποταμῶν μέσης παραστησάμενος, τὸ
and some of-the of-the rivers between having-brought-over the
μὲν ἄνωθεν γένος ἐς τοὺς Ἀρσακίδας συναλειφόμενος,
indeed from-above race to the Arsacids blending
τὸ δὲ προσεχὲς ἐκ Τανισμανίων καταγόμενος· ἦσαν δ᾽
the and nearest from Danishmendids descending were and
οὗτοι τολμητίαι καὶ ἀνδρισταὶ καὶ τῶν χειρωσαμένων
these daring and manly and of-the(-ones) having-subdued
τὰς ἑῴας πόλεις Ῥωμαίων οἱ μάλιστα κράτιστοί τε καὶ
the eastern cities of-(the)-Romans the most strongest both and
ἀναιδέστατοι. ἔαρος μὲν οὖν ὑπολήγειν ἀρξαμένου, τοῦ
most-shameless spring indeed then to-subside having-begun —
Λοπαδίου βασιλεὺς ἀπανίσταται, τὴν δὲ θέρειον πᾶσαν
from-Lopadion (the)-emperor departs the and summer whole
ὥραν καὶ τοῦ μετοπώρου τὸ εὐκραὲς ἐν τῇ ὁδοιπορίᾳ τῇδε
season and of-the autumn the mildness in the journey this
κατατριψάμενος περὶ τροπὰς ἐνηυλίσατο χειμερίους πόλει
having-spent about (the)-solstice he-bivouacked winter at-(the)-city
Ποντικῇ τῇ Κιντῇ. τῇ πολεμίᾳ δ᾽ ἐκ τοῦδε προσβαλὼν
Pontic — Kinte on-the enemy(-land) and from this having-attacked
ἐν πολλοῖς ἐδυσπράγησεν. ἔστι μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἄλλως
in many he-fared-ill is indeed for also otherwise
ἡ Καππαδοκῶν χώρα κρυμώδης πᾶσα, καὶ τὸ κλίμα
the of-Cappadocians land frosty all and the clime
τοῦτο ψυχεινὸν καὶ δριμύτατον· τότε δὲ καὶ χειμῶνος
this chilly and most-bitter then and also (a)-winter
ἐπιγενομένου ἀήθους πολυτρόποις κακοῖς προσεπάλαισε. τά
having-come-on unusual with-manifold evils he-wrestled the

τε γὰρ πρὸς δίαιταν ἐπιτήδεια σχεδὸν εἰς τέλος ἐξέλιπον,
both for for living necessities almost to end failed
καὶ τῶν ζώων ὁπόσα σκευοφόρα τε καὶ πολεμιστήρια,
and of-the animals as-many-as baggage-carrying both and war(-horses)
διεφθάρη παντάπασι. κἀκ τοῦδε τὸ ἀλλόθρουν
were-destroyed altogether and-from this the foreign-tongued(-host)
πλειόνως ἀναθαρρῆσαν, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἄφθεγκτόν ἐστι τῇ
more having-taken-courage since also unspoken is to-the
φήμῃ μηδὲν ἀνεξερεύνητόν τε καὶ ἀνεξέλεγκτον, ἐφόδοις
rumor nothing unsearched both and unproven with-attacks
ἀκηρύκτοις ἐχρῆτο συχναῖς, καὶ λῃστρικοῖς ἐπιτιθέμενον
unannounced used frequent and robber-like attacking
κλέμμασιν, ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ καὶ προδήλως διαμιλλώμενον
with-thefts in-places and also openly contending
κατὰ μάχην ἐνώπιον, ἀεὶ τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐλυμαίνετο
in battle before(-them) always the of-the Romans ravaged
φάλαγγας· κατὰ γὰρ νέφος συνεχὲς τὴν σύστασιν
phalanxes like for (a)-cloud continuous the (battle-)array
ἐφιστάμενον ἐκ τοῦ αὐτίκα, τῇ ποδωκείᾳ πεποιθὸς
confronting from the at-once in-the swiftness trusting
τῶν ἵππων, τῆς ὁμαιχμίας ἀφίστατο ὡς εἴπερ ἀνέμων
of-the horses from-the engagement withdrew as if-indeed of-winds
πνοαῖς ἐξῄρετο. βασιλεὺς δὲ τὸ τῶν ἵππων μεθοδεύων
by-blasts it-were-lifted (the)-emperor and the of-the horses dealing-with
ἀτύχημα, περιὼν τὸ στράτευμα τὰ εὐγενῆ τῶν ὀχημάτων
misfortune going-round the army the noble of-the mounts
συνέλεγε, καὶ ταῦτα διαδιδοὺς καὶ Ῥωμαίοις μέν, ὁπόσοι
collected and these distributing and to-(the)-Romans indeed as-many-as
κοντοφορεῖν ᾔδεσαν, τοῖς δ' ἐκ τῶν Λατίνων μάλιστα
to-bear-lances knew to-the(-ones) and from the Latins especially
δεξιοστροφεῖν ἐπισταμένοις δοράτια, ἀνθίστα τούτους τοῖς
to-wield knowing spears set-against these to-the

πολεμίοις καὶ παρεῖχε γενναίως ἀντιμαχεῖν. οἱ δὲ τὰς μετὰ
enemies and enabled nobly to-fight-back they and the with
ξυστῶν ἐπελάσεις τούτων ἐνεγκεῖν οὐκ ἔχοντες πρὸς φυγὴν
spears charges of-these to-bear not being-able to flight
μεθηρμόζοντο. ἱκανῶς μὲν οὖν διὰ τῶν τοιούτων μεθόδων
turned sufficiently indeed then through the such methods
καὶ τοῦ πλείστους ὅτι μάλιστα τῶν πεζῶν σημαίας ἀνέχειν
and the very-many as most of-the foot-soldiers standards to-hold-up
εἰς ἔμφασιν ἱππικοῦ πλείονος τὰς Περσικὰς ἀναστείλας
for (the)-appearance of-cavalry more the Persian having-checked
ἴλας, ἐπὶ Νεοκαισαρείας ἵετο. πολλαὶ δὲ καὶ περὶ αὐτὴν
troops for Neokaisareia he-went many and also about it
μεταξὺ Περσῶν καὶ Ῥωμαίων ἐτολυπεύθησαν συμπλοκαί.
between Persians and (the)-Romans were-wound-up engagements
καὶ τῶν τοῦ βασιλέως υἱῶν ὁ νεώτερος (Μανουὴλ ὄνομα
and of-the of-the emperor sons the younger Manuel by-name
τούτῳ) δόρυ διαβαστάσας καὶ ἱκανῶς προελθών, τοῦ
to-this(-one) (a)-spear having-carried and sufficiently having-advanced the
πατρὸς εἰδότος μηδέν, τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐνέβαλε, καὶ τὸ
father knowing nothing on-the enemies charged and the
ἔργον τοῦτο τοῦ μείρακος παρωρμήκει σχεδὸν ἅπαν τὸ
deed this of-the youth had-spurred-on almost all the
στράτευμα καὶ ὑπὲρ ἰσχὺν ἀγωνίσασθαι, τινῶν μὲν ἐς
army and beyond strength to-contend some indeed to
τὸν ὅμοιον ζῆλον διαναστάντων, τῶν δ' ἄλλων ἁπάντων
the like zeal having-roused the and others all
δεισάντων περὶ τῷ παιδί, καὶ βασιλεῖ χαριεῖσθαι τὰ
having-feared for the boy and to-(the)-emperor to-gratify the
μέγιστα οἰηθέντων εἰ συναραμένων αὐτῶν οὐδαμῶς τι
greatest having-thought if having-helped they in-no-way anything
πρὸς τῶν πολεμίων ἐσεῖται πεπονθὼς ἀηδές. ἀλλὰ τότε
from the enemies shall-be having-suffered unpleasant but then

μὲν ὁ πατὴρ ἐπαίνοις τὸν παῖδα προδήλως ἠμείψατο·
indeed the father with-praises the son openly rewarded
ὕστερον δὲ τὴν σκηνὴν εἰσιὼν πρηνῆ ταθέντα δι᾽ ὀλίγου
later and the tent entering face-down stretched after (a)-little
ἔτυψεν ὡς θρασύτερον μᾶλλον ἢ εὐτολμότερον, μηδ᾽
struck as more-rashly rather than more-boldly not-even
ἐπιτρέψαντος αὐτοῦ συμπλακέντα τοῖς ἐναντίοις.
having-permitted him having-engaged with-the opponents

X · THE DEATHS OF ALEXIOS AND ANDRONIKOS

At Neokaisareia Isaac's son John, ordered to give his Arabian horse to an Italian knight, rides over to the Turks, apostatizes, and marries the sultan's daughter. The city is not taken, and the army withdraws. The emperor winters in Byzantium and in spring marches to Attaleia and takes the island forts of Lake Pousgouse, whose Christians had sided with the Turks, losing transports to storms. Then his eldest son Alexios dies of an acute fever, and Andronikos, surviving him only long enough to mourn him, dies soon after.

Ἴσως δ᾽ ἂν καὶ τῆς Νεοκαισαρέων ἐκράτησε βασιλεύς,
perhaps and — also of-the Neokaisareians would-have-mastered (the)-emperor
εἰ μὴ κατὰ συγκυρίαν ἀπρόοπτον αὐτῷ προσέστη τῦφος
if not by chance unforeseen to-him had-come (a)-conceit
ἄλογος αὐτοθελὴς καὶ θυμὸς παντάπασιν ἀκυβέρνητος
irrational self-willed and (a)-temper altogether ungoverned
τοῦ ἀδελφιδοῦ Ἰωάννου, ὃν ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ ἐγείνατο
of-the nephew John whom the sebastokrator begot
Ἰσαάκιος. μάχης γὰρ ἐνισταμένης μετὰ Περσῶν ἱππότην
Isaac battle for being-joined with Persians (a)-knight
ἐπίσημον ἐξ Ἰταλίας ὁρμώμενον ἄνιππον ὁ βασιλεὺς
distinguished from Italy setting-out horseless the emperor

θεασάμενος ἐκέλευσε παρεστῶτι τῷ ἀνεψιῷ Ἰωάννῃ
having-seen ordered standing-by the nephew John
ἀποβῆναι τοῦ Ἀραβίου ἵππου ᾧ ἦν ἔποχος καὶ
to-get-down from-the Arabian horse on-which he-was mounted and
δοῦναι τοῦτον τῷ Ἰταλῷ, μὴ χατίζοντα ἵππων τὸν ἀνεψιὸν
to-give this to-the Italian not lacking horses the nephew
ἐπιστάμενος. ὁ δὲ φρονηματίας ὢν καὶ γαῦρος πλέον
knowing he and haughty being and proud more
τοῦ δέοντος τῷ τοῦ βασιλέως ἀντέστη κελεύσματι,
than-the needful to-the of-the emperor opposed command
ἐμβριθεστέραν, ἵνα μὴ λέγοιμι ἀναιδεστέραν, τὴν ἀντίρρησιν
weightier that not I-may-say more-shameless the contradiction
ποιησάμενος· καὶ τὸν Λατῖνον ἐξουθενῶν προυκαλεῖτο
having-made and the Latin scorning he-challenged
εἰς ἀντιμάχησιν, ὡς τὸν ἵππον, εἰ περιγένοιτο, δικαίως
to combat as the horse if he-should-prevail justly
ἀπολεηψόμενον. μὴ ἐπὶ πολὺ δ' ἔχων ἀνθίστασθαι τῷ
going-to-take-back not for long and being-able to-withstand the
θείῳ καὶ βασιλεῖ (ἑώρα γὰρ πρὸς ὀργὴν ἐπιφρίσσοντα)
uncle and emperor he-saw for to anger bristling
τὸν ἵππον δίδωσιν ἄκων. μετακελητίσας δ' εἰς ἕτερον
the horse he-gives unwilling having-changed-horses and to another
ὄχημα ἀθυμίας πλήρης καὶ βράττων ἄντικρυς θυμῷ, τὸ
mount of-despondency full and boiling outright with-anger the
δόρυ ἀγκοινισάμενος κατὰ τῆς τῶν πολεμίων παρατάξεως
spear having-couched against the of-the enemies array
φέρεται. μικρὸν δέ τι προβὰς τὸν λογχήρη κοντὸν
is-carried (a)-little and somewhat having-advanced the spear-bearing lance
εἰς τοὐπίσω ἀντέστρεψε, καὶ τῷ νώτῳ ἐπαναθέμενος
to the-back he-turned and on-the back having-put
πρὸς Πέρσας αὐτόμολος γίνεται, τὸ κράνος τῆς κεφαλῆς
to Persians (a)-deserter becomes the helmet from-the head

ἀφελόμενος. ἀμέλει καὶ Ἰωάννης μὲν ἡδέως τοῖς βαρβάροις
having-taken-off indeed also John indeed gladly by-the barbarians
ὁρᾶται καὶ ἀσμένως προσδέχεται, καὶ ὡς πάλαι μὲν συνήθης
is-seen and joyfully is-received and as of-old indeed familiar
αὐτοῖς καθιστάμενος, ἡνίκα τῷ πατρὶ συνεπλάζετο, καὶ
to-them being-made when with-the father he-wandered and
ὡς τότε δὴ τῇ παρουσίᾳ τὰ κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς ἀναρρώσων
as then indeed by-the presence the of them going-to-strengthen
πράγματα. ὁ δ᾽ αὐτὸς μικρῷ ὕστερον καὶ τὰ Χριστιανῶν
affairs the and same(-man) (a)-little later also the of-Christians
ἐξομοσάμενος ὄργια τὴν τοῦ Ἰκονιέως Πέρσου θυγατέρα
having-abjured rites the of-the Ikonian Persian daughter
ἐγήματο. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβεβηκόσι τούτοις
married the and emperor at the having-happened these
ἔκθαμβος γεγονὼς οὐκ ἀγαθαῖς ἐλπίσι διεστροβοῦτο· ἦδει
astounded having-become not with-good hopes was-whirled he-knew
γὰρ ὡς οὐδὲν ἄφθεγκτον ἐσεῖται παραλελοιπὼς ὁ ἀνεψιὸς
for that nothing unspoken will-be having-left-out the nephew
τῶν τὴν Ῥωμαϊκὴν περικλονούντων στρατιάν, ἀλλ᾽
of-the(-things) the Roman troubling army but
ἀχαλινώτῳ καὶ εὐδρόμῳ γλώσσῃ ἀναγγελεῖ τῶν ἵππων
with-unbridled and swift-running tongue he-will-report of-the horses
τὸν σπανισμόν, τὴν τῶν βιωσίμων στέρησιν καὶ πᾶν
the scarcity the of-the necessities-of-life lack and every
ἕτερον καχέκτημα τῆς παρεμβολῆς. ὑποκλέπτων τοίνυν
other ill of-the camp stealing therefore
τὴν ἐπανάλυσιν κατὰ βραχύ πως ἐκεῖθεν μεθίστατο.
the return by little somehow thence he-moved
πλὴν οὐδ᾽ οὕτω δρῶν εἶχε λεληθέναι ὁλοσχερῶς
however not-even thus doing was-he-able to-escape-notice-of wholly
τὸ πολέμιον· τοῖς γὰρ τελευταίοις ἐπικείμενον τοῦ
the enemy(-host) on-the for last pressing of-the

στρατεύματος μέχρι πλείστου παρηκολούθει, καὶ διενοχλοῦν
army for very-long it-followed and harassing
τὴν οὐραγίαν ἐνέλιπεν οὐδαμῶς. διὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν τῆς
the rear-guard it-left-off in-no-way because-of these(-things) therefore the
παραλίας λαβόμενος ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ καθειστήκει, καὶ
coast having-reached in the safety he-had-established-himself and
τὸ βάρβαρον μηκέτι ἐπιέναι ἔχον παλίσσυτον γίνεται.
the barbarian(-host) no-longer to-attack being-able turned-back becomes
Εἴδοι μὲν οὖν Ἰανουάριοι τὸν βασιλέα ἔβλεψαν Ἰωάννην
(the)-Ides indeed then of-January the emperor saw John
ἐκ τῶν Περσικῶν καμάτων τὴν πόλιν ἐπεισιόντα· αἱ δὲ
from the Persian labors the city entering the and
τοῦ ἦρος περιτροπαὶ τὸ ξίφος εἶχον αὖθις περιζωσάμενον
of-the spring turns the sword had again girded-on
καὶ πρὸς τὸ περὶ τὸν Ῥυνδακὸν ποταμὸν ἀφιγμένον
and to the about the Rhyndakos river having-come
πόλισμα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ μὲν θέρειος ὥρα παρεληλύθει,
small-town when and the indeed summer season had-passed
ὁ δὲ χειμὼν ἤδη παρεισιὼν τοῖς αἰθριάζουσιν
the and winter already coming-in to-the(-ones) in-the-open-air
ἐδυσκόλαινεν, ἀνέμων βόμβοις παραφοβῶν καὶ ἀμβλύτερα
was-troublesome of-winds with-roarings frightening and blunter
πρὸς ἀντιπάλαισιν ψύχους τιθεὶς τὰ σώματα, ἐπάνεισιν
for wrestling-against of-cold making the bodies he-returns
εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον, τῷ ψυχεινῷ τοῦ καιροῦ ὑπενδοὺς ὡσεὶ
to — Byzantium to-the chilly of-the season yielding as-if
καὶ χερμάδια τὰς νιφάδας καὶ δοράτια τὰς πηγυλίδας
also stones the snowflakes and spears the frosts
προβαλλομένῳ. ὑπομειδιᾶν δ' ἀρχομένου τοῦ ἔαρος τῶν
putting-forward to-smile and beginning the spring from-the
ἀνακτόρων ἀπανίσταται. τῷ τοι καὶ τὰς ἐξ ὀσφύος
palace he-departs for surely also the(-daughters) from loins

αὐτοῦ προσειπών, ὅσα καὶ Ἡλιάδας ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ ἀφιείσας
his having-addressed just-as also as-Heliads over him letting-fall
ἠλεκτρῶδες δάκρυον, τὴν Φρυγίαν παρελθών, τὴν δ᾽
amber-like (a)-tear — Phrygia having-passed — and
Ἀττάλου λαμπροτάτην πόλιν καταλαβών, χρονοτριβεῖν
of-Attalos most-brilliant city having-reached to-spend-time
ἐκεῖσε προέθετο, ὅπως τὰς πέριξ ταύτης πόλεις καὶ χώρας
there he-proposed that the around this cities and lands
μᾶλλόν τι πρὸς τὸ εὖ μεταθοῖτο. ἤδη γὰρ καὶ τούτων
more somewhat to the good he-might-change already for also of-these
ἔνιαι τοῖς Τούρκοις ὑπέκυψαν, ἐν αἷς ἦν καὶ ἡ τοῦ
some to-the Turks had-submitted among which was also the —
Πουσγούση καλουμένη λίμνη. αὕτη γὰρ εἰς ἀχανῆ καὶ μικροῦ
of-Pousgouse called lake this for into vast and by-little
θαλασσίαν χύσιν ἐκτεινομένη ἐν πολλοῖς νησίδας ἀνίσχει
sea-like expanse stretching in many(-places) islets raises
περιβεβλημένας τείχεσιν ἰσχυροῖς. ᾤκουν μὲν οὖν ταύτας
surrounded with-walls strong dwelt indeed then these
τηνικάδε καιροῦ Χριστιανῶν ἐσμοί, οἳ καὶ διὰ λέμβων
at-that-time of-time of-Christians swarms who also through boats
καὶ ἀκατίων τοῖς Ἰκονιεῦσι Τούρκοις ἐπιμιγνύμενοι οὐ
and skiffs with-the Ikonian Turks mixing not
μόνον τὴν πρὸς ἀλλήλους φιλίαν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκράτυναν, ἀλλὰ
only the with one-another friendship hence strengthened but
καὶ τοῖς ἐπιτηδεύμασιν αὐτῶν ἐν πλείοσι προσεσχήκασιν.
also to-the practices their in more(-things) have-attached(-themselves)
ἀμέλει καὶ ὡς ὁμοροῦσιν αὐτοῖς προστιθέμενοι Ῥωμαίους
indeed also as bordering-on them attaching-themselves (the)-Romans
ὡς ἐχθροὺς ὑπεβλέποντο· οὕτω χρόνῳ κρατυνθὲν ἔθος
as enemies regarded-with-suspicion thus by-time strengthened custom
γένους καὶ θρησκείας ἐστὶν ἰσχυρότερον. ὅθεν καὶ οἱ
than-race and than-religion is stronger whence also they

μὲν ὡς ἀντίπαλον τὸν βασιλέα κακῶς ἔφασκον, μηδ'
indeed as (an)-opponent the emperor badly spoke-of nor
ὑποκύψαι ὅλως τοῖς αὐτοῦ θεσμοῖς ἀπηυθαδιάζοντο, τῷ
to-submit at-all to-the his ordinances were-defiant with-the
ὑγρῷ φυσῶντες ζωστῆρι τῆς λίμνης, καὶ ἃ οὐκ ἂν
moist puffed-up girdle of-the lake and what-things not —
ᾠήθησαν φρονοῦντες, ταῦθ' ὡς παραφρονοῦντες
they-would-have-thought sane these(-things) as being-insane
διαπραττόμενοι. ὁ δὲ μεθίστασθαι παρῄνει τῆς λίμνης ὡς
doing he and to-move-away urged from-the lake as
παλαιοῦ Ῥωμαίων κτήματος, καὶ καθαρῶς προσχωρεῖν τοῖς
of-old of-(the)-Romans possession and purely to-go-over to-the
Πέρσαις, εἰ τοῦτο βούλοιντο· εἰ δὲ μὴ οὕτω δρῷεν, οὐκ
Persians if this they-wished if and not thus they-should-do not
ἂν ἀνασχέσθαι ὅλως διισχυρίζετο αὐτούς τε καὶ τὴν λίμνην
— to-endure at-all he-insisted them both and the lake
ἀπεξενῶσθαι Ῥωμαίων ἐπὶ μακρόν. μὴ προχωρούντων δὲ
to-be-estranged from-(the)-Romans for long not advancing and
τῶν ῥημάτων ἔργων πολεμίων ἥπτετο· ὅθεν ἁλιάδας καὶ
the words of-deeds hostile he-took-hold whence fishing-boats and
ἀκάτια σχεδιάσας καὶ ζεῦγμα διὰ τούτων ἐργασάμενος
skiffs having-improvised and (a)-bridge through these having-made
τὰς ἑλεπόλεις ἐπέστησεν ἄνωθεν, καὶ προσεπῆγεν οὕτω τοῖς
the city-takers he-set-up above and brought-up thus to-the
ἐπὶ τῆς λίμνης ἐρύμασιν. αὐτὰ μὲν οὖν ἐξελέσθαι ἴσχυσε,
on the lake fortifications them indeed then to-take he-was-able
πλὴν οὐχὶ καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι κακῶν ἀπείρατοι διεξέπλευσαν
however not also (the)-Romans of-evils untried sailed-through
τὸν τότε πόλεμον, ἀλλ' ἐνίοτε τὴν λίμνην ἀνέμου
the then war but sometimes the lake (a)-wind
διακυκήσαντος καὶ εἰς φλοῖσβον αὐτὴν ἀνοιδήσαντος
having-stirred-up and to surge it having-swollen

τῶν ὁλκάδων πολλαὶ παρηνέχθησαν καὶ τὸν φόρτον
of-the transports many were-carried-off and the cargo
ἐπανατραπέντα διαφῆκαν τῷ βυθῷ καὶ τοῖς κύμασιν.
overturned let-go to-the deep and to-the waves
Ἐν δὲ τοῖς καιροῖς τοῖσδε τὸν βίον μετήλλαξεν ὁ
in and the times these the life changed the
πρωτότοκος υἱὸς τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀλέξιος, ᾧ καὶ μετέδωκεν
first-born son of-the emperor Alexios to-whom also gave-a-share
οὗτος ἐρυθροῦ πεδίλου καὶ φοινικίδος βασιλικῆς. τῶν
this(-one) of-(the)-red sandal and of-(the)-purple-robe imperial of-the(-diseases)
δ' ὀξέων ἦν καὶ μὴ χρονίων τὸ νόσημα, τὸ δὲ εἶδος
and acute was and not chronic the disease the and form
πυρετὸς ἐπαιγίζων καὶ ὡς ἀκροπόλει τῇ κεφαλῇ ἐπιθέμενος.
(a)-fever storming and as (an)-acropolis the head having-attacked
ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁ μετ' αὐτὸν Ἀνδρόνικος, βραχύ τι ἐπιβιοὺς
but also the(-one) after him Andronikos little some having-survived
καὶ ὅσον ἐπικωκῦσαι τῷ κασιγνήτῳ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων
and as-much-as to-wail-over the brother from men
ἀπάραντι, τὸ λαχὸν κἀκεῖνος μέρος τῆς ζωῆς ἐξετόξευσε.
having-departed the allotted he-too share of-the life shot-out

XI · THE WOUND

Grief does not stop him: John marches again to Syria, avowedly to settle Armenia and its cities, secretly meaning to join Antioch to Constantinople, visit the holy places and the Lord's tomb, and clear the barbarians around them. Offered only a sworn, ceremonial entry into Antioch, he will not force the city, lets the army ravage its suburbs, and turns aside to the borders of Cilicia. Hunting a boar in the mountains, he wounds his hand on a poisoned arrow from his quiver. The wound spreads, he refuses the physicians' advice to cut off the hand, takes the sacraments at Easter, and prepares for death, and a flood at his camp is read as fulfilling an old oracle.

Καίπερ δὲ συμφοραῖς τηλίκαις καὶ καλλίστων παίδων
although and by-misfortunes so-great and of-finest children
ἀφιλοσοφήτοις ἀποβολαῖς κατακαμφθεὶς ὁ βασιλεὺς
unbearable-to-philosophy losses bent-down the emperor
τὴν ψυχήν, ἵνα μὴ λέγοιμι καὶ οἰωνοὺς ἀπαισίους τῆς
in-the soul that not I-may-say also omens ill-boding of-the
ὑπερέκεινα πορείας τοὺς θανάτους τῶν φιλτάτων ἔχων
beyond journey the deaths of-the dearest having
πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν, ὅμως οὐδέν τι καὶ πέπονθε μαλακὸν
before eyes nevertheless nothing at-all also he-has-suffered soft
ἢ καθυφῆκέ τι βραχὺ τῆς προθέσεως ἢ παλίμπους
or relaxed anything little of-the purpose or back-footed
ἐπανῆκεν εἰς τὸ Βυζάντιον, ἔτους ἤδη τελείου ἐπὶ τοῖς
returned to — Byzantium (a)-year already full upon the(-labors)
ἠθλημένοις τούτοις παριππευκότος, ἀλλ' ἐς Ἰσαυρίαν
struggled these having-ridden-by but to Isauria
ἀφιγμένος καὶ τὰ ἐκεῖθι πρὸς τὸ δέον καταστησάμενος
having-come and the(-affairs) there to the needful having-set
τῆς ἀνόπιν καὶ πρὸς Συρίαν ὁδοῦ εἴχετο, ἐφεπόμενον ἔχων
of-the up and to Syria road he-held following having
αὐτῷ τὸν ὑστερότοκον παῖδα τὸν Μανουήλ. ἦν δὲ ἡ μὲν
with-him the later-born son — Manuel was and the indeed
πρόδηλος τῆς στρατείας ταυτησὶ πρόθεσις ἡ τῆς Ἀρμενίας
avowed of-the campaign this purpose the — of-Armenia
πρὸς τὸ κρεῖττον μεθάρμοσις καὶ εἰς βεβαίαν κατάστασιν
to the better rearrangement and into secure settlement
συνοχὴ τῶν πόλεων καὶ φρουρίων, ὧν ἐγκρατὴς
holding-together of-the cities and forts of-which master
γεγένητο κατὰ τὴν προτέραν αὐτοῦ ἀνάβασιν· ἡ δ'
he-had-become in the former his expedition the and
ἀνέκφορος πρὸς τὸ στράτευμα λαθραία τε καὶ ἐνδόμυχος
unspoken to the army secret both and inward

καὶ ἐκ περισκέψεως κίνησις αὕτη ἦν. ἀεὶ δι᾽ ἔρωτος
and from circumspection motive this was always through desire
εἶχε συνάψαι τὴν Ἀντιόχου τῇ Κωνσταντίνου, κἀκ
he-had to-join the(-city) of-Antiochos to-the of-Constantine and-from
τοῦδε τοῖς θεοστιβέσι τόποις ἐπιφοιτῆσαι, καὶ δώροις
this the God-trodden places to-visit and with-gifts
μὲν καταστέψαι τὸν τοῦ κυρίου τάφον τὸν ζωοπάροχον,
indeed to-crown the of-the Lord tomb the life-giving
τὸ δὲ κύκλῳ βαρβαρικὸν ἀνακαθᾶραι. ὅθεν καὶ πᾶσαν
the and around barbarian(-host) to-clear-out whence also every
ἦν μετιὼν μηχανήν, εἴ πως ὑπεκσταῖεν ἑκόντες αὐτῷ
he-was pursuing device if somehow would-stand-aside willingly for-him
οἱ Λατῖνοι τῆς κυριαρχίας τῆς λογίμης Ἀντιοχείας, ἢ
the Latins from-the lordship of-the famous Antioch or
εἰ μὴ οὗτοι πείθοιντο (ἠπίστατο γὰρ τὴν Λατινικὴν
if not these should-be-persuaded he-knew for the Latin
κόρυζαν καὶ τὸ τοῦ φρονήματος αὐτῶν ἀταπείνωτον),
catarrh and the of-the spirit their unbumbled
οἱ δέ γε Κίλικες καὶ Σύροι προσρέψαιεν ἐκείνῳ.
the and at-least Cilicians and Syrians would-incline to-him
γράφων τοίνυν κατὰ τήνδε τὴν ἄνοδον καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ
writing therefore about this the going-up and the his
προσημαίνων τοῖς Ἀντιοχεῦσιν ἄφιξιν οὐδαμῶς ἀνίει, ὥστε
announcing to-the Antiochenes arrival in-no-way he-let-up so-that
καὶ μήπω τῶν ὁρίων ἐπιβὰς τῆς Συρίας πρεσβείαν
also not-yet the borders having-set-foot-on — of-Syria (an)-embassy
ἐφειλκύσατο ἐκεῖθεν μάλα ἀγαθὰς αὐτῷ τὰς ἐλπίδας ἐπὶ
he-drew thence very good to-him the hopes for
τοῖς μέλλουσιν ὑποβάλλουσαν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ Ἀντιόχου
the(-things) coming suggesting when and to-the of-Antiochos
προσήγγισεν, ἀλλοίους εὗρατο τὰς γνώμας τοὺς Ἰταλούς,
he-drew-near different he-found the minds the Italians

τῆς φήμης προαγγειλάσης ὁπόσα ἐνδόμυχα καὶ τῶν
the rumor having-announced-beforehand what-things (were)-inward and from-the
χειλέων τοῦ βασιλέως ἀπρόϊτα. μὴ γοῦν ῥᾳδίαν
lips of-the emperor not-gone-forth not at-any-rate easy
εὑρίσκων καὶ τῇ γνώμῃ συμβαίνουσαν τὴν ἐς τὴν
finding and with-the mind agreeing the into the(-city)
Ἀντιόχου πάροδον, ἀλλ' ἔνορκον ὁρῶν συγχωρουμένην
of-Antiochos access but sworn seeing granted
αὐτῷ τὴν εἰσέλευσιν καὶ τὸ ὅλον ἀπᾴδουσαν οἷς
to-him the entry and the whole discordant with-what
ὥρμαινε κατὰ ψυχήν, καὶ ὡς εἴπερ εἰσελεύσεται, πρὸς
he-was-eager in soul and that if-indeed he-will-enter for
ἡμέρας ἐνσκηνωσάμενος καὶ προσκυνηθεὶς καὶ τιμηθεὶς
days having-encamped and having-been-adored and having-been-honored
τὰ εἰκότα πάλιν ἐξελεύσεται, μηδέν τι νεοχμώσας
the(-things) fitting again he-will-go-out nothing at-all having-innovated
ἐπὶ τοῖς κατ' αὐτὴν πράγμασιν ἤ τι μετακινήσας τῶν
in the in it affairs or anything having-changed of-the
καθεστώτων ἐθῶν, ἀχθεσθεὶς ἐφ' οἷς ἐξηπάτητο, τὴν μὲν
established customs vexed at what he-had-been-deceived the indeed
εἴσοδον οὐ δέον κέκρικεν εἰσβιάζεσθαι, τὸν μετὰ Χριστιανῶν
entry not needful he-has-judged to-force the with Christians
πόλεμον παντάπασιν ἐκτρεπόμενος, ἐναυλισάμενος δὲ τοῖς
war altogether turning-away having-bivouacked and in-the
προαστείοις τῆς πόλεως κείρειν ἐνδίδωσι ταῦτα τῇ
suburbs of-the city to-ravage he-allows these to-the
στρατιᾷ καὶ ἀπάγειν ἅπαν τὸ ταῖς χερσὶν εὐμετάφορον.
army and to-carry-off all the with-the hands easily-carried
καὶ ἦν ἐκ τούτου τοῦ παραγγέλματος, πρόφασιν τὴν
and it-was from this the order (a)-pretext the
τῶν ἀναγκαίων ὑποσπάνισιν ἔχοντος, μηδὲ τὰ καρποφόρα
of-the necessities scarcity having nor the fruit-bearing

τῶν δένδρων ἀσινῆ παρεώμενα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταῦτα τῷ
of-the trees unharmed let-go but also these to-the
πυρὶ τῆς διαίτης παραδιδόμενα. κἀπὶ τούτοις ἐκμετρήσας
fire of-the provision being-handed-over and-on these having-measured-out
λεληθότως τὴν ἄμυναν πρὸς τὰ τῶν Κιλίκων παρενέκλινεν
secretly the revenge to the of-the Cilicians he-turned-aside
ὅρια. ἐν δ' εὐρυτάτῃ στρατοπεδευσάμενος φάραγγι, καθ'
borders in and widest having-encamped (a)-ravine in
ἣν ὄρη δικόρυμβα ἐπὶ πολὺ τοῦ ἀέρος ἀνέβαινον,
which mountains two-peaked to much of-the air rose
ἅπερ λόγος αἱρεῖ Κοράκων νοσσιὰς κικλήσκεσθαι, εἰς
which (the)-account holds of-Ravens nests to-be-called to
κυνηγέσιον ἔξεισι. καὶ συΐ προσυπαντήσας μοναδικῷ
hunting he-goes-out and (a)-boar having-met solitary
τὴν μὲν αἰχμὴν τῷ στέρνῳ τοῦ θηρίου ἐνήρεισε·
the indeed point into-the breast of-the beast he-thrust
πλείονι δὲ ὠθισμῷ τοῦ συὸς χρησαμένου καὶ ὅλον
with-greater and thrust the boar having-used and whole
τὸν σίδηρον εἰσδεξαμένου τοῖς σπλάγχνοις, ἡ κατέχουσα
the iron having-received in-the bowels the holding
χεὶρ τὸ ἀκόντιον ὑποναρκᾷ τε καὶ ὑπενδίδωσι πρὸς
hand the javelin grows-numb both and gives-way to
τὸ ἄγαν τῆς τοῦ θηρὸς ἀντωθήσεως, κἀντεῦθεν τοῦ
the excess of-the of-the beast counter-thrust and-thence from-the
εὐθέος παρενεχθεῖσα ἐγχρίπτει τῷ γωρυτῷ, ὃς παρὰ
straight being-carried-aside strikes the quiver which beside
πλευρὸν τοῦ βασιλέως ἐξήρτητο πλάγιος, στέγων ἔσωθεν
(the)-side of-the emperor hung crosswise holding within
ἰοβόλα βέλεμνα. ὅθεν τῆς φαρέτρας ἀνατραπείσης εἷς
venom-shooting missiles whence the quiver having-been-overturned one
τῶν διεκχυθέντων ἀτράκτων πλήττει τὸν βασιλέα κατὰ
of-the poured-out arrows strikes the emperor at

τὸ μεσεῦον δέρμα τῶν ὑστάτων δακτύλων τῆς χειρός.
the middle skin of-the last fingers of-the hand
ἀεὶ τοίνυν τοῦ φαρμάκου νεμομένου τὰ πρόσω καὶ
always therefore the poison spreading-to the(-parts) forward and
διατρέχοντος, καὶ περὶ αὐτὰ τὰ καίρια ἐπενσκήπτοντος,
running-through and about the-very the vital(-parts) falling-upon
καὶ κατὰ μικρὸν ἀπονεκροῦντος ταῦτα καὶ ἀποψύχοντος,
and by little deadening these and chilling
μετὰ μικρὸν τοῦ βίου μεθίσταται. τότε δ' οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς
after (a)-little from-the life he-departs then and then the emperor
παρ' οὐδὲν θέμενος τὸ ξέσμα τοῦ δέρματος ὑμένος
for nothing having-set the scratch of-the skin of-membrane
ἠκέσατο ἐπιθέματι ἣν φασὶν ἐκδοράν, ἐκ τοῦ τῶν ποδῶν
healed with-(a)-covering which they-call (a)-flaying from the of-the feet
ἀποσυρέντος καττύματος, σφαλερῶς ἐντεῦθεν πειρώμενος
drawn-off sole unsafely thence trying
τὸν προϊόντα ἐπισχεῖν ὕφαιμον ἰχῶρα τοῦ τραύματος.
the going-forth to-check bloody ichor of-the wound
ἐπανελθὼν οὖν πρὸς ἑσπέραν καὶ ἀριστήσας τὴν μὲν νύκτα
having-returned then toward evening and having-dined the indeed night
μετὰ ῥαστώνης διήνεγκε· τὴν δὲ μετὰ ταύτην ἡμέραν
with ease he-spent the and after this day
οἰδαίνειν καὶ σφύζειν ἀρξαμένου τοῦ τραύματος περιωδυνίαις
to-swell and to-throb having-begun the wound by-violent-pains
ἐβάλλετο, καὶ τίθησιν ἔκπυστον τοῖς ἰατροῖς τὸ συμβάν.
he-was-struck and makes known to-the physicians the event
οἱ δὲ τὸν τῆς χειρὸς ὄγκον ἰδόντες καὶ τὸ πρὸς
they and the of-the hand swelling having-seen and the(-thing) for
ἄκεσιν τεθὲν περιεργασάμενοι, αὐτὸ μὲν ὡς μὴ κατὰ
healing put having-examined it indeed as not according-to
θεσμοὺς νοσοκομίας παραληφθὲν ἀπήνεγκαν τῆς χειρός,
(the)-rules of-nursing applied they-removed from-the hand

φαρμάκοις δ᾽ ἄλλοις ἐχρήσαντο καταλεαίνειν δυναμένοις
with-drugs and other they-used to-soothe able
τὰ τῶν τραυμάτων φλεγμαίνοντα. ἐπεὶ δ᾽ εἰς οὐδὲν
the(-parts) of-the wounds inflamed when and into nothing
ἀνύσιμον ἀπετελεύτα τὰ φαρμακεύματα, πρὸς χειρουργίαν
effective ended the medicines to surgery
οἱ Ἀσκληπιάδαι βλέπουσι. τμηθέντος οὖν τοῦ οἰδήματος,
the Asclepiads look having-been-cut then the swelling
οὐδ᾽ οὕτω καταστολή τις καὶ ὑποχάλασις τοῦ πάσχοντος
not-even thus subsiding any and relaxation of-the suffering
μέρους ἐγίνετο, ἀλλ᾽ ὅ τε ὄγκος ἀεὶ ἐπὶ μεῖζον ἦρετο, ἐπὶ
part happened but the both swelling always to greater was-raised on
δακτύλῳ τε δάκτυλον καὶ καρπὸν ἐπὶ παλάμῃ, εἶτα πῆχυν,
finger both finger and wrist on palm then forearm
ἐπὶ δὲ τούτῳ βραχίονα ἐπενέμετο τὸ δεινόν, καὶ βασιλεὺς
on and this upper-arm spread the terror and (the)-emperor
τῶν χρηστοτέρων ἐλπίδων ἀπήγετο. ἀμέλει καὶ τοῖς
from-the better hopes was-led-away indeed also to-the
μὲν ἰατροῖς ἠπορημένοις παντάπασιν ἐδόκει τὴν χεῖρα
indeed physicians at-a-loss altogether it-seemed(-good) the hand
τοῦ βασιλέως ἀποτεμεῖν ἐς μηρὸν ἀνδρεῖον ἀδρυνθεῖσαν
of-the emperor to-cut-off to (a)-thigh of-(a)-man swollen
τῇ φλεγμονῇ, κατ᾽ ἀμφήριστον μέντοι καὶ τότε τοῦ
by-the inflammation in doubtful however also then of-the
πάσχοντος μέλους ἴασιν· βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ τὴν προτέραν
suffering limb (the)-cure (the)-emperor and also the former
τομὴν αἰτίαν τοῦ ξύμπαντος κακοῦ ξυνορώμενος οὐδ᾽
cutting (the)-cause of-the whole evil perceiving not-even
ὅλως τοῖς λεγομένοις ἐπένευσεν, ἀλλ᾽ ἔκειτο κάμνων,
at-all to-the(-things) said nodded but lay suffering
τὸ τῆς θεραπείας παριδὼν ἀμφίλογον. ἐπιστάσης
the of-the treatment having-disregarded doubtfulness having-come

δὲ τῆς πανευσήμου ἡμέρας τῆς Χριστοῦ ἀναστάσεως
and the all-auspicious day the of-Christ resurrection
τῶν θείων μυστηρίων ἐν μεθέξει γίνεται, καὶ πρὸς τὸ
of-the divine mysteries in participation he-becomes and to the
δεῖπνον ἀναπεσὼν ἀνῆκε τὴν αὐλαίαν πᾶσι τοῖς εἰσιέναι
supper having-reclined let-up the curtain for-all the(-ones) to-enter
καὶ δεηθῆναι θέλουσι. καὶ τῇ ἑξῆς ἡμέρᾳ τὸν αὐτὸν
and to-ask wishing and on-the next day the same
διαπραξάμενος τρόπον ὑποθήκῃ τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου
having-done manner on-(the)-advice of-the grand domestic
Ἰωάννου, καὶ τὰ παρατεθέντα βρώματα τοῖς παρεστῶσι
John and the set-before foods to-the(-ones) standing-by
διανειμάμενος, καθ' ἑαυτὸν ἔκτοτε ἰδιάσας περὶ τοῦ
having-distributed by himself from-then having-withdrawn about the
διαδόχου τῆς βασιλείας ἐγνώκει σκέπτεσθαι. ὑετοῦ δὲ
successor of-the empire he-had-decided to-consider rain and
κατενεχθέντος ῥαγδαίου, καὶ τῆς κοιλάδος καταρρύτου
having-come-down violent and the valley flooded
φανείσης ἐφ' ἧς ἐστρατοπεδεύετο, ἥ τε βασιλέως κλίνη
having-appeared on which he-was-encamped the both emperor's couch
μετεφέρετο πρὸς τὸ καθαρεῦον ὕδατος μέρος, καὶ αὐτὸς
was-carried to the clean of-water part and himself
ἐπὶ στόματος εἶχε τὸ φάσκον οὑτωσὶ χρησμῴδημα „τόποις
on mouth had the saying thus oracle in-places
δ' ἐν ὑγροῖς καὶ παρ' ἐλπίδα πέσῃς." οἱ δὲ τὰς
and in moist and contrary-to hope you-shall-fall they and the
τῶν βασιλέων διαδοχὰς καὶ μεταθέσεις φιλοκρινοῦντες καὶ
of-the emperors successions and changes curious-to-judge also
τοῦτο πέρας εἰληφέναι ἔλεγον, „ὦ πῶς γενήσῃ βρῶμα
this end to-have-received said O how you-shall-become food
δεινῶν κοράκων!" πῇ μὲν ἐς τὰ μέλανα καὶ σίζοντα
of-terrible ravens in-one-place indeed to the black and hissing

σιδήρια τὸ παλαίφατον τοῦτο λόγιον ἀφορᾶν ἰσχυριζόμενοι,
irons the old-famed this oracle to-refer insisting
δι᾽ ὧν ὁ καυτὴρ τῇ χειρὶ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐπενήνεκται,
through which the cautery to-the hand of-the emperor has-been-applied
πῇ δ᾽ ἐς τὸ τῶν βουνῶν προσώνυμον ἐφ᾽ ὧν ἐκεῖνος
in-another and to the of-the hills name on which he
κατεσκηνώκει τὸ προφοίβασμα ἀπολύοντες.
had-encamped the prophecy solving

XII · JOHN'S CHOICE AND DEATH

Dying, John gathers his kinsmen and the army and speaks of his labors and of the succession: of his two surviving sons, he passes over Isaac, the elder, who is irascible, and names Manuel, the younger, brave, gentle, and worthy, citing David and the precedents of Scripture. He has Manuel crowned and dies after a reign of twenty-four years and eight months. Niketas praises him as the best of the Komnenoi.

Ἐκκλησιάσας δ᾽ ἔπειτα τὸ συγγενὲς καὶ φίλιον καὶ ὁπόσον
having-assembled and then the kin and friends and as-many-as
ἐν ὑπεροχαῖς τε καὶ ἀξιώμασιν ἦν, καὶ παραστησάμενος
in preeminences both and dignities were and having-set-beside(-him)
τὸν ὑστερογενῆ παῖδα τὸν Μανουήλ, τοιάδε ἔλεξεν. „οὐκ
the later-born son — Manuel such(-words) he-said not
ἐπ᾽ ἐλπίσι μὲν ταῖς ὁρωμέναις, ἄνδρες Ῥωμαῖοι, Συρίαν
on hopes indeed the(-ones) seen men Romans Syria
κατέλαβον, ἀλλ᾽ ᾤμην τῶν προτέρων εὐκλεέστερα ἔργα
I-reached but I-thought than-the former more-glorious deeds
ἐνδείξασθαι, καὶ λούσασθαι μὲν ἀδεέστερον ἐν Εὐφράτῃ
to-display and to-bathe indeed more-fearlessly in (the)-Euphrates
καὶ τῶν τούτου ναμάτων πλησμίως ἀρύσασθαι, ἰδέσθαι δὲ
and of-the its streams to-the-full to-draw to-see and

καὶ Τίγριδα ποταμὸν καὶ διαθροῆσαι τοῖς ὅπλοις τὸ
also (the)-Tigris river and to-dismay with-the arms the(-power)
ἀνθιστάμενον, ὅσον τε προσρέπει τοῖς Κίλιξι καὶ ὅσον
opposing as-much-as both inclines to-the Cilicians and as-much-as
τοῖς ἐκ τῆς Ἄγαρ προσνένευκε, διαπτάσθαι δὲ καὶ
to-the(-ones) from — Hagar has-leaned to-fly-across and also
ὡς οἱ βασιλεῖς τῶν ὀρνίθων, εἰ καὶ μέγα τοῦτο εἰπεῖν
as the kings of-the birds if even great this to-say
ἐστί, πρὸς Παλαιστίνην αὐτήν, ὅπου τὸ τῆς ἡμετέρας
it-is to Palestine itself where the of-the our
φύσεως πτῶμα πεσὸν ἀνήγειρεν ὁ Χριστός, ἐπὶ σταυροῦ
nature fall having-fallen raised-up — Christ on (the)-cross
τὰς χεῖρας διεὶς καὶ μικραῖς ῥανίσι κόσμον ὅλον εἰς
the hands having-spread and with-small drops (the)-world whole into
ἕνωσιν ἀγαγών, ἀναβῆναι δὲ καὶ εἰς τὸ ὄρος κυρίου
union having-brought to-go-up and also into the mountain of-(the)-Lord
κατὰ τὸν ψάλλοντα καὶ στῆναι ἐν τόπῳ ἁγίῳ αὐτοῦ,
according-to the(-one) singing and to-stand in place holy his
μετελθεῖν δὲ πολέμου νόμῳ καὶ τὸ κύκλῳ πολέμιον, ὅπερ
to-pursue and of-war by-law also the around enemy(-host) which
ὡς τὴν πάλαι κιβωτὸν οἱ ἀλλόφυλοι, τὴν τοῦ κυρίου σορὸν
as the of-old ark the foreigners the of-the Lord tomb
πολλάκις εἶλε δορύκτητον. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἷς τρόποις τὸ θεῖον
often took spear-won since and in-what ways the divine
ἐπίσταται, οὔκουν δέδεκται πέρας τὰ προσδοκώμενα,
knows not-then has-received end the(-things) expected
ἀντιστῆναι μὲν ὅλως οὐκ ἔστιν, οὐδ' ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁρωμένοις
to-resist indeed at-all not it-is nor at the(-things) seen
χρεὼν ἀντειπεῖν. τίς γὰρ θεοῦ σοφώτερος; ἢ τίς
(is-it)-needful to-gainsay who for than-God wiser or who
μετελεύσει νοῦν κυρίου καὶ μεταμείψει τὰ τούτου
will-go-after (the)-mind of-(the)-Lord and will-change the his

κρίματα, ὑφελέσθαι ἢ προσθεῖναι τούτοις δεδυνημένος;
judgments to-take-away or to-add to-these having-been-able
σφαλεραὶ μὲν γὰρ αἱ τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐπίνοιαι, ἡ δὲ
unsafe indeed for the of-the men designs the and
τοῦ κυρίου βουλὴ ἀνεπιποίητός τε καὶ ἀμετάπτωτος.
of-the Lord counsel without-addition both and unchangeable
ἐν πολλοῖς δ' ὅσοις εὐχάριστος ἔχων δείκνυσθαι
in many and as-many-as grateful having to-be-shown
τῷ τὰ κατ' ἐμὲ συμφερόντως οἰκονομήσαντι,
to-the(-one) the(-things) about me profitably having-managed
ἃ καὶ ἀριθμὸν ὑπερπέπαικε σύμπαντα, τῷ τέως
which also number has-surpassed all to-the(-one) meanwhile
ἀνθομολογούμενος ἐφ' οἷς ἐμεγάλυνε τοῦ ποιῆσαι μεθ'
giving-thanks for what-things he-magnified of-the to-do with
ἡμῶν ἔλεος ἐπ' ἀκροαταῖς ὑμῖν καὶ τῶν λεγομένων
us mercy before hearers you and of-the(-things) said
εἰδήμοσι τάδε φημί. ἐκ πατρὸς βασιλέως ἔφυν,
knowing these(-things) I-say from (a)-father emperor I-was-born
ἀρχῆς γεγένημαι τῆς ἐκείνου διάδοχος, οὐδὲν ἀπεβαλόμην
of-rule I-have-become the his successor nothing I-cast-away
ὧν εἰς χεῖράς μοι παραδέδωκεν. εἰ δὲ κατ' εὐγνώμονα
of-what into hands to-me he-has-handed-over if and as (a)-considerate
καὶ πιστὸν ὑπηρέτην ἐπεξειργασάμην τὸ παρασχεθέν μοι
and faithful servant I-worked-out the given to-me
θεόθεν τῆς βασιλείας τάλαντον, ἄλλοις σκοπεῖν καὶ λέγειν
from-God of-the empire talent to-others to-consider and to-say
ἀφίημι· καὶ αὐτὸς δὲ ἀνεπαχθῶς διηγησαίμην ἄν, οὐκ
I-leave and I-myself too inoffensively would-relate — not
ἐναβρυνόμενος ἀλλὰ τὰ περὶ ἐμὲ θαυμάσια τοῦ θεοῦ
priding-myself but the about me wonders — of-God
διηγούμενος. ἕως με καὶ δυσμὴ μαχόμενον ἔβλεψε, τὰ πρὸς
relating while me also (the)-west fighting saw the toward

ἄμφω τὰς ἠπείρους ἔθνη μετῆλθον. ὀλίγα τοῖς ἀνακτόροις
both the mainlands peoples I-went-after (a)-little in-the palace
προσέμεινα· ὁ βίος σχεδόν μοι ἅπας ἐπὶ σκηνῆς, καὶ τὸ
I-stayed the life almost for-me all on (a)-tent and the
αἰθριάζειν ἀεί μοι περιεσπούδαστο. ἡ γῆ αὕτη ἐφ'
to-live-in-the-open always for-me had-been-zealously-pursued the land this on
ἧς νῦν στρατοπεδευόμεθα, δίς με ἤδη προσέβλεψε· καὶ
which now we-are-encamped twice me already has-looked-upon and
ἣν μακρὸς ἐξ οὗ χρόνος ὀφθαλμοῖς οὐκ εἶδον στρατιὰν
which long from which (a)-time with-eyes not saw army
Ῥωμαίων Πέρσαι καὶ Ἄραβες, ταύτην ἔτρεσαν ἄρτι ἐφ'
of-(the)-Romans Persians and Arabs this feared just-now under
ἡγεμόνι θεῷ καὶ ὑποστρατήγῳ ἐμοί, καὶ πολλῶν πόλεων
leader God and lieutenant-general me and of-many cities
ἡμῖν ὑπεξέστησαν, ὧν ἐς δεῦρο κύριοι καθεστήκαμεν, αἳ
to-us they-withdrew of-which to here masters we-are-established which
καὶ ζῶσι κατὰ τὰ ἡμῶν προστάγματα. καὶ δοίη κύριος
also live by the our commands and may-give (the)-Lord
ὁ θεὸς ἐμοὶ μὲν ὑπερμογήσαντι τοῦ τῶν Χριστιανῶν
— God to-me indeed having-toiled-greatly for-the of-the Christians
πληρώματος κλῆρον ἐκεῖ καὶ μερίδα ἀΐδιον, ἣν
full-number (an)-inheritance there and (a)-portion everlasting which
οἱ πραεῖς καὶ εὐάρεστοι αὐτῷ ἀπολήψονται· ὑμῶν δ'
the meek and well-pleasing to-him will-receive of-you and
ἔτι κραταιῶσαι τὰς χεῖρας καὶ ἐνισχῦσαι κατὰ τῶν
still to-strengthen the hands and to-make-strong against the
τοὺς πολέμους ἐθελόντων ἐθνῶν, καὶ παρ' οἷς οὐδαμῶς
the wars wishing peoples and among whom in-no-way
ἐπικέκληται τὸ ἅγιον καὶ ὑπὲρ πᾶν ὄνομα τοῦ θεοῦ ἡμῶν.
has-been-invoked the holy and above every name — of-God our
ἐσεῖται δὲ ταῦτα, εἰ καὶ ὑμεῖς τῆς δεξιᾶς τοῦ ὑψίστου
it-shall-be and these(-things) if also you on-the right of-the Most-High

καὶ τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ βραχίονος ἐξαρτᾶτε τὸ κατορθούμενον, καὶ
and of-the lofty arm hang the success and
ἡγεμὼν ὑμῖν θεόθεν δοθήσεται, μὴ δημοβόρος τις καὶ
(a)-leader to-you from-God will-be-given not people-devouring (a)-certain and
τὴν κλῆσιν ψευδόμενος ἢ τὸ ἦθος ἀνώμαλος καὶ περὶ
the name belying or in-the character uneven and over
τράπεζαν κεκυφὼς καὶ ὀχῶν ἀεὶ τοῖς δακτύλοις τὸν
(the)-table stooped and holding always with-the fingers the
κύαθον καὶ τῶν ἀνακτόρων μηδαμῶς ἀποσπώμενος, ὅσα
ladle and from-the palace in-no-way being-drawn-away just-as
καὶ οἱ ἐν τοῖς τοίχοις διὰ ψηφίδων καὶ χρωμάτων
also the(-figures) on the walls through mosaics and colors
εἰκονιζόμενοι, ὅτι καὶ φιλεῖ πως τῇ κατὰ τὸν ἄρχοντα
portrayed for also is-wont somehow with-the of the ruler
διαθέσει συνδιατίθεσθαι τὰ πάντα καὶ ἕπεσθαι· ἅτε
disposition to-be-disposed-together the all(-things) and to-follow inasmuch-as
γὰρ δι' αὐτὸν ἀρχῆθεν γενόμενα, κακυνομένου
for through him from-the-beginning having-come(-to-be) being-corrupted
μὲν τοῦδε καὶ αὐτὰ μεταβάλλεται, ἀγαθυνομένου δὲ πάλιν
indeed he also they are-changed being-improved and again
πρὸς τὴν ἐναντίαν φορὰν ἐπανίασιν, ὡς τοῦ θεοῦ κατὰ
to the opposite course they-return as — God according-to
τὸν Δαβὶδ τοῖς ἀγαθοῖς καὶ εὐθέσιν ἀγαθύνοντος, τοὺς δὲ
— David to-the good and upright doing-good the(-ones) and
ἐκκλίνοντας εἰς τὰς στραγγαλίας μετὰ τῶν ἐργαζομένων
turning-aside to the crooked-ways with the(-ones) working
τὴν πονηρίαν ἀπάγοντος. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ περὶ τοῦ
the wickedness leading-away since and also about the(-one)
διαδεξομένου μοι τὴν ἀρχὴν μετὰ τὴν ἐμὴν ἐκβίωσιν,
going-to-succeed me the rule after the my departure-from-life
ἥτις δὴ καὶ ἐφέστηκεν ἤδη ἀνυπεξάλυκτος, εἰπεῖν τι
which indeed also has-come already inescapable to-say something

προάγομαι, χρεὼν τοῖς εἰρημένοις προσσχεῖν. ὅτι
I-am-led needful to-the(-things) said to-attend that
μὲν γὰρ ὡς πατρῷος κλῆρος εἰς ἐμὲ τὸ βασιλεύειν
indeed for as paternal inheritance to me the to-reign
ἐπικαταβέβηκεν, οὐ δέομαι λέγειν, ὡς οὐδέ τις ἕτερος
has-come-down not I-need to-say as nor anyone other
λαμπτῆρα τῆς ἡμέρας ἀποφαίνειν τὸν ἥλιον. ὁρῶν δὲ τὴν
(a)-lamp of-the day to-show the sun seeing and the
ἐπ᾽ ἐμοὶ τηρηθεῖσαν πρὸς πατρὸς τάξιν κἀπὶ τοὺς ἐξ
in me kept by (the)-father order also-to the(-ones) from
ὀσφυος μου προελθόντας διαβῆναι προθυμουμένους ὑμᾶς,
loins my having-come-forth to-pass eager you
καὶ ὑφ᾽ ἑνὸς τῶν ἔτι παριόντων μοι τῷ βίῳ παίδων
and by one of-the still surviving me in-the life sons
(Ἰσαάκιος οὗτοι καὶ Μανουήλ) ἄρχεσθαι γλιχομένους, καὶ
Isaac these and Manuel to-be-ruled longing and
μηδ᾽ αὐτὴν τὴν ἐπιλογὴν ἑαυτοῖς τῇ δ᾽ ἐμῇ ψήφῳ
not-even the-very the choice to-yourselves to-the and my vote
ἀνατιθέντας, φημὶ δὴ ὡς ἡ μὲν φύσις τοῖς πρωτοτόκοις
referring I-say indeed that the indeed nature to-the first-born
παισὶ τῇ τάξει ἐμμένουσα τὰ πρωτεῖα βραβεύειν εἴωθε,
children in-the order abiding the first-prizes to-award is-wont
παρὰ δὲ θεῷ οὐχ οὕτως ἐν ταῖς τῶν προβλήσεων
with and God not thus in the of-the appointments
μεγίσταις ἀεί πως φιλεῖ γίνεσθαι. ἀναλογίσασθε τὸν
greatest always somehow is-wont to-be consider —
Ἰσαὰκ τοῦ Ἰσμαὴλ κατὰ γέννησιν δευτερεύοντα, τὸν
Isaac than-the Ishmael in birth second —
Ἰακὼβ μετὰ τὸν Ἠσαῦ νηδύος ἐκθορόντα τῆς μητρικῆς,
Jacob after — Esau from-(the)-womb having-leapt the maternal
τὸν Μωϋσῆν τοῦ Ἀαρὼν ὕστερον, τὸν Δαβὶδ αὐτὸν
— Moses than-the Aaron later — David himself

μικρὸν ἐν τοῖς ἀδελφοῖς ὄντα κἂν τῷ πατρικῷ οἴκῳ
small among the brothers being and-in the paternal house
νεώτερον, καὶ ἑτέρους δὲ ὡς πλείστους. οὐ γὰρ τὸ θεῖον
younger and others too as very-many not for the divine
ἐς πρόσωπον κατ᾽ ἄνθρωπον ἀφορᾷ, καὶ βραβεύει τῷ
to (the)-face as man looks and awards by-the
χρόνῳ τὰ τίμια, πολιαῖς καὶ ἡλικίαις προσκείμενον, ἀλλ᾽
time the honors to-gray-hairs and ages attached but
εὐγενείᾳ χαῖρον ψυχῆς ἐπὶ τὸν πρᾶον βλέπει καὶ ἥμερον
in-nobility rejoicing of-soul on the meek looks and gentle
καὶ τὸν αὐτοῦ φυλάττοντα τὰ ἐντάλματα. κατὰ
and the(-one) his keeping the commandments according-to
ταῦτα τοιγαροῦν καὶ αὐτὸς οὐ τῇ δεκαστρίᾳ φύσει
these(-things) accordingly also I not to-the ten-month nature
τὰ πολλὰ χαριζόμενος, ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεσμοὺς αὐτῆς ὅσα
the most(-things) granting but the ordinances its just-as
καὶ γυναικὸς σμικρογνώμονος διαβούλια ἐν τοῖς καιρίοις
also of-(a)-woman small-minded counsels in the timely
παρακρουόμενος πράγμασι, μιμεῖσθαι μᾶλλον προάγομαι
setting-aside affairs to-imitate rather I-am-led
τὸν προσωποληψίας πάσης ἀνώτερον θεόν. εἰ μὲν οὖν
the than-respect-of-persons all higher God if indeed then
κατὰ τὸ ἀναμφίλογον ἐς τὸν καθ᾽ ἡλικίαν προήκοντα
by the indisputable to the in age first
παῖδά μοι τὸν Ἰσαάκιον μετέβαινεν ἡ ἀρχή, κατ᾽ οὐδὲν
son my — Isaac passed the rule in nothing
ἄν μοι λόγων ἐδέησεν εἰς παράστασιν τῆς
— for-me of-words would-there-have-been-need for (a)-proof of-the
ἀμφοῖν μοι τοῖν παίδοιν φύσεως· ἐπεὶ δὲ πρὸς τὸν
of-both my of-the sons nature since and to the
ὑστερότοκον Μανουὴλ ἡ βασιλεία μᾶλλον προσνένευκεν,
later-born Manuel the empire rather has-inclined

ἐκκλίνων τὸ καχύποπτον τῶν πολλῶν καὶ τὸ δόξαι παρά
avoiding the suspicion of-the many and the to-seem among
τισιν ὡς φίλτρῳ μᾶλλον καὶ οὐκ ἀρετῇ προστιθέμενος
some as by-love rather and not by-virtue attached
τοῦ προτέρου παιδὸς τὸν ὑστερότοκον προτετίμηκα,
than-the former son the later-born I-have-preferred
ἀναγκαίως τὰ εἰκότα ῥηθήσεται. οὐ μία τίς ἐστι τῷ
necessarily the(-things) fitting will-be-said not one some is for-the
γένει τῶν ἐπιθυμιῶν ὁδός, ἀλλ᾽ εἰς ἀτραπιὰς παμπόλλας
race of-the desires (a)-road but into paths very-many
διέσχισται, ὥσπερ καὶ τὰ τῶν σωμάτων μορφώματα, εἰ
it-has-split just-as also the of-the bodies shapes if
καὶ τὴν αὐτὴν ἄνθρωποι φύσιν ἐκληρωσάμεθα. ἄλλαις
even the same men nature we-have-been-allotted by-other
γὰρ ὀρέξεσιν ἄλλοι προσπάσχομεν, οὐδὲ χαίρομεν ἅπαντες
for appetites others we-are-affected nor we-rejoice all
ὁμοθυμαδὸν ταῖς αὐταῖς. εἰ γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν, εἴχομεν ἂν καὶ
with-one-mind in-the same if for this were we-would-have — both
πρὸς θεοῦ καὶ πρὸς ἀλλήλων τὸ ἀνεπέγκλητον ὡς ταῖς
with God and with one-another the blamelessness as with-the
αὐταῖς ἡδοναῖς τε καὶ γνώμαις ἀναγκαστῶς ἐπιχαίνοντες.
same pleasures both and opinions by-necessity gaping
καὶ τῶν υἱέων μοι γοῦν ἡ δυάς, εἰ καὶ ἐκ πατρὸς
and of-the sons my at-any-rate the pair if even from father
ἑνὸς προελήλυθεν, εἰς γνώμας ἀπομερίζεται διαφόρους.
one has-come-forth into minds is-divided different
καλοὶ μὲν γὰρ καὶ ἀμφότεροι, καὶ ῥώμῃ σώματος
good indeed for also both and in-strength of-body
καὶ εἴδους σεμνότητι καὶ φρενῶν βαθύτητι διαπρέποντες·
and of-form in-dignity and of-mind in-depth excelling
καλλίων δέ μοι ὡς μάλιστα διαδείκνυται περὶ τὴν τῆς
better and to-me as most is-shown for the of-the

ἀρχῆς κυβέρνησιν ὁ ὑστερογενὴς Μανουήλ. ὁ μὲν γὰρ
rule steering the later-born Manuel — indeed for
Ἰσαάκιος ἀκρόχολος πολλάκις παρέστη μοι, καὶ ἀφ' ἧς
Isaac hot-tempered often has-stood-by me and from whatever
ἔτυχε προφάσεως παροξυνόμενος ἐν τῷ νοσεῖν ἀμετρίαν
happened pretext provoked in the to-be-sick (an)-excess
θυμοῦ, ὃς ἀπόλλυσι καὶ σοφοὺς καὶ δι' ὃν μετ'
of-anger which destroys even wise(-men) and because-of which with
ἀβουλίας οἱ πλεῖστοι πράσσουσιν· ὁ δὲ σὺν τῷ λοιπῷ
folly the most act he and with the rest
τῶν ἀρετῶν ὁρμαθῷ, ὧν οὐδ' Ἰσαάκιος ἀπεξένωται,
of-the virtues string of-which not-even Isaac is-estranged
οὐδὲ τοῦ καλοῦ χρήματος ἀπῴκισται τῆς πραότητος,
nor from-the good thing is-removed the mildness
εὐμαρῶς ἐνδιδοὺς πρὸς τὸ χρήσιμον καὶ πειθήνιος λόγῳ
easily yielding to the useful and obedient to-reason
δεικνύμενος. ἐπειδὴ τοίνυν ἀκακίᾳ μᾶλλον καρδίας,
showing(-himself) since therefore by-guilelessness rather of-heart
ᾗ καὶ Δαβὶδ ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ προφήτης ἐκέκαστο, ἢ
with-which also David the king and prophet excelled than
χειρὶ ψηλαφώσῃ τὸ ξίφος καὶ γνώμῃ λεπτουργούσῃ
by-(a)-hand groping-for the sword and by-(a)-mind refining
τὰ τῶν ἀρχομένων πλημμελήματα φιλοῦμεν ὑπάγεσθαι
the of-the subjects faults we-love to-be-led
ἄνθρωποι, τὸν Μανουὴλ ἐς βασιλέα κατὰ τόδε προκέκρικα.
(we)-men — Manuel to emperor in this I-have-preferred
δέξασθε τοίνυν τὸν μείρακα καὶ ὡς θεόχριστον ἄνακτα
receive therefore the youth and as God-anointed lord
καὶ ὡς δι' ἐπιψηφίσεως ἐμῆς βασιλεύοντα. ὅτι δὲ
and as through vote my reigning that and
καὶ θεὸς αὐτὸν εἰς βασιλέα προκέκρικε καὶ προώρισε,
also God him to emperor has-preferred and foreordained

τεκμήριον αἱ πολλαὶ προρρήσεις καὶ τὰ τῶν θεοφιλῶν
(a)-proof (are)-the many predictions and the of-the God-loving
ἀνδρῶν προθεσπίσματα, ἃ πάντα βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
men prophecies which all emperor of-(the)-Romans
τὸν Μανουὴλ προκατήγγελλον. τὸ δὲ καὶ τοὺς παρ᾽ ἐμοῦ
— Manuel foretold the and also the by me
προκριθέντας πρότερον εἰς τὸ ἄρχειν υἱέας μοι τεθνηκέναι,
preferred formerly for the to-rule sons my to-have-died
ἀπεῖναι δὲ καὶ τὸν κατὰ γένεσιν μετ᾽ ἐκείνους εἰς
to-be-absent and also the(-one) in birth after them to
τὴν βασιλείαν καλούμενον Ἰσαάκιον, ποῦ θήσει τις; ἢ
the empire called Isaac where will-put anyone or
πάντως καὶ ταῦτα σύμβολα εἴποιμεν ἂν ἐναργέστατα
wholly also these(-things) signs we-would-call — clearest
τοῦ τὸν θεὸν οὐχ ἕτερον βούλεσθαι, τὸν δὲ Μανουὴλ τὰ
of-the — God not another to-wish — and Manuel the
σκῆπτρα Ῥωμαίων χειρίζεσθαι. εἰ δέ τις ἐθέλει σκοπεῖν,
scepters of-(the)-Romans to-handle if and anyone wishes to-consider
οὐδ᾽ ἐμὲ τὸν πατέρα ἐπόψεται δῶρον παντάπασι τῷ
not-even me the father will-he-see (as)-a-gift altogether to-the
παιδὶ τὴν βασιλείαν βραβεύοντα καὶ τῇ διαδοχῇ τοῦ
son the empire awarding and to-the succession of-the
γένους τὸ ὅλον προσρέποντα, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἆθλον ἀρετῆς
family the whole inclining but also (as)-a-prize of-virtue
τὴν προχείρισιν αὐτῷ παρεχόμενον. ἴστε γάρ, ἴστε
the appointment to-him granting you-know for you-know
ὅσα καὶ παρ᾽ ἡλικίαν ἐν Νεοκαισαρείᾳ ἠρίστευσε,
what-things also beyond (his)-age at Neokaisareia he-excelled-in
καὶ τὴν κατὰ Περσῶν ἐκείνην γενναίαν ἐμβολήν, δι᾽
and the against Persians that noble charge because-of
ἣν ὁ μὲν πατὴρ ἔγωγε ἠγωνίων, περὶ τῷ φιλτάτῳ
which the indeed father I was-in-agony about the dearest

παιδὶ τὰ μέγιστα δεδιώς, τὰ δὲ Ῥωμαίων ἀνερρώσθη
son the greatest(-things) fearing the and of-(the)-Romans revived
πράγματα.” ταῦτα ὁ μὲν βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἐφθέγξατο·
affairs these(-things) the indeed emperor John uttered
ἡ δ’ ἐκκλησία ἐπικωκύσασα τοῖς εἰρημένοις τὸν
the and assembly having-cried-out at-the(-things) said —
Μανουὴλ ὡσεὶ κληρωτὸν εἴτε καὶ χειροτονητὸν ἀσμένως
Manuel as-if chosen-by-lot or also elected-by-show-of-hands gladly
εἰς βασιλείαν ἐδέξατο. ἔπειτα τὸν λόγον πρὸς τὸν παῖδα
into empire received then the speech to the son
μετενεγκὼν ὁ πατήρ, καὶ τούτῳ παραινέσας τὰ
having-turned the father and to-him having-advised the(-things)
σύμφορα, ταινίᾳ διαδεῖ τῇ βασιλικῇ καὶ τὴν χλαμύδα
profitable with-(a)-fillet binds the imperial and the cloak
ἐπενδύει τὴν περιπόρφυρον. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις συναθροισθέντα
puts-on the purple-bordered after and these gathered
κατὰ πρόσκλησιν τὰ στρατεύματα βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων
by summons the armies emperor of-(the)-Romans
ἀνεῖπον τὸν Μανουήλ, ἑκάστου τῶν μεγιστάνων μετὰ τῆς
proclaimed — Manuel each of-the magnates with the
οἰκείας τάξεως διακριδὸν ἐφισταμένου καὶ διατρανοῦντος
own rank separately standing-forth and making-clear
τὴν εὐφημίαν τῷ νέῳ ἄνακτι. ἐφεξῆς δὲ καὶ τῶν θείων
the acclamation for-the new lord next and also the divine
προτεθέντων λογίων, ἐπ’ αὐτῶν ἐμπεδοῦνται τῷ Μανουὴλ
set-forth oracles on them are-confirmed — to-Manuel
τὰ τῆς εὐνοίας καὶ πίστεως πρὸς παντός. ἦν δὲ ὁ
the(-pledges) of-the goodwill and faith by every(-one) was and the
τῶν δρωμένων τούτων εἰσηγητής τε ἅμα καὶ
of-the(-things) being-done these proposer both at-the-same-time and
τελετάρχης ὁ μέγας δομέστικος, ἐκλῦσαι διανοούμενος
master-of-ceremonies the grand domestic to-loosen intending

ἐντεῦθεν καὶ διαχαλάσαι τοῦ μετεωρισμοῦ καὶ τῆς
hence and to-relax from-the excitement and of-the
στάσεως τὰς τῶν φιλάρχων ἐφέσεις καὶ τὰς τῶν πλείστων
faction the of-the power-lovers desires and the of-the most
ἀμβλῦναι συνδρομὰς πρὸς ἐνίους τῶν πρὸς γένους
to-blunt concourses to some of-the(-ones) by kin
τῷ βασιλεῖ, οἳ τὴν πρεσβυγένειαν ὡς μέγα τι καὶ
to-the emperor who the seniority as great something and
αἰδέσιμον προβαλλόμενοι καὶ τὸ κῆδος μεγεθύνοντες τὸ
venerable putting-forward and the alliance magnifying the
βασίλειον ἑαυτοῖς τὸ ἄρχειν ὡς ἀξιωτέροις ἀπένεμον.
imperial to-themselves the to-rule as more-worthy assigned
Τούτων δ' οὑτωσὶ τελεσθέντων ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης
these(-things) and thus having-been-accomplished the emperor John
μεθ' ἡμέρας τὸν βίον ἐκλέλοιπε, βασιλεύσας ἔτη τέσσαρα
after days the life has-left having-reigned years four
πρὸς τοῖς εἴκοσι καὶ μῆνας ὀκτώ, ἀνὴρ καὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν
besides the twenty and months eight (a)-man both the rule
ἄριστα διῳκηκὼς καὶ θεῷ εὐαρέστως βεβιωκώς, καὶ
best having-administered and to-God pleasingly having-lived and
τὰ πρὸς ἦθος οὐκ ἔκλυτος οὐδ' ἀκόλαστος, κἀπὶ
the(-things) as-to character not dissolute nor licentious and-in
ταῖς δωρεαῖς τε καὶ δαπάναις μεταδιώξας μεγαλοπρέπειαν·
the gifts both and expenditures having-pursued magnificence
καὶ δηλοῦσιν αἵ τε διὰ χρυσίνων πρὸς τοὺς τῆς πόλεως
and show(-it) the both through gold-pieces to the of-the city
οἰκήτορας συχναὶ διαδόσεις, καὶ τῶν ναῶν ὁπόσους
inhabitants frequent distributions and of-the churches as-many-as
καλλίστους καὶ μεγίστους ἐκ βάθρων ἐδείματο. ἀλλὰ
finest and greatest from foundations he-built but
καὶ δόξης ἐραστὴς ὑπὲρ ἄλλον ἅπαντα γεγονὼς τοῦ
also of-glory (a)-lover beyond other all having-become of-the

καταλιπεῖν ἐν τοῖς ἔπειτα μέγιστον ἑαυτοῦ ὄνομα τὰ
to-leave in the(-times) after (a)-greatest his-own name the
πάντα τιμώμενος ἦν. τοσοῦτον δὲ καὶ τῆς τῶν οἰκείων
all(-things) valuing he-was so-much and also of-the of-the household
εὐσχημοσύνης καὶ τοῦ αἰδήμονος τρόπου ἐξείχετο, ὡς καὶ
seemliness and of-the modest manner he-held so-that also
κουρὰν περιεργάζεσθαι τριχὸς καὶ τὸ τοῦ ποδὸς σκύτος
(the)-cut to-scrutinize of-hair and the of-the foot leather
περιαθρεῖν, εἰ κατὰ λόγον καὶ πρὸς τὸ τοῦ ὑποδουμένου
to-look-about if according-to reason and to the of-the shod(-foot)
σχῆμα ὑπέρραπτο. ἀργολογίαν δὲ καὶ σαπρολογίαν τὴν
shape it-had-been-sewn idle-talk and also foul-talk the
ἐπὶ κοινῆς ἀκροάσεως καὶ τὸ ἐν ἱματισμοῖς καὶ διαίταις
in common hearing and the in garments and ways-of-living
ἄσωτον, ὅσα καὶ λύμην τινὰ βιοφθόρον, τῶν ἀνακτόρων
prodigal just-as also ruin some life-destroying from-the palace
ἀπεσάρωσε, καὶ τὸν ἐμβριθῆ χαρακτηρίζων σωφρονιστήν,
he-swept-out and the stern representing (a)-chastener
καὶ μιμητὰς ἑαυτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὸ χεῖρα εἶναι γλιχόμενος,
and imitators of-himself the(-ones) under hand to-be longing
πᾶσαν ἀρετῆς ἰδέαν μετιὼν οὐκ ἀνίει. οὐ μὴν ταῦτά
every of-virtue form pursuing not he-let-up not indeed these(-things)
γε πράττων χαρίτων ἀπείχετο, καὶ δυσξύμβλητος ἦν καὶ
at-least doing from-graces he-abstained and hard-to-meet was and
δυσπρόσιτος καὶ στυγνὸς τὴν ὄψιν καὶ συννεφὴς τὴν ὀφρὺν
hard-to-approach and gloomy in-the face and cloudy in-the brow
καὶ ἀεί πως ὑποσκυζόμενος. ἑαυτὸν δ' ἐν τῷ προδήλῳ
and always somehow scowling himself and in the open
πάσης πράξεως ἀρίστης πίνακα προτιθείς, ἄγων σχολὴν
of-every deed best (a)-picture setting-forth keeping aloof
τῶν ἐκτός, καὶ τὸ περιορᾶσθαι ὑπὸ πλείστων ὅσα καὶ
from-the(-things) outside and the to-be-looked-at by very-many just-as also

κώδωνα φλύαρον καὶ λάλον ἀποτρεπόμενος, καὶ κομψείαν
(a)-bell foolish and chattering turning-from and elegance
σεμνὴν εἰσῳκίζετο καὶ τὸν εὐτράπελον οὐ παρέτρεχεν,
dignified he-brought-in and the witty-(man) not he-passed-over
οὐδ' ἐπεῖχεν ἐπίπαν καὶ ἤγχε τὸν γέλωτα. ὀλίγα οὖν
nor held-back altogether and choked the laughter (in)-few(-things) then
τοῦ ἐς ἄκρον ἀποσφαλεὶς ἐγκρατοῦς τε καὶ ἀσφαλοῦς,
from-the to (the)-summit having-failed of-self-controlled both and secure
καὶ τῶν πρὸς ἐντελῆ ἀκρίβειαν βραχέα διεκπεσών,
and of-the(-things) toward complete exactness (in)-little having-fallen-short
καὶ μηδένα διὰ ξυμπάσης αὐτῷ τῆς ἀρχῆς ἢ ψυχῆς
and nobody through all to-him the rule either of-soul
στερήσας ἢ ἐς τὸ σῶμα ὁσονοῦν λυμηνάμενος, ἐπαινετὸς
having-deprived or in the body however-little having-harmed praiseworthy
ἐς δεῦρο παρὰ πᾶσι λελόγισται καὶ κορωνὶς ὡς εἰπεῖν
to now among all he-has-been-reckoned and (the)-crown so-to speak
τῶν ὅσοι Ῥωμαίων ἐκ τοῦ τῶν Κομνηνῶν γένους
of-the(-ones) as-many-as of-(the)-Romans from the — of-Komnenoi race
ὑπερεκάθισαν, ἵνα μὴ λέγοιμι ὡς καὶ πολλοῖς τῶν ἀνόπιν
sat-above that not I-may-say that also many of-the back
ἀρίστων τοῖς μὲν ἠμιλλήσατο τοὺς δὲ καὶ παρήνεγκεν.
best with-some indeed he-vied the(-ones) and also he-surpassed

MANUEL I, BOOK ONE

I · MANUEL'S ACCESSION

Manuel is proclaimed emperor in Cilicia and sends the grand domestic John Axouch ahead to the City, with a decree in red ink granting the clergy silver, to secure the palace and to seize his elder brother, the sebastokrator Isaac, who is shut up in the Pantokrator monastery. Manuel brings his father's body home by ship. On the way his cousin Andronikos and Theodore Dasiotes, turning aside to hunt, are captured by the Turks; Manuel later frees them without ransom. Niketas describes Manuel, tall, neither pale nor sunburnt but tending to dark, and wise beyond his years from his youth.

Ἀναρρηθεὶς οὖν ὁ Μανουὴλ αὐτοκράτωρ εὐθέως τὸν
proclaimed then — Manuel autocrat at-once the
μέγαν δομέστικον, ᾧ κλῆσις ἦν Ἰωάννης, Ἀξοῦχος δὲ
grand domestic whose name was John Axouch and
ἡ ἐπίκλησις, ἐς τὴν βασιλίδα πόλιν ἐξέπεμψε, σὺν αὐτῷ
the surname to the queen city sent-out with him
δὲ καὶ τὸν χαρτουλάριον Βασίλειον τὸν Τζιντζιλούκην, εὖ
and also the chartoularios Basil the Tzintziloukes well
μὲν καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὴν νέαν διαθήσοντας βασιλείαν καὶ
indeed both the(-things) about the new going-to-arrange empire and
προομαλίσοντας τὴν εἰσέλευσιν καὶ κατασκευασομένους
going-to-smooth-beforehand the entry and going-to-prepare
ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ τὰ εἰσόδια, μετελευσομένους δὲ καὶ τὸν
before him the entrance-rites going-to-go-after and also the
σεβαστοκράτορα Ἰσαάκιον τὸν ἐκείνου ταυτόαιμον. τὸν γὰρ
sebastokrator Isaac the his blood-brother the for
αὐτοκράτορα δέος ὑπέθραττε μήπως οὗτος τὸν τοῦ πατρὸς
autocrat fear troubled lest this(-one) the of-the father
ἐνωτισάμενος θάνατον καὶ τὴν εἰς τὸν ἀδελφὸν τὸν νεώτερον
having-heard death and the to the brother the younger

ἀκηκοὼς τῶν σκήπτρων μετάθεσιν εἰς ἐναντίαν μοῖραν
having-heard of-the scepters transfer to opposite part
ἀποκριθῇ καὶ περὶ τοῦ τῶν ὅλων αὐτὸς εἶναι κύριος
might-be-set-apart and about the of-the whole himself to-be master
διαμιλληθῇ, ἅτε ἀπὸ τῆς γενέσεως εἰς τὴν διαδοχὴν
might-contend inasmuch-as from the birth to the succession
τῆς βασιλείας καλούμενος καὶ κατὰ τὴν βασιλίδα πόλιν
of-the empire called and in the queen city
τότε παρὼν καὶ τῶν ἀνακτόρων ἐντὸς αὐλιζόμενος, ἔνθα
then being-present and the palace inside lodging where
τῶν χρημάτων αἱ σωρεῖαί εἰσιν ἀποκείμεναι καὶ τὰ τῶν
of-the money the heaps are laid-up and the of-the
κρατούντων γνωριστικὰ περιβλήματα. ὁ Ἰωάννης τοίνυν
rulers distinctive garments — John therefore
καταταχύνας τὴν πόλιν εἴσεισι, καὶ τὸν Ἰσαάκιον ἀγνῶτα
having-hastened-to the city enters and — Isaac unaware
ἔτι ὄντα τῶν γενομένων αἱρεῖ καὶ τῇ μονῇ τοῦ
still being of-the(-things) having-happened seizes and in-the monastery of-the
παντοκράτορος εἴργνυσιν, ἣ τὸν βασιλέα Ἰωάννην ἔσχε
Pantokrator shuts-up which the emperor John had
δομήτορα. καὶ ὁ μὲν μετὰ τὴν κατάσχεσιν τὴν τοῦ πατρὸς
(as)-builder and he indeed after the detention the of-the father
ἀναμαθὼν τελευτὴν καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ ἀνάρρησιν ἐνηχηθεὶς
having-learned end and the of-the brother proclamation having-heard
οὐκ εἶχεν ὅ τι καὶ διαπράξαιτο, δεινὰ πάσχειν λέγων
not he-had what — even he-should-do terrible(-things) to-suffer saying
καὶ πέραν δεινοῦ ξύμπαντος, καὶ ὡς ἐπαινετέα ἡ τάξις, ὑφ᾽
and beyond terrible all and how praiseworthy the order by
ἧς διακρατεῖται τὸ πᾶν. „ἀπῆλθέ" φησιν „Ἀλέξιος θανάτῳ
which is-ruled the whole there-departed he-says Alexios by-death
πεσών, ὁ τῶν ἀδελφῶν πρωτότοκος καὶ τῆς πατρῴας
having-fallen the of-the brothers first-born and of-the paternal

ἀρχῆς κληροῦχος· ἐπηκολούθησε τούτῳ Ἀνδρόνικος τῷ
rule heir followed this(-one) Andronikos the
προτέρῳ ὁ δεύτερος, καὶ τὸν νεκρὸν εἰσαγαγὼν τοῦ
former the second and the corpse having-brought-in of-the
ἀδελφοῦ διαπόντιον μετὰ βραχὺ καὶ οὗτος τὸν βίον
brother overseas after (a)-little also this(-one) the life
μετήλλαξεν. εἰς ἑαυτὸν τοίνυν τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων σκῆπτρα
changed to himself therefore the of-the Romans scepters
ὁρᾷ, καὶ τῷ δικαίῳ αὐτός ἐστιν ἐγκρατὴς τῆς ἀρχῆς.”
sees and by-the right himself is master of-the rule
ἀλλ’ ὁ μὲν τοιαῦτα μάτην ἐξετραγῴδει, καὶ εἰκαίως ἦν
but he indeed such(-things) in-vain lamented-dramatically and at-random was
πτερυγίζων κατὰ σαγηνευθὲν πτηνάριον· ὁ δὲ δὴ μέγας
fluttering like netted little-bird the and indeed grand
δομέστικος τῆς τῶν βασιλείων φυλακῆς ἐπιμεληθεὶς καὶ τῆς
domestic of-the of-the palace guard having-taken-care and of-the
τοῦ βασιλέως Μανουὴλ παρὰ τοῖς ἀστοῖς ἀναγορεύσεως,
of-the emperor Manuel among the citizens proclamation
γράμμα ἐρυθροσήμαντον σφραγῖδί τε χρυσέᾳ καὶ σηρικῷ
(a)-document red-sealed with-seal both golden and with-silken
νήματι ἔμπεδον, κόγχης ἀναδεδευμένῳ αἵματι, τῷ κλήρῳ
thread firm of-(the)-murex having-been-dyed with-blood to-the clergy
τοῦ μεγάλου νεὼ ἐπιδίδωσι, τυποῦν αὐτοῖς ἀργύρεα ἐτήσια
of-the great temple hands-over stamping for-them silver yearly
κέρματα εἰς μνᾶς δὶς ἑκατὸν κορυφούμενα. ἐλέγετο δὲ
coins to minas twice (a)-hundred amounting was-said and
καὶ ἑτέραν ἠρυθροδανωμένην βασίλειον γραφὴν ἐπιφέρεσθαι
also another red-dyed imperial writing to-carry
τὸν Ἀξοῦχον, διὰ χρυσίνων ταῦτα βραβεύουσαν. ἐπειδὴ
— Axouch through gold-pieces these(-things) awarding since
γὰρ ὑπόνοιά τις τὸν κρατοῦντα ὑπέτρεχεν οὐκ ἀνεύλογος,
for suspicion some the ruler ran-under not unreasonable

μήπως ἢ αὐτὸς Ἰσαάκιος τῷ δῆθεν δικαιότερος
lest either himself Isaac by-the supposedly more-just
εἶναι πρὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐκ γενέσεως τὰ κατὰ τὴν
being toward the rule from birth the in the
πόλιν διαστασιάσειε πράγματα, πατρῷον θάνατον καὶ
city should-throw-into-faction affairs paternal death and
ξυναίμου ὑστερογενοῦς ἐνωτισάμενος μετὰ θάνατον ἐκείνου
of-(a)-brother later-born having-heard after death his
ἀναγόρευσιν, εἴτ' οὖν ἡ ταῖς τῶν βασιλέων προβλήσεσί
proclamation or then the in-the of-the emperors appointments
τε καὶ μεταθέσεσιν ἀεί πως ἐπεισερχομένη φιλοτάραχος
both and changes always somehow coming-in trouble-loving
καὶ νεωτεροποιὸς τῶν πλείστων ἔφεσις οὐκ εὔοδά οἱ
and revolution-making of-the most desire not prosperous for-him
τῷ νέῳ ἄνακτι καὶ ἀκίνδυνα τὰ κατὰ τὴν βασιλείαν
the new lord and dangerless the(-affairs) of the empire
διάθοιτο, διὰ τοῦτο πρὸς ἀμφιρρεπῆ κατάστασιν τοῦ
should-arrange because-of this for doubtful condition of-the
καιροῦ διπλᾶ τῷ Ἰωάννῃ φιλότιμα θεσπίσματα ἐγχειρίζεται.
time double — to-John honorific decrees are-entrusted
τῷ δὲ κατὰ ῥοῦν προβῆναι τὰ τῆς ἀποστολῆς, καὶ
to-the and in stream to-go-forward the(-things) of-the mission and
ὡς οὐκ ἦν τῷ πεπομφότι καὶ ἀφιγμένῳ διανοήσασθαι
as not was to-the(-one) having-sent and having-come to-think
κάλλιον ἢ ἐπεύξασθαι, συνέσχε μὲν τὸ βραβεῦον τὰ
better or to-pray-for be-held-back indeed the(-decree) awarding the
χρύσεα, ἐξήνεγκε δὲ τὸ χορηγοῦν τὰ ἀργύρεα.
golden(-coins) brought-out and the(-decree) supplying the silver(-coins)
Καὶ οἱ μὲν οὕτω τὴν βασιλικὴν προπαρεσκεύασαν
and they indeed thus the imperial prepared
εἴσοδον· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς τὰ ὅσια τῷ πατρὶ ἐκτελέσας
entry the and emperor the rites to-the father having-performed

καὶ ταῖς ναυσὶ τὸ σῶμα ἐνθέμενος, αἳ τῷ Πυράμῳ
and in-the ships the body having-put which at-the Pyramos
ποταμῷ ἐνωρμίζοντο, ὃς Μοψουεστίαν λιπαίνων θαλάσσῃ
river were-moored which Mopsuestia enriching with-(the)-sea
προσπλέκεται, τά τε κατ᾽ Ἀντιόχειαν ὡς ὁ καιρὸς
is-entwined the(-things) both at Antioch as the time
ἐδίδου καταστησάμενος, ἀπάρας τῶν Κιλίκων διὰ τῆς
allowed having-set having-departed from-the Cilicians through the
ἄνω καλουμένης Φρυγίας ἐπεπορεύετο, ὅτε καὶ ὑπὸ Περσῶν
Upper called Phrygia was-marching when also by Persians
ἑάλωσαν καὶ πρὸς τὸν Ἰκονίου κρατοῦντα τηνικαῦτα
were-captured and to the of-Ikonion ruling at-that-time
Μασοὺτ ἀπηνέχθησαν ὅ τε πρὸς πατρὸς τῷ Μανουὴλ
Mas'ud were-carried-off the both on (the)-father's(-side) — to-Manuel
ἐξάδελφος, ὁ Κομνηνὸς δηλονότι Ἀνδρόνικος (οὗτος δὲ
cousin — Komnenos namely Andronikos this(-one) and
καὶ ὕστερον Ῥωμαίων κατετυράννευσε), καὶ ὁ Δασιώτης
also later of-(the)-Romans became-tyrant and — Dasiotes
Θεόδωρος, ᾧ εἰς γαμετὴν Μαρία ἥρμοστο, ἣν ὁ τοῦ
Theodore to-whom as wife Maria had-been-joined whom the —
Μανουὴλ κασίγνητος ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ Ἀνδρόνικος ἔτεκε.
of-Manuel brother the sebastokrator Andronikos begot
κατὰ γὰρ θήραν ἀγρίων τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐκτραπόμενοι ἧς
in for hunting of-wild(-beasts) from-the road having-turned-aside which
τὸ στράτευμα εἶχετο, ἔλαθον συλληφθέντες πολεμίων
the army held they-were-unawares caught of-enemies
χερσίν, καὶ θηρᾶν ἐπιβαλόμενοι κνώδαλα θηρευταῖς
by-hands and to-hunt having-set-about beasts by-hunters
ἀνθρώπων περιπεπτώκασι. τότε μὲν οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς
of-men they-have-fallen-in-with then indeed then the emperor
μὴ πράξεσιν ἑτέραις τὸν νοῦν ἐφιστᾶν δυνάμενος, ἀλλὰ
not on-deeds other the mind to-set being-able but

τῆς προκειμένης ἅπας γινόμενος, καὶ ταύτης καὶ βραχύ
of-the(-deed) lying-before wholly being and from-this even little
τι γοῦν ἀποσχέσθαι κρίνων ἀσύμφορον, οὐδὲ τῶν
some at-any-rate to-keep-away judging inexpedient nor for-the(-things)
κατὰ τοὺς ἄνδρας τούτους ὡς ἔδει πεφρόντικεν ἢ
about the men these as was-needful did-he-take-thought or
βασιλικῶς αὐτοῖς ἐπήμυνε· μετέπειτα μέντοι ζωαγρίων
royally them did-he-help afterward however of-ransom
ἄνευ ἐλύσατο, καὶ τὸ πόλισμα τὴν Πρακᾶν, ὃ δὴ τῆς
without he-freed(-them) and the small-town — Praka which indeed —
Σελευκείας ἐχόμενα ἵδρυται, Ῥωμαίοις ἐπανεσώσατο παρὰ
of-Seleukeia near-to is-situated for-(the)-Romans he-recovered by
Περσῶν πορθηθέν. ὡς δὲ τὴν βασιλίδα πόλιν ἐπεφθάκει
Persians sacked as and the queen city had-reached
ὁ Μανουήλ, ἀσμένως παρὰ τῶν ταύτης οἰκητόρων
— Manuel gladly by the its inhabitants
προσδέχεται, τοῦτο μὲν ὡς τὴν πατρῴαν βασιλείαν
is-received this indeed as the paternal empire
παρειληφώς, τοῦτο δ' ὅτι καὶ παρὰ πᾶσιν ἀσπάσιος
having-received this and because also among all welcome
ἦν, ἐπεὶ κἀν τῷ ἀκριβῶς μείρακι τὴν σύνεσιν ἔσωζε
he-was since even-in the exactly youth the understanding he-kept
τῶν καταγηρασάντων ἐν τοῖς πράγμασι πλείονα,
than-the(-ones) having-grown-old in the affairs more
πολεμικός τε καὶ φιλοκίνδυνος κἀν τοῖς δεινοῖς
warlike both and danger-loving and-in the terrible(-things)
ἀκατάπληκτος καὶ μεγαλόφρων δεικνύμενος, καὶ πρὸς
undaunted and high-minded showing(-himself) and for
μάχας τελῶν ὀξύρροπος. ἐπέπρεπε δὲ καὶ χάρις ἐπὶ τοῦ
battles being quick-to-incline befitted and also (a)-grace on the
προσώπου τῷ νεανίᾳ, καὶ τῷ τῆς ὄψεως ὑπομειδιῶντι τὸ
face to-the young-man and by-the of-the face smiling the

ἐπαγωγὸν ἐπεσύρετο, εὐμήκης ὢν τὴν ἡλικίαν, κἂν ἐπένευέ
attraction he-drew-along tall being in-the stature even-if he-inclined
τι τοῦ ἰθυτενοῦς μέτριον. τὴν δέ γε χροιὰν οὔτε
somewhat from-the straight moderately the and at-least color neither
κατὰ τοὺς ἐσκιατραφημένους λευκὸς ἦν καὶ χιονώδης,
like the(-ones) shade-reared white was and snowy
οὔτε μὴν ἄγαν καπνηρὸς ὡς οἱ πολὺν τὸν ἥλιον ἐπὶ
nor indeed very smoky as the(-ones) much the sun on
τοῦ προσώπου δεξάμενοι καὶ οὓς παρέβλεψαν ἀκτῖνες
the face having-received and whom have-looked-upon rays
θερμότεραι, ἀλλὰ τῆς λευκῆς θέας ἀναχωρῶν, τῷ δὲ
hotter but from-the white sight withdrawing to-the and
μέλανι προσεγγίζων χρώματι εὐπρεπείας καὶ οὕτως εἶχετο.
black approaching color of-comeliness also thus held
διὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν ὑπτίαις ἀγκάλαις περιχυθέντων
because-of these(-things) therefore with-upturned arms having-poured-round
τῶν πολιτῶν, εἴσεισιν ἀσμένως τὰ βασίλεια πλατέσι καὶ
the citizens he-enters gladly the palace with-broad and
ἀνεωγόσι περικροτούμενος στόμασιν. ἐν δὲ τῷ παριέναι
opened applauded mouths in and the to-pass-by
μεθ' ἵππου Ἄραβος ἐριαύχενος τὰ ἀνάκτορα, καὶ μέλλειν
with (a)-horse Arab high-necked the palace and to-be-about
εἰσιέναι διὰ τῆς πύλης μεθ' ἣν ἡ ἐκ τῆς ἕδρας ἀπόβασις
to-enter through the gate after which the from the seat dismounting
ἐφεῖται μόνοις τοῖς αὐτοκράτορσιν, ὁ ἵππος ὃς ἦν τὸν
is-permitted only to-the autocrats the horse which was the
βασιλέα ὀχῶν, ἐς ἀκουστὸν χρεμετίσας καὶ συχνὰ κόψας
emperor carrying to (the)-audible having-neighed and often having-struck
ἄκραις ὁπλαῖς τὸ δάπεδον εὐήνιά τε προποδίσας καὶ
with-tips-of hooves the floor obediently both having-stepped-forward and
περιδινηθεὶς ἀγέρωχα, ὑπερέβη ὀψέ ποτε τὸν οὐδόν.
having-whirled-round haughtily stepped-over late at-last the threshold

ἀγαθὸν οὖν ἔδοξε τοῦτο τοῖς συνιοῦσι κομψοῖς ἐπεισόδιον,
good then seemed this to-the understanding clever(-ones) (an)-incident
καὶ τούτων μάλιστα οἳ περικεχήνασιν οὐρανόν, τὰ
and of-these especially who gape-at heaven the(-things)
δ' ἐν ποσὶ μόλις ἔχουσι διορᾶν, καὶ διὰ τῶν ἱππειων
and at feet barely are-able to-discern and through the horse's
σχηματισμῶν καὶ συχνῶν περιελιγμάτων μακραίωνα
gestures and frequent turnings long-lived
περιτελλομένην ζωὴν τῷ αὐτοκράτορι ἀπεφοίβαζον.
revolving life for-the autocrat foretold

II · IKONION AND THE GERMAN BRIDE

Manuel gives thanks for his accession, is crowned, and has Michael of Oxeia brought from his monastery as patriarch; he is reconciled with Isaac. He marches against the Turks, is shot in the sole of the foot at Philomelion, and reaches Ikonion, but forbids his men to desecrate the tombs outside its walls and withdraws, fighting harder battles on the way home. He marches a German wife, who scorns rouge and is unbending of mind, while he gives himself to feasts and pleasures.

Θύσας οὖν τὰ ἀναγορευτήρια θεῷ καὶ ἐπιβατήρια,
having-offered then the proclamation-sacrifices to-God and accession-sacrifices
σκέπτεται περὶ τοῦ τὸν πατριαρχικὸν κληρωσομένου
he-considers about the(-one) the patriarchal going-to-obtain
θρόνον καὶ τοὺς τῆς ἐκκλησίας χειρισομένου οἴακας
throne and the of-the church going-to-handle tillers
καὶ ταινιώσοντος αὐτὸν ἐπὶ νεὼ κυρίου τῷ
and going-to-bind him in (the)-temple of-(the)-Lord with-the
αὐτοκρατορικῷ στεφανώματι· ὁ γὰρ Στυππῆς Λέων
imperial crown — for Styppes Leo
θανάτῳ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο. κοινοῦται οὖν τὰ
by-death from men became(-departed) he-shares then the(-things)

τῆς γνώμης τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ καθ᾽ αἱμά οἱ σεμνώματος
of-the mind with-the(-ones) from the by blood to-him dignity
προύχουσι καὶ τοῖς ἐκ τῆς συγκλήτου βουλῆς καὶ
excelling and with-the(-ones) from the senatorial council and
ὅσοι τοῦ βήματος ἔντροφοι, καὶ πολλῶν εἰς τὴν μεγίστην
as-many-as of-the sanctuary nurslings and many to the greatest
ἀρχιερατείαν ἐγκρινομένων ἡ νικῶσα ψῆφος καὶ τῶν
high-priesthood being-chosen the winning vote also of-the
ἁπάντων σχεδὸν πρὸς τὸν ἀπὸ τῆς μονῆς τῆς Ὀξείας ῥέπει
all almost to the from the monastery — of-Oxeia inclines
μοναχὸν Μιχαήλ· οὗτος γὰρ καὶ ἀρετῇ περιώνυμος ἦν καὶ
(a)-monk Michael this(-one) for both in-virtue famous was and
τῆς ἡμετέρας ἐν μεθέξει παιδεύσεως. προβληθεὶς οὖν
of-the our in participation learning having-been-put-forward then
ὁ Μιχαὴλ πατριάρχης ἐξ αὐτῆς τὸν χρίσαντα
— Michael (as)-patriarch from (the)-very(-hour) the(-one) having-anointed(-him)
χρίει τὰ ἱερὰ ἐσαφικόμενον μέλαθρα. συμβαίνει δὲ τῷ
anoints the holy having-come-to halls comes-to-terms and with-the
βασιλεῖ καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς Ἰσαάκιος, καὶ ὑπὲρ δόξαν
emperor also the brother Isaac and beyond (the)-expectation
τὴν τῶν πολλῶν ἀντεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοιν τὼ ἀδελφὼ τὴν
the of-the many they-returned to-one-another the brothers the
εὔνοιαν. ἦν δὲ ὁ Ἰσαάκιος διὰ τὸ εἰς χόλον εὐέμπτωτον
goodwill was and — Isaac because-of the into anger easily-falling
καὶ τὸ ἐκ μικρᾶς πολλάκις αἰτίας ἐς κολάσεις ὑπερόγκους
and the from small often cause into punishments excessive
διαρριπίζεσθαι δυσξύμβλητος τοῖς πολλοῖς. ἔτρεφε δὲ καὶ
to-be-fanned hard-to-deal-with for-the many he-nourished and also
τὸ ψοφοδεὲς ἀγεννές, καὶ ταῦτα τηλίκος ὤν, καὶ ἀνδράσιν
the timid ignoble(-trait) and this so-great being and to-men
ἀνόμοιον. ἦν οὖν ὁ βασιλεύτατος Ἰωάννης ὁ τούτου πατὴρ
unlike was then the most-kingly John the his father

καὶ κατὰ τοῦτο παρὰ πᾶσι μακαριστὸς καὶ τῆς ἀοιδίμου
also in this among all blessed and of-the famed
λήξεως καὶ δι᾽ εὐφήμου κείμενος μνήμης, ὅτι τὸν Μανουὴλ
lot and in auspicious lying memory because — Manuel
εἰς τὸ κρατεῖν καὶ βασιλεύειν ὑπὲρ αὐτὸν ἐδικαίωσε.
to the to-rule and to-reign above him he-deemed-right
Τοῦ δὲ Μασοὺτ τὰ πρὸς ἕω ληϊζομένου καὶ
— and of-Mas'ud the(-places) to (the)-east plundering and
κατατρέχοντος ἔξεισιν ὁ Μανουὴλ κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ, καὶ δὴ
overrunning goes-out — Manuel against him and indeed
γεγονὼς κατὰ τὰ Μελάγγεια τοὺς ἐκεῖσε Πέρσας μετῆλθε.
having-come at — Melangeia the there Persians he-pursued
πρὸς δὲ τῆς τῶν Μελαγγείων φυλακῆς τε καὶ ἀνακτίσεως
besides and of-the — of-Melangeia guarding both and rebuilding
ἐπιμεληθεὶς εἰς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐπάνεισι πόλιν, νόσῳ
having-taken-care to the reigning returns city with-disease
προσπαλαίσας πλευρίτιδι. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν τῆς Ἀντιοχείας
having-wrestled pleurisy but also the — of-Antioch
πρίγκιπα Ῥαϊμοῦνδον μετιέναι δεῖν οἰηθείς, ταῖς Κιλικίαις
prince Raymond to-go-after needful having-thought on-the Cilician
ἐπιφυόμενον πόλεσιν, αἳ Ῥωμαίοις ἦσαν κατήκοοι,
growing-upon cities which to-(the)-Romans were subject
στρατιὰν ἐξέπεμψεν, ἡγεμόνας αὐτῇ ἐπιστήσας τοὺς
(an)-army he-sent-out leaders over-it having-set the
ἀδελφόπαιδας Κοντοστεφάνους, τόν τε Ἰωάννην καὶ τὸν
nephews Kontostephanoi — both John and —
Ἀνδρόνικον, καί τινα Προσοὺχ οὐκ ἄϊδριν τὰ πολέμια·
Andronikos and (a)-certain Prosouch not unskilled-in the war(-like)
καὶ νῆας δὲ προσεπεπόμφει μακράς, ὧν ἡγεῖτο Δημήτριος
and ships too he-had-sent-besides long which led Demetrios
ὁ Βρανᾶς. ἀμέλει καὶ τῶν κακῶς ἐκεῖσε πασχόντων
the Branas indeed also of-the badly there suffering

φρουρίων καὶ πόλεων δεούσης ἐπικουρίας τετυχηκότων,
forts and cities needful help having-obtained
κατὰ Περσῶν ἐκστρατεύειν προέθετο· ἤδη γὰρ οὗτοι τὰ
against Persians to-campaign he-proposed already for these the
περὶ τὸν Πιθηκᾶν ἐρύματα ὑπαγαγέσθαι σπεύδοντες καὶ
about — Pithekas fortifications to-bring-under hastening and
τῷ θέματι τῶν Θρακησίων ἐμβάλλοντες τὰ ἐν ποσὶν
on-the theme of-the Thrakesians falling the(-things) at feet
ἐληΐζοντο. ὑπερβὰς τοίνυν Λυδίαν καὶ ταῖς κατὰ Φρυγίαν
plundered having-crossed therefore Lydia and at-the in Phrygia
καὶ Μαίανδρον ποταμὸν ἐπιστὰς πόλεσιν, αὐτάς τε
and Maeander river having-arrived cities them both
τῶν ἐπηρτημένων κινδύνων ἀπήλλαξε καὶ τοὺς Πέρσας
from-the impending dangers he-freed and the Persians
φοβήσας ἐδίωξε. γενόμενος δὲ κατὰ τὸ Φιλομήλιον
having-frightened he-pursued having-come and at — Philomelion
κἀκεῖσε τοῖς Τούρκοις προσέμιξεν· ἔνθα καὶ τὸν τοῦ ποδὸς
and-there with-the Turks he-engaged where also on-the of-the foot
ἐτοξεύθη ταρσὸν παρὰ Πέρσου τινὸς καταβληθέντος μὲν
he-was-shot sole by (a)-Persian (a)-certain overthrown indeed
ὑπὸ βασιλέως τῷ δόρατι, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἀνατραπῆναι τὸ
by (the)-emperor with-the spear in and the being-overturned the
βέλος ἐπαφέντος κατὰ τοῦ πέλματος. δόξας δὲ παρ᾽
arrow having-let-fly against the sole having-seemed and among
αὐτοῖς φοβερὸς εἶναι τὰς πράξεις καὶ εὔτολμος καὶ τοῦ
them fearful to-be in-the deeds and daring and than-the
πατρὸς Ἰωάννου φιλοκινδυνότερος, οὐχ ᾑρεῖτο γενέσθαι
father John more-danger-loving not he-chose to-become
παλίνστροφος, οὐδ᾽ ἐπείθετό οἱ τοῖς συμβουλεύουσι
turned-back nor obeyed him the(-ones) advising
μνησθῆναι καὶ νόστου ποτέ, μήπως ἐπισυστάντες οἱ
to-think also of-return ever lest having-rallied the

Πέρσαι ὡς ἤδη περὶ τῶν ὅλων ἀπογινώσκοντες κακῶς τὸ
Persians as already about the whole despairing badly the
κατ᾽ αὐτὸν διάθωνται στράτευμα. ἀμέλει καὶ τὸ πρόθυμον
of him should-handle army indeed also the zeal
ἐπιτείνας ἐς αὐτὸ τὸ Ἰκόνιον ἤλασεν. αὐτὸς μὲν οὖν
having-intensified to it-itself — Ikonion he-drove himself indeed then
ὁ Μασοὺτ μεταναστεύσας ἐκεῖθεν παρενέβαλεν εἰς τὰ
— Mas'ud having-moved-away thence encamped at —
Τάξαρα, ἅ ἐστιν ἡ πάλαι λεγομένη Κολώνεια· τῶν δὲ
Taxara which is the of-old called Koloneia of-the and
θυγατέρων αὐτοῦ μία τῶν τειχῶν ἄνωθεν διεκκύπτουσα,
daughters his one the walls from-above peeping-out
ἥτις καὶ συνῳκηκέναι ἐλέγετο τῷ ἐξαδέλφῳ τοῦ βασιλέως
who also to-have-lived-with was-said the cousin of-the emperor
Ἰωάννῃ τῷ Κομνηνῷ, ὃν ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ ἐγείνατο
John the Komnenos whom the sebastokrator begot
Ἰσαάκιος, κατὰ δὲ μικρολυπίαν τοῦ θείου καὶ βασιλέως
Isaac in and petty-grievance against-the uncle and emperor
Ἰωάννου τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ ἀποδρὰς τῷ Μασοὺτ προσερρύη,
John the Komnenos having-run-off — to-Mas'ud went-over
ὑπὲρ τοῦ πατρὸς καὶ σουλτάνου πιθανὸν ἐτίθετο τὸν
for the father and sultan (a)-persuasive put-forward the
ἀπόλογον. βασιλεὺς δὲ ἀγχοῦ τῶν περιβόλων τοῦ Ἰκονίου
plea (the)-emperor and near the circuit-walls — of-Ikonion
γενόμενος καὶ τὰ τείχη τῷ στρατῷ διαζώσας, τόξα
having-come and the walls with-the army having-girded bows
τε τείνειν ἐπὶ τὰς ἐπάλξεις τῇ νεολαίᾳ ἐνδοὺς
both to-stretch against the battlements to-the young(-men) having-allowed
καὶ τοῖς νεκροδόχοις σήμασιν ἐνυβρίζειν μὴ συγχωρῶν,
and the corpse-receiving tombs to-outrage not permitting
οὕτως ἐκεῖθεν μόλις ἐξώρμησε καὶ παλίμπους ἐφέρετο.
thus thence barely set-out and back-footed was-carried

ἐν δὲ τῇ ἀπάρσει λόχους ὑποκαθισάντων τῶν πολεμίων
in and the departure ambushes having-set the enemies
καὶ τὰ ἀμφιλαφῆ χωρία προειληφότων μείζους τῶν
and the widespreading places having-seized-beforehand greater than-the
προτέρων ἀνερράγησαν πόλεμοι. ἐναγωνίως δὲ καὶ τούτων
former broke-out wars with-struggle and also these
διῳκημένων ἐς τὴν βασιλεύουσαν πόλιν ἀνέζευξεν.
having-been-managed to the reigning city he-returned
Ἠγάγετο δὲ γυναῖκα ὁ βασιλεὺς οὗτος ἐξ Ἀλαμανῶν,
married and (a)-wife the emperor this from Alamans'
γένους τῶν ἐπὶ δόξης καὶ θρόνων τῶν ἀρχικῶν. αὕτη
race of-the(-ones) in glory and thrones the ruling she
μέντοι οὐ τοσοῦτον τοῦ σωματικοῦ κάλλους ἐφρόντιζεν ὅσον
however not so-much of-the bodily beauty cared as
τοῦ ἔνδον καὶ περὶ ψυχὴν ἐπεμέλετο. οὐκοῦν ἐξομνυμένη
of-the inner and about soul took-care therefore abjuring
τὰ ἐκ τῶν κόνεων ἐπιτρίμματα καὶ τοὺς τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν
the from the powders rubbings and the of-the eyes
ὑπογραμμοὺς καὶ τὸν πλάστην τὸν κάτωθεν καὶ τὸ τεχνικὸν
underlinings and the molding the beneath and the artificial
ἀλλ' οὐ φυσικὸν ἔρευθος, καὶ ταῖς ἄφροσι τῶν γυναικῶν
but not natural redness and to-the foolish of-the women
αὐτὰ ἐπιρρίπτουσα, ταῖς ἀρεταῖς προσανεῖχε καὶ ὡραΐζετο.
them casting-off to-the virtues she-held-fast and was-adorned
εἶχε δὲ τὸ μὴ ἐπικλινὲς ἐθνικόν, καὶ τὸ τῆς γνώμης
she-had and the not pliable national(-trait) and the of-the mind
ἐκέκτητο δυσμετάθετον. ὅθεν οὐδ' ὁ βασιλεὺς προσεῖχεν
she-possessed inflexibility whence not-even the emperor attended
αὐτῇ τὰ πολλά, ἀλλὰ τιμῆς μὲν καὶ θρόνων πάνυ
to-her the most but of-honor indeed and of-thrones very
λαμπρῶν καὶ δορυφορίας καὶ τῆς λοιπῆς λαμπροφορίας
brilliant and of-bodyguard and of-the other splendor

βασιλικωτάτης μετεῖχε, τὰ δ' ἐς κοίτην ἠδίκητο.
most-royal she-partook the(-things) and for bed she-had-been-wronged
νέος γὰρ ὢν ὁ Μανουὴλ καὶ ἐρωτικὸς τῷ τε ἀνειμένῳ
young for being — Manuel and amorous to-the both loose
βίῳ καὶ ταῖς τρυφαῖς προσανέκειτο, καὶ συσσιτίων καὶ
life and to-the luxuries he-was-devoted and to-feasts and
κώμων ἐξείχετο, καὶ ὅσα τὸ νεοτήσιον ἄνθος ὑπέβαλλε
revels clung and what-things the youthful bloom suggested
καὶ ἐμύουν οἱ πάνδημοι ἔρωτες διεπράττετο.
and initiated(-into) the common loves he-did

III · JOHN OF POUTZE AND STYPPEIOTES

Manuel's chief of finance is John of Poutze, unbribable, implacable, and hard to approach, who diverts into the treasury the tax the islands paid for the fleet, to the ruin of the navy, and who later enriches his own family. John Hagiotheodorites, keeper of the emperor's decrees, is ousted by his deft fellow student Theodore Styppeiotes, who has him sent off as praetor of Hellas and the Peloponnese and rises to keeper of the inkstand. Manuel, generous at first from his father's full treasury, later rules more harshly and stints his largesse.

Ἐμέλησε δὲ καὶ τῶν κοινῶν τῷ βασιλεῖ τῷδε πράξεων,
cared and also for-the common for-the emperor this deeds
καὶ τῶν μὲν δημοσίων εἰσφορῶν φροντιστὴν καὶ λογιστὴν
and of-the indeed public levies (as)-overseer and accountant
μέγιστον τὸν ἐκ Πούτζης Ἰωάννην προβάλλεται καὶ αὐτός,
greatest the from Poutze John he-puts-forward and himself
ὥσπερ ὁ πατὴρ ἐκείνῳ καὶ βασιλεύς, πρότερον ὄντα καὶ
just-as the father for-him also (the)-emperor before being and
τοῦ δρόμου πρωτονοτάριον, μελεδωνὸν δὲ μεσεύοντα καὶ
of-the course protonotarios (as)-guardian and standing-between and

τῶν οἰκείων ὑποδρηστῆρα διαταγμάτων τὸν Ἁγιοθεοδωρίτην
of-the own (as)-servant ordinances — Hagiotheodorites
τίθησιν Ἰωάννην. καὶ ἦν ὁ μὲν τῷ προσώπῳ τοῦ
he-sets John and was he indeed before-the face of-the
βασιλέως ἀεὶ ὀπτανόμενος καὶ τὰ τούτου ἐντάλματα ὅσα
emperor always being-seen and the his commands just-as
καὶ ἐμφάσεις ἐκ κρείττονος μοίρας δεχόμενος, ὑπουργοῖς
also intimations from (a)-higher part receiving as-assistants
δὲ οὐκ ὀλίγοις τῶν γραφομένων καὶ λεγομένων
and not few of-the(-things) written and said
ἐκέχρητο λογίοις ἀνδράσιν, ὅσοις ἡ αὐλὴ ἐνέβριθεν ἡ
he-used learned men as-many-as the court was-heavy-with the
βασίλειος, πρὸ πάντων δὲ τῷ Στυππειώτῃ Θεοδώρῳ, περὶ
imperial before all and — with-Styppeiotes Theodore about
οὗ δηλώσομεν ἐν τοῖς ἐφεξῆς. ἦν δὲ ὁ ἐκ Πούτζης
whom we-shall-show in the following was and the from Poutze
Ἰωάννης δεινότατος τὰ δημόσια, φορολογίας παιπάλημα
John most-terrible in-the public of-taxation (a)-subtle-rogue
καὶ ἐπίτριμμα, καὶ τῶν μὲν ὄντων δασμοφορημάτων
and (a)-rubbed-one and of-the indeed existing tributes
συζητητὴς ἀκριβέστατος, τῶν δὲ οὐκ ὄντων εὑρετὴς
(a)-searcher most-exact of-the(-ones) and not existing (a)-discoverer
ἀπαράμιλλος. ἐξήσκητο δὲ καὶ τὸ ἦθος ὑπὲρ πάντας
unrivaled he-had-trained and also the character beyond all
ἀδυσώπητον καὶ ἀμείλικτον· εὐκοπώτερον γὰρ ἄν τις
unabashable and implacable more-easily for — anyone
ἀμειδῆ καὶ ἀγέλαστον πέτραν ἐμάλθαξεν ἢ ἐκεῖνον ἐν
(a)-smileless and laughless rock would-soften than him in
τοῖς ἀβουλήτοις ὑπέκλινεν. ὃ δὲ τούτου θαυμασιώτερον,
the unwished(-things) would-bend what and than-this more-wondrous
οὐ μόνον οὐκ ἦν δακρύοις ἄτεγκτος, σχήμασι δεητηρίοις
not only not he-was by-tears unmoistened by-gestures suppliant

ἀπροσκλινής, ἀργυρίου ἀτίνακτος ἑλεπόλεσι καὶ χρυσίου
unbending of-silver unshaken by-city-takers and of-gold
ἀγοήτευτος φαρμακεύμασιν, ἀλλ᾽ εἶχε καὶ τὸ δυσέντευκτον
unbewitched by-drugs but he-had also the hard-to-approach
ὡς ἀπάνθρωπον. τὸ δὲ τοῖς τότε θυμαλγὲς καὶ
as inhuman the and to-the(-men) then heart-grieving and
δυσύποιστον, οὐδ᾽ ἀπόλογος ἦν παρ᾽ αὐτῷ καθαρῶς ἐφ᾽
hard-to-bear nor answer was with him clearly on
οἷς ὁ προσιὼν προετίθετο, ἀλλὰ χαίρων τὰ πλεῖστα
what the(-one) approaching proposed but rejoicing the most
τῇ ἀφασίᾳ ἐνιαχοῦ καὶ ἀπροσήγορον παρήει τὸν
in-the speechlessness in-places also unaddressed he-passed-by the(-one)
παραβάλλοντα. τοσαύτην δ᾽ ἐκ βασιλέως ἰσχύν τε καὶ
coming-near so-much and from (the)-emperor strength both and
ἐξουσίαν περιεζώννυτο ὡς ἃ μὲν ἠβούλετο τῶν
authority he-girded-on that what-things indeed he-wished of-the
βασιλικῶν θεσπισμάτων ἀποπέμπεσθαι καὶ διαρρηγνύειν,
imperial decrees to-send-away and to-tear-up
ἔνια δὲ καὶ τοῖς δημοσίοις ἐγγράφειν κώδιξιν. ὑποθήκῃ
some and also in-the public to-register codices on-(the)-suggestion
δὲ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τούτου χρῆμά τι κοινωφελὲς καὶ ταῖς
and of-the man this thing some of-common-benefit and to-the
νήσοις πάσαις σωτήριον καὶ τοῖς πρώην βασιλεῦσι
islands all saving and by-the former emperors
συντηρηθὲν ἀπαράβατον ὁ βασιλεὺς Ἰωάννης ἀξυμφόρως
kept inviolate the emperor John inexpediently
κατήργησε. τὰ γὰρ ἐκ τῶν πλευστικῶν ἐρανιζόμενα
abolished the(-money) for from the sea-going collected
στρατειῶν, διαδιδόμενα πάλαι τῷ ναυτικῷ, εἰς τὸ ταμεῖον
military-levies distributed of-old to-the fleet into the treasury
οὗτος παρειπάμενος μετωχέτευσε, καὶ τὰς ἀπὸ τῶν
this(-one) having-persuaded diverted and the from the

νήσων ἐκ τύπου παρεχομένας τριήρεις ἀντάνδρους μικροῦ
islands by assessment provided triremes manned by-little
κατεπόντισε παραφάμενος. ὑποθέμενος γὰρ ὡς τὸ μὲν τῶν
sank having-talked-over having-suggested for that the indeed of-the
τριηρέων χρῆμα οὐκ ἀεὶ τῇ πολιτείᾳ καὶ τῷ κοινῷ
triremes thing not always for-the state and the common(-good)
ἐπιτήδειον, τὰ δ' ὑπὲρ τούτων ἀναλώματα οὐκ εὐάγκαλα
suitable the and for these expenditures not easy-to-carry
καὶ ἐπέτεια, καὶ δεῖν αὐτὰ μὲν τὸ ταμιεῖον ἐγκολπίζεσθαι,
and yearly and needful them indeed the treasury to-take-into-its-bosom
χρείας δ' ἐνισταμένης ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν θησαυρισμάτων
need and arising from the imperial treasures
τὸν ὀψωνιασμὸν τῷ ναυτικῷ παρέχεσθαι, ἔδοξεν εἶναι
the pay to-the fleet to-provide he-seemed to-be
ἀνδρῶν ὁ βέλτιστος καὶ τὴν φύσιν τῶν πραγμάτων
of-men the best and the nature of-the affairs
ἠκριβωκὼς ὁ καταποντιστοῦ σκέμμα εἰσενεγκάμενος.
having-known-exactly the of-(a)-sinker scheme having-brought-in
τοῖς γὰρ ἁδροῖς τὸν βασιλέα ἐν τῷ ταῦτα εἰσηγήσασθαι
by-the for great the emperor in the these(-things) to-propose
παρακέκρουκε δαπανήμασι, καὶ αὖθις τῷ μετρίῳ τῆς
has-beguiled expenditures and again by-the moderation of-the
καταβολῆς διακέχυκε. καὶ νῦν ἐκ τῆς κακοβουλίας
payment has-relaxed(-him) and now from the bad-counsel
ταύτης εἴτ' οὖν σμικροπρεπείας θαλασσοκρατοῦσιν οἱ
this or then shabbiness rule-the-sea the
πειραταί, καὶ κακῶς πεπράγασι ταῖς λῃστρίσιν αἱ
pirates and badly have-fared from-the robber-ships the
παραθαλαττίδιοι Ῥωμαίων χῶραι, καὶ ὡς ἂν κατεύξαιντο
coastal of-(the)-Romans lands and as — would-pray
οἱ διάφοροι. εἰ δὲ καὶ τὸν στάχυν ἴσμεν τοῦ
the adversaries if and also the ear we-know of-the(-one)

σπείραντος, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν ἀμήσαντα προσεπαιτιώμεθα·
having-sown but also the(-one) having-reaped we-blame-besides
καὶ εἰ ὁ ἐμπρησμὸς τοῦ ἀνάψαντος, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ
and if the burning of-the(-one) having-kindled but also of-the(-one)
κατασβέσαι δυναμένου, δρᾶσαι δέ τι τοιοῦτον ὅλως μὴ
to-quench able to-do and anything such at-all not
βουληθέντος. ἀλλ' ἕως τότε φιλοδημόσιος λογιστὴς καὶ
having-wished but as-long-as then (a)-public-spirited accountant and
δεινὸς καὶ φειδωλὸς οἰκονόμος καὶ ὀβολοστατῶν ἀτεχνῶς
terrible and thrifty steward and obol-weighing simply
δασμολόγος ὁ Ἰωάννης ἐδείκνυτο, ἕως ἀκαθαίρετον εἶχε
tax-collector — John showed(-himself) as-long-as unremovable he-had
τὴν δυναστείαν, καὶ τὸ ποιεῖν ὅσα καὶ πρὸς βουλῆς
the power and the to-do what-things also in counsel
ἀνεξέλεγκτον, καὶ ὅσα βουλητὰ τούτῳ καὶ δυνατά.
unchecked and what-things desirable to-this(-one) and possible
ἐπειδὴ δὲ μεθαρμοζόμενόν οἱ ἑώρα τὸ δύνασθαι καὶ
when and changing for-him he-saw the to-be-able and
τὸ εὐπαρρησίαστον παραιρούμενον καὶ ὑπορρέουσαν κατὰ
the free-speaking being-taken-away and slipping-away by
βραχὺ τὴν ἰσχύν, οἷα καὶ ἑτέρων κρατυνομένων παρὰ τῷ
little the strength since also others being-strengthened with the
βασιλεῖ κἀκ τοῦ ἄγαν ἐκκρουόντων καὶ περιτρεπόντων
emperor and-from the excess thrusting-out and overturning
αὐτόν, μετῆρεν ἅπερ ἦν θέμενος ὅρια, καὶ
him he-moved what-things he-had set (as)-boundaries and
δραπέτης τῷ καιρῷ καὶ τοῖς πράγμασι προσφυεὶς
(a)-runaway to-the time and to-the affairs having-grown-to
ἀμφοτέραις τούτων ἔχεταί τε καὶ περιέχεται. οὐκοῦν καὶ
with-both these he-holds both and is-held therefore also
πρός τινα τῶν συνήθων εἰπὼν „ἄγε πλουτήσωμεν"
to some(-one) of-the intimates having-said come let-us-be-rich

ἑτεροίας γνώμης παντάπασιν ἐγεγένητο, καὶ γυναῖκα τῶν
of-another mind altogether he-had-become and (a)-woman of-the
ἀπερριμμένων καὶ ἀπηνθηκυιῶν εὐγενῶν ἁρμοσάμενος,
cast-off and faded noble(-women) having-married
καὶ παίδων ἀκούσας πατήρ, διένειμε τούτοις πλοῦτον
and of-children having-been-called father he-distributed to-these wealth
βαθὺν καὶ ἀρκετὸν εἰς ἡδονάς. κίμβιξ δὲ ὢν εἰς ἄκρον
deep and sufficient for pleasures (a)-skinflint and being to (the)-extreme
καὶ γνίφων καὶ δυσγρίπιστος, οὐδ' ἄνω ἆραι τὰ βλέφαρα
and stingy and hard-to-squeeze nor up to-raise the eyelids
πειρώμενος, ἀναβλέψαι καὶ εἰς πτωχοὺς ἀτενίσαι, οὐ
trying to-look-up and to poor(-men) to-gaze not
παρῆκε τὸν πλοῦτον, ἀλλὰ πεδήτην εἶχε διὰ παντὸς
he-let-go the wealth but in-fetters he-had(-it) through all
δεσμοῖς ἀρρήκτοις ἀλύτοις τε, καὶ ἀπρόϊτον δήπου, ὅσα
with-bonds unbreakable indissoluble both and not-going-forth surely just-as
καὶ Δανάην ὁ πάλαι Ἀκρίσιος. καὶ σμικρολογίαν νοσῶν
also Danae the of-old Akrisios and pettiness being-sick-with
καὶ γλισχρότητα, καὶ τὰ πεμπόμενα πολλάκις τῶν
and niggardliness also the(-things) sent often of-the
ἐδωδίμων ἀνέπεμπεν εἰς τὸ πωλητήριον καὶ δεῖγμα,
eatables he-sent-back to the market and display(-market)
ὡς ἰχθύας σύακα καὶ λάβρακα, ὡς μὲν μεγίστους ὡς δὲ
as fish (a)-syax and (a)-sea-bass as indeed greatest as and
πίονας παρά τινων αὐτῷ πεμφθέντας, τρισσάκις ἀπέδοτο
fat by some to-him sent thrice he-sold
καὶ τοσαυτάκις ἐναλλὰξ ἐωνημένους κατὰ χρείαν παρ'
and so-many-times alternately bought by need from
ἑτέρων εἰσηνέγκατο. καὶ ἦσαν ἄντικρυς ἁλιεῖς οἱ ἰχθύες,
others he-brought-in and were outright fishermen the fish
ὃ πεπόνθασι δρῶντες, ὡς μὲν ἄγκιστρον χαλῶντες τὸ
which they-suffered doing as indeed (a)-hook letting-down the

μέγεθος, περιτιθέντες δὲ τὴν πιμελὴν ὡς δέλεαρ, καὶ οὕτω
size putting-on and the fat as bait and thus
κατασπῶντες τοὺς παριόντας εἰς τὴν ἐκείνων εἰσοίκησιν.
drawing-down the(-ones) passing-by into the their entry
Εὐρόει δὲ καὶ τῷ Ἁγιοθεοδωρίτῃ Ἰωάννῃ τὰ διαβούλια,
flowed-well and also — for-Hagiotheodorites John the counsels
πλὴν τούτῳ ἡ ταχύπους τῶν πραγμάτων φορὰ καὶ
except for-this(-one) the swift-footed of-the affairs course and
ἀγχίστροφος συμφοιτητὴν ἐνδέξιον τὸν Στυππειώτην
quick-turning (a)-fellow-student dexterous — Styppeiotes
ἐφιστᾷ Θεόδωρον, ὃς συντρέχων ἢ ἀντιτρέχων τῷ Ἰωάννῃ,
sets-over Theodore who running-with or running-against — John
καὶ τῷ μὲν λόγῳ τὰ πρῶτα τῇ δὲ τάξει φέρων
and in-the indeed reckoning the first(-places) in-the and rank carrying
τὰ δεύτερα, οὐκ ἠνείχετο οὐδ' ἠγάπα ταῖς παρούσαις
the second not endured nor was-content with-the present
ἀναβάσεσιν, ἀλλὰ τῆς κορυφαίας ἅπας γινόμενος καὶ περὶ
ascents but of-the topmost wholly becoming and about
τὴν ἀκρώρειαν λιχνευόμενος ὅλον πρὸς τὸ ἀνώτατον τὸν
the summit being-greedy whole to the highest the
δρόμον ἐπέτεινε. καὶ δὴ καιροῦ λαβόμενος καθ' ὃν οὐκ
course he-strained and indeed (the)-time having-seized in which not
ὀλίγα ξυνέπεσε τὰ διάφορα μεταξὺ ἀνδρὸς εὐγενοῦς, τοῦ
few happened the differences between (a)-man noble —
Παλαιολόγου φημὶ Μιχαήλ, καὶ τοῦ Βαλσαμὼν Ἰωσήφ,
Palaiologos I-mean Michael and — Balsamon Joseph
ὃς γαμβρὸς ἦν τοῦ Ἁγιοθεοδωρίτου ἐπ' ἀδελφῇ, ἐπέθετο
who brother-in-law was — of-Hagiotheodorites by (a)-sister he-attacked
κραταιότερον, καὶ συντείνας ἐξοστρακίζει τοῦτον τῶν
more-strongly and having-pressed ostracizes this(-one) from-the
ἀνακτόρων ὡς ἀπὸ σκοπιᾶς οὐρανίου, καὶ ὡς εἰς χῶρον
palace as from (a)-lookout heavenly and as into (a)-place

ἐκσφενδονᾷ μυχαίτατον τὴν πραιτωρίαν ἀρχὴν τῆς Ἑλλάδος
he-slings most-remote the praetorian office — of-Hellas
καὶ τῆς τοῦ Πέλοπος, εὖ τὰ ἐκεῖ διαθήσοντα καὶ
and of-the — of-Pelops well the(-affairs) there going-to-arrange and
τὰς τῶν εἰρημένων ἀνδρῶν διαλυσόμενον ἔριδας. οὐκοῦν
the of-the mentioned men going-to-dissolve strifes therefore
ὁ μὲν Ἰωάννης ἐσκευαγώγει τὰ πρὸς τὴν ἔξοδον· ἡ
— indeed John packed-up the(-things) for the departure the
δὲ τύχη μηδὲ καθαρῶς τὴν τούτου μετάβασιν ἀναμείνασα
and fortune nor clearly the his removal having-awaited
πρὸς τὸν Στυππειώτην μετεσκευάσατο, καὶ προσπλακεῖσα,
to — Styppeiotes changed-over and having-embraced(-him)
πῶς ἂν εἴποι τις, ἀσμένως καὶ χαριέστατα ταῖς καθ'
how — would-say anyone gladly and most-gracefully with-the by
ὥραν πάσαις ἐκλέϊζεν ἀναβάσεσι, καὶ τὴν ἐκ δόξης
hour all made-famous(-him) ascents and the from glory
εἰς δόξαν παρεῖχεν ὕψωσιν. καὶ τέλος τὸν μὲν εἰς
to glory granted exaltation and (at-the)-end the(-one) indeed to
τὴν τοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ κανικλείου μεγαλοπρεπῆ προβιβάζει τιμὴν
the of-the over the inkstand magnificent advances honor
καὶ τὴν παρὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ μεγίστην οἰκείωσιν, καὶ μείζοσιν
and the with the emperor greatest intimacy and with-greater
ἑτέραις κατακυδροῖ προκοπαῖς, τὸν δ' ἀγνωμονοῦσα
other glorifies promotions the(-other) and being-ungrateful
καὶ βλωμοῦ ἄρτου τίθησιν ἐνδεᾶ. καὶ οὐκέτι τὰ
and of-(a)-morsel of-bread makes in-want and no-longer the(-things)
δεδογμένα μετήμειψεν ἢ ὅλως ἐσέπειτα μετηλλοίωσεν, ἀλλ'
decided changed or at-all afterward altered but
ἔμεινεν ἡ ἀκροσφαλὴς ἐπὶ ταὐτοῦ τὸ καινότατον. τὸ δ'
remained the tottering on the-same the newest(-thing) the and
ἀπὸ τοῦδε ἦγε τὰ πράγματα ὁ ἀνὴρ ὅδε ὡς ἠβούλετο,
from this led the affairs the man this as he-wished

βαθυγνώμων ὢν καὶ πεπνυμένος καὶ τὸ ἦθος ἐπίχαρις
deep-minded being and prudent and in-the character charming
καὶ πτηνὸς τὴν φρόνησιν. ἠρεῖτο δὲ ὅσα ἐπέταττε
and winged in-the prudence chose and what-things ordered
βασιλεύς· ἐπέταττε δ᾽ οὗτος ὅσα ἐκεῖνος ἐβούλετο.
(the)-emperor ordered and this(-one) what-things he wished
ἦν δὲ ἐν τῷ τότε καὶ βασιλεὺς λημμάτων αἰσχρῶν
was and in the then(-time) also (the)-emperor of-gains shameful
ἐλεύθερος, θάλασσα φιλοδωρίας, ἐλέους ἄβυσσος, τῷ
free (a)-sea of-generosity of-mercy (an)-abyss through-the
προσηνεῖ τοῦ ἤθους εὐέντευκτος καὶ τὴν βασίλειον ἀρετὴν
gentleness of-the character easy-to-approach and in-the imperial virtue
ἀπαράμιλλος, ψυχὴν εἰσέτι ἄτεχνον ἔχων καὶ γνώμην
unrivaled (a)-soul still artless having and (a)-mind
ἀπερίεργον. ὡς γὰρ ἀπήγγελλον ἡμῖν οἱ τὴν ἡλικίαν
unmeddlesome as for reported to-us the(-ones) in-the age
προήκοντες, ἐπὶ τὰς πλαγίῳ λόγῳ ᾀδομένας χρυσᾶς
advanced to the in-oblique speech sung golden
ἔννας οἱ τότε ἦσαν παλινδρομήσαντες ἄνθρωποι, καὶ
nine-day(-feasts) the then were running-back men and
σμήνει ἐῴκεσαν μελισσῶν ἐκ πέτρας γλαφυρῆς βομβηδὸν
to-(a)-swarm were-like of-bees from (a)-rock hollow with-buzzing
ἱπταμένων, ἢ οὐδὲν τῶν ἐπ᾽ ἀγορᾶς εἱλουμένων
flying or nothing from-the(-ones) at (the)-market thronging
διενηνόχασιν, ὅσοι τοὺς βασιλικοὺς χρυσῶνας εἰσῄεσαν
differed as-many-as the imperial gold-treasuries entered
ὁποιουδή τινος φιλοτιμήματος ἀπολαύσοντες, ὡς τοὺς
of-whatever some largesse going-to-enjoy so-that the(-ones)
περὶ ταῖς πύλαις συνθλίβεσθαι καὶ πράγματα παρέχειν καὶ
at the gates to-be-crushed and troubles to-give and
λαμβάνειν ἀμοιβαδόν, τοὺς μὲν ἐπειγομένους εἰσιέναι,
to-receive in-turn the(-ones) indeed hastening to-enter

τοὺς δὲ τὴν ἔξοδον ἐπισπέρχοντας. ἡμεῖς δὲ κλέος οἷον
the(-ones) and the exit urging we and (a)-report such
ἀκούομεν. ἦν δὲ καὶ ἄλλως τὰ κοινὰ ταμιεῖα τὸ κατ᾽
we-hear were and also otherwise the common treasuries the at
ἐκεῖνο καιροῦ ἐκ τούτου εἰς τοῦτο ἐξερευγόμενα, καὶ κατὰ
that of-time from this into this belching-out and like
τὰς συναγωγὰς τῶν ὑδάτων πλημμύροντα καὶ παραπτύειν
the gatherings of-the waters overflowing and to-spit-out
τι τῶν ἔνδον πρὸς τοὺς ἐκτὸς καὶ πενομένους
some of-the(-things) inside to the(-ones) outside and poor
ἐθέλοντα, ὅσα καὶ γαστὴρ ἐγγίζουσα τῷ τεκεῖν καὶ
wishing just-as also (a)-belly approaching the to-give-birth and
βαρουμένη τῷ ὑπερτελείῳ τοῦ ἀχθοφορήματος· ἡ γὰρ
weighed-down by-the overdue of-the burden the for
μερίδα τῷ θεῷ καὶ τῷ δικαίῳ διδοῦσα φορολογία
(a)-share — to-God and to-the just giving taxation
τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ πατρὸς τῷ βασιλεῖ Μανουήλ, καὶ
of-the emperor and father for-the emperor Manuel and
τὸ μὴ τῶν δαπανημάτων ἄσωτον καὶ ἀκόλαστον, εἰς
the not of-the expenditures prodigal and unbridled into
σωρείας τὰ χρήματα ἐπεστοίβασε καὶ ὡς κάχληκας αὐτὰ
heaps the money piled-up and as pebbles them
συναγήοχεν. ἦν δ᾽, ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ τὸ θεῖον ἐπευλογοῦν καὶ
gathered it-was and as it-seems also the divine blessing and
πληθῦνον αὐτὰ κατὰ τὸ τοῦ ἐπαγγέλματος ἀδιάπτωτον,
multiplying them according-to the of-the promise infallibility
ὃ καὶ λῆψιν οὐρανίου εἰσηγεῖται μισθοῦ καὶ τὴν
which also (a)-receiving of-heavenly brings-in reward and the
εἰς τὸ πολλαπλάσιον ἀνταπόδοσιν. ἀλλ᾽ οὐ μόνιμα τῷ
into the manifold repayment but not lasting for-the
βασιλεῖ Μανουὴλ τὰ τῆς ἀρίστης ταύτης προθέσεως,
emperor Manuel the(-things) of-the best this purpose

ἀλλὰ βραχύχρονα καὶ ἐπίκηρα· ἐς γὰρ ἄνδρας ἐλάσας
but short-lived and perishable to for men having-driven
ἀρχικώτερόν τε ἥψατο τῶν πραγμάτων, τοῖς ὑπὸ
more-imperiously both he-handled the affairs to-the(-ones) under
χεῖρα οὐχ ὡς ἐλευθέροις ἀλλ' ὡς κληρωτοῖς θεράπουσι
hand not as free(-men) but as allotted servants
προσφερόμενος, καὶ τὴν τῆς φιλοδωρίας συνέστειλεν
behaving and the of-the generosity he-contracted
ἔκροιαν, ἵνα μὴ λέγοιμι ὡς εἰς τὸ παλίρρουν αὐτὴν ἐβιάσατο
outflow that not I-may-say that into the back-flowing it he-forced
καὶ τὸν ἀναδασμὸν ἔστιν ὅτε καὶ ἐφ' οἷς ἐδικαίωσεν, οὐκ
and the redistribution there-is when also on what he-had-awarded not
ἐκ τοῦ γνωμικοῦ δ' οἶμαι τοσοῦτον αἰτίου (χρὴ γὰρ
from the opinionated and I-think so-much cause it-is-needful for
ἐν τοῖς ἀδήλοις ῥέπειν πρὸς τὸ φιλάνθρωπον) ὅσον
in the uncertain(-things) to-incline to the humane as-much-as
ἐκ τοῦ μὴ κοτύλης δεῖσθαι ψηγμάτων ἀλλ' ἄντικρυς
from the not of-(a)-cup to-need of-gold-dust but outright
πελάγους Τυρσηνικοῦ ἃς εἶχε διευρύνας ἐξόδους τῶν
of-(a)-sea Tyrrhenian which he-had having-widened outlets of-the
δαπανῶν, ὡς προϊὸν δηλώσει τὸ λέγειν μοι.
expenditures as going-forward will-show the to-tell to-me

IV · THE SECOND CRUSADE APPROACHES

The Germans and kindred peoples, women riding armed among them, set out for Palestine. Their envoys ask passage and markets; Manuel promises both if they swear to cross Roman land peacefully, but, distrusting them, he gathers his forces, strengthens the City's walls, and sends his army to shadow the Germans and check their foragers. At Philippopolis the archbishop Michael Italikos charms the king into friendship.

Ἀλλ᾽ οὕτω διακυβερνωμένῳ τὴν βασιλείαν τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
but thus steering the empire the autocrat
νέφος πολεμίων ἐκ τῶν ἑσπερίων ἐπισυστὰν κλιμάτων,
(a)-cloud of-enemies from the western having-gathered regions
τετριγὸς δεινὸν καὶ ὀλέθριον, ἐς τὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐνέσκηψεν
shrieking terrible and destructive into the of-(the)-Romans burst
ὅρια, ἡ τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν φημὶ κίνησις καὶ ἡ τούτοις
borders the of-the Alamans I-mean movement and the with-them
συνεξάρασα μοῖρα ὁμογενῶν ἐκείνοις ἑτέρων ἐθνῶν·
having-risen-together part kindred to-them of-other peoples
οἷς καὶ θήλειαι κατελέγοντο ὡς ἄρρενες ἐφιππάζουσαι
among-whom also females were-enrolled as males riding
καὶ ταῖς ἐφεστρίσιν οὐ συμβάδην τὼ πόδε διαχαλῶσαι
and on-the saddles not side-by-side the two-feet letting-hang
ἀλλὰ περιβάδην ἀνέδην ἐποχούμεναι, καὶ κοντοφόροι καὶ
but astride freely mounted and lance-bearing and
ὁπλοφόροι κατ᾽ ἄνδρας ὁρώμεναι, καὶ ἀνδρείαν στολὴν
arms-bearing like men appearing and manly dress
περικείμεναι, αἳ καὶ ὅλως ἀρεϊκὸν ἔβλεπον καὶ ὑπὲρ τὰς
wearing who also wholly martial looked and beyond the
Ἀμαζόνας ἠρρένωντο. μία δὲ καὶ ὑπεξήρετο παρ᾽ ἐκείναις
Amazons were-made-manly one and also excelled among them
καθάπερ ἄλλη τις Πενθεσίλεια, ἥτις ἐκ τοῦ στίζοντος
as another some Penthesileia who from the embroidering
χρυσοῦ καὶ περιτρέχοντος τὰς ὥας καὶ τὰ λώματα τοῦ
gold and running-round the borders and the hems of-the
ἐσθήματος Χρυσόπους παρωνομάζετο. αὐτὸ δὲ τὸ τῆς
garment Goldfoot was-nicknamed it and the of-the
κινήσεως αἴτιον πρόφασιν τὸ κυριακὸν παρεῖχε κενήριον
movement cause (a)-pretext the Lord's provided tomb
καὶ ἡ πρὸς τὰ εὐθέα τῶν σκολιῶν καὶ ἐπιβούλων
and the toward the straight(-ways) from-the crooked and treacherous

παρόδων ἑτοιμασία τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ γένους ἐκείνοις εὐθὺ
passages preparation for-the(-ones) of the race those straight
τῶν Ἱεροσολύμων ἐθέλουσιν ἴεσθαι. ἔφασκον δὲ καὶ κατὰ
— for-Jerusalem wishing to-go they-said and also on
τὴν ἔξοδον ἐκείνην μηδέν τι περιττὸν ἐπισύρεσθαι, ἀλλ'
the departure that nothing at-all superfluous to-drag-along but
ἢ τὰ πρὸς ἐξομάλισιν τῶν τρίβων ἀναγκαιότατα
except the(-things) for smoothing of-the roads most-necessary
καὶ μόνα ἐπάγεσθαι. διὰ τούτων δὲ παρυπέφαινον οὐ
and only to-bring-along through these and they-hinted not
πτύα καὶ τύκια καὶ σκαπάνας, θυρεοὺς δὲ καὶ θώρακας
shovels and picks and mattocks shields and also breastplates
καὶ φάσγανα, καὶ εἴ τι ἄλλο πρὸς πόλεμον ἐπιτήδειον.
and swords and if anything other for war suitable
καὶ τοῦτο μὲν τὸ παρορμῆσαν ἐκεῖνοι προυβάλλοντο
and this indeed the(-thing) having-urged they put-forward
καὶ διώμνυντο, καὶ ἦν, ὡς ἐκ τῶν ὕστερον ἔδειξαν,
and swore and was as from the(-things) later they-showed
οὐκ ἐψευσμένα τὰ ὑπ' ἐκείνων λεγόμενα. πέμψαντες
not false the(-things) by them said having-sent
δὲ πρεσβευτάς, ὡς διὰ φιλίας, ᾐτοῦντο τὸν βασιλέα τὸν
and envoys as through friendship they-asked the emperor the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων παρελθεῖν, καὶ ἀγορὰς αὐτοῖς παροδίους
of-the Romans to-pass and markets for-them along-the-road
προτίθεσθαι, ἐξ ὧν ὠνήσονται καὶ ὅσοις ἄνθρωποι
to-set-out from which they-will-buy and (with)-what men
τρέφονται καὶ ὅσα ἵπποις ξυμβέβληνται. ὁ δὲ βασιλεύς,
are-fed and what for-horses are-provided the and emperor
ὡς εἰκός, ἐκ τοῦ παραχρῆμα διαταραχθεὶς τὴν ψυχὴν τῷ
as likely from the instant troubled in-the soul by-the
ἀέλπτῳ τοῦ πράγματος καὶ μηδέπω εἰς τὸ κατ' ἐκεῖνο
unexpectedness of-the matter and not-yet to the at that

καιροῦ γενομένῳ, οὐκ ἀνῆκεν ὅμως τῶν συνοισόντων
of-time having-happened not he-let-up nevertheless of-the(-things) going-to-be-useful
ἐπιμελόμενος. τοῖς τε γὰρ πρέσβεσι διειλέχθη μετὰ
taking-care with-the both for envoys he-conversed with
προσηνείας τὰ πρόσφορα, καὶ ἐπαινεῖν ὑπερβαλλόντως
gentleness the(-things) fitting and to-praise exceedingly
τὰ δρώμενα ὑπεκρίνετο, καὶ ἄγασθαι αὐτοὺς τῆς
the(-things) being-done he-pretended and to-admire them for-the
εὐσεβοῦς προσεποιεῖτο προθέσεως, κἀκ τοῦ αὐτίκα δὴ
pious he-feigned purpose and-from the at-once indeed
μάλα ἑτοιμάσασθαι τὰ πρὸς διέλευσιν ἐπηγγέλλετο,
very to-prepare the(-things) for passage he-promised
ἄφθονά τε εὐτρεπίσειν καὶ ἕτοιμα οὕτως λαβεῖν τὰ ὤνια
abundant both to-make-ready and ready thus to-take the wares
ἰσχυρίζετο ὡς εἴπερ οὐ δι᾽ ἀλλοτρίας ἀλλὰ διὰ τῆς
he-insisted as if-indeed not through foreign but through the
σφῶν παρώδευον χώρας, ἂν δώσουσι μόνον ὅρκια
their-own they-were-marching land if they-will-give only oaths
πιστὰ ὡς θεοφιλὴς αὐτοῖς ἡ δίοδος ἀληθῶς καὶ ὡς
trustworthy that God-loving to-them the passage truly and that
ἀμαχητὶ τὰ Ῥωμαίων ὅρια ὑπερβήσονται. ταῦτ᾽ οὖν
without-battle the of-(the)-Romans borders they-will-cross these(-things) then
ὡς εἰκὸς καταστησάμενος, ἀπανταχῇ διεκπέμπει βασίλεια
as likely having-arranged everywhere sends-out imperial
διατάγματα προεκχεῖσθαι τὰ ζωαρκῆ τῶν ὁδῶν καθ᾽
ordinances to-be-poured-out-beforehand the life-supplies of-the roads by
ἃς οἱ ἐξ ἑσπέρας στρατοὶ διελεύσονται· καὶ τῷ λόγῳ
which the from (the)-west armies will-pass and to-the word
τὸ ἔργον ἐπηκολούθει. ὑποβλεπόμενος δὲ καὶ ὑπονοῶν
the deed followed regarding-with-suspicion and and suspecting
μή πως ἐν δέρματι προβάτων λυκιδεῖς ἔρχονται ἢ
lest somehow in skin of-sheep wolf-cubs come or

ὄνῳ ὑποκρύπτονται λέοντες ἀπ᾽ ἐναντίας τῷ μυθικῷ
in-(an)-ass lie-hidden lions from opposite to-the mythical
διηγήματι, ἢ τὴν λεοντῆν ξυνέχωσι τῇ ἀλωπεκῇ, τὰς
tale or the lion's-skin they-join to-the fox's the
Ῥωμαϊκὰς ἀθροίζει δυνάμεις, συνδιασκέπτεται κοινῇ περὶ
Roman he-gathers forces he-takes-counsel in-common about
τῶν κοινῶν, τὸ πλῆθος τῶν παρελευσομένων στρατῶν
the common(-affairs) the number of-the going-to-pass armies
διέξεισι, τῆς ἵππου τὸ πολὺ καταλέγει, τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν
he-recounts of-the horse the multitude he-enumerates the hoplite(-force)
ὅσον διασαφεῖ, τῆς πεζεταίρας μοίρας παρίστησι τὸ
how-great he-makes-clear of-the foot part he-presents the
μυρίανδρον, τὸ πάγχαλκον περιλαλεῖ καὶ τὸ φόνιον, τὸ
ten-thousand-man the all-bronze he-talks-about and the murderous the
πῦρ τῶν ὀμμάτων ἅπαντας βλέπειν, καὶ τοῖς αἵμασιν
fire of-the eyes all to-look and in-the bloods
ἐπαγάλλεσθαι ὡς οὐδὲ ῥαντισμοῖς ὑδάτων ἕτεροι. οὐ
to-exult as not-even in-sprinklings of-waters others not
ταῦτα δὲ μόνον τῇ γερουσίᾳ καταγγέλλει καὶ τοῖς
these(-things) and only to-the senate he-announces and to-the
τέλεσι καὶ στρατεύμασιν, ἀλλ᾽ ὅσα καὶ ὁ ἐκ Σικελίας
companies and armies but what-things also the from Sicily
τύραννος, ὥσπερ θὴρ ἐνάλιος, κατὰ τῶν παραθαλαττίων
tyrant like (a)-beast of-the-sea against the coastal
χωρῶν διαπράττεται, τὴν ἅλμην τύπτων τοῖς ἐρετμοῖς,
lands does the brine striking with-the oars
καὶ ταῖς Ῥωμαϊκαῖς ἐνορμιζόμενος κωμοπόλεσι, καὶ κείρων
and at-the Roman anchoring townships and ravaging
τὰ ἐν ποσὶ κατὰ πολλὴν τοῦ ἐπαμύνοντος ἐρημίαν.
the(-things) at feet with much of-the helper lack
καὶ δὴ τὰς μὲν πυργοβάρεις ἐπισκευάζει τῆς πόλεως
and indeed the indeed towered-houses he-repairs of-the city

καὶ τίθησιν εὐερκέα τὴν ὅλην τοῦ περιβόλου περίμετρον,
and makes well-fenced the whole of-the circuit-wall circumference
τῇ δὲ στρατιᾷ χιτῶνας φολιδωτοὺς χορηγεῖ, κοντοῖς
to-the and army tunics scaled he-supplies with-lances
τε καθοπλίζει χαλκήρεσι, καὶ ἵπποις δρομικοῖς διεγείρει
both he-arms bronze-fitted and with-horses racing he-rouses
τὸ φρόνημα, καὶ χρημάτων ἐπιρρώννυσι διαδόσεσιν,
the spirit and with-money strengthens with-distributions
ἃ νεῦρα τῶν πραγμάτων ἀρίστως τῶν πάλαι τις
which (are)-sinews of-the affairs best of-the ancients someone
κατωνόμασε. καὶ οὕτω σὺν θεῷ συλλήπτορι καὶ τῇ
named and thus with God (as)-helper and the
πολιούχῳ μητροπαρθένῳ ὡς ἐνῆν δυσμαχώτατα θέμενος
city-guarding Mother-Virgin as was-possible most-unassailable having-made
τὰ στρατεύματα, τὰ μὲν εἰς ἔρυμα συνέχει τῆς
the armies the(-ones) indeed in fortification he-keeps of-the
καλλιπόλεως καὶ τοῖς τείχεσιν ἐφιστᾷ, τοῖς δ' ἐπισκήπτει
beautiful-city and on-the walls sets the(-ones) and he-orders
τῇ στρατιᾷ παρέπεσθαι τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν, μὴ ἀφισταμένοις
the army to-follow the Alamans not standing-off
ἐπὶ πολύ, κἀκ τοῦδε εἴργειν τοὺς ἐκ τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν ἐς
for much and-from this to-restrain the(-ones) from the Alamans for
ἁρπαγὰς παρεξιόντας καὶ προνομάς, εἰρηνικῶς μέντοι καὶ
plundering going-out and foraging peacefully however and
μὴ πολεμικῶς. κατὰ μὲν οὖν τὴν ἀπωτέρω πορείαν οὐδέν
not warlike on indeed then the farther march nothing
τι ξυνηνέχθη ἀξιαφήγητον ἀμφοῖν τοῖς στρατεύμασιν·
at-all happened worth-relating to-both the armies
ὡς δ' εἰς Φιλιππούπολιν οἱ Ἀλαμανοὶ παρενέβαλον,
as and at Philippopolis the Alamans encamped
οὐδὲ κατὰ τὸν ἐκεῖσε σταθμὸν ἐς διαφορὰν ἀπεῖδον τὰ
not-even at the there halt to quarrel looked the

τάγματα. ὁ γὰρ τῆς χώρας ἀρχιερεὺς (ἦν δ' οὗτος
units the for of-the land archbishop was and this(-one)
ὁ Ἰταλικὸς Μιχαήλ, ὁ καὶ λόγῳ πολὺς καὶ σοφίας
— Italikos Michael the(-one) both in-speech much and of-wisdom
ὁποίας εἴποι τις μέλημα, κἀν ταῖς ὁμιλίαις τὸ ἦθος
what-kind would-say anyone (a)-care and-in the conversations the character
ἐπαγωγότατος καὶ λίθος ἄντικρυς Μάγνησσα) οὕτως
most-attractive and (a)-stone outright Magnesian thus
ὑπηγάγετο τὸν ῥῆγα ταῖς τῶν λόγων ἐκθηλύνας ἴυγξι,
won-over the king with-the of-the words having-softened charms
καὶ τῷ μέλιτι τῆς γλώττης κατεγοήτευσεν, ἀντιστρόφως
and with-the honey of-the tongue bewitched inversely
μὲν οἷς ἐφθέγγετο, τοῖς δὲ Ῥωμαίοις ἐπωφελῶς
indeed to-what-things he-uttered for-the and Romans profitably
τὴν γνώμην μεταμείβων καὶ κατὰ τὸν Φάριον Πρωτέα
the mind changing and like — Pharian Proteus
δραστηρίως μεταβαλλόμενος, ὡς ἐκ τῶν ὤτων ἀναρτῆσαι
actively being-transformed so-that by the ears to-hang
κατὰ τοὺς ἀμφορέων διακένους τὸν ὑψηλόφρονα ῥῆγα, καὶ
like the of-amphoras empty(-ones) the high-minded king and
σύσσιτον παραλαμβάνειν καὶ μεταδιδόναι προπόσεων·
as-table-companion to-take-along and to-share toasts
ὃς καὶ μετήει ὠμοτάτως, αὐτῷ χαριζόμενος, τοὺς ἄνευ
who also went-after most-cruelly him gratifying the(-ones) without
καταθέσεως ἀργυρίου τὰ σῖτα ὁθενοῦν παρεισάγοντας.
payment of-silver the grains from-wherever bringing-in

The Germans march through Thrace and lose many men when a flood sweeps their camp at Choirobakchoi. Conrad reaches the City and is ferried across the Bosporus. Niketas admits that the Romans cheated the crusaders, mixing lime into the barley meal, and that Manuel struck debased silver coin to pay them.

Ἐν δὲ τῷ μεθίστασθαι ἐκεῖθεν καὶ προβῆναι τὸν ῥῆγα
in and the to-move thence and to-go-forward the king
τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν, ἐκ τῶν κατ᾽ οὐρὰν Ἀλαμανῶν
to-the(-places) before from the in rear Alamans
καὶ Ῥωμαίων δίκη μὲν τὰ πρῶτα παρρησιάζεται ὡς
and (the)-Romans (a)-lawsuit indeed the first speaks-freely as
δῆθεν κακῶς πασχόντων τινῶν· εἶτα ἐξωθεῖ ταύτην
supposedly badly suffering some then thrusts-out this
ἡ φιλοτάραχος τῶν πολλῶν ἔνστασις, καὶ τραχύνεται
the trouble-loving of-the many insistence and grows-rough
ταῖς βοαῖς. ταύταις ἐφομαρτεῖ τὸ παρρησιαστικὸν καὶ
with-the shouts these follows the free-spoken and
φιλόνεικον. ὁπλίζει τοῦτο τὰς χεῖρας εἰς πόλεμον. ἡ
contentious(-spirit) arms this(-one) the hands for war —
Ἐνυὼ ἐφέπεται, καὶ τῆς Φυλόπιδος ξυλλαβομένης ἡ
Enyo follows and — Phylopis having-taken-part the
μάχη λαμπρῶς ἐκορθύετο. φιλαυξὴς δὲ οὖσα αὕτη καὶ
battle openly raised-its-crest growth-loving and being it and
ἀεὶ τῶν ἄνω ἐφιεμένη μικροῦ δεῖν ἐστήριξεν ἂν
always of-the(-things) above longing by-little to-lack would-have-fixed —
τὸ κάρη ἐς οὐρανόν, χαμαιβάμων οὖσα τὰ πρῶτα καὶ
the head into heaven ground-walking being at first and
χθόνιος, εἰ μὴ ὁ ῥηθεὶς προφθάσας ἀρχιερεὺς τὸν ῥῆγα
earthly if not the mentioned having-anticipated archbishop the king

γινόμενον ἤδη παλίνστροφον καὶ πόλεμον πνέοντα τοῖς
becoming already turned-back and war breathing with-the
οἰκείοις θελκτηρίοις ἐμάλθαξε καὶ ἠρεμεῖν ἀνέπεισε παρὰ
own charms softened and to-be-quiet persuaded contrary-to
δόξαν, ὅσα καὶ θῆρα βασιλικόν, ᾧ οὐχ ἔωλον τὸ
expectation just-as also (a)-beast royal for-which not stale the
ἑστίαμα, τῇ ἀλκαίᾳ ὑπονυσσόμενον καὶ πρὸς ἅλματα
feast by-the might being-pricked and to leaps
διερεθιζόμενον. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ κατὰ τὸ εὐερκὲς Ἀδριανοῦ
being-provoked when and also at the well-fenced of-Hadrian
πόλισμα τὰ στρατεύματα ξυνελέγησαν, ὁ μὲν ῥὴξ διὰ
small-town the armies were-gathered the indeed king through
τῆς πόλεως ἐλάσας τῆς προκειμένης εἶχετο, νοσηλείᾳ
the city having-driven the(-road) lying-before held by-sickness
δέ τις σώματος τῶν ἐξ αἵματος ἐκείνῳ περιπεσὼν
and someone of-body of-the(-ones) from blood to-him having-fallen
κατὰ τὴν Ἀδριανοῦ ἐνηυλίζετο. Ῥωμαίων δέ τινες
at the of-Hadrian bivouacked of-(the)-Romans and some
ἀνάρσιοι, καὶ τὰς χεῖρας οὐκ εἰς ὁπλισμὸν λημματισμὸν
lawless and the hands not for arms for-gain
δὲ μᾶλλον δεδιδαγμένοι, νυκτὸς ἐπιθέμενοι τῇ καταγωγῇ
and rather taught by-night having-attacked the lodging
πῦρ τε ὑφάπτουσι καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα τοῖς ἐνοῦσι
fire both kindle and the man with-the(-things) within
συγκαταφλέγουσι. τοῦτο μαθὼν ὁ Κορράδος (οὕτω γὰρ
burn-together this having-learned — Conrad thus for
ὁ ῥὴξ ὠνομάζετο) ἐπιτρέπει τὰ τῆς ἀμύνης τῷ
the king was-named entrusts the(-things) of-the revenge to-the
ἀδελφιδῷ Φρεδερίχῳ. ὁ δὲ καὶ ἄλλως ὢν φρονηματίας,
nephew Frederick he and also otherwise being haughty
τότε δὲ καὶ τῷ πάθει νενικημένος, ἐπαναστραφεὶς τό
then and also by-the passion conquered having-turned-back the

τε ἱερὸν σεμνεῖον τίθησι πυρὸς παρανάλωμα, ἐν ᾧ
both holy monastery makes of-fire (a)-consumption in which
κατέλυεν ὁ Ἀλαμανός, καὶ τοὺς συλλαβομένους τοῦ
lodged the Alaman and the(-ones) having-taken-part the
ἔργου ὑπεδίκαζε θανάτῳ, ἐξέτασιν περὶ τῶν ἀπολωλότων
deed condemned to-death inquiry about the lost
χρημάτων ποιούμενος. καὶ τοῦτο μάχης παραίτιον γίνεται.
money making and this of-battle (a)-partial-cause becomes
ἀλλ' ἐπεγέλασε καὶ πάλιν κουροτρόφος εἰρήνη τις, καὶ
but smiled-upon also again nurse-of-youths peace some and
ἄλλων μὲν ἐκ τῶν ἐν τέλει Ῥωμαίων κατασβεσάντων
others indeed from of-the in office Romans having-quenched
τὸν πόλεμον, μάλιστα δὲ τοῦ Προυσοὺχ ἐξηνυκότος
the war most and — Prosouch having-accomplished
τὸ πᾶν. οὗτος γὰρ τοῖς ποταμοῖς τὸν ἵππον ἀφεὶς
the whole this(-one) for to-the rivers the horse having-let-go
ᾧ ἔποχος ἦν, οἳ σύντρεις διὰ τῆς ἐκεῖσε λιθίνης
on-which mounted he-was which three-together through the there stone
γεφύρας διαυλωνίζονται, ὡς τὸν Φρεδερίχον παραγενόμενος
bridge flow-through-channels to — Frederick having-arrived
ὀργίλως τε τοῦτον ἔχοντα κατεπράϋνε καὶ τῆς
angrily both this(-one) being(-disposed) calmed and from-the
γνώμης μετακινεῖ. πάλιν οὖν σταθμοί τε ἦσαν εἰρηναῖοι
mind moves again then halts both were peaceful
καὶ παρασάγγαι φιλήσυχοι, καὶ ἡ ἐς τὰ πρόσω δίοδος
and parasangs quiet and the to the forward passage
εὐδιάβατος. εἶχε τοίνυν μεθ' ἡμέρας αὐτοὺς ἡ τῶν
easy-to-cross held therefore after days them the —
Χοιροβάκχων πᾶσα ἱππήλατος πηγνύντας στρατόπεδον,
of-Choirobakchoi all horse-riding(-plain) pitching camp
οὐ μὴν καὶ βάλλοντας χάρακα· τοῦτο γὰρ δι' ὅλων ἦν
not indeed also throwing (a)-palisade this for through whole was

αὐτοῖς τῶν σταθμῶν πισύνοις οὖσι τοῖς παρὰ Ῥωμαίων
to-them the halts trusting being to-the from (the)-Romans
ὅρκοις καὶ ταῖς ξυμβάσεσι. παραρρεῖ δὲ ταῖς ἐκεῖσε πεδιάσι
oaths and to-the agreements flows-past and the there plains
ποταμὸς οὐ πλατὺς τὸ ῥεῖθρον, οὐ βαθὺς τὴν περαίωσιν,
(a)-river not broad in-the stream not deep in-the crossing
Μέλας τοὔνομα. οὗτος τοίνυν θέρους μὲν λειψυδρῶν
Melas by-name this(-one) therefore in-summer indeed lacking-water
ἐς χαράδραν συνάγεται τεναγώδη, ὅτι μηδὲ διὰ
to (a)-ravine is-gathered shallow because not-even through
ψαμμώδους πρόεισι γῆς ἀλλ' ἐριβώλακος ἁπάσης καὶ
sandy it-goes-forward land but very-fertile all and
εἰς βαθεῖαν σχιζομένης ἀρόταις βουσὶν αὔλακα· χειμῶνος
into deep split by-plowing oxen furrow of-winter
δ' ἐφεστῶτος ἢ ῥαγδαίων ὑετῶν κατενεχθέντων ἐκ
and having-come or violent rains having-come-down from
μικροῦ μέγιστος γίνεται, καὶ προβὰς ἐς βαθυδίνην ἐκ
small greatest becomes and having-gone-forward to deep-eddying from
πονηροῦ καὶ λακκαίου ἀνοιδαίνεται ὕδατος, καὶ θαλάσσαις
wretched and pond-like swells water and with-seas
θέλων συνεξετάζεσθαι καὶ ποταμὸς οὐκέτ' ἀνεχόμενος εἶναι
wishing to-be-ranked and (a)-river no-longer enduring to-be
εἰς φλοῖσβον τραχύνεται καὶ πλωτὸς ἐκ βατοῦ γίνεται καὶ
to surge grows-rough and navigable from fordable becomes and
διεκχεῖται εἰς πλάτος. ἀμέλει καὶ διαρριπιζόμενος πνεύμασιν
pours-out to breadth indeed also being-fanned by-winds
εἰς κῦμα μετεωρίζεται, κἀντεῦθεν ἄχνην ἀποπτύων καὶ
into (a)-wave is-raised and-from-there foam spitting-out and
τῇ γείτονι χέρσῳ ὑβριστὴς προσαράσσων πόνους
on-the neighboring dry-land insolent dashing labors
παρασύρει γεωργῶν, ὁδοιπόρους ἐπέχει τῆς ὁδοῦ, καὶ ὡς
sweeps-away of-farmers travelers stops from-the road and as

ἐπίπαν εἰς χρῆμα ἐπάρατον σχεδιάζεται. τότε τοιγαροῦν
on-the-whole into (a)-thing accursed is-improvised then accordingly
οὗτος ὁ χειμάρρους ἐξ ὑετοῦ πολὺς καὶ κατακλύζων
this the torrent from rain great and flooding
φανείς, καὶ νυκτὸς ἐκ τοῦ αἰφνηδὸν ὑπερπλημμύρας ὡς
having-appeared and by-night from the sudden having-overflowed as
εἴπερ αὐτῷ οἱ καταρράκται ἀνεῴγεσαν οὐρανοῦ, ἀπάγει
if to-it the cataracts had-opened of-heaven carries-off
τῆς παρεμβολῆς τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν οὐ μόνον ὅπλα καὶ
from-the camp of-the Alamans not only arms and
ἵππεια φάλαρα καὶ ἐσθήματα καὶ εἴ τι ἕτερον αὐτοῖς
horse trappings and garments and if anything other for-them
ἐσκευαγώγει τὰ ὑποζύγια, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἵππους καὶ ὀρέας
carried the beasts-of-burden but also horses and mules
καὶ ἄνδρας ἱπποκορυστάς. καὶ ἦν τὸ θέαμα ἐλεεινὸν καὶ
and men horse-helmeted and was the sight pitiable and
θέλον ἀτεχνῶς δάκρυα, ἄνευ πολέμου πίπτοντες, ἄνευ
wishing simply tears without war falling without
διώκοντος ἀναιρούμενοι. οὐδὲ τὸ τῆς ἡλικίας σταδιαῖον
(a)-pursuer being-destroyed not-even the of-the stature (a)-stade's(-length)
μικροῦ καὶ πελώριον, οὐδ' ἡ μάχης ἀκόρητος δεξιὰ
by-little and monstrous nor the of-battle insatiable right(-hand)
εἰς ἀποφυγὴν ἐπήρκεσεν αὐτοῖς τοῦ κακοῦ, ἀλλ' ἔπιπτον
for escape sufficed for-them from-the evil but they-fell
ὡσεὶ χόρτος, καὶ ὡσεὶ φορυτὸς εἰληθερὴς καὶ πόκος
like grass and like rubbish sun-dried and (a)-fleece
ἐρίου κοῦφος παρεσύροντο, καὶ ψαλμικῶς εἰπεῖν τὰς
of-wool light were-swept-away and psalm-like to-say the
τούτων ἀπῆρεν ὁ ποταμὸς οὗτος φωνὰς βαρβαρικῶς
of-these lifted the river this voices barbarously
ἀλαλαζόντων καὶ μέλος ἐνδιδόντων ταῖς σκοπιαῖς καὶ
raising-the-war-cry and (a)-song giving to-the lookouts and

τοῖς γηλόφοις δι᾽ ὧν παρεσύροντο ἄγριον ὁμοῦ καὶ
to-the hills through which they-were-swept-away wild at-once and
ἀνήμερον καὶ οὐχ οἷον ᾄδουσι τὰ μελιχρὰ τῶν ποιμένων
untamed and not such-as sing the honeyed of-the shepherds
αὐλήματα, ὡς συλλογίζεσθαι τοὺς συνορῶντας τὸ
pipings so-that to-reckon the(-ones) perceiving the
τηνικαῦτα συμβὰν μῆνιν ἀπὸ θεοῦ ἄντικρυς εἰς τὸ τῶν
then having-happened (a)-wrath from God outright on the of-the
Ἀλαμανῶν στρατόπεδον ἐπενσκήψασαν, εἰ οὕτως ἀθρόον
Alamans camp having-fallen if thus at-once
ὕδατι κατεπόθησαν ὡς μηδὲ τὰ ἑαυτῶν ἐκσώσασθαι
by-water they-were-swallowed so-that not-even the their-own to-save
δυνηθῆναι σώματα. ὕπνωσαν τοίνυν κατ᾽ ἐκείνην τὴν
to-have-been-able bodies slept therefore in that the
νύκτα οἱ μὲν εἰς θάνατον, οἱ δὲ ὧν εἶχον ἀφανισμὸν
night some indeed into death others and of-what they-had into-disappearance
καὶ ἀπώλειαν. ὁ δέ γε ῥὴξ κατώδυνος ἐπὶ τῷ συμβάντι
and destruction the and at-least king grieved at the event
τούτῳ γενόμενος, καθυφείς δέ τι καὶ τοῦ κόμπου
this having-become having-relaxed and something also of-the boasting
βραχύ, καὶ θαυμάσας εἰ καὶ τὰ στοιχεῖα Ῥωμαίοις
little and having-wondered if even the elements to-(the)-Romans
ὑπείκουσι καὶ θελήσασι μόνον ὑπενδιδόασι, καὶ αἱ
yield and to-(them)-having-wished only give-way and the
ὧραι παρὰ τούτοις, ὅσα καὶ ὑπηρέτιδες, δεῆσαν τὰ
seasons with these just-as also handmaids being-needful the(-gifts)
ἀλλήλων ἀντιπαρέχουσιν, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν διεπορεύετο. ὡς
of-one-another provide having-set-out thence marched as
δὲ καὶ εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἠγγίκει τὴν βασιλεύουσαν, εὐθὺς
and also to the city he-had-approached the reigning at-once
τὴν στρατιὰν εἰς τὸ ἀντιπέραν διαπορθμεύειν ἠναγκάζετο,
the army to the opposite(-shore) to-ferry he-was-compelled

κἂν ὑπερεφρόνει τὰ πρῶτα, καὶ βλακευόμενος ἀπηναίνετο
even-if he-was-scornful the first and being-lazy refused
τὴν περαίωσιν, παρὰ τῇ ἑαυτοῦ κεῖσθαι γνώμῃ λέγων τὸ
the crossing in the his-own to-lie judgment saying the
οὕτω δρᾶσαι καὶ μή, τῇ Περαίᾳ ἐναυλιζόμενος, ἥτις τοῦ
thus to-do and not — in-Peraia bivouacking which —
Πικριδίου κατονομάζεται. ὅθεν ἅπας μὲν ἐρέτης ἅπαν δὲ
of-Pikridion is-named whence every indeed rower every and
πορθμεῖον καὶ ἁλιὰς ξύμπασα καὶ ναῦς ἱππαγωγὸς τὴν
ferry and fishing-boat all and ship horse-carrying the
τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν ἀμφεπονεῖτο διάβασιν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ
of-the Alamans labored-at crossing the and emperor also
τοῦ πλήθους τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀπογραφέας ἐφίστησιν, ἀνὰ
of-the multitude of-the army registrars sets-over at
πᾶσαν ἀποτάξας ἀναγωγήν, τοὺς ἐκείνῳ σημανοῦντας τὴν
every having-posted putting-to-sea the(-men) to-him going-to-signify the
κατ᾽ ἄνδρα περαίωσιν. ἀλλ᾽ ἦν τὸ πλῆθος ὑπερπεπαικὸς
by man crossing but was the multitude having-surpassed
τὴν ἀπογραφήν, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οἱ τῇ ὑπουργίᾳ
the registration and because-of this the(-ones) over-the service
ταύτῃ ἐφεστηκότες, ἀπειπόντες πρὸς τὸ πλῆθος, ἄπρακτοι
this set having-given-up at the multitude unsuccessful
ἐπανέλυσαν. οὕτω τοίνυν ἀγαπητῶς τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις ὡσεί
returned thus therefore gladly for-the Romans as-if
τινος οὐρανίου δείγματος ἀπαισίου τοῦ ῥηγὸς εἰς τὴν ἑῴαν
of-some heavenly sign ill-omened the king into the eastern
λῆξιν διαβάντος, ἐφομαρτησάντων δὲ τούτῳ μετὰ βραχὺ
region having-crossed having-followed and him after (a)-little
καὶ ὅσοι τῶν ἐκ τοῦ γένους τῶν Φράγγων αὐτῷ
also as-many-as of-the(-ones) from the race of-the Franks with-him
συνανέβησαν, ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ πάλιν τῆς αὐτῆς εἴχετο τῶν
went-up the emperor also again of-the same held of-the

οἰκείων χωρῶν προμηθείας ἧς καὶ πρώην ἐξήρτητο. οὐκ
own lands forethought on-which also formerly he-had-hung not
ἠμέλει δὲ καὶ οἷς οὗτοι τραφήσονται, ἀλλ' ἐφ' ὁδοῦ
he-neglected and also with-what these will-be-fed but on (the)-road
τὰ ὤνια καὶ αὖθις προυβέβληντο. ἐν μέντοι τοῖς τῶν
the wares also again were-set-out in however the of-the
χωρίων ἐπικαίροις καὶ ταῖς τῶν παρόδων στεναῖς λόχοι
places advantageous(-spots) and in-the of-the passes narrows ambushes
παρὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐφίζανον, δόξαν οὕτω τῷ Μανουήλ,
by (the)-Romans sat it-seemed(-good) thus — to-Manuel
καὶ οὐκ ὀλίγους ἐκ τῶν στρατοπέδων τούτων κατέκαινον.
and not few of the armies these they-killed
ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς πύλας τῶν πόλεων ἐπιζυγοῦντες οἱ ἀστυκοὶ
but also the gates of-the cities barring the townsmen
οὐκ ἀγορῶν τοῖς Ἀλαμανοῖς μετεδίδοσαν, σχοίνους δὲ τοῦ
not of-markets to-the Alamans gave-a-share ropes and from-the
τείχους ἀποκρεμῶντες ἀνεῖλκον πρότερον τὸ ὑπὲρ τοῦ
wall letting-down they-drew-up first the for the(-thing)
ἀποδιδομένου κατατιθέμενον τίμημα, ἔπειτα διαχαλῶντες
sold deposited price then letting-down
ὅσον ἐβούλοντο, εἴτε ἄρτος ἦν τὸ πωλούμενον
as-much-as they-wished whether bread was the(-thing) sold
εἴτε τι βιώσιμον ἕτερον, εἴων, ἄθεσμα δρῶντες κατ'
or some living(-need) other they-let-be lawless(-things) doing against
αὐτῶν, ἐπαρωμένων τὸν παντέφορον ὀφθαλμὸν ὡς μὴ
them calling-down the all-seeing eye as not
χρωμένων σταθμοῖς δικαίοις μηδ' οἰκτειρόντων αὐτοὺς
using weights just nor pitying them
ὡς ἐπήλυδας, μήτε τι κατατιθεμένων ὡς ὁμοπίστοις
as strangers nor anything depositing as for-fellow-believers
οἴκοθεν, μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν καὶ προσαφαρπαζόντων ἐκ
from-home rather indeed then also snatching-away from

τοῦ σφῶν φάρυγγος ὅσα πρὸς σύστασιν σώματος. οἱ
the their throat what-things for sustenance of-body the
δὲ χείριστοι τῶν οἰκητόρων, καὶ ὅσοις τὸ ἀπάνθρωπον
and worst of-the inhabitants and to-whom the inhuman(-thing)
περιεσπούδαστο, οὐδὲ τὸ βραχύτατον γοῦν διεχάλων,
was-dear not-even the smallest at-any-rate let-down
ἀλλὰ τὸ χρυσίον ἀναρειψάμενοι ἢ τὸ ἀργύριον ἀνιμησάμενοι
but the gold having-snatched-up or the silver having-drawn-up
καὶ τῷ κόλπῳ ἐνθέμενοι ἀφανεῖς ἦσαν, οὐκέτι ἐν τοῖς
and in-the bosom having-put out-of-sight they-were no-longer on the
μεσοπυργίοις ἐποπτανόμενοι. εἰσὶ δ' οἳ καὶ τοῖς
curtain-walls being-seen there-are and those-who also with-the
ἀλφίτοις ἐμφύροντες τίτανον ἐποίουν τὰ σῖτα ὀλέθρια.
barley-meal mixing lime made the grains deadly
τοῦτο δὲ εἰ μὲν ἀληθῶς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐπέταττεν, ὡς
this and if indeed truly the emperor ordered as
ἐλέγετο, ἀκριβῶς οὐκ ἴσημι· παρηνομεῖτο δ' οὖν ὅμως
was-said exactly not I-know was-done-unlawfully and then nevertheless
καὶ ἀνοσίως ἐπράττετο. ὃ δὲ τοῦ βασιλέως βούλευμα ἦν
and impiously was-done what and of-the emperor plan was
οὐκ ἀμφίλογον οὐδὲ ψεύδους παραπετάσματι σκιαζόμενον,
not disputed nor by-(a)-lie's screen shaded
ἀργύριον ἀδόκιμον εἰς νόμισμα κέκοφε, καὶ τοῦτο
silver debased into coin he-has-struck and this
προβάλλεται τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ τῶν Ἰταλῶν στρατεύματος
he-puts-forward to-the(-ones) from the of-the Italians army
ἀποδόσθαι τι θέλουσι. καὶ συντόμως εἰπεῖν, οὐδὲν
to-sell anything wishing and concisely to-say nothing
ἀπῆν τῶν δεινῶν ὃ οὐκ ἦν ἐπιτεχνώμενος αὐτοῖς
was-lacking of-the terrible(-things) which not was devising against-them
ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις δρᾶν διακελευόμενος, ὡς ἂν
the emperor and to-the others to-do urging that —

εἴη ταῦτα καὶ τοῖς ἐξ αὐτῶν ὀψιγόνοις μνημεῖα
might-be these(-things) also for-the from them late-born memorials
δήπουθεν ἀνεξάλειπτα καὶ δέους σπέρματα, τὴν κατὰ
surely ineffaceable and of-fear seeds the against
Ῥωμαίων ἐκτρέποντα κίνησιν.
(the)-Romans turning-away movement

VI · THE BATTLE ON THE MAEANDER

Manuel urges the Turks against the crusaders, who are defeated near Bathys. Then the Turks hold the banks of the Maeander against the Latin army. Its king exhorts his men in a long speech on the holy war, leads them into the river, and the current seems to stand still as they cross. The Turks are cut down in great numbers, and heaps of their bones still stand there, like the walls of Cimbrian bones round the vineyards of Massalia after Marius' victory.

Παρόμοια δὲ καὶ τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπῆλθε ποιεῖν κατὰ τῶν
similar(-things) and also to-the Turks it-occurred to-do against the
Ἀλαμανῶν, τοῦ Μανουὴλ αὐτοὺς ἐπαλείφοντος γράμμασι
Alamans — Manuel them anointing with-letters
καὶ διανιστῶντος εἰς πόλεμον. καὶ τοίνυν περὶ τὸν Βαθὺν
and rousing to war and therefore about the Bathys
ὑπερτερήσαντες, Παμπλάνου τινὸς ἡγουμένου τοῦ σφῶν
having-prevailed Pamplanos (a)-certain leading the their
στρατεύματος, πολλοὺς διέφθειραν. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τῇ μοίρᾳ
army many they-destroyed when and also on-the part
ἐπέθεντο ἥτις τὴν Φρυγίαν παρώδευεν, εἰς κενὸν αὐτοῖς
they-attacked which — Phrygia was-passing into vain for-them
τὸ βούλευμα ἔσχασε, καὶ τὸν ὄλεθρον ἑκουσίως κατὰ
the plan dropped and the destruction willingly upon
τῶν κεφαλῶν αὐτῶν καὶ πόρρωθεν ὄντα μετάπεμπτον
the heads their also from-afar being summoned

ἀτεχνῶς ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ εἰς βόθυνον κατώλισθον ὃν
simply they-made and into (a)-pit they-slipped which
ταῖς οἰκείαις χερσὶν ἐβάθυναν. τῷ τοι καὶ δέον μηδὲν
with-the own hands they-had-deepened for surely also needful nothing
παρενοχλοῦντας οὐχὶ λυπεῖν, μηδ' ἀναγκάζειν τὸ τοῦ θυμοῦ
troubling not to-grieve nor to-compel the of-the wrath
θηρίον ἀφυπνίζειν τὸ τέως κοιμώμενον, ἢ πρὸς
beast to-awaken the(-beast) meanwhile sleeping or to
ἀνδροκτασίας διαρρενοῦν, οἱ δὲ εἰς φάλαγγας πυκνωθέντες
man-slayings to-make-manly they and into phalanxes packed
καὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις ἐφεστῶτες τοῦ ποταμοῦ (Μαίανδρος οὗτος
and on-the banks standing of-the river (the)-Maeander this
ἦν) οὐκ εἴων ὅλως τὰ Λατινικὰ στρατεύματα διελθεῖν.
was not they-let at-all the Latin armies to-pass-through
ἔστι δ' οὗτος καὶ τὸν μὲν ἅπαντα χρόνον οὐ ῥᾴδιος
is and this(-one) both the indeed whole time not easy
ἁπανταχοῦ τὴν περαίωσιν, τότε δὲ καὶ τέλεον ἦν ἄπορος,
everywhere (for)-the crossing then and also wholly was impassable
εἰς δίνας ἑλιττόμενος καὶ μεταχωρῶν εἰς στροφάλιγγας,
into eddies winding and changing into whirlpools
ὅτε κἀκ τῶν πραγμάτων αὐτῶν αἱ δυσμικαὶ δυνάμεις
when also-from the affairs themselves the western forces
ὑπέδειξαν ὡς αὐτῶν ἀνεχομένων αἱ φάλαγγες Ῥωμαίων
showed that they allowing the phalanxes of-(the)-Romans
εἰς προνομὴν οὐκ ἐξέκειντο καὶ αἱ τούτων πόλεις ἀδήωτοι
to foraging not were-exposed and the their cities unravaged
παριππεύοντο, οὐδὲ βοσκημάτων δίκην οἱ τούτων οἰκήτορες
were-ridden-past nor of-cattle like the their inhabitants
ἀναιρούμενοι ἐσφακέλιζον. ὡς γὰρ τῇ ὄχθῃ τοῦ ποταμοῦ
being-killed went-to-ruin as for to-the bank of-the river
προσάγοντος τοῦ ῥηγὸς οὔτε νῆες παρῆσαν ποτάμιαι
leading the king neither ships were-present river(-boats)

οὔτε γέφυρα πρὸς διάβασιν ἔζευκτο, καὶ οἱ Τοῦρκοι
nor (a)-bridge for crossing had-been-yoked and the Turks
ἀναμὶξ πεζοὶ καὶ ἱππεῖς ἐς τὸ ἀντιπέραν φαινόμενοι δῆλοι
mixed on-foot and horsemen on the opposite(-side) appearing plain
ἦσαν ἀκροβολίζοντες, καὶ τὰ τοξεύματα διικνεῖτο τῶν
were skirmishing and the arrows reached of-the(-ones)
παριόντων τὸν ποταμὸν καὶ ἐνέπιπτον εἰς τὸ τῆς φάλαγγος
passing the river and fell into the of-the phalanx
μέτωπον, τότε μὲν ὀλίγον ἐπαναγαγὼν ἀπὸ τῆς ὄχθης τοῦ
front then indeed (a)-little having-led-back from the bank of-the
ποταμοῦ στρατοπεδεύεται, ὅσον μὴ εἶναι βέλους ἐντός, καὶ
river he-encamps so-far not to-be (the)-missile within and
ἐπιτάττει πάντας δειπνοποιήσαντας ἱπποκορυστὰς γενέσθαι
orders all having-dined horse-armed to-become
καὶ τῶν ἁρμάτων αὐτῶν ἐπιμεληθῆναι ὡς ἐς νέωτα
and of-the arms their to-take-care as for the-morrow
τοῖς Τούρκοις πολεμήσοντας πρωϊαίτερον. σκοταῖος τοίνυν
with-the Turks going-to-fight early in-the-dark therefore
διαναστάς, καὶ τοῦ ἡλίου μήπω τὸ ἅρμα ζεύξαντος,
having-risen and of-the sun not-yet the chariot having-yoked
αὐτός τε ὡς πρὸς πόλεμον ἔσταλτο καὶ ἡ λοιπὴ
himself both as for war had-been-equipped and the rest
τὰ ὅπλα ἐνεδέδυτο στρατιά. καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι ὁμοίως
the arms had-put-on army and the barbarians likewise
διαπραττόμενοι καὶ αὐτοὶ παρετάττοντο, τούς τε τοξότας
doing also themselves drew-up the both archers
τῇ ὄχθῃ παρέτεινον, καὶ τὸ ἱππικὸν ὡς αὐτοῖς ἐδόκει
along-the bank stretched and the cavalry as to-them seemed
παρεσκευάζετο, καὶ τοῦ ἀκροβολισμοῦ εἴχοντο, εἴ ποτε
was-prepared and to-the skirmishing held if ever
προυχώρουν οἱ Ἰταλοὶ κατὰ τὸν ποταμόν· ὅτε καὶ τὰς
advanced the Italians at the river when also the

τάξεις ἐπιπαρίων ὁ ῥὴξ καὶ παρακλήσεις τοῖς σφετέροις
ranks going-along the king and exhortations to-the own
ποιούμενος τοιάδε ἔφασκεν. „ὅτι μέν, ὦ συστρατιῶται,
making such(-things) said that indeed O fellow-soldiers
ἡ ἡμετέρα αὕτη κίνησις διὰ Χριστόν, καὶ ὡς
the our this movement (is)-on-account-of Christ and that
εἰλόμεθα τὴν προκειμένην μὴ τὴν ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἀλλ᾽
we-chose the(-road) lying-before not the from men but
ἐκ θεοῦ δόξαν θηρώμενοι, ἴσησι δήπουθεν καὶ ὑμῶν ἅπας
from God glory hunting knows surely also of-you everyone
σαφῶς, πῶς γὰρ οὔ; οἳ τούτου ἕνεκα τοῖς μὲν ἐπ᾽
clearly how for not who of-this for-the-sake the(-things) indeed at
οἴκου ἐνευπαθεῖν ἀπειπάμεθα, καὶ τῶν οἰκείων ἑκόντως
home to-enjoy renounced and from-the own willingly
ἀπεξενώμεθα, καὶ διὰ τῆς οὐχ ἡμεδαπῆς παροδεύοντες
were-estranged and through the not our(-land) passing
θλίψεσι προσομιλοῦμεν, κινδύνοις παραβαλλόμεθα, λιμῷ
with-afflictions we-consort to-dangers we-are-exposed by-famine
τηκόμεθα, κρύει πηγνύμεθα, θαλπωρῇ ἐκλυόμεθα, κλιντῆρα
we-waste by-frost we-are-frozen by-heat we-grow-faint (as)-couch
ἔχοντες τὴν γῆν, στέγην τὸν οὐρανόν, οἱ εὐγενεῖς, οἱ
having the earth (as)-roof the heaven the noble the
εὐπάρυφοι, οἱ ἐπὶ δόξης καὶ πλούτου, καὶ πολλῶν ἐθνῶν
purple-bordered the(-ones) in glory and wealth and of-many peoples
κυριεύοντες. τὰς δὲ πολεμικὰς σκευὰς ἐς ἀεὶ περικείμεθα
being-lords the and war-like gear for always we-wear
ὥσπερ ἀκούσια δεσμά, καὶ κάμνομεν αὐτὰς ἀνέχοντες ὡς
as-if unwilling bonds and we-labor them bearing as
ὁ τῶν ὀπαδῶν Χριστοῦ μέγιστος Πέτρος πάλαι ἁλύσεσι
the of-the followers of-Christ greatest Peter of-old with-chains
διτταῖς κακουχούμενος καὶ τέσσαρσι στρατιωτῶν τετραδίοις
double ill-treated and by-four of-soldiers squads

φρουρούμενος. ὅτι δὲ καὶ οἱ ὡς ἐν μεταιχμίῳ τῷ
guarded that and also the as in no-man's-land by-the
πορθμῷ τούτῳ ἀποδιστάμενοι ἡμῶν βάρβαροι ἐχθροί εἰσι
strait this separated(-from) us barbarians enemies are
τοῦ σταυροῦ τοῦ Χριστοῦ, οἷς πάλαι νόμῳ πολέμου
of-the cross — of-Christ with-whom long-ago by-law of-war
συμβαλεῖν ἐγλιχόμεθα καὶ ὧν τοῖς αἵμασι δαυιδικῶς
to-engage we-longed and of-whom in-the bloods David-like
ἐπηγγελλόμεθα νίψασθαι, οὐδὲ τοῦτο φιλοκρινεῖν θελήσει
we-promised to-wash not-even this to-judge-fondly will-wish
τις, εἰ μὴ προδήλως παρακοπεὶς τὸ φρονεῖν ὁρῶν
anyone if not manifestly having-been-struck-out-of the thinking seeing
ἄντικρυς οὐχ ὁρᾷ καὶ ἀκούων οὐδαμῶς ἐνωτίζεται. εἴπερ
outright not he-sees and hearing in-no-way he-hears if-indeed
οὖν τῆς εὐθὺ τῶν ἀθανάτων μονῶν πορείας μέλον
then of-the straight-to the immortal mansions journey (it-is)-a-care
ὑμῖν (οὐδὲ γὰρ ἄδικος ὁ θεός, ὡς μὴ τὸ τῆς
to-you not for unjust (is) God as not the(-thing) of-the
ὁδοῦ ταύτης ὁρᾶν αἰτιώμενον, μηδ' ἀκηράτων μεταδιδόναι
road this to-see as-cause nor of-pure to-give-a-share
λειμώνων καὶ σκιερῶν ἐν τῇ Ἐδὲμ καταπαύσεων, οἳ
meadows and shady in — Eden resting-places to-us-who
τὰ οἴκοι καταλιπόντες ἀνθειλόμεθα τοῦ ζῆν τὸ ὑπὲρ
the(-things) at-home having-left chose-instead of-the to-live the for
αὐτοῦ θανεῖν), καὶ εἰ μνήμη δέ τις ὑμᾶς ὑπεισέρχεται
him to-die and if memory too some you comes-into
ἃ καθ' ὥραν οἱ ἀπερίτμητοι οὗτοι τὴν καρδίαν εἰς
what-things by hour the uncircumcised these in-the heart to
τοὺς ἐκ τοῦ γένους παροινοῦσιν ἡμῶν, καὶ οὓς αὐτοῖς
the(-ones) of the race outrage of-us and which on-them
ἐπιτρίβουσι κονδύλους ταῖς φρεσὶν ἀναφέρετε, καὶ τοῦ
they-rub knuckles to-the minds you-bring-back and of-the

ἐκκεχυμένου ἀνευθύνως αἵματος μαλάσσει τις ἔλεος, στῆτε
poured-out unaccountably blood softens(-you) some pity stand
γενναίως ἄρτι καὶ ἐρρωμένως διαγωνίσασθε. μηδέ τι δέος
nobly now and strongly contend nor any fear
ἐκπλῆσσον ἐκκρουέτω τοῦ καθηκόντως ἀμύνασθαι,
astounding let-it-drive-out from-the dutifully to-defend(-yourselves)
ἀλλὰ γνώτωσαν ἀληθῶς οἱ ἀλλόφυλοι ὡς ὅσον Χριστὸς
but let-them-know truly the foreigners that as-much-as Christ
ὁ καθηγητὴς ἡμῶν καὶ διδάσκαλος ὑπέρκειται προφήτου
the guide our and teacher lies-above (a)-prophet
λαοπλάνου καὶ μυοῦντος σφᾶς τὰ ἀπόβλητα, τοσοῦτον καὶ
people-deceiving and initiating them the rejected(-things) so-much also
ἡμεῖς αὐτῶν κατὰ πάνθ' ὑπερφέρομεν. ἐπεὶ οὖν παρεμβολὴ
we than-them in all excel since then (a)-camp
ἁγία ἡμεῖς καὶ στρατὸς θεόλεκτος, μὴ φιλοψυχήσωμεν
holy we and (an)-army God-chosen not let-us-love-life
ἀγεννῶς πρὸς φιλόχριστον καὶ ἀείμνηστον τελευτήν. εἰ
ignobly toward Christ-loving and ever-remembered end if
Χριστὸς ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν ἀπέθανε, πόσῳ ἡμεῖς τεθνάναι δι'
Christ for us died by-how-much we to-have-died for
αὐτόν ἐσμεν δικαιότεροι; ἀγαθῆς ταυτησὶ πορείας ἀγαθὸν
him are more-just of-good this journey good
ἔστω καὶ τέλος ἐφομαρτοῦν. μαχεσώμεθα μετὰ τῆς ἐν
let-it-be also (the)-end following let-us-fight with the in
Χριστῷ πεποιθήσεως καὶ τοῦ εὖ εἰδέναι ὡς τοὺς ἐχθροὺς
Christ confidence and the well to-know that the enemies
τροπωσόμεθα, ὅτι μηδὲ δυσχερὴς ἡ νίκη γένοιτο οἷα
we-shall-rout because not-even hard the victory would-be inasmuch-as
μηδένων ὑποστησομένων τὴν προσβολήν, ὡς πεποίθαμεν,
none going-to-withstand the attack as we-trust
ἀλλὰ πάντων ἐνδωσόντων καὶ πρὸς τὴν πρώτην ὁρμήν.
but all going-to-give-way even at the first rush

εἰ δ', ὅπερ ἀπείη, πεσούμεθα, καλὸν ἐντάφιον τὸ ὑπὲρ
if and which be-it-far we-shall-fall (a)-fine shroud (is)-the for
Χριστοῦ τελευτᾶν. βαλέτω με τοξότης Πέρσης ὑπὲρ
Christ to-die let-strike me (an)-archer Persian for
Χριστοῦ· ἀφυπνωτέον μετ' ἐλπίδων χρηστοτέρων εἰς
Christ one-must-fall-asleep with hopes better into
θάνατον, καὶ ὅσα ὀχήματι τῷ βέλει χρηστέον πρὸς τὴν
death and as-if (as)-vehicle the arrow one-must-use for the
ἐκεῖ κατάπαυσιν, ἀλλὰ μὴ θάνατος προαρπασάτω ἴσως
there rest but not death let-snatch-away-first perhaps
ἀκλεὴς καὶ ἐφάμαρτος. ἤδη ποτὲ τισώμεθα τούτους, ὧν
inglorious and sinful already now let-us-punish these of-whom
οἱ καθ' αἱμά τε καὶ ὁμόπιστοι ποσὶ κεχραμένοις
the(-ones) by blood both and of-the-same-faith with-feet defiled
ὡς εἰς κοινὸν εἰσεληλύθασι τόπον τὸν ἱερόν, ἐν ᾧ
as into (a)-common they-have-entered place the holy in which
νεκροῖς ὁμόσκηνος γέγονεν ὁ σύγχρονος πατρὶ καὶ
with-dead tent-mate has-become the coeval with-the-father and
ὁμόθρονος. ἡμεῖς ἐσμὲν οἱ δυνατοὶ καὶ διεσπασμένοι πάντες
co-enthroned we are the mighty and having-drawn all
ῥομφαίαν, καὶ ὡς κλίνην περιέποντες Σολομώντειον τὸν
(the)-sword and as (a)-couch tending of-Solomon the
ζωοδόχον τάφον καὶ θεοδέγμονα. τοὺς ἐκ τῆς Ἄγαρ
life-receiving tomb and God-receiving the(-ones) of — Hagar
τοίνυν τῆς δουλίδος ἐκποδὼν οἱ ἐλεύθεροι ποιησώμεθα,
therefore the bondwoman out-of-the-way the free let-us-make
καὶ ὡς λίθον προσκόμματος τῆς ὁδοῦ ἐξάρωμεν
and as (a)-stone of-stumbling from-the road let-us-take-away
τοῦ Χριστοῦ, οὓς οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως Ῥωμαῖοι ὡς ἐπὶ
— of-Christ whom not I-know how (the)-Romans as for
σφάγια ἑαυτοὺς ἐκτρέφουσι λυκιδεῖς καὶ τοῖς οἰκείοις
slaughter-victims themselves rear wolf-cubs and with-the own

δυσκλεῶς πιαίνουσιν αἵμασι, δέον ἀλκὴν ἀναλαβόντας καὶ
ingloriously fatten bloods needful courage having-taken-up and
λογισμὸν ἔμφρονος ἀνδρός, ὡς θῆρας ἐκ ποιμνίων, τῶν
reasoning of-(a)-sensible man as beasts from flocks from-the
οἰκείων ἀπελάσαι χωρῶν καὶ πόλεων. ἐπειδὴ δὲ καὶ ὁ
own to-drive lands and cities since and also the
ποταμὸς οὗτος, ὡς ἔστιν ὁρᾶν, οὐκ ἄλλως περάσιμος
river this as is to-see not otherwise passable
εἰ μὴ καινοτέραν ἀνοίξει τις πάροδον, αὐτὸς ἐγὼ
if not newer will-open anyone (a)-passage myself I
καὶ τὸ κατὰ τοῦτον εἰσηγήσομαι γενησόμενον καὶ
also the(-thing) for this will-propose going-to-be and
τοῦ εἰσηγηθέντος πρώτως κατάρξομαι. ἐς ὁμαιχμίαν
of-the(-thing) proposed first I-shall-begin into joint-array
φραξάμενοι μίαν, καὶ ταῖς χερσὶ δόντες τὰ δόρατα,
having-fenced(-ourselves) one and to-the hands having-given the spears
διεξιππασώμεθα σὺν ῥύμῃ τοῦ ποταμίου τοῦδε ῥεύματος,
let-us-ride-through with rush of-the river this current
καὶ ἐς αὐτὸ ἐμβάλωμεν μεθ' ὁρμῆς· καὶ στήσεται, οἶδα
and into it let-us-charge with impetus and will-stand I-know
σαφῶς, τὸ ὕδωρ ἀναχασθὲν καὶ τοῦ κατ' εὐθυωρίαν
clearly the water having-drawn-back and of-the by straightness
ἀνακοπήσεται προρρέειν ὥσπερ ἐπαναστραφέν, καθὰ καὶ
will-be-checked to-flow-forward as-if turned-back as also
πάλαι ῥοῦς ὁ Ἰορδάνειος τῷ Ἰσραὴλ πεζευόμενος. καὶ
of-old (the)-stream the Jordanian — for-Israel crossed-on-foot and
εἴη ἂν τὸ ἔργον τοῦτο καὶ διανόημα τοῖς ὀψιγόνοις
would-be — the deed this and design for-the late-born
ἀοίδιμον, χρόνῳ μὴ διακοπτόμενον, οὐ λήθης ἐξίτηλον
famous by-time not cut-off not of-oblivion effaced
ῥεύματι, καὶ κατάγελως πλατὺς τῶν Περσῶν, ὧν τὰ
by-(the)-stream and (a)-laughingstock broad of-the Persians whose the

κῶλα περὶ τουτονὶ πεσοῦνται τὸν ποταμὸν ἐς κολωνὸν
limbs about this will-fall the river into (a)-mound
αἰρόμενα καὶ ὡς τρόπαιον προφαινόμενα εἰς κλέος
raised and as (a)-trophy displayed for glory
ἡμῶν αὐτῶν ἀθάνατον." τοιαῦτα παρακελευσάμενος καὶ
of-us ourselves immortal such(-things) having-exhorted and
τὰ σημεῖα τῆς μάχης ἀναδείξας, αὐτός τε τὸν ἵππον
the signals of-the battle having-raised himself both the horse
ἐφῆκε συχνὰ μυωπίζων τε καὶ ἐγκελευόμενος ὡς τὸν
let-go often spurring both and urging-on as the
ποταμὸν μετὰ ῥύμης διαβησόμενος, καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ
river with rush going-to-cross and the others too
παιανίσαντες καὶ τὸ σύνηθες ἀλαλάξαντες ἐχώρουν
having-sung-the-paean and the customary having-raised-the-war-cry went
ὁμόσε, πυργηδὸν ταξάμενοι καὶ πυκνώσαντες
to-close-quarters in-towers having-ranged(-themselves) and having-packed
ἑαυτοὺς καὶ ἀθρόοι ἐξιππαζόμενοι, ὡς τοῦ ποταμίου
themselves and in-a-mass riding-out so-that of-the river
χεύματος τὸ μὲν ἐς τὴν χέρσον ἐκτιναχθῆναι ταῖς
stream the(-part) indeed onto the dry-land to-be-shaken-out by-the
τῶν ἵππων χηλαῖς, τὸ δὲ διακοπῆναι καὶ τῆς
of-the horses hooves the(-part) and to-be-cut-through and from-the
πρόσω στῆναι φορᾶς, ὡς εἴπερ εἰς ἀνάρρουν παρὰ φύσιν
forward to-stop course as if into backward-flow against nature
ἀνέλυεν ἢ καὶ εἰς τοὐπίσω ἀνεστοιβάζετο, αὐτοὺς δὲ
it-returned or also to the-back was-piled-up them and
ὡς διὰ ξηρᾶς ὑγροποροῦντας παρὰ δόξαν τοῖς
as through dry(-land) going-through-water contrary-to expectation upon-the
Πέρσαις ἐπεισπεσεῖν, ὅτε καὶ μὴ ἔχον τὸ βάρβαρον
Persians to-fall-on when also not being-able the barbarian(-host)
φυγῇ τὴν σωτηρίαν ὑποκλέψαι γοῦν (διωκόμενοι γὰρ
by-flight the safety to-steal at-any-rate being-pursued for

κατελαμβάνοντο, μηδὲ τῶν ἵππων αὐτοῖς ἐπαμυνόντων,
they-were-overtaken not-even the horses them helping
κἂν ἦσαν ὠκύποδες καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἄκρων ἀνθερίκων μικροῦ
even-if they-were swift-footed and on tips of-stalks by-little
θέοντες) ἢ ὁμόσε χωρεῖν τοῖς Ἀλαμανοῖς κατὰ
running or to-close-quarters to-go with-the Alamans in
μάχην ἀγχέμαχον, ἐκρεανομοῦντο ποικίλως, καὶ ἐπ᾽ ἄλλῳ
battle hand-to-hand they-were-hacked variously and on other
ἄλλος ἔπιπτον ὡς ἀστάχυες, εἴτ᾽ οὖν ὡς ῥᾶγες αἷμα τὸ
another fell as ears-of-grain or then as grapes blood the
ζωτικὸν ἀπεθλίβοντο τοῖς λογχηφόροις ληνοβατούμενοι.
vital were-squeezed-out by-the lance-bearers being-trodden-in-the-winepress
οἱ μὲν γὰρ δόρασι διηλαύνοντο, οἱ δὲ τοῖς τῶν ξιφῶν
some indeed for with-spears were-driven-through others and by-the of-the swords
ἐπιμήκεσιν ἀπεχώρουν διχῇ διαιρούμενοι, καὶ μάλιστα
long(-blades) departed in-two divided and especially
τὸ ψιλὸν αὐτῶν καὶ γυμνὸν τοῦ στρατοῦ, οἱ δὲ
the light-armed their and naked of-the army others and
τοῖς ξιφιδίοις παρασταδὸν οὐταζόμενοι ἀνετρέποντο, τὰς
by-the daggers standing-by wounded were-overturned the
χολάδας τοῦ χαλκοῦ διεκχέοντος, ὡς τοὺς πεσόντας
guts the bronze pouring-out so-that the fallen
Πέρσας τὰ ἐκεῖσε καλύψαι πεδία τοῖς πτώμασιν ἀκριβῶς
Persians the there to-cover plains with-the corpses exactly
καὶ ὑπεράντλους τὰς φάραγγας θεῖναι τοῖς αἵμασι, τῶν δὲ
and overflowing the ravines to-make with-the bloods of-the and
Ἰταλῶν βληθῆναι μὲν ἀπὸ τόξων πολλούς, καταβληθῆναι
Italians to-be-struck indeed by bows many to-be-struck-down
δὲ καὶ ἀφυπνῶσαι βραχεῖς εἰς θάνατον. καὶ μαρτυροῦσι
but and to-fall-asleep few into death and bear-witness
τὸ τῶν πεσόντων ἐς δεῦρο πολύποσον οἱ τῶν ὀστέων
the of-the fallen to here great-number the of-the bones

σωροὶ οὕτω συχνοὶ καὶ μετέωροι ὄντες καὶ κατὰ τὰ
heaps so many and lofty being and like the
ἀνεστηκότα γεώλοφα ἐπαιρόμενοι, ὡς θαῦμα κεῖσθαι καὶ
risen hillocks raised as (a)-wonder to-lie both
ἄλλοις μὲν ὁπόσοι τῆς ἐκεῖσε φερούσης ἥψαντο, κἀμοὶ
for-others indeed as-many-as of-the there leading(-road) took-hold also-for-me
δὲ τῷ ταῦτα συγγράφοντι. ὁποῖαι μὲν οὖν ἦσαν τῶν
and the these(-things) writing of-what-sort indeed then were of-the
θριγγῶν αἱ περίμετροι, οἳ τῶν Κίμβρων τοῖς ὀστέοις
walls the circuits which of-the Cimbrians with-the bones
τὰς τῶν Μασαλιητῶν ἀμπέλους περιεφράγμωσαν Μαρίου
the of-the Massaliotes vineyards fenced-round Marius
τοῦ Ῥωμαίου τοὺς βαρβάρους καταστρεψαμένου, εἰδεῖεν
the Roman the barbarians having-subdued would-know
ἂν σαφέστατα ὅσοι τὸ καινὸν ἐκεῖνο ἔργον ὀφθαλμοῖς
— most-clearly as-many-as the new that work with-eyes
διειλήφεσαν καὶ τοῖς λοιποῖς εἰς ἀκοὴν ὠτίου παρέπεμψαν·
had-taken-in and to-the others into hearing of-ear passed-on
τὸ δὲ νῦν τοῦτο καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐκεῖνο δήπουθεν, εἴγε μὴ
the and now this also beyond that surely if-indeed not
μεγαλοφωνία ἦν τὰ κατὰ Κίμβρους ἱστορικὴ τὴν
big-talk were the(-things) about Cimbrians historical the
φύσιν ὑπερφωνοῦσα καὶ εἰς μῦθον ἐκπίπτουσα. τὸ δ'
nature out-shouting and into myth falling-out the and
ἐκ τούτου ἀπόλεμος αὐτοῖς ἦν ἡ πορεία, οὐδένα τῶν
from this without-war for-them was the march nobody of-the
βαρβάρων εἰς προῦπτον ἀντίπαλον φαίνουσα.
barbarians into open opponent showing

MANUEL I, BOOK TWO

I · THE NORMANS AT CORFU, THEBES, AND CORINTH

While the crusaders are in Syria, Roger of Sicily sends a fleet that takes Corfu by the treachery of its people, fails at Monemvasia, ravages the coasts of Acarnania and Aetolia, and sacks Thebes, forcing its rich men to swear to their wealth on the Scriptures. It then takes Corinth and its acropolis, Acrocorinth, which its commander Nikephoros Chalouphes gives up without a fight, and carries off its wealth, its noblest men, its fairest women, and the icon of Saint Theodore.

Καὶ τοιούτοις μὲν οἱ τῶν Ἰταλῶν παῖδες ἀγῶσιν
and in-such indeed the of-the Italians children contests
ἐγγυμνασάμενοι τὴν κοίλην Συρίαν κατέλαβον· ἐν ᾧ δὲ
having-exercised the Hollow Syria reached in which and
τὴν ἐπὶ τῶν Ἱεροσολύμων οὗτοι ἐβάδιζον, παρημειφότες
the(-road) to — Jerusalem these were-going having-passed
μὲν τὰ Ῥωμαίων ὅρια, τῆς δ' ἄνω Φρυγίας ἁπτόμενοι
indeed the of-(the)-Romans borders of-the and Upper Phrygia touching
Λυκαονίας τε καὶ Πισιδίας, αἳ πάλαι μὲν Ῥωμαίοις
Lycaonia both and Pisidia which of-old indeed to-(the)-Romans
ὑπέκειντο, νυνὶ δὲ ἀνεῖνται βαρβάροις καὶ δορύκτητοι
were-subject now and have-been-given-up to-barbarians and spear-won
παρ' αὐτῶν καρπίζονται μαλακίᾳ πάντως καὶ οἰκουρίᾳ
by them are-enjoyed by-softness wholly and staying-at-home
τῶν τὰ Ῥωμαίων πρὸ πολλοῦ διεπόντων πράγματα,
of-the(-men) the of-(the)-Romans for long managing affairs
μὴ περὶ πλείστου τιθεμένων μογεῖν καὶ προκινδυνεύειν
not about most setting to-toil and to-run-risks-for
ὧν ὑπερεκάθηντο, ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ Μανουὴλ διεσκοπεῖτο
what they-sat-above the autocrat Manuel considered
πῶς ἂν τοὺς Σικελοὺς μετελεύσεται, δίκην πραξόμενος
how — the Sicilians he-will-go-after justice going-to-exact

ὧν ἀπανθρώπως εἰς Ῥωμαίους ἔπραξαν, τήν τε
for-what inhumanly against (the)-Romans they-did the both
Κερκυραίων ἄκραν, ἣ νῦν ἐπικέκληται Κορυφώ, τῆς
of-Corcyraeans citadel which now is-called Korypho from-the
ἐκ τούτων ἀπαλλάξει φρουρᾶς. ὁ γὰρ δὴ τῆς Σικελίας
from these he-will-free garrison the for indeed — of-Sicily
τότε κρατῶν Ῥογέριος, εἴτε καθ' ὁμολογίαν μετὰ τοῦ
then ruling Roger whether by agreement with the
τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν προβᾶσαν ῥηγός, ὡς ἐλέγετο, εἴτε
of-the Alamans having-gone-forward king as was-said or
καὶ αὐθαιρέτως ὁρμώμενος, σύνδρομον ποιεῖται διὰ
also of-his-own-choice setting-out concurrent makes through
ταχυναυτουσῶν νηῶν τῇ τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν κινήσει τὴν τῶν
swift-sailing ships with-the of-the Alamans movement the of-the
παρακτίων Ῥωμαϊκῶν χωρῶν καταδρομήν. ἀπάρας τοίνυν
coastal Roman lands overrunning having-set-out therefore
ἐκ Βρεντησίου στόλος τῇ τῶν Κερκυραίων προσέχει,
from Brindisi (a)-fleet to-the of-the Corcyraeans puts-in
καὶ ἀμαχεὶ καὶ ἐξ ἐφόδου ταύτην αἱρεῖ. τὸ δ' αἴτιον
and without-battle and from (the)-assault it takes the and cause
οἱ τῆς χώρας οἰκήτορες, καὶ τούτων μάλιστα οἱ τὴν
the of-the land inhabitants and of-these especially the(-ones) in-the
σύνεσιν ὑπέρου ψιλότεροι, Γυμνοὶ τὴν ἐπίκλησιν. οὗτοι
understanding than-(a)-pestle balder Naked the surname these
γὰρ βαρύν, ὡς ἔφασκον, καὶ δυσύποιστον φορολόγον μὴ
for heavy as they-said and hard-to-bear tax-collector not
φέροντες, οὐδὲ τὰς ἐκ τούτου παροινίας ἐπὶ πλεῖον ἐνεγκεῖν
bearing nor the from him drunken-insults for more to-bear
ἔχοντες, βουλὴν βουλεύονται πονηράν, καθ' ἑαυτοὺς δὲ οὐχ
being-able (a)-plan they-plan wicked by themselves and not
οἷοί τε ὄντες αὐτὴν κρατύνασθαι, ὡς ἔρμαιον ἁρπάζουσι
able — being it to-strengthen as (a)-windfall seize

τὸν καιρόν, καὶ προσιόντες τῷ τοῦ στόλου ἡγεμόνι καὶ
the occasion and approaching to-the of-the fleet commander and
τῇ τούτου αἱμύλῳ γλώττῃ προσεσχηκότες καὶ ἴχνεσι
to-the his wily tongue having-attended and in-(the)-tracks
προβάντες ἀλώπεκος ἐπὶ ῥηταῖς ὁμολογίαις εἴσω δέχονται
having-stepped of-(a)-fox on stated agreements inside receive
Σικελιῶτιν φρουράν, εἰς χιλίους ἀριθμουμένην φρακτούς.
(a)-Sicilian garrison to (a)-thousand numbered armored(-men)
καὶ οἱ μὲν καπνὸν φορολογίας ἀποδιδράσκοντες ἔλαθον
and they indeed (the)-smoke of-taxation fleeing were-unawares
ὑπὸ χαυνότητος νοῦ τῷ τῆς δουλείας ἐμπεσόντες πυρὶ
by slackness of-mind into-the of-the slavery having-fallen fire
καὶ Ῥωμαίοις εἰσενεγκόντες πόλεμον οἱ χαλίφρονες χρόνιον
and on-(the)-Romans having-brought war the slack-minded long
ὁμοῦ καὶ βαρύτατον· ὁ δὲ τὸ φρούριον κρατυνάμενος,
at-once and heaviest he and the fort having-strengthened
καὶ ὡς εἶχεν αὐτὸ ποιήσας δυσαλωτότερον καὶ οἷον
and as he-was(-able) it having-made harder-to-take and as-it-were
ἀπροσμαχώτερον, ἐκεῖθεν ἀναχθεὶς τῇ Μονεμβασίᾳ
more-unassailable thence having-put-to-sea — at-Monemvasia
προσίσχει, ἐλπίσι θαλπόμενος ὡς λήψεται καὶ ταυτηνὶ τὴν
puts-in by-hopes warmed that he-will-take also this the
ἄκραν ἀναιμωτὶ ὥσπερ πρὸ τρίτης τὴν Κέρκυραν.
citadel bloodlessly as before (the)-third(-day) — Corcyra
ἀλλ' ἀνδράσιν ἐντυχὼν νῷ διοικουμένοις καὶ τὴν τῆς
but men having-met with-mind governed and the of-the
ἐλευθερίας οὐκ ἠγνοηκόσι Παφίαν, ἀπεκρούσθη ὡς
freedom not having-been-ignorant-of Paphian he-was-repulsed as
εἰ καὶ προβόλῳ προσέβαλεν ἀτινάκτῳ, καὶ πρύμναν
if also on-(a)-bulwark he-had-struck unshaken and (the)-stern
κρουσάμενος ἐκεῖθεν ἀνάγεται ἄπρακτος. ὑπερβὰς δὲ τὸν
having-backed thence he-puts-to-sea unsuccessful having-passed and the

ἐπὶ Μαλέαν πλοῦν, ἀντιπνοίας γέμοντα πάσης, περὶ
to Malea voyage of-contrary-winds full all about
οὗ καὶ ταῦτα παροιμιάζεται „Μαλέαν δ' ἐπικάμψας
which also these(-things) is-proverbial Malea and having-rounded
ἐπιλάθου τῶν οἴκαδε," τὸν ἐσέχοντα πορθμὸν ἀνάγεται,
forget the(-things) homeward the leading-in strait he-sails-up
καὶ τὰ τούτου ἑκατέρωθεν ἐπιὼν οὐ τὰ εὐχείρωτα
and the(-places) of-it on-each-side coming-on not the easily-subdued
μόνον κατέδραμε λείαν τιθέμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰ ἄλλως
only he-overran booty making but also the otherwise
ἐπικαιρότατα καὶ δυσάλωτα, τὰ μὲν ὁμολογίᾳ
most-strategic and hard-to-take the(-ones) indeed by-agreement
χειρούμενος τὰ δὲ πολέμῳ δουλούμενος, Ἀκαρνᾶνάς τε
subduing the(-ones) and by-war enslaving Acarnanians both
καὶ Αἰτωλοὺς τοὺς νῦν λεγομένους Ἀρτινούς, καὶ ὅσα
and Aetolians the now called Artinoi and what-things
πάραλα ἀμαυρῶν τὸν Κορινθιακὸν κόλπον εἰσέπλευσε. καὶ
(are)-coastal obscuring the Corinthian gulf he-sailed-into and
τῷ Κρισσαίῳ λιμένι προσορμισθεὶς τοῖς ἐν μεσογείῳ
at-the Crissaean harbor having-anchored the(-ones) in (the)-interior
θαρρεῖ προσβαλεῖν, οὐδένα ἔχων ἀντίπαλον ἰσοστάσιον.
he-dares to-attack no having opponent equal
ἀμέλει καὶ ὁ τοῦ στόλου ἀρχηγὸς τὸ ὁπλιτεῦον καὶ
indeed also the of-the fleet commander the heavy-armed and
ψιλὸν τοῦ στρατοῦ εἰς τάξεις διειληφώς, καὶ χερσαῖος
light-armed of-the army into ranks having-divided and landsman
φανεὶς ὁ τέως θαλάττιος κατὰ τῶν κητῶν τὰ
having-appeared the(-one) hitherto seaman like of-the monsters the(-ones)
ἀμφιβοσκόμενα, τῇ Καδμείᾳ γῇ παρενέβαλε, καὶ τὰς
grazing-around in-the Cadmean land encamped and the
ἐν μέσῳ κωμοπόλεις ὁδοῦ πάρεργον ληϊσάμενος
in (the)-middle townships of-(the)-road (a)-by-work having-plundered

ταῖς ἑπταπύλοις Θήβαις προσέβαλεν, ὧν καὶ γενόμενος
at-the seven-gated Thebes attacked of-which also having-become
ἐγκρατὴς ἀπανθρώπως τοῖς ἐκεῖ προσηνέχθη. κατὰ
master inhumanly to-the(-ones) there behaved in
γὰρ παλαιὰν φήμην τῆς πόλεως ὡς πλουσίους τρεφούσης
for old report of-the city as rich rearing
οἰκήτορας εἰς χρημάτων ἀπληστίαν ὑπονυττόμενος, καὶ
inhabitants into for-money insatiability goaded and
μηδένα κόρον φιλοπλουτίας εἰδώς, ἀλλ᾽ ὅρον τιθέμενος
no satiety of-love-of-wealth knowing but (as)-limit setting
τῆς ἐφέσεως τὸ καὶ εἰς τρίτον ζωστῆρα τῇ ὁλκῇ τῶν
of-the desire the even to (the)-third girdle by-the weight of-the
χρημάτων τὰς πάσας ἢ τὰς πλείους νῆας βαπτίζεσθαι,
money the all or the most ships to-be-sunk
τούς τε χειρώνακτας ἐξεπίεζε, περὶ τοῦ ῥύπου τῶν
the both craftsmen he-squeezed about the dirt of-the
ὀβολῶν πολυπράγμων γινόμενος, καὶ τοὺς δυνατοὺς
obols meddlesome becoming and the powerful
καὶ λαμπροὺς τὸ γένος καὶ σεμνοὺς τὴν ἡλικίαν καὶ
and brilliant in-the race and venerable in-the age and
περιφανεῖς κατ᾽ ἀξίωσιν διαφόροις κακώσεσι καθυπέβαλλε,
conspicuous in rank to-various ill-treatments subjected
μηδενὸς λαμβάνων αἰδὼ καὶ φειδώ, μὴ δυσωπούμενος
of-nobody taking respect and sparing not being-moved-by
τὴν δυσώπησιν, μὴ τὴν Ἀδράστειαν εὐλαβούμενος αὐτοῦ
the entreaty not — Adrasteia fearing there
που λαβοῦσαν ἀρχήν, ἢ τὴν Καδμείαν λεγομένην
somewhere having-taken (her)-beginning or the Cadmean called
νίκην ὑποβλεπόμενος. τέλος δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ προθεὶς
victory regarding-suspiciously (at-the)-end and the holy having-set-forth
γράμματα ἠνάγκαζεν ἕκαστον, τὴν ὀσφὺν ὑπεζωσμένον
scriptures he-compelled each the loin girded-under

εἰσιόντα, τὴν οἰκείαν οὐσίαν οἷς ἐνθεωρεῖται μεθ' ὅρκου
entering the own property in-what it-is-seen with oath
διασαφεῖν καὶ ταύτην ἐξομνύμενον ἀπιέναι. καὶ οὕτω πάντα
to-declare and this abjuring to-depart and thus all
χρυσόν, ἄργυρον πάντα διεκφορήσας, καὶ τὰς χρυσοϋφεῖς
gold silver all having-carried-off and the gold-woven
ὀθόνας ταῖς ναυσὶν ἐνθέμενος, οὐδὲ τῶν σωμάτων
linens in-the ships having-put not-even from-the bodies
αὐτῶν τῶν ὑπ' αὐτοῦ καλαμωθέντων ἀπέσχετο, ἀλλὰ
themselves of-the(-ones) by him plundered did-he-keep-away but
καὶ τούτων ἀριστίνδην τὸ προῦχον συλλαβών, τῶν τε
also of-these by-merit the preeminent having-seized of-the both
γυναικῶν ἀποκρίνας ὅσαι τὸ εἶδος καλαὶ καὶ
women having-picked-out as-many-as in-the form (were)-beautiful and
βαθύζωνοι καὶ τοῖς νάμασι πολλάκις τῆς καλλικρούνου
deep-girdled and in-the streams often of-the fair-flowing
Δίρκης λουσάμεναι καὶ τὰς κόμας διευθετισάμεναι καὶ
Dirke having-bathed and the hair having-arranged and
τὴν ἱστουργικὴν κομψότητα καλῶς ἐπιστάμεναι, οὕτως
the weaving elegance well knowing thus
ἐκεῖθεν ἀνάγεται. κατὰ ῥοῦν δὲ τῶν πραγμάτων αὐτῷ
thence he-puts-to-sea in stream and the affairs for-him
προχωρούντων, καὶ μηδένα τοῦ καιροῦ ἀντίμαχον ἔχοντος,
advancing and nobody of-the time (as)-opponent having
οὐ κατὰ χέρσον, οὐ κατὰ θάλασσαν, τοῦ πρὸς Κόρινθον
not on land not on sea of-the to Corinth
ἔχεται πλοῦ, πόλιν ἀφνειὸν καὶ κειμένην πρὸς τῷ Ἰσθμῷ
he-holds voyage (a)-city wealthy and lying at the Isthmus
καὶ ὀλβιζομένην ὑπὸ λιμένων δυοῖν, ὧν ὁ μὲν τοὺς
and blessed by harbors two of-which the one the(-ones)
ἐξ Ἀσίας ναυλοχεῖ καταίροντας ὁ δὲ τοὺς ἐξ Ἰταλῶν
from Asia shelters putting-in the other the(-ones) from Italians

εἰσπλέοντας, καὶ ῥᾳδίους ἑκατέρωθεν τὰς εἰσαγωγάς τε καὶ
sailing-in and easy on-each-side the importations both and
ἐξαγωγὰς τῶν φορτίων ἔχουσαν καὶ τὰς πρὸς ἀλλήλους
exportations of-the cargoes having and the with one-another
ποιουμένην ἀμοιβάς. καὶ δὴ τὸ ἐμπόριον εὑρὼν
making exchanges and indeed the market having-found
ἔρημον, ὅπερ ἡ κάτω πόλις ἐπονομάζεται, ὡς ἁπάντων
deserted which the lower city is-named as all
ἀνασκευασαμένων εἰς τὸν Ἀκροκόρινθον καὶ συνηθροικότων
having-packed-up to — Akrokorinthos and having-gathered
εἰς αὐτὸν ὄψον πᾶν, ὅλβον ἅπαντα, ὅσος τε ἰδιώταις
into it relish all wealth all as-much-as both to-private(-men)
ᾠκείωτο καὶ ὅσος θεῷ ἀφιέρωτο, ἔγνω δεῖν καὶ
had-belonged and as-much-as to-God had-been-dedicated resolved needful also
αὐτοῦ τοῦ Ἀκροκορίνθου πειραθῆναι, καὶ τοῦτον, εἰ οἷόν
it-itself — Akrokorinthos to-try and this if possible
τε, ἐξελεῖν. ἔστι δὲ ὁ Ἀκροκόρινθος τῆς μὲν πάλαι
— to-take is and — Akrokorinthos of-the indeed old
πόλεως Κορίνθου ἀκρόπολις, νυνὶ δὲ φρούριον ὀχυρόν,
city Corinth (the)-acropolis now and (a)-fort strong
αὐτὸ δὲ ὄρος ὑψηλόν, εἰς ὀξεῖαν τελευτῶν κορυφήν,
itself and (a)-mountain high into (a)-sharp ending summit
αὕτη δὲ εἰς τραπεζῶδες χωρίον ἀποτελευτῶσα ἐπίπεδον,
this and into (a)-table-like place ending flat
τετειχισμένον ἀσφαλῶς. ἔνδοθεν δέ εἰσι ποτίμου ὕδατος
walled securely inside and are of-drinkable water
καὶ διαυγοῦς οὐκ ὀλίγα φρεάτια καὶ ἡ Πειρήνη κρήνη,
and clear not few wells and — Peirene spring
ἧς ἐν ῥαψῳδίᾳ Ὅμηρος μέμνηται. ἀσφαλῆ δ' οὕτω
of-which in rhapsody Homer makes-mention secure and thus
καὶ ἀνεπιχείρητον ὄντα τὸν Ἀκροκόρινθον (καὶ φύσις γὰρ
also unassailable being — Akrokorinthos both nature for

καὶ θέσις τοῦ τόπου καὶ περίβολος ἀρραγὴς συνδραμόντα
and position of-the place and circuit-wall unbreakable having-concurred
δυσάλωτον ἢ ἀνάλωτον αὐτὸν ἀπειργάσαντο) οἱ Σικελοὶ
hard-to-take or untakeable it made the Sicilians
ἀπονητὶ τὸ πλεῖον εἰσῄεσαν, βραχὺν ἀναλωκότες καιρὸν
without-toil the more entered short having-spent time
εἰς τὴν παράστασιν τοῦ ἐρύματος. καὶ καινὸν οὐδὲν τὸ
for the reduction of-the fortification and new nothing the
συμβάν, οὐδὲ θαυμάζεσθαι ἄξιον· οὐ γὰρ ἐπήρκεσεν
event nor to-be-wondered-at worth not for would-have-sufficed
ἂν αὐτὸ ἑαυτῷ τὸ φρούριον, κἂν ἦν ἀπροσμάχητον
— it for-itself the fort even-if it-was unassailable
καθ' αὐτό, οὐδὲ τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἐχθροὺς ἀπετρέψατο μὴ
by itself nor the attacking enemies turned-back not
ἔνδον ἔχον φρουροὺς καὶ τὸ φυλακικὸν ἀξιόμαχον. ἀλλ'
inside having guards and the guarding(-force) adequate but
εἶχε μὲν ἀριθμῷ καὶ τούτους πολλούς, εἰς ἄνδρα δ'
it-had indeed in-number also these many into man and
οὐδένα συνελειφομένους ἀγαθὸν πρὸς φύλακα πόλεως·
nobody anointed-together good for (a)-guard of-(a)-city
οἵ τε γὰρ ἐκ βασιλέως ἔνδον προσέμενον μετὰ τοῦ
the(-ones) both for from (the)-emperor inside had-stayed with the
σφῶν ἀρχηγοῦ (ἦν δ' οὗτος ὁ Χαλούφης Νικηφόρος)
their commander was and this(-one) — Chalouphes Nikephoros
καὶ τῶν Κορινθίων οἱ προύχοντες, κἀκ τῶν πέριξ
and of-the Corinthians the leading(-men) and-from the surrounding
κωμοπόλεων οὐ βραχεῖαι μοῖραι ὡς εἰς καιριωτάτην
townships not small parts as into most-timely
τοῦ πολέμου ἀλεωρὴν εἰσεληλύθασι τὸν Ἀκροκόρινθον.
of-the war refuge have-entered — Akrokorinthos
ὁ τοίνυν τριηράρχης ἔνδον τοῦ φρουρίου γενόμενος, καὶ
the therefore trierarch inside the fort having-come and

τὴν φύσιν τούτου κατασκεψάμενος ἀπανταχόθεν οὖσαν
the nature its having-surveyed on-all-sides being
ἀνεπιχείρητον, σὺν θεῷ πολεμῆσαι ἔφη καὶ θεὸν εἶναι
unassailable with God to-have-made-war he-said and God to-be
τὸν τοιοῦτον αὐτῷ χῶρον κατασχεῖν παρασχόμενον,
the(-one) such for-him place to-hold having-provided
κακῶς φάσκων τοὺς ἔνδον καὶ πλύνων ὀνείδεσιν ὡς
badly speaking-of the(-ones) inside and washing with-reproaches as
ἀγεννεῖς τὰ πολέμια, μάλιστα δὲ τὸν Χαλούφην, ὃν
ignoble in-the war(-things) especially and — Chaloufes whom
καὶ γυναικὸς ὠνόμαζε μαλακώτερον μηδὲν ἐπισταμένης
also than-(a)-woman he-named softer nothing knowing
πλέον τῆς ταλασιουργοῦ γυναικωνίτιδος. ὡς δὲ καὶ
more than-the wool-working women's-quarters as and also
τὸν ἐκεῖσε πλοῦτον ἐνέθετο ταῖς τριήρεσι καὶ τοὺς
the there wealth he-put in-the triremes and the
γένει λαμπροτάτους τῶν Κορινθίων ἐδουλαγώγησεν,
in-race most-brilliant of-the Corinthians enslaved
ἐξηχμαλώτισε δὲ καὶ τῶν γυναικῶν ὅσαι κάλλισταί τε
he-took-captive and also of-the women as-many-as most-beautiful both
καὶ βαθύκολποι, μηδ' αὐτῆς τῆς εἰκόνος τοῦ ἐν
and deep-bosomed not-even from-the-very the image of-the(-one) among
μάρτυσι μεγίστου καὶ διαβοήτου ἐν θαύμασι Θεοδώρου
martyrs greatest and famous in wonders Theodore
τοῦ στρατηλάτου ἀποσχόμενος, ἀλλὰ καὶ ταύτην τῷ
the general having-kept-away but also this(-one) to-the
αὐτοῦ τεμένει ἀνακειμένην ἀνελόμενος, οὐρίῳ καὶ φορῷ
his precinct dedicated having-taken-up with-(a)-fair and following
χρησάμενος ἀνήγετο πνεύματι, ὡς εἶχε, καὶ τὴν τῶν
having-used he-put-to-sea wind as he-was also the of-the
Κερκυραίων ἄκραν ἐν τῷ διάπλῳ πρὸς τὸ ἀσφαλέστερον
Corcyraeans citadel on the voyage to the more-secure

καταστησάμενος, ὅτε καὶ τὰς Σικελιώτιδας τριήρεις ἰδών
having-set when also the Sicilian triremes having-seen
τις εἶπεν ἂν σκοπιμώτατα μὴ νῆας εἶναι πειρατικὰς
anyone would-have-said — most-aptly not ships to-be pirate
ἀλλὰ μυριοφόρους φορταγωγούς, πολλῶν καὶ καλῶν
but ten-thousand-bearing freighters of-many and fine
χρημάτων οὔσας ὑπερβριθεῖς καὶ τῆς ἄνω εἰρεσίας ἐγγύς
goods being overladen and of-the upper rowing near
που βαπτομένας τῷ ῥεύματι.
somewhere dipped in-the stream

II · THE SIEGE OF CORFU

Manuel resolves to recover Corfu, gathering a great fleet and army under the grand duke Stephen Kontostephanos and John Axouch, with Venetian allies, and himself scatters the Scythians who had crossed the Ister to raid the Haemus before marching west from Philippopolis. The citadel of Corfu stands on a steep rock, and the Sicilians resist from above. The Romans can do little harm, and Kontostephanos is killed by a stone from a catapult.

Ταῦτά τε οὖν ἐν ὠσὶν ἔνηχα ὄντα ἐλύπει τὸν
these(-things) both then in ears ringing being grieved the
αὐτοκράτορα Μανουήλ, καὶ κατὰ Δία ἐποίει τὸν Ὁμηρικὸν
autocrat Manuel and by Zeus made the Homeric
ἀτεχνῶς, συχνὰ τὸ ποιητέον ταῖς φρεσὶ μερμηρίζοντα, ἢ
simply often the to-be-done in-the mind pondering or
τὸν Νεοκλέους Θεμιστοκλῆν, ἀεὶ ἐπὶ συννοίας ὁρώμενον·
the of-Neocles Themistocles always in thought seen
καὶ ἀΰπνους νύκτας ἰαύοντα καὶ πρὸς τοὺς πυνθανομένους
and sleepless nights passing and to the(-ones) inquiring
ἀποκρινόμενον ὡς καθεύδειν οὐκ ἐᾷη Μιλτιάδου τὸ
answering that to-sleep not let-him of-Miltiades the

τρόπαιον. ξυνεκάλει τοίνυν εἰς τὴν τοῦ γενησομένου
trophy he-called-together therefore to the of-the going-to-be
βουλὴν πάντα τὸν τακτικῶν ἐπιστήμονα καὶ δημηγόρον
counsel every the of-tactics knowing and (a)-public-speaker
εἰδότα λέγειν τῶν νιφάδων πυκνότερον. μία οὖν ἐκ
knowing to-speak than-the snowflakes thicker one then from
πολλῶν ἀρίστη δέδοκτο βουλὴ καὶ τῷ αὐτοκράτορι
many best had-been-decided counsel and by-the autocrat
ἐπεψήφιστο, μετελεύσεσθαι πολέμῳ τοὺς Σικελοὺς κατά τε
had-been-voted to-go-after with-war the Sicilians by both
ξηρὰν συγκροτηθέντι κατά τε θάλασσαν, ὅτι καὶ ὁ ἀγὼν
land having-been-assembled by and sea because also the contest
οὐδαμῶς τὰς ἐλπίδας ἀγαθὰς ὑπετείνετο, οὐδ' ὑπέβαλλε
in-no-way the hopes good held-out nor suggested
βραχέα τὰ προσιστάμενα, μέγιστος ἀναφαινόμενος καὶ
short(-ones) the(-things) opposing greatest appearing and
τοῖς πάλαι ἀπειρημένος Ῥωμαίων ἄναξι. συλλέγεται οὖν
by-the of-old renounced of-(the)-Romans lords is-collected then
τὰ ἑῷα καὶ ἑσπέρια τάγματα. αἱ μὲν ἐπισκευάζονται
the eastern and western units the(-ones) indeed are-repaired
τῶν τριηρέων, αἱ δὲ νεωστὶ πήγνυνται, καὶ πρὸς
of-the triremes the(-ones) and newly are-fixed and for
τὸν πλοῦν ἀρτίωσιν δέχονται. αἱ πυρφόροι τὸ ὑγρὸν
the voyage fitting receive the fire-bearing(-ships) the liquid
εἰσδέχονται πῦρ τὸ τέως ἠρεμοῦν ἀδιέκχυτον.
receive fire the(-fire) meanwhile resting unspilled
ἀθροίζονται πεντηκόντοροι, ἀγείρονται μυοπάρωνες. αἱ
are-gathered fifty-oared(-ships) are-collected myoparones the
ἱππαγωγοὶ ἀσφαλτοῦνται, αἱ φορταγωγοὶ πληροῦνται τῶν
horse-carriers are-pitched the freighters are-filled with-the
ἐδωδίμων, οἱ ἐπακτροκέλητες εὐτρεπίζονται. πάντα δὲ τὰ
eatables the pirate-skiffs are-made-ready all and the

σκάφη τοῖς ἱστίοις πτερωθέντα ἐκ τῆς ἠόνος ἀνάγονται,
hulls with-the sails winged from the shore put-out
ἐφ᾽ ἧς ἦσαν σαλεύοντα. συγκεκρότητο γοῦν ὁ στόλος
on which they-were riding-at-anchor had-been-assembled at-any-rate the fleet
ἀγχοῦ που τῶν χιλίων πλοίων, αἱ δὲ πεζικαὶ δυνάμεις
near somewhere of-the thousand boats the and foot forces
ἐς μυριάδας ἠθροίσθησαν. ἔφριξαν ἂν καὶ Γίγαντες, εἰ
to ten-thousands were-gathered would-have-shuddered — even (the)-Giants if
παρῆσαν, τοιαύτην παρεμβολήν, ἐπεὶ καὶ εὐανδροῦσα
they-had-been-present-at such (a)-camp since also rich-in-men
ἦν ἡ Ῥωμαίων πᾶσα τὸ τότε καιροῦ καὶ τρέφουσα
was the of-(the)-Romans all(-land) at-the then of-time and nurturing
ἄνδρας ἡρωϊκὴν ἐνδεικνυμένους ἀλκήν, καὶ τὸ ὁπλιτικὸν οὐκ
men heroic displaying strength and the hoplite(-force) not
ἦν ἀγεννὲς ἀλλὰ τὴν ὁρμὴν λεοντῶδες καὶ ἀνυπόστατον.
was ignoble but in-the rush lion-like and irresistible
ὁ γὰρ βασιλεύτατος τῷ ὄντι καὶ στρατηγικώτατος
the for most-kingly in-the being and most-generalship-skilled
Ἰωάννης, ὁ τοῦ Μανουὴλ τοκεύς, οὐδὲ τἆλλα μὲν
John the — of-Manuel father not-even the-others indeed
ἐσχεδίαζεν ὅσα κοινὴν εἰσέφερε λυσιτέλειαν, τῶν δὲ
improvised what-things common brought-in profit of-the and
στρατιωτικῶν καταλόγων διαφερόντως ἐφρόντιζε μάλιστα,
military rolls especially took-care most
συχνοῖς τε πιαίνων φιλοδωρήμασι, καὶ ταῖς καθ᾽ ὥραν
with-frequent both fattening generosities and with-the by hour
γυμνασίαις ὑπαλείφων πρὸς ἔργα πολέμια. οὕτω τοίνυν,
exercises anointing(-them) for deeds war-like thus therefore
καὶ ὡς ᾤετο, καλῶς τὰ κατὰ τὸν Σικελικὸν πόλεμον
also as he-thought well the(-things) for the Sicilian war
παρασκευασάμενος ἀνάγεσθαι μὲν κελεύει τὸν στόλον τοῖς
having-prepared to-put-to-sea indeed he-orders the fleet to-the

ἐρέταις καὶ κελευσταῖς λύσασι τὰ καρχήσια, μέγαν δούκαν
rowers and boatswains having-loosed the masthead-sails grand duke
προβαλόμενος τὸν ἐπ᾽ ἀδελφῇ γαμβρὸν τὸν Κοντοστέφανον
having-put-forward the by sister brother-in-law — Kontostephanos
Στέφανον, ἀπαίρειν δὲ καὶ τὴν πεζὴν στρατιὰν ὑπ᾽
Stephen to-set-out and also the foot army under
ἀρχηγοῖς ἑτέροις, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ Ἰωάννῃ τῷ Ἀξούχῳ τῷ
commanders other but indeed also John the Axouch the
μεγάλῳ δομεστίκῳ, περὶ οὗ φθάσαντες ἐν πλείστοις
grand domestic about whom anticipating in very-many(-places)
παρεδηλώσαμεν. εἶχε τοίνυν τὰς τριήρεις ἡ τῶν Φαιάκων
we-indicated held therefore the triremes the of-the Phaeacians
πάραλος, ἣν καὶ διαμερίζονται πρὸς ἐνόρμισιν αἵ τε
coast which also divide for anchoring the both
τῶν Βενετίκων συμμαχίδες νῆες καὶ αἱ Ῥωμαϊκαὶ αὐταί,
of-the Venetians allied ships and the Roman themselves
ἵν᾽ εἶεν οὕτως οἱ ναύσταθμοι τοῖς γένεσιν ἀμφοτέροις
that might-be thus the anchorages for-the races both
ἄμικτοι καὶ τῶν ἐκ τῆς ἀναμίξ ἀναστροφῆς ἄγευστοι
unmixed and of-the from the mixed intercourse untasting
διαφορῶν. μετὰ βραχὺ δὲ καὶ βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς ἔξεισι μετὰ
quarrels after (a)-little and also (the)-emperor himself goes-out with
τῆς στρατιᾶς. ἐξ ἐφόδου δὲ τοὺς Σκύθας διαθροήσας, οἳ
the army from (the)-assault and the Scythians having-dismayed who
τὸν Ἴστρον διαβάντες τὰ περὶ τὸν Αἷμον ἐσίνοντο,
the Ister having-crossed the(-places) about the Haemus were-harming
ἄρας ἐκ τῆς Φιλίππου τὴν εὐθὺ Κερκύρας
having-set-out from the(-city) of-Philip the(-road) straight-to Corcyra
ἐβάδιζεν. ἔστι δὲ ἡ Κερκυραίων ἄκρα αἰγίλιψ πᾶσα
went is and the of-Corcyraeans citadel steep all
καὶ ἀγχινεφής, ἑλικοειδὴς τὴν θέσιν καὶ ὑψικόρυμβος,
and near-the-clouds spiral-shaped in-the position and high-peaked

προσνενευκυῖα ἐς τὸ βάθιστον τῆς θαλάσσης. πέτραι δὲ
having-inclined to the deepest of-the sea rocks and
περιερρώγεσαν αὐτὴν ἀμφίκρημνοι καὶ ἀπότομοι, τὸ δ'
had-broken-round it on-both-sides-sheer and steep the and
ὕψος ὑπὲρ τὴν ᾀδομένην ἄορνον. τείχη δὲ ἀρραγῆ τὴν
height beyond the sung birdless walls and unbreakable the
πόλιν περιείληφε πᾶσαν, καὶ πύργων περιεστᾶσιν ὑψώματα,
city have-embraced all and of-towers stand-around heights
ἃ καὶ ποιοῦσι τὴν ταύτης παραλογωτέραν ἅλωσιν. αἱ
which also make the its more-incredible capture the
μὲν δὴ ναυτικαὶ δυνάμεις τὴν ἄκραν περιστεψάμεναι
indeed indeed naval forces the citadel having-ringed
παγχάλκοις περιείλουν ὅπλοις· πρὸ δὲ τοῦ πολέμῳ
with-all-bronze were-surrounding arms before and the with-war
ἐπιβαλεῖν ἔγνω δεῖν ὁ βασιλεὺς δι' ὁμογλώττων καὶ
to-attack resolved needful the emperor through same-tongued and
ὁμοφώνων πειραθῆναι τῶν ἔνδον, εἴ πως ὑπεκσταῖεν
same-voiced(-men) to-try the(-ones) inside if somehow they-might-withdraw
αὐτῷ τοῦ φρουρίου ἀμαχητί. ὡς δὲ τῶν λεγομένων
for-him from-the fort without-battle as and of-the(-things) said
ἀκουοὶ γεγονότες οὐδ' ὅλως ὑπενεδίδοσαν ἀλλὰ τέλεον
hearers having-become not at-all they-yielded but wholly
ἀπηναίνοντο, καὶ τὰς πύλας δὲ ἐπικλεισάμενοι καὶ ὀχεῦσιν
refused and the gates too having-shut and with-bars
αὐτὰς ἀσφαλισάμενοι, φραξάμενοί τε ὡς εἶχον τὰ
them having-secured having-fenced both as they-were(-able) the
τείχη τοξόταις καὶ ζαγκράτορσι, καὶ παντοίοις μηχανήμασι
walls with-archers and crossbowmen and all-kinds-of engines
περιστέψαντες, δῆλοι ἦσαν ἀκροβολιζόμενοι, τότε καὶ
having-ringed plain were skirmishing then also
βασιλεὺς ἐφῆκε τοῖς τάγμασι τὰ ὅμοια δρᾶν καὶ
(the)-emperor allowed to-the units the like(-things) to-do and

παντοίως ἀμύνεσθαι τὸ ἀντίπαλον. ἐντεῦθεν Ῥωμαῖοι
in-every-way to-ward-off the opponent(-side) thence (the)-Romans
μὲν ὅσα καὶ εἰς οὐρανὸν ἠκόντιζον βέλεμνα, οἱ δ' ὡς
indeed just-as also into heaven hurled missiles they and as
νιφετὸν κατέχεον τὰ τοξεύματα. καὶ οἱ μὲν τοὺς ἐξ
snow poured-down the arrows and the(-ones) indeed the from
ἀφετηρίων λίθους ἱεμένους ἀνώθουν, ἢ ἀνήρειπτον εἰπεῖν
catapults stones shot pushed-up or thrown-up to-say
οἰκειότερον, οἱ δὲ χαλαζηδὸν αὐτοὺς ἐπηφίεσαν, ὡς
more-properly the(-others) and like-hail them let-fly-upon so-that
συμβαίνειν τοὺς μὲν ὡς ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων καὶ ἀφ' ὕψους
to-happen the(-ones) indeed as from higher-ground and from height
βάλλοντας ἀπονητὶ καὶ ἐνεργὰ ἐπαφιέναι τὰ βέλεμνα,
shooting without-toil and effective to-let-go the missiles
τοὺς δὲ ὡς ἀπὸ γῆς μαχομένους πρὸς τοὺς
the(-ones) and as from (the)-ground fighting against the(-ones)
ἐν τῇ τῆς ἄκρας ὑπερβολῇ βραχέα ἢ οὐδὲν τὸ
on the of-the citadel height little or nothing the(-missile)
ἀντιπῖπτον λυπεῖν. ὡς δὲ πάλιν καὶ πάλιν τὰ
falling-against to-hurt as and again and again the(-things)
αὐτὰ καὶ ἐπὶ πολὺ δρώμενα Ῥωμαίοις μὲν οὐκ ἦν
same and for long done for-(the)-Romans indeed not was
ἐς ἐντελὲς ἀνύσιμα, εἰς δὲ θάνατον μάλιστα βλέποντα,
to (a)-complete effective(-end) to and death especially looking
τοῖς δ' ἐντὸς ὡς ἀπαθέσιν οὖσιν ἀσπάσια, καινότερον
for-the(-ones) and inside as unharmed being welcome newer
ἀεί τι παρὰ τῶν κακῶς πασχόντων Ῥωμαίων
always something by the badly suffering Romans
προσεφευρίσκετο, φιλοτιμουμένων ἐπ' ὄψεσι βασιλέως
was-devised striving-for-honor before (the)-eyes of-(the)-emperor
καὶ ἔργα χειρὸς ἀκμαίας ἐνδεικνυμένων καὶ καρτερίαν ἐν
and deeds of-hand vigorous displaying and endurance in

τοῖς δεινοῖς, ἔτι δὲ μεθόδους ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις πολλὴν
the terrible(-things) still and methods in the hopeless(-straits) much
βαθυγνωμοσύνην ἐκείνων κατηγορούσας καὶ ἐμπειρίαν τῶν
deep-mindedness of-them showing and experience of-the
τακτικῶν. ἀλλ' ἠλέγχοντο τῶν ἀνεφίκτων ἐρῶντες
tactics but they-were-convicted of-the(-things) unattainable loving
καὶ τοῖς ἀνηνύτοις ἐγχειροῦντες παντάπασι διακενῆς,
and the unachievable attempting altogether in-vain
καὶ τὰ πρὸς χάριν καὶ εὐκτέα δρῶντες μᾶλλον
and the(-things) for pleasure and to-be-prayed-for doing rather
τοῖς πολεμίοις, οἷς ἄντικρυς ὡς πρὸς οὐρανὸν αὐτὸν
for-the enemies with-whom outright as with heaven itself
διεφέροντο, ἢ γοῦν ἀεροβάμοσι διημιλλῶντο πτηνοῖς
they-contended or at-any-rate with-air-walking vied birds
τὰς καλιὰς πηξαμένοις ἐπί τινος σκοπιᾶς, καὶ ἐπετόξευον
the nests having-fixed on some lookout and shot-at
νέφεσι. τέλος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ μέγας προσαπόλλυται
clouds (at-the)-end and also himself the grand perishes-besides
δούξ, λιθιδίῳ κατὰ τοῦ κενεῶνος πέτρας ἀπορραγέντι
duke by-(a)-small-stone on the flank of-rock broken-off
βληθείς, ἥνπερ ἐπαφῆκεν ὑψόθεν ἀφετήριον ὄργανον.
struck which let-fly from-above (a)-catapult engine
Καὶ ὁ μὲν ἔκειτο ὀλιγοδρανέων κάρη βάλλων θ'
and he indeed lay with-little-strength (the)-head throwing both
ἑτέρωσε, μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ καὶ ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐντεῦθεν
the-other-way after (a)-little and also from men thence
ἐγένετο·
he-became(-gone)

Niketas recalls the prophecy of the patriarch Kosmas Atticus, a man of great charity, who was deposed on charges of favoring the imperial ambitions of the sebastokrator Isaac and of sharing the heresy of the monk Niphon. At the synod Kosmas cursed the empress's womb, and she bore no son. Kontostephanos, who moved to strike the patriarch, was told to wait for his own fate of stone; Niketas sees the prophecy fulfilled. After his death John Axouch takes command of the fleet, and the siege drags on for three months.

Πέρας δὲ ἡ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ πρόρρησις εἴληφε τοῦ πατριάρχου
end and the about him prophecy has-taken of-the patriarch
Κοσμᾶ τοῦ Ἀττικοῦ, ὃς μετὰ τὸν Ὀξείτην Μιχαὴλ τοὺς
Kosmas the Attic who after — Oxeites Michael the
τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἐγχειρίζεται οἴακας, ὑπεκστάντα τῆς
of-the church takes-in-hand tillers having-withdrawn from-the
ὑπερτάτης τῷ βουλομένῳ καθέδρας καὶ πρὸς τὴν
highest to-the(-one) wishing seat and to the
νῆσον τὴν Ὀξεῖαν ἀποφοιτήσαντα, καθ᾽ ἣν τὸν ἄσκευον
island — Oxeia having-departed in which the unequipped
βίον καὶ ἀπέριττον ἐκ παιδὸς ἐπανῄρητο· ἔνθα καὶ
life and unadorned from childhood he-had-chosen where also
τὸν οἰκεῖον ἀποδοχμώσας αὐχένα πρὸς τῇ εἰσόδῳ τοῦ
the own having-bent neck at the entrance of-the
προνάου πατεῖν παρεῖχε τῷ εἰσιόντι παντὶ μοναχῷ,
narthex to-tread gave(-it) to-the entering every monk
λέγων ἀξυμφόρως ἑαυτῷ τὴν ἡλικιῶτιδα καὶ φίλην
saying inexpediently for-himself the coeval and dear
ἡσυχίαν παρώσασθαι καὶ ἐπ᾽ οὐδενὶ ξυνοίσοντι τὸν θρόνον
quiet to-have-pushed-aside and for nothing going-to-profit the throne
ἀναβῆναι τὸν ὑπερύψηλον. ὁ δὲ Κοσμᾶς ἦν μὲν τοῖς
to-have-mounted the very-lofty — and Kosmas was indeed among-the

διακόνοις ἐναρίθμιος, εἶχε δὲ πατρίδα τὴν Αἴγιναν, σοφίας
deacons numbered had and (as)-homeland — Aegina of-wisdom
δ' ἁπάσης μεταλαχὼν ἐκ τοῦ τῶν ἀρετῶν ὁρμαθοῦ πλέον
and all having-partaken from the of-the virtues string more
ηὔχει τοὐπίσημον. μάλιστα δὲ τῷ πολλῷ τῆς ἐλεημοσύνης
boasted the-distinction especially and in-the much of-the almsgiving
ἐκέκαστο, ἥτις ὡς ἐν περιδερραίῳ κόσμῳ πολυτελεῖ
he-excelled which as in (a)-necklace ornament costly
προσπεπηγυῖα τῇ ποικιλίᾳ τῶν ἀρετῶν δίκην ἀκτινώδους
fixed to-the variety of-the virtues like (a)-radiant
λίθου ἐπάμφαινεν· οὕτω γὰρ τὸν εἰς ἀνθρώπους ἔλεον
stone shone thus for in-the toward men mercy
ἔρρωτο ὡς καὶ τὸν ἐπενδύτην αὐτὸν καὶ τὸν χιτῶνα
he-was-strong so-that also the outer-garment itself and the tunic
ἑαυτοῦ τοῦ σώματος καὶ τὴν ὀθονοσκεπῆ καλύπτραν
his-own from-the body and the linen-covered veil
τῆς κεφαλῆς διαδιδόναι πένησι, καὶ πράγματα παρέχειν
of-the head to-give-away to-(the)-poor and goods to-give
τοῖς ἀφ' ἑστίας μὴ διφῶσι μόνον αὐτὰ ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς
to-the(-ones) from (the)-hearth not thirsting-for only them but also for
εὐπορίαν ἄλλων τυρβαζομένοις. διὰ ταῦτα καὶ παρὰ
(the)-plenty of-others being-troubled because-of these(-things) also among
πᾶσι μὲν ἦν αἰδέσιμος ὁ ἀνήρ· ὁ δὲ σεβαστοκράτωρ
all indeed was venerable the man the and sebastokrator
Ἰσαάκιος ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως Μανουὴλ αὐτόαιμος μόνον
Isaac the of-the emperor Manuel blood-brother all-but
οὐκ ἐπέθυεν ὡς θεῷ, ἐκεῖνο θεοφιλὲς καὶ πρακτέον
— sacrificed as to-God that God-loved and to-be-done
οἰόμενος ὅπερ ἦν ὁ πατριάρχης ὑποτιθέμενος, κἀκεῖνο
thinking which was the patriarch proposing and-that
αὖθις θεομισὲς καὶ ἀπώμοτον ὅπερ οὑτοσὶ ἀπηγόρευεν. ἡ
again God-hated and to-be-abjured which this(-one) forbade the

γοῦν φατρία τῶν τότε ἀντιδόξων τῆς ἀρετῆς ἀρχιερέων
at-any-rate faction of-the then opposing-in-belief to-the virtue high-priests
καὶ τοῦ ἱερωτάτου τούτου ἀντίθετος μοῖρα ἐνδιαβάλλουσι
and of-the most-holy this opposed part slander
τὸν ἄνδρα τῷ βασιλεῖ ὡς τῷ ἀδελφῷ Ἰσαακίῳ τὴν
the man to-the emperor as for-the brother Isaac the
βασιλείαν μνώμενον, λαθραίας τὰς προόπτους εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν
empire wooing secret the open into the holy
ἀρχεῖον ἀνόδους τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος ὀνομάζοντες, καὶ
office ascents of-the sebastokrator naming and
κρυφιώδεις συσκευὰς τὰ οὐκ ἐν μυχῷ γῆς καὶ
secret contrivances the(-things) not in (a)-corner of-earth and
παραβύστῳ ἀλλ᾽ ἐφ᾽ ἡλίῳ συλλαλούμενα μάρτυρι. ὁ
hole but under (the)-sun spoken (as)-witness — the
τοίνυν Μανουὴλ νέος ὢν ἔτι καὶ αὐτάρισκος, καὶ ἄλλως
therefore Manuel young being still and self-pleased and otherwise
ὑποβλέπεσθαι τὸν ἀδελφὸν ὑπὸ τῶν τοῦ πατριάρχου
to-be-suspicious-of the brother by the of-the patriarch
κατηγόρων ὡς βασιλειῶντα ἐναγόμενος, ἀνατρέψαι τοῦτον
accusers as desiring-to-reign being-led to-overthrow this(-one)
τοῦ θρόνου ἐζήτει. κἀπειδὴ ἅπτεται μῶμος καὶ τῶν
from-the throne sought and-since fastens blame also on-the
ἀψαύστων, ὡς οἴδαμεν, καὶ ἅπας, ὡς καὶ τοῦτο ἴσμεν,
untouchable as we-know and everyone as also this we-know
εἰς τὸ κακόν τι δρᾶν προσκλινέστερος, καθαιρέσει
to the evil something to-do more-inclined to-deposition
καθυποβάλλεται ὡς συναιρετίζων μοναχῷ τινὶ Νήφωνι.
is-subjected as sharing-the-heresy with-monk (a)-certain Niphon
ἦν δὲ ὁ Νήφων συνήθης μὲν τῷ πατριάρχῃ καὶ
was and — Niphon familiar indeed to-the patriarch and
πολλάκις ἐκ τῆς αὐτοῦ τραπέζης ἑστιαθεὶς καὶ στέγης
often from the his table feasted and of-roof

ὁμοίως μετειληχώς, διεβέβλητο δὲ ὡς οὐκ ὀρθὸς εἴη
likewise having-partaken had-been-slandered and as not orthodox he-were
τὰ ἐς πίστιν, καὶ τὴν σχοινοτενῆ γένυν ἐκέκαρτο
in-the(-things) for faith and the rope-long jaw had-been-shorn
καὶ δεσμωτηρίῳ ἐνείρχθη παρὰ τοῦ πατριάρχου Μιχαήλ.
and in-prison had-been-shut-up by the patriarch Michael
ἦν οὖν ὁ Κοσμᾶς δι᾽ αὐτὸν ὑπ᾽ αἰτίαν ὡς ὁμόφρων
was then — Kosmas because-of him under charge as like-minded
τε καὶ ὁμόδοξος, καὶ οἱ ἀντίδοξοι τῷ Κοσμᾷ εὐπροσώπου
both and like-believing and the opponents — to-Kosmas specious
ταύτης ἀφορμῆς λαβόμενοι κατέτρεχον ἤδη καὶ λαμπρῶς
this pretext having-seized ran-down(-on-him) already and openly
ἐπέκειντο, κατὰ κράτος αἱρήσειν καὶ ὅλαις καθελεῖν
pressed by force to-take and with-whole to-depose
ψήφοις αὐτὸν ἐπειγόμενοι. κρινόμενος οὖν, ἢ μᾶλλον
votes him hastening being-judged then or rather
κατακρινόμενος, καὶ ἃ οὐκ ἐγίνωσκεν ἐρωτώμενος,
being-condemned and what-things not he-knew being-asked
καὶ διὰ ταῦτα τοῦ θρόνου ἐξοστρακιζόμενος, ζήλου
and because-of these(-things) from-the throne being-ostracized with-zeal
πίμπλαται, καὶ τὸ συνέδριον ἐκεῖνο περισκεψάμενος τῇ
is-filled and the council that having-surveyed the
μὲν μήτρᾳ τῆς βασιλίδος ἐπιτιμᾷ μὴ παῖδα τεκεῖν ἄρρενα,
indeed womb of-the empress rebukes not (a)-child to-bear male
ἀφορίζει δὲ καὶ τῶν περὶ τὸν βασιλέα τινὰς καὶ
excommunicates and also of-the(-ones) about the emperor some and
τὴν τότε συνελθοῦσαν εἰς αὐτοῦ καθαίρεσιν σύνοδον ὡς
the then having-come-together for his deposition synod as
βασιλείους θύρας ἐκτρίβουσαν καὶ πρόσωπα λαμβάνουσαν,
imperial doors wearing-out and faces accepting
κἀκ τούτου μὴ κανονικῶς ἀλλ᾽ ἀθέσμως καὶ θρόνου καὶ
and-from this not canonically but lawlessly both from-throne and

ποίμνης αὐτὸν ἀπελαύνουσαν. τότε τοίνυν ὁ Κοντοστέφανος
flock him driving-away then therefore — Kontostephanos
εἷς ὢν τῶν κυκλούντων θρόνον τὸν ἀνακτορικόν,
one being of-the(-ones) encircling (the)-throne the imperial
τῶν ἐγγιζόντων τε βασιλεῖ καὶ προσδιαλεγομένων
of-the(-ones) near both to-(the)-emperor and conversing
θαρραλεώτερον, δεινὰ πάσχοντι ἐῴκει διὰ τὴν
more-boldly terrible(-things) suffering seemed because-of the
τῆς δεσποινικῆς νηδύος ἐπιτίμησιν, καὶ τὸν ζηλωτὴν ἐπὶ
of-the imperial womb rebuke and the zealot in
τούτοις ὑπὲρ τοὺς παρεστῶτας πάντας παρακαιρίως
these(-things) beyond the(-ones) standing-by all unseasonably
ὑποκρινάμενος ἐφίσταται τῷ πατριάρχῃ βράττων θυμῷ
having-played stands-over the patriarch boiling with-anger
καὶ πὺξ πατάξαι τοῦτον διανοούμενος, κἂν ἐπέσχεν
and with-fist to-strike this(-one) intending even-if be-restrained
ἑαυτὸν τῆς ὁρμῆς. τοῦτο δὲ οὔτε τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐχέφρονος
himself from-the rush this and neither to-the emperor of-(a)-sensible
ἔργον ἔδοξε, καὶ ἔδειξεν, οἷς ἠγανάκτησε, βαρέως
(a)-deed seemed and he-showed by-what-things he-was-indignant heavily
ἐνεγκὼν τὸ γενόμενον· καὶ οἱ καθ᾽ αἷμα δὲ τῷ
bearing the(-thing) having-happened and the(-ones) by blood too to-the
βασιλεῖ συναπτόμενοι καὶ τὸ ξυμπαρεστὸς γερούσιον ὡς
emperor joined and the standing-by senate as
ἀνόσια δρῶντι τῷ Κοντοστεφάνῳ ἐπέπληττον, μήτε
unholy(-things) doing — Kontostephanos rebuked nor
μὴν πεφρικότι τὴν εὐρὺ μάλα τοῖς τὰ τοιαῦτα
indeed having-shuddered-at the wide very at-the(-ones) the such(-things)
παρανομοῦσιν ἐπιχαίνουσαν γῆν. αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ πατριάρχης
transgressing gaping earth himself and the patriarch
πραείᾳ οὑτωσί πως ἔφησε τῇ φωνῇ „ἄφετε αὐτόν,
with-gentle thus somehow said the voice let-be him

ὅσον οὔπω τὴν οἰκείαν πετραίαν ληψόμενον," τὸν
as-much-as not-yet the own rocky going-to-receive the
ἐκείνου μόρον ὅτῳ ξυμβαίη τρόπῳ γριφολογῶν ὧδε
his fate in-whatever it-might-happen manner speaking-riddles thus
καὶ αἰνιττόμενος. εἰ δὲ καὶ ἡ βασιλὶς διὰ ταυτηνὶ τὴν
and hinting if and also the empress because-of this the
ἐπιτίμησιν τοῦ πατρὸς οὐκ ἤκουσε παιδὸς μήτηρ ἄρρενος,
rebuke of-the father not was-called of-(a)-son mother male
τοῦ θεοῦ τιμῶντος τὸν αὐτοῦ θεράποντα καὶ θηλυτεκοῦσαν
— God honoring the his servant and female-bearing
ἐκτελοῦντος καθ' ὅλον τὸν ταύτης βίοτον, αὐτὸς μὲν
making(-her) through all the her life I indeed
σαφῶς οὐκ ἴσημι· ὅγε μὴν βασιλεὺς εὐγνωμονῶν, ὡς
clearly not know the-at-least indeed emperor being-considerate as
ἔδειξε, καὶ τῷ ἔνδον καὶ οἰκείῳ κριτηρίῳ πληττόμενος,
he-showed also by-the inner and own tribunal being-struck
οἷς ἄνδρα δίκαιον θεοσεβῆ τε καὶ ἄμεμπτον καὶ μηδέν
that (a)-man just God-fearing both and blameless and nothing
τι καθαιρέσεως ἄξιον διαπραξάμενον παρέλυσε τῆς
at-all of-deposition worthy having-done he-dismissed from-the
ἀρχῆς, αἰτίαν ταύτην, οὐχ ἑτέραν τὴν τῆς υἱοτοκίας
office (as)-cause this not another the of-the son-bearing
διετείνετο στέρησιν.
he-insisted deprivation

Πεσόντος δὲ ὡς ἔφημεν τοῦ Κοντοστεφάνου, ὁ μέγας
having-fallen and as we-said — Kontostephanos the grand
δομέστικος Ἰωάννης τῆς τριηραρχίας ἐπιλαμβάνεται, οὐχ
domestic John the command-of-the-fleet takes-over not
ὥστε καὶ μέγας δοὺξ ὀνομάζεσθαι, ἀλλ' ὅσον τοῦ στόλου
so-as also grand duke to-be-named but as-much-as the fleet
ἐξηγεῖσθαι καὶ τοῖς γινομένοις ἐπιστατεῖν ὡς στρατηγίᾳ
to-lead and the(-things) happening to-oversee as in-generalship

διαπρέπων ἀνὴρ καὶ κατὰ χεῖρα γενναῖος καὶ νοῦν
excelling (a)-man and in hand noble and (a)-mind
ἡγεμονίας πλουτῶν ἀξιώτατον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς κατατρίβειν
of-command being-rich-in most-worthy the and emperor to-waste
ἐπιεικῶς τὸν καιρὸν εἰκῇ ἐν δεινῷ τιθέμενος, καὶ τὰς
fairly the time at-random in terrible putting(-it) and the
ἡμέρας εἰς οὐδὲν ἀναλίσκειν οὔκουν βουλόμενος, ὡς ὁ
days for nothing to-spend not wishing as the
Κεφαλήνων βασιλεὺς Ὀδυσσεὺς τὰς ἡλίου πρότερον
of-Kephallenians king Odysseus the of-(the)-Sun formerly
βοῦς, εἰς νῆα ἐνέβη τὴν στρατηγίδα, καὶ κύκλῳ
oxen into (a)-ship embarked the flagship and in-(a)-circle
τὴν Κερκυραίων πᾶσαν κατωπτευκώς, ᾗ προσβάλοι,
the of-Corcyraeans all having-surveyed where he-might-attack
ἐπιμελῶς κατεσκέπτετο. ἐς γὰρ μῆνας τρεῖς ἡ πολιορκία
carefully considered for for months three the siege
παρεξετείνετο, ὅτι μηδ' εἶχε τὴν Ὄσσαν ἀνασπᾶν
was-extended because not-even he-had(-power) — Ossa to-pull-up
ἢ τὸν Ἄθων ἐπικυλίνδειν, καὶ ἀνατιθέναι τὰ ὄρη
or — Athos to-roll-on and to-pile the mountains
ἐπάλληλα, καὶ τὴν ἄκραν οὕτω ποιεῖν ἁλώσιμον. ταῦτα
one-upon-another and the citadel thus to-make takeable these(-things)
γὰρ μεγαλουργία μυθικὴ καὶ ἀπίθανος.
for (are)-big-doing mythical and incredible

Manuel builds a great siege ladder, a tower of masts set on ships, and when no one answers his call, four Petraliphas brothers volunteer; he picks four hundred more with promises, and Poupakes leads the climb. As they reach the wall the ladder breaks, and the men fall into the sea or onto the rocks. Few escape; Poupakes, already on the rock, routs the defenders and escapes through a postern, and the Sicilians, admiring the Romans' courage, stop stoning the fallen.

Ὡς δὲ πάντοθεν ἦν ἀπορούμενος, ἔδοξε κατά
as and on-all-sides he-was at-a-loss it-seemed(-good) at
τινα φάραγγα εὐέφοδα καὶ προσιτὰ τιθεῖσαν τὰ
(a)-certain ravine easy-of-approach and accessible making the(-parts)
ἔνδοθεν βαλέσθαι ξυλίνην κλίμακα, ἐς σχῆμα πύργου
inside to-put (a)-wooden ladder into (the)-shape of-(a)-tower
τεκτονηθεῖσαν κύκλοθεν. ἡρμόττοντο οὖν ναυπηγήσιμα
built round-about were-fitted then ship-building
ξύλα, καὶ ἱστοὶ μεγάλων νηῶν συνεπήγνυντο, καὶ οἱ μὴ
timbers and masts of-great ships were-fixed-together and the(-ones) not
ἐξικνούμενοι τοῦ ὕψους βλῆτρα ἐδέχοντο. ὡς δὲ ἔδει
reaching the height bolts received as and it-was-needful
ποτὲ ἀρθῆναι καὶ παρὰ τὴν ἄκραν τεθῆναι τὴν πυργοειδῆ
at-last to-be-raised and beside the citadel to-be-set the tower-shaped
ταύτην κλίμακα, ἡ μὲν κορυφὴ αὐτῆς ῥαχίᾳ πέτρας
this ladder the indeed top its to-(a)-ridge of-rock
καὶ πάγῳ προσήγγιζεν ὀκριόεντι, ὅθεν ὁ τῆς πόλεως
and crag drew-near jagged whence the of-the city
τειχισμὸς ἀρχόμενος βάσιν ἐνεδίδου τοῖς ἀποβαίνειν ἐκ
walling beginning footing gave to-the(-ones) to-disembark from
τῆς κλίμακος μέλλουσι καὶ πρὸς τοὺς ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους
the ladder about-to and against the(-ones) on the wall
ἀντιφέρεσθαι, ἡ δ' ὑποβάθρα πλοίοις ἐπανέκειτο εὖ
to-be-borne-against the and base on-boats rested well

ἀραρυῖα καὶ πεπηγυῖα πρὸς τὸ ἔμπεδον καὶ ἀκράδαντον.
fitted and fixed for the steadfast and unshaken
ἐπιλέγδην οὖν οἱ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῆς ἀναβησόμενοι ἐπεκρίνοντο,
by-choice then the(-ones) on it going-to-climb were-picked
καὶ οἱ ἁπάντων ἔξοχοι ἄλλων καὶ ἄλκιμοι κατὰ πόλεμον,
and the of-all eminent others and valiant in war
ὅτι καὶ „ὁ τὸν βασιλέα φιλῶν καὶ φιλότιμος ἐν
because also the(-one) the emperor loving and ambitious in
δεινοῖς ἀναβαινέτω" βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς προεκήρυττεν. οὐδένα
dangers let-him-climb (the)-emperor himself proclaimed nobody
μὲν οὖν συνηγηόχει τὸ τοιοῦτον διακηρύκευμα, ἀλλὰ
indeed then had-gathered the such proclamation but
πάντες ἀνένευον πρὸς τὴν ἄνοδον, τὸ τοῦ κινδύνου μέγεθος
all refused against the ascent the of-the danger greatness
εὐλαβούμενοι, ἕως Πετραλεῖφαί τινες αὐτάδελφοι τέσσαρες,
fearing until Petraliphai certain brothers four
ἐκ τοῦ τῶν Φράγγων γένους ὁρμώμενοι καὶ κατὰ
from the of-the Franks race sprung and in
τὸ Διδυμότοιχον τὴν οἴκησιν ἔχοντες, ἐπέβησαν πρῶτοι
— Didymoteichon the dwelling having mounted first
τῆς κλίμακος, τῷ βασιλεῖ πειθαρχήσαντες. τούτων γὰρ
the ladder to-the emperor having-obeyed these for
ἀποτεθαρρηκότων πρώτως τὴν ἄνοδον, μάλιστα δὲ πρὸ
having-dared first the ascent especially and before
αὐτῶν τοῦ Πουπάκη, ὃς δορυφορῶν τὸν μέγαν δομέστικον
them — Poupakes who guarding the grand domestic
ὅλος ἦν ἐνθεάζων πρὸς τὸ ἔργον τότε καὶ προαλλόμενος,
wholly was inspired for the deed then also leaping-forward
καὶ ἕτεροι οὐκ ὀλίγοι κατὰ ζῆλον ἐπηκολούθησαν. πάντας
and others not few in emulation followed all
μὲν οὖν ἀγάμενος ἦν τῆς προθυμίας καὶ τοῦ ταχέος
indeed then admiring was of-the eagerness and of-the speed

ὁρμήματος ὁ κρατῶν, ἀφορίσας δὲ οὓς ᾔδει παρ᾽ ἀσπίδα
rush the ruler having-set-apart and whom he-knew by (the)-shield
πολλάκις ἐνιδρωκότας καὶ ἄντικρυς Ἄρεα πνέοντας, καὶ
often having-sweated and outright Ares breathing and
ἐς τετρακοσίους ἠριθμηκώς, ἀναβαίνειν διαφῆκε, πολλὰ
to four-hundred having-counted to-climb he-let many(-things)
πρότερον ἐς ἀνδρείαν παρακαλοῦντα τούτοις διαλεχθείς,
formerly to courage exhorting to-them having-spoken
καὶ αὐτοῖς καὶ τέκνοις αὐτῶν ἁδρὰ γέρα καὶ ἀμοιβαίαν
and to-themselves and to-children their rich rewards and in-return
ἐπαγγειλάμενος εὔνοιαν. „εἴτε γάρ" φησι „τοῖς ζῶσι
having-promised goodwill whether for he-says with-the living
σύνεστε, τὸν ἐφεστῶτα κίνδυνον διαδράντες καὶ ἀρίστως
you-are-together the present danger having-escaped and excellently
ἀγῶνα τὸν προκείμενον ἀεθλεύσαντες, εὑρήσετέ με καὶ
(the)-contest the set-before-you having-fought you-will-find me also
ὑπὲρ δόκησιν ἀντὶ δεσπότου καὶ βασιλέως πατέρα
beyond expectation instead-of master and emperor (a)-father
κηδόμενον· εἴτε τὸ ζῆν καταλύσετε, πατρίδι τιμὴν καὶ
caring or the life you-will-end for-(the)-fatherland honor and
κλέος αὐτοῖς ἀρνύμενοι, οὐδ᾽ οὕτως τῶν εἰς δόξαν
glory for-yourselves winning not-even thus from-the(-things) for glory
καὶ κειμένων ὑμῶν ἀφέξομαι, ἀλλ᾽ οὕτως εὖ διαθήσομαι
and lying you I-shall-keep-away but thus well I-shall-arrange
τὰ κατ᾽ οἶκον καὶ τέκνα καὶ ὁμολέκτρους ὡς ζηλωτέα
the(-things) at home and children and wives so-that enviable
τοῖς ἔτι περιοῦσι καὶ μακαριστέα δοκεῖν, καὶ αὐτοῖς δὲ
to-the(-ones) still surviving and blessed to-seem and to-yourselves too
ὑμῖν ὑπαπιοῦσι καθ᾽ ᾅδην ἀσπάσια, εἴ τις τέως καὶ ἐν
to-you departing to Hades welcome if some meanwhile also among
νεκροῖς αἴσθησις, μηδὲ τὸ τῆς λήθης ποτὸν ἐγχεόμενον
(the)-dead perception nor the of-the forgetfulness drink poured-in

οὐ μόνον τὴν τῶν προλαβόντων ἀπαλείφει μνήμην, ἀλλὰ
not only the of-the (things)-before erases memory but
καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν βίον ἐπιγινόμενα οὔκουν ἐς ᾅδου
also the(-things) in the life happening-after not into Hades
ἐπεισρέειν ἀφίησιν, ὅπως τοῖς θανοῦσιν εἴησαν γνώριμα.”
to-flow-in lets so-that to-the dead they-might-be known
πρῶτος οὖν ὁ Πουπάκης, ὡς ἔφην, τὸ σημεῖον τοῦ
first then — Poupakes as I-said the sign of-the
σταυροῦ διατυπώσας ἐν ἑαυτῷ τῆς ἀναβάσεως ἄρχεται, καὶ
cross having-formed on himself the ascent begins and
μετ᾽ αὐτὸν οἱ Πετραλεῖφαι κασίγνητοι, καὶ καθεξῆς ἕτεροι,
after him — Petraliphai brothers and in-order others
ἕως πάντας ἡ κλίμαξ ἐδέξατο. οὐδεὶς οὖν τῶν θεωμένων
until all the ladder received no-one then of-the watchers
ἦν ὃς ἐπὶ τῷ πραττομένῳ τούτῳ ἔργῳ οὐκ ἀνωλόλυξεν
was who at the being-done this deed not cried-out
ὡς ἐπὶ καινῷ καρδιαλγήσας θεάματι, οὐδὲ δακρύων
as at (a)-new having-been-heartsick sight nor with-tears
ὑποπλησθεὶς καὶ πατάξας τὸ στῆθος ἐθεοκλύτησε. καὶ ἦν
having-been-filled and having-struck the breast called-on-God and was
γὰρ ἀληθῶς τὸ ὁρώμενον καταπλῆττον τὸν θεατὴν
for truly the(-thing) seen astounding the spectator
ὀφθαλμόν. οἱ μὲν γὰρ τοὺς θυρεοὺς ὑπὲρ κεφαλῆς ἐς τὸ
eye they indeed for the shields over (the)-head for the
ἀσφαλὲς ἀνατείναντες καὶ τὰ ξίφη σπασάμενοι, τοῖς
safety having-stretched-up and the swords having-drawn with-the(-men)
ἐκ τοῦ φρουρίου προσηγγικότες ἐκθύμως διημιλλῶντο·
from the fort having-drawn-near furiously contended
οἱ δὲ πάσαις κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐχρῶντο βολαῖς καὶ λίθους
they and all against them used missiles and stones
ἀπερρίπτουν χειροπληθεῖς. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδὲν ἤνυτον· οὗτοι γάρ,
hurled handfuls but nothing they-achieved these for

ὅσα καὶ ἄκμονες ῥαϊστῆρσι, παντοίοις τυπτόμενοι βλήμασιν
just-as also anvils by-hammers all-kinds-of struck by-blows
ἀκάμαντες ἦσαν καὶ ἀπερίτρεπτοι καὶ τὴν ἰσχὺν ἀνένδοτοι
unwearied were and unturned and in-the strength unyielding
καὶπὶ τοῖς παροῦσι δεινοῖς ἀκατάπληκτοι. κἂν
and-at the present terrors undismayed and-would-have
κάλλιστον εἰλήφει τέλος τὰ τοῦ ἀγῶνος τοῦδε, καὶ
most-fine taken (an)-end the(-things) of-the contest this and
Ῥωμαίοις ἐγεγόνει πάντῃ κυδαντικά· νῦν δ' ἀλλ' ἡ ταῖς
for-(the)-Romans would-have-become wholly glorious now but yet the at-the
τῶν πράξεων μεγίσταις ἐπεισερχομένη ἀγεννὴς περίπτωσις
of-the deeds greatest coming-in ignoble mischance
καὶ τὸ ἄγαν ἀεί πως παρακολουθοῦσα, ἀρχὴν ἀρίστην
and the excess always somehow following (a)-beginning best
ὑποθεῖσα τῷ ἔργῳ καὶ τῇ προθέσει κατὰ βραχύ πως
having-laid for-the deed and to-the purpose by little somehow
ὑποθάλπουσα, περὶ τὸ πέρας ἠγνωμόνησε τὸ ἐπέραστον.
fostering about the end was-unkind-to the lovely(-end)
ἤδη γὰρ τοῦ Πουπάκου τῆς κλίμακος ἀποβάντος καὶ
already for — Poupakes from-the ladder having-stepped-off and
τὼ πόδε ταῖς πέτραις ἐνερείσαντος, ὅθεν καὶ τοῖς ἐκ
the two-feet on-the rocks having-planted whence also to-the(-ones) from
τῶν τειχῶν διεφέρετο, ἡ κλῖμαξ ἀποκαυλίζεται. καὶ οἱ
the walls he-contended the ladder is-broken-off and the
μὲν ἄλλοι πάντες κύμβαχοι ἐπὶ βρεχμόν τε καὶ ὤμους
indeed others all headlong on forehead both and shoulders
ἐλεεινὸν ἐπανετρέποντο θέαμα καὶ ἄπιστος ὄψις οἰκτίρμοσιν
(a)-pitiable were-overturned sight and incredible view to-pitying
ὀφθαλμοῖς, καὶ κακῶς παραπώλλυντο τοῖς τῶν κυμάτων
eyes and wretchedly perished-besides by-the of-the waves
διαύλοις φερόμενοι καὶ πέτραις καὶ νηῶν προσαραττόμενοι
double-courses carried and on-rocks and of-ships dashed-against

καταστρώμασι, κἀκ τῶν ὑψόθεν λίθοις καταχωννύμενοι,
decks and-by the(-ones) from-above with-stones buried
ὡς βραχεῖς ἀπ᾽ ἐκείνων δὴ τῶν πολλῶν τὸν κίνδυνον
so-that few of those indeed the many the danger
διεκφυγεῖν· ὁ δέ γε Πουπάκης τοὺς ἐν τοῖς τείχεσι
to-escape — and at-least Poupakes the(-ones) on the walls
διασοβήσας καὶ πυλίδα ἀναπεπταμένην εὑρὼν δι᾽
having-scared-off and (a)-postern open having-found through
αὐτῆς ἐξέθορεν εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. καὶ ἦν τοῦτο οὐ
it leapt-out to the army and was this not
Ῥωμαίοις μόνον καὶ βασιλεῖ δι᾽ ἐκπλήξεως, ἀλλὰ
to-(the)-Romans only and to-(the)-emperor through amazement but
καὶ τοῖς ὑπεναντίοις αὐτοῖς διὰ θαύματος, οἳ καὶ τὸ
also to-the opponents themselves through wonder who also the
ἀπάνθρωπον ὀνειδισθέντες καὶ τὸ τῆς γνώμης ἀνήμερον
inhumanity reproached-for and the of-the mind savagery
ἐπεγκληθέντες οἷς καταλιθοῦντες ἄνωθεν ἦσαν τοὺς
charged-with in-which stoning from-above they-were the(-ones)
ἀνατραπέντας ἐκ τῆς κλίμακος, ἀπέσχοντο τοῦ δρᾶν
overturned from the ladder refrained from-the doing
οὑτωσί, τοὺς ἄνδρας αἰδεσθέντες τῆς γενναιότητος.
thus the men having-respected for-the nobility

V · VENETIANS AND ROMANS

A brawl in the marketplace becomes a battle between Romans and Venetians; the Venetians, routed, sail off to the island of Asteris, burn the Roman ships from Euboea moored there, and steal the imperial flagship, where they parade an Ethiopian dressed as emperor in mockery of Manuel's dark complexion. Manuel forgives them for the sake of the siege but harbors his anger. Corfu, starving and despairing of help, surrenders on terms; many of its garrison, the castellan Theodore first, stay with Manuel, and the rest sail home.

Ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω ἀκριβῶς τὸ ἀτύχημα τοῦτο Ῥωμαίοις
but not-yet exactly the misfortune this by-(the)-Romans
διεθρηνήθη καὶ τὴν ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ τοῦ βασιλέως λύπην ὁ
was-lamented and the over it of-the emperor grief the
πάντα μαραίνων χρόνος διαφορήσας ἐλέανε, καὶ ἄλλη τις
all withering time having-carried-off had-softened and another some
ἐπισυμπλέκεται συμφορὰ χείρων τῆς πρώτης καὶ κακὸν
is-entwined disaster worse than-the first and (an)-evil
ἐπεισκωμάζει ἀξιοπένθητον ἕτερον. διαστασιάζονται Ῥωμαῖοι
comes-reveling-in worthy-of-mourning other quarrel (the)-Romans
καὶ Βενέτικοι κατὰ μέσην τὴν ἀγοράν, καὶ ἡ στάσις
and Venetians in (the)-middle the marketplace and the strife
οὐκ ἐρεσχελίαι παρ᾽ ἑκατέρων πίπτουσαι τῶν γενῶν, οὐδ᾽
not idle-jests from both falling of-the races nor
ἔπος αἰσχρόν, ὁποῖον ἐρρέθη, τοιοῦτον ἐπακουόμενον, οὐδ᾽
(a)-word shameful such-as was-spoken such heard nor
ἐβωμολοχεύοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους ἢ κερτόμοις οἱ στασιασταὶ
did-they-play-the-buffoon to one-another or with-mocking the rioters
ῥήμασιν ἐκομψεύοντο, οὐδ᾽ ἔβαλλον ὕβρεσι καὶ ἐπλύνοντο
words showed-off nor pelted with-insults and were-washed
σκώμμασιν, ἀλλ᾽ αἱ χεῖρες εἶχον τὰ ὅπλα καὶ ἡ μάχη
with-jeers but the hands held the arms and the battle
ἀγχώμαλος ἐκορθύετο. συχνοὶ οὖν οἱ κατὰ φήμην
evenly-matched raised-its-crest many then the(-ones) at (the)-report
τοῦ κακοῦ μεθ᾽ ὅπλων ἑκατέρωθεν ἐπεισρέοντες καὶ τοῖς
of-the evil with arms on-each-side streaming-in and to-the
ὁμογενέσιν ἀρήγοντες, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκεῖσε μὴ
kinsmen helping many and also the(-ones) there not
ὁπλενδυτοῦντες παρενέβαλον, γένει βασιλείῳ διαπρεπεῖς
arming came-in by-race imperial distinguished
καὶ λαμπροὶ κατ᾽ ἀξίωσιν. καὶ τῶν Βενετίκων δὲ ἀφίκοντο
and brilliant by rank and of-the Venetians too came

οἱ γεραίτατοι ὡς σβέσοντες τὸ κακὸν καὶ διαλλακτῆρες
the eldest as going-to-quench the evil and reconcilers
ἐσόμενοι. ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ ἦν τῶν λεγομένων ἐπιστροφή,
going-to-be but not was of-the(-things) said regard
οὐδέ τις εἰσῄει τούτους αἰδὼς τῶν συνειλεγμένων μεγίστων
nor any entered them respect of-the gathered greatest
ἀνδρῶν· ὁ γὰρ Ἄρης ἐκπάγλως ἐμαίνετο, καὶ προχύσεως
men — for Ares terribly raged and of-outpouring
αἱμάτων ἐρῶν ἐπισυνίστη μάλιστα τοὺς ὁπλίτας, καὶ
of-bloods longing stirred-up especially the hoplites and
τούτους ἐκ τοῦ τῶν Βενετίκων πλέον στρατολογήματος,
these from the of-the Venetians more levy
καὶ κατεῖχεν οὐδὲν οὐδ᾽ ἐπέστρεφεν. ὅσον γὰρ ὁ μέγας
and restrained nothing nor turned(-back) as-much-as for the grand
δομέστικος τοὺς Ῥωμαίους ἀνέκοπτε τῆς ὁρμῆς καὶ τὰς
domestic the Romans checked from-the rush and the
τούτων ἐπισυνδρομὰς ἐπετείχιζε, τοσοῦτον ἐβαρυμηνίων
their concurrences walled-off so-much raged
Βενέτικοι τῷ θυμῷ σφαδάζοντες κἀκ τῶν τριηρέων
Venetians with-the anger struggling and-from the triremes
ἐξεχέοντο. ἰδὼν τοίνυν ὁ ἀνὴρ ὡς οὐδὲν ὠφελεῖ
poured-out having-seen therefore the man that nothing helps
διαλλαγὰς μετιὼν καὶ ὡς ἄγει ἀναγκαία τὰ γένη μάχῃ
reconciliations pursuing and that leads necessary the races by-battle
διακριθῆναι, τοὺς ἰδίους μεταπέμπεται δορυφόρους, οὓς ἐπὶ
to-be-decided the own summons bodyguards whom for
καιρὸν μάχης εἶχε χρησίμους ἑαυτῷ καὶ ὁπλίταις ἀγαθοῖς
(the)-time of-battle he-had useful to-himself and as-hoplites good
ἐκέχρητο, καὶ διαφίησι τοῖς Βενετίκοις. ἐξάγει δὲ καὶ
he-had-used and sends(-them) against-the Venetians leads-out and also
μέρος τῆς στρατιᾶς. ἐπ᾽ ὀλίγον οὖν οὗτοι ἀντισχόντες, τὰ
(a)-part of-the army for (a)-little then these having-held-out the

νῶτα μεταβαλόντες προτροπάδην φεύγουσι καὶ ταῖς ναυσὶν
backs having-turned headlong flee and into-the ships
ἄκοντες συνωθοῦνται, βαλλόμενοί τε καὶ ἀναιρούμενοι. πλὴν
unwilling are-thrust being-struck both and being-killed however
οὐδ' οὕτω τῆς βαρβάρου γνώμης ἠρέμησαν ἢ τὰ ὅπλα
not-even thus from-the barbarous mind they-rested or the arms
μετὰ τὴν ἧτταν κατέθεντο, ἀλλὰ κατὰ τὰ δυσθάνατα τῶν
after the defeat laid-down but like the hard-to-kill of-the
θηρίων ἐφαλλόμενοί τε καὶ προαλλόμενοι ἐν δεινῷ τίθενται
beasts leaping-on both and leaping-forward in terrible they-set(-it)
ὅτι μὴ Ῥωμαίων αὐτῶν ὑπερίσχυσαν. ἀμέλει καὶ κατὰ
that not than-(the)-Romans themselves they-prevailed indeed also on
χέρσον μηκέτι δυνάμενοι μάχεσθαι ἀποσαλεύουσι τὰς νῆας
land no-longer being-able to-fight they-unmoor the ships
καὶ ἐξόρμους τιθέασι· καὶ κατά τινα νῆσον ἀναχθέντες
and in-the-offing set and at (a)-certain island having-put-out
ἀμφίρρυτον (ἡ Ἀστερὶς αὕτη οἶμαί ἐστιν, ἥν φασιν οἱ
sea-girt — Asteris this I-think is which say the(-men)
πάλαι κεῖσθαι μέσον Ἰθάκης καὶ τῆς τῶν Κεφαλήνων
of-old to-lie between Ithaca and the of-the Kephallenians
τετραπόλεως) ἐπιτίθενται ὡς πολέμιοι τοῖς ἐκεῖσε ἐξ
four-city(-island) attack as enemies the there from
Εὐβοίας παρορμῶσι πλοίοις Ῥωμαϊκοῖς, καὶ τὸ ναυτικὸν
Euboea putting-in boats Roman and the naval(-force)
κακῶς διαθέμενοι, ὃ συνεπλήρουν οἱ Εὐβοεῖς μάλιστα,
badly having-handled which manned the Euboeans mostly
τέλος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ σκάφη πῦρ ἐμβαλόντες ἠθάλωσαν.
(at-the)-end also themselves the hulls fire having-thrown-in burned-to-ash
τῷ κακῷ δὲ τούτῳ ἕτερον ἀτοπώτερον ἐπιφέροντες τὴν
to-the evil and this another more-outrageous adding the
βασιλίδα νῆα κλοποφοροῦσι, καὶ παρ' ἑαυτοῖς θέμενοι
imperial ship they-steal and among themselves having-placed

πρῶτα μὲν τὰς ἐν αὐτῇ βασιλικὰς διαιτήσεις κοσμοῦσι
first indeed the in it imperial apartments they-adorn
πέπλοις χρυσοϋφέσι καὶ ἁλουργοῖς τάπησιν, ἔπειτα δ' αὐτῇ
with-robes gold-woven and with-purple carpets then and in-it
ἐμβιβάσαντες ἀνδράριον ἐπίτριπτον, κελαινοχρῶτά τινα
having-embarked (a)-manikin accursed black-skinned (a)-certain
Αἰθίοπα, εὐφήμουν ὡς βασιλέα Ῥωμαίων, περιάγοντες
Ethiopian they-acclaimed as emperor of-(the)-Romans leading-(him)-round
μετὰ λαμπρᾶς στεφανηφορίας καὶ προπομπῆς, τὰ
with brilliant crowning and procession the(-things)
τῆς βασιλείας σεμνὰ διαπαίζοντες, καὶ καταμωκόμενοι
of-the empire solemn mocking and jeering-at
τοῦ ἄνακτος Μανουὴλ ὡς μὴ ξανθίζοντος τὴν κόμην
the lord Manuel as not being-yellow-haired in-the hair
ὡς θέρος, ἀλλ' ὑπομελαινομένου τὴν μορφὴν κατὰ τὴν
as summer but being-darkish in-the form like the
τοῦ ᾄσματος νύμφην τὴν λέγουσαν „μέλαινά εἰμι καὶ
of-the song bride the(-one) saying black I-am and
καλή, ὅτι παρέβλεψέ με ὁ ἥλιος." ἀλλ' εἶχε μὲν ἀξίαν
beautiful because looked-askance-at me the sun but had indeed worthy
ἐπιθεῖναι δίκην τοῖς βαρβάροις ἐκ τοῦ παραυτίκα ὁ
to-impose (a)-penalty on-the barbarians from the instant the
βασιλεύς· δείσας δὲ μὴ ἐμφυλίου κινηθέντος πολέμου εἰς
emperor having-feared and lest of-civil having-been-stirred war to
πλεῖον προχωρήσει τὰ ἄτοπα, πέμψας τῶν ἐξ οἰκείου
more would-advance the outrages having-sent of-the(-men) from own
γένους τινὰς ἀμνηστίαν δίδωσι τοῖς Βενετίκοις ὧν τε
family some amnesty gives to-the Venetians for-what both
εἰς αὐτὸν ἠνομήκασι καὶ ὧν εἰς Ῥωμαίους ὡς
against him they-have-transgressed and for-what against (the)-Romans as
δυσμενεῖς ἐκακούργησαν, ἐπεὶ τὰ τῆς ἀμύνης ἑώρα
enemies they-had-done-evil since the(-things) of-the vengeance he-saw

πως οὐκ ἀκίνδυνα, πρὸς ἄλλα τοῦ καιροῦ ῥέπειν
somehow not without-danger to other(-things) the time to-incline
ἐπειγόντος. πλὴν εἰ καὶ τὸν χόλον αὐτῆμαρ κατέπεψεν,
pressing however if also the wrath on-the-same-day he-digested
ἀλλ' ὡς ἐν σποδιᾷ ἔναυσμα τὸν κότον ἐνέθαλπε τῇ ψυχῇ
but as in ashes (a)-spark the grudge he-kept-warm in-the soul
ἕως τῶν πραγμάτων ἐνδιδόντων αὐτὸν ἐξεπύρσευσεν, ὡς
until the affairs yielding him he-kindled as
κατὰ καιρὸν τὸν οἰκεῖον ῥηθήσεται.
in time the own it-will-be-told
Τότε δ' οὖν φιλιωθέντων αὖθις ἀμφοτέρων τῶν
then and therefore having-been-reconciled again both the
στρατευμάτων εἰς πολιορκίαν ἐξάγει τὰς φάλαγγας,
armies to siege he-leads-out the phalanxes
καὶ κατὰ θάλασσαν, ἐν οἷς παρείκοι, τὸ πόλισμα
and by sea in which(-places) it-allowed the town
κυκλωσάμενος παντοῖος ἐγίνετο, ὥσπερ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
having-encircled every-way he-became as-if against himself
ἁμιλλώμενος ἐνεργότερος δείκνυσθαι, εἴ πως παραστήσασθαι
vying more-active to-be-shown if somehow to-reduce
δυνηθείη τοῦτο καὶ ἐξελεῖν. ἔκ τε οὖν τῶν πετροβόλων
he-might-be-able this and to-take from both then the stone-throwing
ὀργάνων τὰ βάρη τῶν λίθων ἠφίετο συνεχέστερα, καὶ
engines the weights of-the stones were-shot more-continuous and
οἱ τοξόται παρὰ μαζὸν ἀεὶ πελάζοντες τὰς νευρὰς καὶ
the archers to (the)-breast always bringing-near the strings and
ἕως τῶν γλυφίδων ἕλκοντες νιφάδεσσιν ἐοικότα χειμερίῃσι
to the notches drawing to-snowflakes like wintry
κατὰ τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ τείχους τὰ βέλη ἔπεμπον. ἦσαν δὲ
against the(-men) on the wall the missiles sent were and
κατὰ πολλὰ μέρη τοῦ ἐρύματος καὶ οἳ διὰ τῶν
in many parts of-the fortification also (men)-who through the

φαράγγων δίκην αἰγάγγρων ἐκρημνοβάτουν. ἐπεραίνετο δὲ
ravines like wild-goats climbed-the-crags was-accomplished and
οὐδὲν ἀλλ᾽ ἢ ὅσον μὴ ἀεργὸν ὁρᾶσθαι τὴν στρατιάν·
nothing but than as-much-as not idle to-be-seen the army
οἱ γὰρ ἔνδον καὶ αὐτοὶ γενναίως ἀπεμάχοντο, ὑποκατιέναι
the for inside also themselves nobly fought-back to-come-down
μὲν καὶ συστάδην ἀντιπλέκεσθαι Ῥωμαίοις οὐμενοῦν
indeed and at-close-quarters to-grapple with-(the)-Romans not-at-all
οὐδαμῶς δοκιμάζοντες, ἀπὸ δὲ τῶν τειχῶν παντοδαπῶς
in-no-way approving from and the walls in-every-way
ἀμυνόμενοι, καὶ βέλεσι καὶ λίθων ἀφέσεσι παντοίοις
defending(-themselves) both with-missiles and of-stones with-discharges all-kinds-of
κακοῦντες τὸ ἀνθιστάμενον. ὡς ἔγνω τοίνυν ὁ βασιλεὺς
harming the resisting(-force) as knew therefore the emperor
ἀδυνάτοις ἐπιχειρῶν, μεταναστεῦσαι μὲν ἐκεῖθεν καὶ
impossible(-things) attempting to-move indeed thence and
τὴν πολιορκίαν ἀφεικέναι ἀτέλεστον οὐκ ἔκρινε δεῖν, καὶ
the siege to-have-left unfinished not he-judged needful and
ἀδοξίας ἄλλως ἑαυτῷ παραίτιον ὑπετόπαζεν εἰ πολλὰ
of-disgrace otherwise for-himself (a)-cause he-suspected if many(-things)
καμὼν καὶ οὐκ ὀλίγας ἴλας ἀπολωλεκὼς στρατιώτιδας
having-toiled and not few squadrons having-lost of-soldiers
οὐχ ἕξει φρούριον ἓν ἐξελεῖν, καὶ τοῦτο πρότριτα
not he-will-be-able fort one to-take and this three-days-before
Ῥωμαίοις ὑπόφορον, βόσκοι δὲ καὶ ἐπὶ τῆς οἰκείας
to-(the)-Romans tributary should-feed and also on the own(-soil)
χιλίους λῃστάς, ὁρμητήριον παρεὶς καὶ νεώσοικον
(a)-thousand robbers (a)-base having-allowed and (a)-dockyard
ταῖς Σικελιώτισι τριήρεσι κατὰ Ῥωμαίων τὰ Κέρκυρα.
for-the Sicilian triremes against (the)-Romans — Corcyra
ἐπεβάλετο τοίνυν χρονοτριβεῖν· ἄλλη γὰρ οὐδεμία τις ἐλπὶς
he-undertook therefore to-spend-time other for no any hope

ὑπελείπετο τοῖς χρηστοτέροις αὐτὸν ὑποσαίνουσα, διὰ δὲ
was-left to-the better(-things) him fawning-on through and
τῆς πολυημέρου προσεδρείας συμπείσειν ἄκοντας ᾤετο
the many-day sitting-before to-persuade unwilling he-thought
τοὺς ἐπὶ τῆς φρουρᾶς καταπροδοῦναί οἱ τὸ φρούριον
the(-men) on the garrison to-betray to-him the fort
καὶ σφᾶς προσαναθήσειν αὐτῷ. ὅθεν οὐδὲ τοῦ καλοῦ
and themselves to-surrender to-him whence not-even from-the good
τῆς προσδοκίας ταύτης ἐκπέπτωκεν, οὐδὲ μὴν διήμαρτε
of-the expectation this he-has-fallen-short nor indeed missed
τοῦ σκοποῦ. ἡμέρας γὰρ διαλιπόντες τινὰς διαπρεσβεύονται
of-the aim days for having-let-pass some send-envoys
οἱ πολέμιοι, καὶ δέονται καιρὸν αὐτοῖς ὑποχωρήσεως
the enemies and beg time to-them of-withdrawal
ἐνδοθῆναι, ὡς ὅπλων καὶ τῶν ἄλλων ἦσαν ἔχοντες. ὡς
to-be-given as with-arms and the others they-were having as
γὰρ ἑώρων βασιλέα μὲν οὐκ ἂν αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ χώρας μένειν
for they-saw (the)-emperor indeed not — them in place to-remain
ἀνήσοντα, τὰς δ' ἐλπίδας σχαζούσας εἰς κενὸν αἷς
going-to-let the and hopes dropping into vain with-which
ἐβουκολοῦντο καθ' ὥραν τὴν ἀπὸ τοῦ ῥηγὸς ἐπικουρίαν
they-were-beguiled by hour the from the king help
προσδεχόμενοι, ἅμα δὲ καὶ τὸν λιμὸν αὐτοὺς ἠρέμα
expecting at-once and also the famine them quietly
ἐπιβοσκόμενον, τὴν εἰρημένην ἐτράποντο. ἐνῆγε δὲ πρὸς
feeding-on the(-course) said they-turned-to led and to
τὸ τοιοῦτον μάλιστα ἔργον ὁ καστελλᾶνος Θεόδωρος, ὃς
the such especially deed the castellan Theodore who
τῆς φρουραρχίας προΐστατο, οὐκ ὢν αἱμάτων ἀνὴρ ἀλλὰ
of-the garrison was-at-the-head not being of-bloods (a)-man but
τῆς ἀγέλης πλέον Χριστοῦ, καὶ προτιθεὶς εἰρήνην τῆς
of-the flock rather of-Christ and preferring peace to-the

διαστάσεως, καὶ φιλορώμαιος, ὡς ἔδειξεν ὕστερον. βασιλεὺς
dissension and Roman-loving as he-showed later (the)-emperor
τοίνυν ὠσὶν ἑστῶσιν ἀκούσας τὴν ἀγγελίαν, ἐζήτει
therefore with-ears standing having-heard the message sought
θεάσασθαι καὶ πέρας αὐτίκα τὸ ἐφετόν. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ τὰς
to-see and (the)-end at-once the desired before and the the
ἀποκρίσεις ἱλαρὰς ἀποδοῦναι ἑαυτὸν εἰδωλοποιεῖ τραχύν,
answers cheerful to-give himself he-fashions harsh
καὶ ὑπερορίοις ἀπειλαῖς ἐκέχρητο, εἰ μὴ δρῷεν ὅσα
and with-excessive threats he-had-used if not they-should-do what-things
ἡ πρεσβεία κατεπαγγέλλεται. ὡς οὖν ὀψὲ προσερρύησαν,
the embassy promises as then late they-flowed-in
οὐδὲ τότε ὁμοῦ πάντες ἀλλὰ κατὰ βραχεῖς, καὶ
not-even then together all but by few and
πεῖραν τοῖς ἐπιμένουσιν οἱ ἐξιόντες διδόντες ὡς
(a)-test to-the(-ones) remaining the(-ones) going-out giving that
οὐχ ὑπερόπτης ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐδέ τι τῶν
not haughty (was)-the emperor nor anything of-the(-things)
ἀέλπτων ἐπιτελῶν ἀλλ' εὐμενῶς αὐτοὺς προσιέμενος, μετὰ
unexpected performing but kindly them receiving after
φιλοφροσύνην καὶ δεξίωσιν ἱκανὴν αὐτοὺς ἑλέσθαι τὸ
friendliness and welcome sufficient them to-choose the
ποιητέον καὶ τὸ δοκοῦν ὠφέλιμον ἐγκελεύεται· ἑαυτῷ γὰρ
to-be-done and the seeming useful he-orders for-himself for
μὴ εἶναι πρὸς τρόπου, μηδ' ἄλλως κρίνειν βασιλικόν τε
not to-be in character nor otherwise to-judge royal both
καὶ ἐλευθέριον, ἢ μένειν ἐθέλοντας ἀπελαύνειν ἢ ἀπιέναι
and free-minded either to-remain wishing to-drive-away or to-depart
βουλομένοις προσίστασθαι. πολλοὶ μὲν οὖν συμπαρέμειναν
wishing to-oppose many indeed then remained-with

βασιλεῖ, καὶ πρὸ πάντων ὁ καστελλᾶνος Θεόδωρος· οἱ
(the)-emperor and before all the castellan Theodore the
δὲ λοιποὶ πρὸς τὴν πατρίδα Σικελίαν ἀνήχθησαν.
and rest to the fatherland Sicily sailed-away

VI · THE STORM AND THE SERBS

Manuel sails from Aulon for Sicily but is turned back by storms that wreck his fleet, and he abandons the crossing. He then marches against the Serbs, who had risen while he was at Corfu; their zoupan flees to the mountains, and Manuel plunders the land and returns to a triumph. Next spring he sends Michael Palaiologos with money to Italy, where he hires troops, wins battles against the Sicilians, and takes many cities.

Βασιλεὺς δὲ παριὼν εἴσω τῆς πόλεως, καὶ τὴν ἄκραν
(the)-emperor and passing inside the city and the citadel
καταπλαγεὶς ὡς ὅπλοις οὐδ' ὅλως ἁλώσιμον, καὶ
having-been-amazed-at as by-arms not at-all takeable and
φρουρὰν ἐπιστήσας ἀσφαλεστάτην ἐκ Γερμανῶν, ἄρας
(a)-garrison having-set most-secure from Germans having-set-out
ἐκεῖθεν μετὰ πάσης ὡς εἶχε τῆς στρατιᾶς εἰς τὸν Αὐλῶνα
thence with all as he-had the army to — Aulon
μετασκηνοῖ, ἔνθα ἱκανὰς ἡμέρας ἐναυλισάμενος τὴν εἰς
moves-camp where sufficient days having-encamped the to
Σικελίαν κυροῖ περαίωσιν, γνωματεύων ἥρεμον εἶναι τὸν
Sicily he-ratifies crossing pronouncing peaceful to-be the
μαχόμενον καὶ εἰρήνης τὸν πόλεμον πρύτανιν, κἀκείνας
fighting(-man) and of-peace the war (the)-president and-those
εὐδαιμονεῖν τῶν πόλεων ὅσαι μὴ τοῖς τείχεσι τοῖς
to-be-happy of-the cities as-many-as not with-the walls with-the
δ' ἔγχεσι φράγνυνται, ὡς τούς γε δι' εἰρήνην τὸν
but spears are-fenced as the(-ones) at-least through peace the

πόλεμον ἀλυσκάζοντας λεληθέναι ἄντικρυς ἔφασκεν
war shunning to-have-escaped-the-notice-of outright he-said
ἑαυτοὺς ὅτι πλείονες ἐντεῦθεν ὡς ἐκ πολύχοος γηδίου
themselves that more thence as from much-heaped little-land
φύονται οἱ διάφοροι, ἣν ἔχουσιν ἀρχὴν περικόπτοντες
grow the adversaries which they-have dominion cutting-down
καὶ σταθερᾶς εἰρήνης οὐδαμῶς ἀπολαύοντες. ἀλλὰ „δειλοί"
and of-steady peace in-no-way enjoying but timid
φησιν ὁ Δαβίδ „οἱ τῶν ἀνθρώπων εἰσὶ διαλογισμοὶ καὶ
says — David the of-the men are reasonings and
ἐπισφαλεῖς αἱ τούτων ἐπίνοιαι, ἡ δὲ βουλὴ τοῦ κυρίου
precarious the their designs the and counsel of-the Lord
βεβαία καὶ ἀμετάπτωτος, οὐδ' ἔστιν ὅστις τῶν ἁπάντων
firm and unchangeable nor is anyone of-the all(-men)
αὐτὴν παρακρούσεται." τότε τοίνυν τὸν Μανουὴλ στηρίξαντα
it will-strike-aside then therefore — Manuel having-fixed
τὴν εἰς Σικελίαν κέλευθον, καὶ πρὸς τὴν νῆσον κατάραντα
the to Sicily road and to the island having-put-in
ἥτις Ἀειρονήσιον ἐπικέκληται, τοῦ ἐγχειρήματος ἐπέσχον
which Aeironesion is-called from-the undertaking held-back
διακυκήσασαι τὸ πέλαγος λαίλαπες καὶ καταποντιστικὰ
having-stirred-up the sea squalls and sinking
τοῦτο ταράξαντα πνεύματα, βροντῶν τε μυκήματα
this having-troubled winds of-thunders both bellowings
ἐξαισίων, καὶ ἀστραπῶν ἐκπυρηνίσματα τερατώδη καὶ
prodigious and of-lightnings blazings monstrous and
ἀνάμματα φοβερώτατα. καὶ αὖθις δ' ἐπιβαλλομένῳ καὶ
kindlings most-fearful and again too to-(him)-attempting and
τὴν περαίωσιν ἐπισπεύδοντι οὐχ ὑπέθηκεν ἑαυτὴν ἡ
the crossing hastening not submitted itself the
θάλασσα ταῖς ναυσίν, ἀλλ' ἀνεπήδα καὶ ἀνεβράσσετο
sea to-the ships but leapt-up and boiled-up

κάτωθεν. ὡς οὖν ἀντέστησαν αἱ ἀντίπνοιαι, διαλύσασαι τὰ
from-below as then resisted the contrary-winds having-broken-up the
σκάφη γνόφῳ βαθεῖ, μόλις μὲν τῇ χέρσῳ τινὰ τούτων
hulls in-darkness deep barely indeed to-the dry-land some of-these
προσώκειλαν, καὶ αὐτὸς δὴ βασιλεὺς διεξέπλευσε βραδέως
ran-ashore and himself indeed (the)-emperor sailed-through slowly
τὸν κίνδυνον, τὰ δὲ λοιπὰ διεσπάρη ἄλλα ἄλλοθι καὶ
the danger the and rest were-scattered some elsewhere and
πάρεργον ἐγεγόνει κλύδωνος. τῷ τοι τὴν δι' ἑαυτοῦ πρὸς
(a)-by-work had-become of-(the)-surge for surely the through himself to
Σικελίαν περαίωσιν ὡς ἀσύμφορον παρωσάμενος, ἀπαίρει
Sicily crossing as unprofitable having-thrust-aside he-sets-out
μὲν ἐκ τοῦ Αὐλῶνος ὡς ἔχων ἦν τῶν δυνάμεων, εἰς δὲ
indeed from — Aulon as having he-was of-the forces to and
Πελαγονίαν ἀφιγμένος, καὶ καταστησάμενος ὡς ξυνοΐσόν
Pelagonia having-arrived and having-settled as going-to-profit
οἱ ἐδόκει τὰ πράγματα, κατὰ Σέρβων ἔγνω μεταθέσθαι
to-him seemed the affairs against Serbs resolved to-turn
τὸ πρόθυμον. οὗτοι γάρ, ἕως μὲν τὰ τῆς ἀρχῆς
the eagerness these for while indeed the(-things) of-the empire
ἠρέμει τῷ αὐτοκράτορι, εὔνουν ἐπλάττοντο πρόσωπον
were-quiet to-the autocrat (a)-well-minded feigned face
καὶ τὴν γλῶτταν ἐπλούτουν πρὸς τὰ ἐν μυχῷ τῆς
and the tongue enriched to the(-things) in (the)-depth of-the
καρδίας ἀντίφθογγον· ἐπειδὴ δὲ κατά τε γῆν κατά τε
heart contrary-sounding since and by both land by and
θάλατταν ἐπεισήρρηκεν ὅσα ἐπετέμετο ἡ ἀφήγησις,
sea has-burst-in as-many-as cut-short the narrative
ἀνεθάρρησάν τε παρὰ τὸ δέον καταχρησάμενοι τῷ καιρῷ,
they-took-courage both beyond the needful having-misused the occasion
καὶ κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ὅπλα ἤραντο, καὶ κακῶς διέθεντο
and against (the)-Romans arms raised and badly treated

τὰς ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίους ὁμόρους αὐτοῖς χώρας. καὶ δὴ τὸ
the under (the)-Romans bordering-on them lands and indeed the
εὔοπλον ἀπολαβὼν τοῦ στρατεύματος, καὶ ἀποτάξας αὐτὸ
well-armed having-taken-off of-the army and having-assigned it
πρὸς τὸ εὔζωνον, τὴν Σερβίαν εἴσεισι. τὸν δὲ ταύτης
for the light-armed(-part) — Serbia he-enters the and its
σατράπην οὐ διέδραμε μὲν ἡ κατ' αὐτοῦ βασίλειος
satrap not escaped indeed the against him imperial
ἐπέλευσις, κἂν ἠπείγετο λήσειν ὁ βασιλεύς· οὐκ
attack even-if hastened to-pass-unnoticed the emperor not
ἔχων δ' ὅ τι καὶ διαπράξαιτο, μηδὲ συνορῶν ἑαυτὸν
having and what — also he-could-do nor seeing himself
ἀνταγωνιστὴν πρὸς τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς δυνάμεις ἀξιαγώνιστον,
(an)-antagonist against the Roman forces fit-to-contend
ἀφίσταται μὲν τῶν πεδινῶν, εἰς δὲ τὰ ὄρη αἴρει τοὺς
withdraws indeed from-the plains to and the mountains raises the
ὀφθαλμούς, ὅθεν προσεδόκα ἥξειν αὐτῷ τὴν βοήθειαν. τὰς
eyes whence he-expected to-come to-him the help the
δὲ τῶν οἰκείων πληθῦς, ὅσα καὶ θρεμμάτων ἀγέλας τὰ
and of-the own multitudes just-as also of-cattle herds the
χλωρὰ δρεπομένων τῆς ὕλης, ἀφῆκε τοῖς ἐπιοῦσιν
green(-things) cropping of-the wood he-left to-the(-ones) attacking
εἰς διασκόρπισιν καὶ ἀναίρεσιν, ἐπιτρέψας ἑκάστῳ τὴν
for scattering and slaughter having-permitted to-each the
διὰ φυγῆς εὕρασθαι σωτηρίαν καὶ πρίασθαι ποσὶ τὴν
through flight to-find safety and to-buy with-feet the
ζωὴν ὡς εἰς παράδειγμα αὐτὸν ἀποβλέπουσι. καὶ ὁ μὲν
life as for example to-him looking and the indeed
Σερβάρχης οὕτω διενοήθη καὶ διεπράξατο καὶ ταῦτα
Serb-ruler thus thought and did and these(-things)
ἦν τοῖς ὑπ' αὐτὸν ὑποθέμενος, βασιλεὺς δὲ ὡς λέων
was to-the(-ones) under him having-suggested (the)-emperor and as (a)-lion

ἀλκῇ πίσυνος βουκόλια βοῶν ἢ αἰγῶν αἰπόλια τὰ
in-strength trusting herds of-cattle or of-goats flocks the
τῶν βαρβάρων κείρας συστήματα, καὶ πολλὰς μὲν
of-the barbarians having-shorn companies and many indeed
συγκτήσεις πυρὶ παραδούς, οὐκ ὀλίγων δὲ σωμάτων
possessions to-fire having-given not few and bodies
ἐγκρατὴς γεγονώς, ἐκεῖθεν ἐπάνεισι. καὶ γράμμα μὲν
master having-become thence returns and (a)-letter indeed
εὐθὺς εὐάγγελον ἐχαράττετο, τοῖς τῆς πόλεως σημαῖνον
at-once of-good-tidings was-written to-the of-the city signifying
οἰκήτορσι τὰ ἐξ ὑπογυίου ταυτὶ κατορθώματα, καὶ ὁ
inhabitants the from recent these successes and the
τοῦτο κομίζων ἀγγελὺς ὁ μέγας ἦν δομέστικος· μετὰ
it carrying messenger the grand was domestic after
βραχὺ δὲ καὶ ὁ τῶν ἀνδραγαθημάτων ἐπιφθάνει πατήρ,
(a)-little and also the of-the feats-of-valor arrives-first father
καὶ καταγαγὼν ἐπὶ τοῖς τελεσθεῖσι τούτοις περιφανῆ
and having-led-down for the(-things) accomplished these (a)-conspicuous
θρίαμβον, καὶ παρὰ τοῦ δήμου καὶ τῆς συγκλήτου πάσης
triumph and by the people and the senate all
εὐφημηθεὶς καὶ τῇ τῶν κρότων ὑψηγορίᾳ διαχυθείς,
having-been-acclaimed and by-the of-the applause loftiness having-been-cheered
εἰς ἁμίλλας ἵππων ἀπεῖδε καὶ θέατρα.
to contests of-horses looked and theaters
Ἄρτι δὲ τοῦ ἔαρος ὑποφαίνοντος τὴν Πελαγονίαν αὖθις
just and the spring appearing — Pelagonia again
κατέλαβε, καὶ ἐπείπερ ἡ πρὸς Σικελίαν ἄφιξις αὐτῷ
he-reached and since the to Sicily arrival for-him
ἀπηγόρευτο, χρήμασιν ἐφοδιάσας πολλοῖς ἄνδρα δραστήριον,
had-been-forbidden with-money having-supplied many (a)-man energetic
τῶν ἐπισήμων ἕνα καὶ εὐγενῶν, τὸν Παλαιολόγον φημὶ
of-the notable one and noble — Palaiologos I-mean

Μιχαήλ, καὶ στρατιὰν αὐτῷ παραδοὺς ἱκανὴν καὶ χεῖρα
Michael and (an)-army to-him having-given sufficient and (a)-hand
συχνὴν ἐγχειρίσας ἐκεῖσε ἐξέπεμψεν. ὁ δὲ κατὰ τὸ
numerous having-entrusted there he-sent-out he and according-to the
βασιλεῖ δοκοῦν ἐς Βενετίαν ἀφίκετο πρότερον, καὶ
to-(the)-emperor seeming to Venice arrived first and
μισθοφορικὸν ἐκεῖθεν ἀγηοχὼς κἀκ τῶν Ἰταλιωτίδων
(a)-mercenary(-force) thence having-brought and-from the Italian
χωρῶν στρατολογήσας ἁδρὸν κοντοφορικὸν καὶ γενόμενος
lands having-levied (a)-stout lance-bearing(-force) and having-become
ἤδη μεγαλοδύναμος πρὸς τὴν Λογγιβαρδίαν κατέπλευσε,
already very-powerful to — Longobardia sailed-down
καὶ συμμίξας ταῖς ἐκεῖσε δυνάμεσι τοῦ ῥηγὸς τροπαιοφορεῖ
and having-engaged with-the there forces of-the king bears-trophies
κατ᾽ αὐτῶν καὶ νίκαις ἀναδεῖται λαμπραῖς, ἔχων ἐπὶ
against them and with-victories is-crowned brilliant having in
πᾶσι συγκροτοῦντά οἱ καὶ συναντιλαμβανόμενον καί
all(-things) working-with-him to-him and helping also
τινα κόμητα Ἀλέξανδρον, ἐκ ταυτοῦ μὲν ἀπορρυέντα
(a)-certain count Alexander from the-same indeed having-flowed
αἵματος τῷ ῥηγί, προσκεχωρηκότα δὲ προσφάτως
blood with-the king having-gone-over and recently
Ῥωμαίοις δι᾽ ἃς ὑπέστη παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ συμφοράς. καὶ
to-(the)-Romans because-of which he-had-suffered from him disasters and
ὁ μὲν Παλαιολόγος ἀεί πως ἐνεπλατύνετο, καὶ σπείρων
— indeed Palaiologos always somehow spread-wide and sowing
φιλοτίμως καὶ διαδοὺς τὰ χρήματα ἐλύπει καιρίως τὸν ῥῆγα,
ambitiously and distributing the money grieved mortally the king
καὶ εἰσέτι δράσων ἐκεῖνον ἐπίδοξος ἦν τὰ ἀνήκεστα,
and still going-to-do to-that(-man) expected was the incurable(-things)
πλείστας τῶν ἐκεῖθι πόλεων τὰς μὲν ὁμολογίᾳ χειρούμενος
most of-the there cities the(-ones) indeed by-agreement subduing

τὰς δὲ καταστρέφων. ἀλλὰ καὶ λίθων μετενεχθέντων
the(-ones) and overthrowing but also stones having-been-carried-across
ἐκεῖθεν, καί τινων ἀναπεμφθέντων αἰχμαλώτων τῷ βασιλεῖ,
thence and some sent-up captives to-the emperor
πόλις κατὰ τὴν τῶν Αἰγαιοπελαγιτῶν χώραν τειχίζεται,
(a)-city in the of-the Aegean-dwellers land is-walled
Βάρη καὶ Αὐλωνία παρωνύμως ἐσέτι ὠνομασμένη.
Bari and Aulonia by-derived-name still named

VII · HUNGARIANS, SCYTHIANS, AND SICILY

Manuel defeats the Serbs and their Hungarian allies, overcoming the archizoupan Bakchinos in single combat, then invades the Frankochorion and brings captives home in triumph. The Scythians cross the Ister, defeat and kill Kalamanos, and escape on their hide rafts. In Italy Alexios Komnenos and John Doukas replace Palaiologos but are defeated and captured by the king, and Constantine Angelos, sent with a new fleet at an astrologically chosen hour, is also captured.

Βασιλεὺς δὲ αὐτὸς αὖθις μαθὼν κακουργεῖν τὸν Σερβίας
(the)-emperor and himself again having-learned to-do-evil the of-Serbia
δυναστεύοντα οὔρεσι καὶ χείρονα δρᾶν τῶν
ruling in-(the)-mountains and worse(-things) to-do than-the
προτέρων, ὡς καὶ σπείσασθαι κατὰ Ῥωμαίων τοῖς
former so-as also to-have-made-treaty against (the)-Romans with-the
γείτοσι Παίοσι, δισσεύει κατ' αὐτῶν, ὡς μὴ ἀξιομάχων
neighbors Paeonians marches-twice against them as not fit-to-fight-with
ἀφροντιστῶν. οἱ δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ δόξαν χεῖρας ἀντῆραν,
careless they and even beyond expectation hands raised-against(-him)
καὶ τὸν κατ' ὀφθαλμὸν ἐθάρρησαν πόλεμον, πλεῖστον
and the before (the)-eye dared battle very-large
συμμαχικὸν Οὐννικὸν ἐπαγόμενοι, ὅτε καὶ ὁ Καντακουζηνὸς
allied Hunnish bringing-in when also — Kantakouzenos

Ἰωάννης συμπλακεὶς τοῖς βαρβάροις καὶ μέχρι τοῦ
John having-engaged with-the barbarians and until the
δοῦναι καὶ λαβεῖν ἐγκαρτερήσας πληγὰς τοὺς δακτύλους
to-give and to-take having-endured blows the fingers
τῶν χειρῶν ἀπεβάλετο, πολλῶν ἐπιβρισάντων ἐκείνῳ
of-the hands lost many having-pressed-on him
Σέρβων. καὶ βασιλεὺς δὲ αὐτὸς κατὰ μονομαχίαν τῷ
Serbs and (the)-emperor too himself in single-combat with-the
ἀρχιζουπάνῳ Βακχίνῳ προσέμιξεν, ἡρωϊκὸν προφαίνοντι
archizoupan Bakchinos engaged heroic displaying
σῶμα καὶ αὐτουργοὺς χεῖρας ἐξ ὤμων φύοντι· καὶ ὁ μὲν
(a)-body and self-working hands from shoulders growing and the indeed
κατὰ τῶν προσώπων πλήττει τὸν βασιλέα καὶ διαθλᾷ
on the face strikes the emperor and shatters
τὸ ἐκ τοῦ κράνους κατακεχυμένον τῶν ὄψεων ἐκείνου
the from the helmet poured-down over-the eyes his
σιδήρεον παραπέτασμα, ὁ δὲ τὴν χεῖρα τούτου τῷ
iron curtain the(-other) and the hand his with-the
ξίφει διήλασε καὶ ἀπόλεμον ἔδειξε καὶ ζωγρίαν ἐκ τοῦδε
sword drove-through and useless-for-war showed and alive from this
συνείληφεν. ὡς δὲ καὶ οὕτω Ῥωμαίοις αἰθρία νίκης
has-taken as and also thus on-(the)-Romans fair-sky of-victory
ἐπέλαμψε τῶν βαρβάρων διαλυθέντων δίκην νεφῶν, κἀκ
shone the barbarians having-been-dispersed like clouds and-from
τῶν ἐπαριστερῶν ἀρχῶν εἰς τέλος ἀπήντησεν ὁ πόλεμος
the left beginnings into (an)-end came the war
δεξιώτατον, κατὰ τῶν Οὔγγρων ἐκ τούτου ὁρμᾷ, μήπω
most-favorable against the Hungarians from this he-sets-out not-yet
τὴν τῆς μάχης κόνιν ἐκ τῶν προσώπων ἀπομορξάμενος
the of-the battle dust from the face having-wiped-off
ἀλλ᾽ ἔτι θερμοῖς ἱδρῶσι σταζόμενος, ἐπίκλημα φέρων τὴν
but still with-hot sweats dripping (a)-charge bearing the

τῶν Σέρβων ἐπικουρίαν, καὶ τὴν ἀπουσίαν ἁρπάζων τοῦ
to-the Serbs help and the absence seizing of-the(-one)
ἐπαρήξοντος· ὁ γὰρ τῶν Οὔγγρων ῥὴξ οὐκ ἦν κατὰ
going-to-help the for of-the Hungarians king not was in
χώραν, τοῖς γειτνιῶσι Ῥὼς συμπλεκόμενος. καὶ δὴ τὸν
place with-the neighboring Rus engaged and indeed the
Σάουβον διαβὰς ποταμὸν καὶ τῷ Φραγγοχωρίῳ ἐμβαλὼν
Sava having-crossed river and — into-Frankochorion having-invaded
(ἔστι δὲ τόδε τμῆμα τῆς Οὐγγρίας οὐ τὸ ἐλάχιστον
is and this (a)-section — of-Hungary not the least
ἀλλ' ἱκανῶς πολυάνθρωπον, μεταξὺ Ἴστρου καὶ Σαούβου
but sufficiently populous between Ister and Sava
τῶν ποταμῶν ἀναπεπταμένον, καθ' ὃ καὶ φρούριον
the rivers spread-out in which also (a)-fort
ἐρυμνότατον ἔκτισται, ὃ Ζεύγμινον ἐπικέκληται, ὅπερ νῦν
most-strong has-been-built which Zeugminon is-called which now
λέγεται Σίρμιον) χειρίστως τὰ ἐκεῖ διέθετο. τότε καί
is-called Sirmion worst the(-things) there he-treated then also
τις Παίων μεγέθει μέγιστος καὶ ἀνδρεῖον προφαίνων
(a)-certain Paeonian in-size greatest and manly showing
ψυχῆς παράστημα, τῶν ἄλλων ἀποδιαστὰς ἐς αὐτὸν τὸν
of-soul spirit from-the others having-separated at himself the
βασιλέα θυμῷ φέρεται. ὁ δὲ τοῦτον ὑποστὰς ἐς τὸ
emperor with-anger rushes he and this(-man) having-withstood into the
μέσον τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν τὸ ξίφος διελᾷ καὶ ἀφίστησι τῆς
middle of-the eyes the sword drives-through and removes from-the
ζωῆς. πολλοὺς τοίνυν ζωγρίας λαβὼν καὶ πραγμάτων
life many therefore alive having-taken and of-goods
οὐκ ὀλίγων γενόμενος ἐγκρατὴς πρὸς τὴν βασιλίδα
not few having-become master to the imperial
πόλιν ἐπάνεισιν. ἐς δ' ὅσον πλεῖστον ἀπομηκύνας τὸν
city returns into and as-much-as most having-lengthened the

θρίαμβον, λαμπρότατα ὡς ἐνῆν διὰ τῶν τῆς πόλεως
triumph most-brilliantly as was-possible through the of-the city
ἀμφόδων ἐπόμπευσεν. ὑπερεξῆραν δὲ τὴν τηνικαῦτα
streets processed outshone and the then
κομψότητα τῆς πομπῆς τῶν Οὔγγρων οἱ νεαλεῖς καὶ
elegance of-the procession of-the Hungarians the newly-caught and
τῶν Σέρβων οἱ δορυάλωτοι, στολὰς ἐνησθημένοι λαμπρὰς
of-the Serbs the spear-captured robes having-put-on brilliant
καὶ ὑπὲρ τύχην ἐρωμένας αἰχμάλωτον, βασιλέως αὐτὰς
and beyond fortune cherished captive (the)-emperor them
παρασχομένου, ὡς ἂν εἴη καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἡ νίκη περίδοξος
having-provided so-that — might-be also thence the victory very-glorious
καὶ τοῖς πολίταις αὐτοῖς διὰ θαύματος καὶ ὅσοι μὴ
and to-the citizens themselves through wonder and as-many-as not
ἐνδαποί, ὡς ἀνδρῶν κεχειρωμένων κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον
native as of-men subdued in the war
τῶν ἐκ γένους ἐπισήμου καὶ ἀξίων τοῦ περιβλέπεσθαι.
of-the(-ones) from family notable and worthy of-the being-looked-at
θαυμαστὴν δ' ἐποίει τὴν τότε πομπαίαν πανήγυριν καὶ
wonderful and made the then processional festival also
τὸ μὴ παριέναι ἀθρόους τοὺς αἰχμαλώτους, ἀλλὰ κατὰ
the not to-pass in-a-mass the captives but by
συμμορίας καὶ ἐκ διαλειμμάτων ἀφεστῶτας ἀλλήλων,
companies and from intervals standing-apart from-one-another
ὡς κλέπτεσθαι τὴν ὄψιν ἐντεῦθεν τῶν θεωμένων καὶ
so-that to-be-deceived the sight thence of-the watchers and
ὑπὲρ τοὺς ὄντας τοὺς παριόντας φαντάζεσθαι.
beyond the(-ones) being the(-ones) passing to-be-imagined
Ἐν τούτῳ δὲ καὶ Σκυθῶν τὸν Ἴστρον διαπεραιωσαμένων
in this and also Scythians the Ister having-crossed
καὶ τὰ περὶ τὸν ποταμὸν τοῦτον ληϊζομένων Ῥωμαϊκὰ
and the about the river this plundering Roman

φρούρια, στέλλεται κατ' αὐτῶν Καλαμάνος τις. ἀλλ'
forts is-sent against them Kalamanos (a)-certain but
οὗτος μὴ δεξιῶς διαστρατηγήσας τὸν κατὰ Σκυθῶν
this(-man) not skillfully having-conducted the against Scythians
πόλεμον ἡττήθη τε ὑπ' αὐτῶν κατὰ κράτος, ὡς αἱ τάξεις
war was-defeated both by them by force as the ranks
ἐρρώγεσαν, καὶ ἄνδρας ἀγαθοὺς ἀπεβάλετο, καὶ αὐτὸς
were-broken and men good he-lost and himself
δὲ καιρίας ἐς τὸ σῶμα δεξάμενος τὸ ζῆν μετήλλαξεν.
too mortal(-wounds) in the body having-received the life exchanged
οἱ δὲ Σκύθαι κατὰ τὸν αὐτοῖς εἰωθότα τρόπον λείαν
the and Scythians in the to-them customary manner booty
τὰ ἐν ποσὶ θέμενοι καὶ ἀναθέμενοι τοῖς ἵπποις τὰ
the(-things) at feet having-made and having-loaded on-the horses the
λάφυρα νόστου ἐμνήσαντο. ῥᾴων δὲ αὐτοῖς ἡ τοῦ Ἴστρου
spoils of-return bethought easier and for-them the of-the Ister
περαίωσις, εὐχερεστέρα δὲ καὶ ἡ κατὰ προνομὴν ἐπέλευσις,
crossing more-easy and also the for foraging attack
οὐ κοπηρά τε καὶ ἐργώδης ἡ ἀναχώρησις. ὁπλισμὸς
not toilsome both and laborious the withdrawal armament
γὰρ αὐτοῖς γωρυτὸς ἐπὶ τῆς ἰξύος ἐξηρτημένος πλάγιος
for for-them (a)-quiver on the loin hung slanting
καὶ καμπύλα τόξα καὶ ἄτρακτοι. εἰσὶ δ' οἳ καὶ
and curved bows and arrows are and (those)-who also
δοράτια κραδαίνουσι περιελίσσουσί τε κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον.
javelins brandish whirl-about and in the war
ὁ δ' αὐτὸς ἵππος καὶ τὸν Σκύθην ὀχεῖ, διὰ πολέμου
the and same horse also the Scythian carries through war
φέρων τοῦ πολυάϊκος, καὶ τροφὴν χορηγεῖ σχαζομένης τῆς
bearing the much-rushing and food supplies being-opened the
φλεβός, ὡς δέ φασι, καὶ ὀχευόμενος, εἰ ἔστιν ὁ ἵππος
vein as and they-say also being-covered if is the horse

θηλυκός, τὴν ἄλογον ἀφροδίτην τοῦ βαρβάρου ἀποκενοῖ.
female the brutish lust of-the barbarian empties
σχεδιάζει δὲ τοῖς Σκύθαις τοῦ ποταμοῦ τὴν διάβασιν
improvises and for-the Scythians of-the river the crossing
κάρφης πλήρης διφθέρα, λίαν ἐς τὸ ἀκριβὲς σύσπαστος,
with-straw full (a)-hide very to the exact drawn-together
ὡς μηδὲ βραχὺ λιβάδιον ἐπεισρέειν ἔσωθεν. οὐκοῦν
so-that not-even (a)-small trickle to-flow-in inside therefore
ταύτην περιβὰς ὁ Σκύθης ἱππείας ἐξημμένην οὐρᾶς,
it having-bestrode the Scythian of-(a)-horse fastened tail
καὶ τὴν ἀστράβην ἐπαναθεὶς καὶ ὅσα τοῦ πολέμου
and the saddle having-put-on and as-many-as of-the war
ὄργανα, ῥᾷον διαπλωΐζεται, οἷα σκάφος λαίφει τῷ ἵππῳ
instruments more-easily sails-across as (a)-hull for-sail the horse
χρώμενος καὶ τὸ τοῦ Ἴστρου διανηχόμενος πέλαγος.
using and the of-the Ister swimming-across sea
Καὶ ὧδε μὲν εἶχε ταυτί· ὁ δέ γε Παλαιολόγος,
and thus indeed held these(-things) — and at-least Palaiologos
τὸν Φιλοπράγμονα αἰτίαν ἀπειληφὼς καὶ τὸν δαπανηρὸν
the Busybody charge having-received and the costly
Ῥωμαίοις ἀξυντελῶς, ἐξ ὅτου Καλαβρίας ἐπέβη, τῆς
to-(the)-Romans unprofitably from when Calabria he-entered from-the
στρατηγίας παραλύεται, στέλλεται δ' ἀντ' αὐτοῦ ὁ
command is-relieved is-sent and instead-of him —
Κομνηνὸς Ἀλέξιος, ὁ τοῦ Βρυεννίου Καίσαρος υἱός,
Komnenos Alexios the — of-Bryennios Caesar son
ἐξάδελφος ὢν τῷ βασιλεῖ πρὸς μητρὸς καὶ τὴν
cousin being to-the emperor on (the)-mother's(-side) and the
τοῦ μεγάλου δουκὸς τιμὴν ἄρτι πρώτως περιζωσάμενος.
of-the grand duke honor just first having-girded-on
συνεκπέμπεται δέ οἱ καὶ ὁ δούκας Ἰωάννης, ἀνὴρ
is-sent-with and him also — Doukas John (a)-man

ἑρμαϊκὸς ὁμοῦ καὶ ἀρεϊκός, οἷα παιδευμάτων ἐλευθερίων
Hermes-like at-once and Ares-like as of-studies liberal
οὐκ ἄκρῳ λιχανῷ γεγευμένος καὶ γένους εὖ ἔχων
not with-(the)-tip-of (the)-forefinger having-tasted and in-family well being
καὶ μεθόδων ἴδρις στρατηγικῶν. οὗτοι οὖν ἐς Σικελίαν
and of-methods skilled generalship these then to Sicily
τὸν πλοῦν θέμενοι συνέμιξαν ταῖς δυνάμεσι τοῦ ῥηγὸς
the voyage having-made engaged with-the forces of-the king
καὶ μεγάλαις ναυμαχίαις πολλάκις αὐτὸν κατεπάλαισαν,
and in-great sea-battles often him wrestled-down
ὡς τάς τε νῆας τούτου διαρρυῆναι, ἐγγὺς δὲ πολιορκίας
so-that the both ships his to-be-wrecked near and of-siege
καὶ αὐτὸ γεγονέναι τὸ Βρεντήσιον. ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω ἡ τύχη
also itself to-have-come — Brindisi but not-yet the fortune
τοῖς λαμπροῖς τοῖσδε καθαρῶς ἐπεμειδίασεν ἀγωνίσμασιν,
on-the brilliant these purely smiled contests
οὔτε μὴν ὁ βασιλεὺς ὡς ἔδει ταῖς καλλίσταις
nor indeed the emperor as was-needful in-the finest
ἐνεώρτασεν ἀγγελίαις· καὶ ὁ ῥὴξ μείζονα ἀθροίσας
feasted messages and the king greater having-gathered
δύναμιν καὶ ξενικὸν ἐπαμησάμενος οὐ βραχὺ τὴν ἧτταν
(a)-force and foreign(-troops) having-collected not small the defeat
ἐπῆλθεν ἀναμαχούμενος, καὶ συμβαλὼν περιγίνεται τῶν
came-on fighting-again and having-engaged gets-the-better of-the
ἀνδρῶν, καὶ συλλαβὼν δεσμώτας εἴργνυσιν ἀμφοτέρους,
men and having-seized as-prisoners shuts-up both
ἐν ἀκαρεῖ καιροῦ ἀνατρέψας ὅσα πόνῳ καὶ δαπάναις
in (a)-moment of-time having-overturned what-things by-toil and expenses
μεγίσταις ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων εὐημερήθησαν. τοιούτοις οὖν
greatest by (the)-Romans had-prospered by-such then
ὁ Μανουὴλ ἀκούσμασι καὶ ἀγγέλμασι τὴν πρότριτα
— Manuel hearings and messages the three-days-before

θυμηδίαν ἀποκλυσάμενος, ὅσα τε ἀψινθιώδεσι κεράσμασιν
joy having-washed-off just-as and with-wormwood mixtures
ἐμπικρανθεὶς τὴν ψυχήν, ὡς εἰκὸς μὲν οὐκ ἤνεγκε
embittered the soul as (is)-likely indeed not bore
τὸ γεγονὸς φορητῶς, ἀλλ' ἱκανῶς ἐπαθήνατο. οὐκ
the having-happened bearably but sufficiently suffered not
ὢν δὲ ψοφοδεής, μηδ' ἀναπίπτων ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
being and frightened-by-noise nor falling-back in the terrible
συναντήμασιν, οὔτε μὴν τῷ οὔρῳ τῶν πραγμάτων
encounters nor indeed by-the fair-wind of-the affairs
παρ' ὃ δεῖ κουφιζόμενος, οὐδ' αὖ πάλιν ἀγεννῶς
beyond what is-needful lightened nor in-turn again ignobly
ταῖς τούτων καταιγίσιν ὑποκλινόμενος, ὡς πρὸς τὴν
to-the their squalls bending as against the
τότε τύχην ἀγνωμονοῦσαν ἀντιπράττων διημιλλᾶτο. ἔνθεν
then fortune being-unkind working-against be-vied whence
τοι καὶ ἑτέραν ἐξαρτύσας ναυτικὴν δύναμιν ἐφίστησιν
surely also another having-fitted-out naval force sets
ἡγέμονα ταύτης Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Ἄγγελον, ὃς ἐκ μὲν
(as)-leader of-it Constantine the Angelos who from indeed
Φιλαδελφίας ὥρμητο καὶ γένους ἦν οὐκ εὐπαρύφου πάνυ
Philadelphia came and of-family was not purple-bordered very
καὶ εὐγενοῦς, εὖ δ' ἔχων τῆς σωματικῆς φυῆς κἀπὶ τοῦ
and noble well and being of-the bodily growth and-on the
προσώπου λειμῶνα κάλλους κηπεύων τὴν Θεοδώραν πρὸς
face (a)-meadow of-beauty cultivating — Theodora to
γάμον ἠγάγετο, ἣν Ἀλέξιος ὁ βασιλεὺς ὁ προπάτωρ
marriage led whom Alexios the emperor the grandfather
τῷ Μανουὴλ ἐγείνατο, τὸ κάλλος εὐτυχήσας
— to-Manuel begot the beauty having-been-fortunate(-in)
προμνήστριαν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἅπασι σχεδὸν δοκεῖ τοῖς
(as)-matchmaker since and to-all almost seems to-the(-ones)

πάλαι καὶ σήμερον μέγα δυναμένοις ὡς πρὸς τὰς τύχας
of-old and today greatly being-powerful that to the fortunes
συναίρονται καὶ τὰ κατὰ τὸν ἀνθρώπινον βίοτον
contribute and the(-things) in the human life
συναντήματα οἱ τῶν ἀστέρων ἀναποδισμοὶ καὶ προποδισμοὶ
encounters the of-the stars retrogressions and progressions
καὶ αἱ θέσεις αὗται καὶ τὰ τοιάδε τῶν πλανήτων σχήματα,
and the positions these and the such of-the planets figures
οἱ πλησιασμοί τε καὶ ἀποστάσεις, καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ ὅσα
the approaches both and distances and the rest as-many-as
οἱ ἀστρολέσχαι φασὶν τῆς θείας προνοίας καταψευδόμενοι
the star-babblers say of-the divine providence lying-against
καὶ λεληθότως τὸ εἵμαρτο καὶ τὰ δεδογμένα τῇ
and secretly the it-was-fated and the(-things) decided by-the
ἀνάγκῃ ἀναλλοίωτά τε καὶ ἀνεπίκλωστα παρεισάγοντες,
necessity unchangeable both and unspun bringing-in
ὡραίαν τῷ Ἀγγέλῳ τὴν ἔξοδον ἀπακριβοῖ. καὶ εἶχε μὲν
(a)-seasonable — for-Angelos the departure he-fixes-exactly and had indeed
τῷ Ἀγγέλῳ τὰ ἐξιτήρια συνταξάμενος· ἀλλὰ τί; οὔπω
— for-Angelos the departure-rites having-arranged but what not-yet
εἰς ὀψίαν ἐνειστήκει ὁ ἥλιος, καὶ παλίμπους ἐπιτάσσοντος
to evening had-stood the sun and back-footed ordering
βασιλέως ὁ Κωνσταντῖνος γίγνεται. τὸ δ' αἴτιον ἡ τῆς
(the)-emperor — Constantine becomes the and cause the of-the
ἐξόδου ἀκαιρία, καὶ τὸ τῆς ὁδοῦ τὸν Ἄγγελον ἅψασθαι
departure unseasonableness and the of-the road — Angelos to-have-touched
οὐχ ὡς ἀγαθοὶ σχηματισμοὶ τῶν ἀστέρων ἐκέλευον ἢ
not as good figures of-the stars bade or
γοῦν ἡ ἀκρίβεια παρεῖχε τῶν τῆς ἀστρονομουμένης
at-any-rate the exactness provided of-the of-the astronomized
σφαίρας κανόνων, ἀλλ' ὡς οἱ φλήναφοι ἐνεδίδοσαν,
sphere rules but as the babblers yielded

κακῶς φάσκοντες καὶ παχέως τοῖς λεπτοῖς ἐπιβάλλοντες,
badly speaking and grossly on-the subtle(-things) throwing-themselves
κἀντεῦθεν περὶ τὴν τῆς ὡραίας ὥρας σφαλλόμενοι εὕρεσιν.
and-hence about the of-the seasonable hour being-mistaken finding
πάλιν τοίνυν θεμάτιον διετίθετο καὶ κανόνες ἀπηκριβοῦντο.
again therefore (a)-horoscope was-arranged and rules were-made-exact
καὶ οὕτω μετὰ πολλὴν τῶν ἄστρων ἔρευναν καὶ σκέψιν
and thus after much of-the stars searching and examination
καὶ περισκόπησιν ὁ Ἄγγελος ἔξεισι, ταῖς τῶν ἀγαθοποιῶν
and survey — Angelos goes-out with-the of-the beneficent
ἀστέρων συνεξωρμηκὼς κινήσεσιν. ἐς τοσοῦτον δὲ ἄρα τὰ
stars having-set-out-together movements to so-much and then the
τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὤνησε πράγματα ἡ τῆς ὥρας ἀσφάλεια, ἢ
of-the Romans helped affairs the of-the hour security or
τὰ τῶν πρώην ἀρχηγῶν ἀνώρθωσε πταίσματα καὶ εἴ τι
the of-the former commanders set-right failures and if anything
ἀντίξουν συμβέβηκε μετεσκεύασεν, ὡς ἐκ τοῦ παραυτίκα
adverse has-happened changed so-that from the instant
χερσὶν ἁλῶναι τῶν πολεμίων τὸν Κωνσταντῖνον.
by-hands to-be-captured of-the enemies — Constantine
ἀπερισκέπτως γὰρ εἰς Σικελίαν τὸν πλοῦν ποιούμενος
incautiously for to Sicily the voyage making
συνελήφθη ταῖς θαλασσοφυλακούσαις Σικελικαῖς τριήρεσι
he-was-seized by-the sea-guarding Sicilian triremes
καὶ ἤχθη παρὰ τὸν ῥῆγα αἰχμάλωτος. ὁ δὲ τῆς ἄγρας
and was-brought to the king (a)-captive he and for-the catch
ἐπαινέσας τοὺς συλλαβόντας, καὶ ὡς καλῶν κάλλιστον
having-praised the(-ones) having-seized(-him) and as of-fine(-things) finest
εἰπὼν τὸ θήραμα, εἶχε καὶ τοῦτον δεσμώτην ἔμφρουρον.
having-said the prey held also this(-man) (a)-prisoner under-guard

Weighing the cost of the war, Manuel makes peace with the king of Sicily through the pope's mediation; Alexios, sent to Ancona, secretly removes the money he had brought for troops. The captives are freed except the weavers of Thebes and Corinth. The peace soon breaks down, and the Sicilian admiral Maio sails to the City, shoots silver arrows at the Blachernai palace, and acclaims his king before the Great Palace, which Manuel laughs off.

Βασιλεὺς δὲ καὶ μετὰ δευτέραν ταύτην πληγὴν διηρευνᾶτο
(the)-emperor and also after second this blow searched-out
τὰ τῆς ἀμίλλης ἀνάλογα. ὁρῶν δὲ τὸν διὰ
the(-things) of-the rivalry proportionate seeing and the through
πολέμων αὖθις τρόπον δυσεργόν τε καὶ ἀξύμφορον, καὶ
wars again way hard-to-work both and unprofitable and
τὸ τῶν ἀναλωμάτων ἁδρὸν καὶ ἐπάλληλον ὑπειδόμενος
the of-the expenditures stout and successive suspecting
οἷά τινα νόσον γάγγραιναν τὰ τῶν θησαυρῶν κατὰ
like some disease gangrene the of-the treasures by
βραχὺ ταμιεῖα νεμόμενον (ἐγγὺς γάρ που κεντηναρίων
little storehouses consuming near for somewhere of-centenaria
τριακοσίων χρυσίου ἀνάλωκε χρήματα), δέον εἶναι διενοήθη
three-hundred of-gold has-spent money needful to-be he-thought
σπείσασθαι τῷ ῥηγί. οὐκ ἀηδῶς τοίνυν ἀλλ' ἀσμένως
to-make-treaty with-the king not unpleasantly therefore but gladly
δεξάμενος τὴν τοῦτο ἐπισκήπτουσαν πρεσβείαν τοῦ
having-received the this enjoining embassy of-the
τῆς πρεσβυτέρας Ῥώμης προέδρου, καὶ ὡς Ἄγγελον
of-the elder Rome president and as (an)-angel
εὐξύμβολον ἀσπασάμενος, στέλλει κατὰ τὸν Ἀγκῶνα τὸν
well-omened having-welcomed he-sends to — Ancona the
πρωτοστράτορα Ἀλέξιον, ὃς ἦν πρεσβύτερος τῶν υἱέων
protostrator Alexios who was elder of-the sons

τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου, πρὸς ἀμφότερα μερίσας τὸ
of-the grand domestic between both having-divided the
σκέμμα τε καὶ τὸ βούλευμα, δηλαδὴ καὶ πρὸς ἑτοιμασίαν
consideration both and the plan that-is and for preparation
ὅπλων καὶ ξενικοῦ στρατεύματος συλλογὴν ἀπὸ τῶν
of-arms and of-foreign army collection from the
ἑσπερίων μερῶν, εἰ τούτου δεήσειε, καὶ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ
western parts if of-this it-should-need and for the of-the
ῥηγὸς φιλίαν, εἰ προχωροῦσαν ὁρᾴη τὴν ξύμβασιν. ἔνθεν
king friendship if advancing he-should-see the agreement whence
τοι καὶ ὁ Ἀλέξιος ἐκεῖσε γενόμενος, δραστήριος ἄνθρωπος
surely also — Alexios there having-come (an)-energetic man
ὢν καὶ πᾶσαν ἐξησκηκὼς αὐτουργίαν πολεμικήν, νοΐ
being and every having-practiced self-work of-war with-mind
τε τὴν γλῶτταν ἔχων ἀνθάμιλλον καὶ χεῖρας ἀντεριζούσας
both the tongue having vying and hands contending
ταῖς ἀρχικαῖς μεθοδεύσεσι, καὶ τὸ εἶδος αὐχῶν σεμνόν,
with-the of-command methods and in-the form boasting (a)-stately
στρατολογεῖν εὐθὺς ἐπεβάλετο, κατασεῖσαι τὴν γνώμην
to-levy-troops at-once he-undertook to-shake the mind
τῇ ἀκοῇ βουλόμενος τοῦ ῥηγός, καὶ συχνὴν ξυνέλεγεν
by-the report wishing of-the king and numerous collected
ἵππον ὡς ἐς Καλαβρίαν μέλλων παρεμβαλεῖν. ἐν δὲ τῷ
horse as to Calabria about-to invade in and the
μέρει καὶ τοῦ τῶν σπονδῶν ἐπεμελεῖτο καθήκοντος, καὶ
turn also the of-the treaties attended-to proper and
ὡς ἀλλήλοις λήξουσι πολεμοῦντες ὅ τε βασιλεὺς καὶ
how with-one-another will-cease making-war the both emperor and
ὁ ῥήξ, γράμματά τε πέμπων ἐς Μάϊον καὶ δεχόμενος,
the king letters both sending to Maio and receiving
ὃς ἐναυάρχει τότε τοῦ στόλου τῶν Σικελῶν. πρεσβείαν
who was-admiral then of-the fleet of-the Sicilians (an)-embassy

οὖν ἐκ Σικελίας ἐπισπασάμενος ἀναπέμπει ταύτην τῷ
then from Sicily having-drawn sends-up it to-the
βασιλεῖ, καὶ δεῖται προσσχεῖν οἷς λέγειν οἱ πρέσβεις
emperor and asks to-attend to-what to-say the envoys
ἔχουσιν (αἰτοῦνται δέ, ὡς πυνθάνεται, οὐχ ὑπερόρια οὐδ'
have they-ask and as he-learns not excessive nor
ὑπέρογκα) καὶ αὐτῷ παραστήσειν, εἰ προβαίνουσι καὶ
overweening and to-him to-establish(-it) if advance and
περατοῦνται τὰ τῆς καταλλαγῆς, πρὸ τοῦ εἰς ὦτα
are-completed the(-things) of-the reconciliation before the into ears
διαβῆναι πολλῶν, ἵνα μὴ ἀηδὲς αὐτῷ τι λάθοι
to-pass of-many that not unpleasant to-him anything might-escape
διαπραξάμενος, ὄντι παρ' ἀνδράσιν οὓς αὐτὸς ἐκ τῶν
having-done(-it) being among men whom he-himself from the
φίλων χωρῶν τῷ ῥηγὶ τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν χρησταῖς ἐλπίσιν
friendly lands to-the king of-the Alamans with-good hopes
ἠνδραποδίσατο, καὶ ὧν τὴν γνώμην κατὰ Ῥωμαίων
had-enslaved and whose the mind against (the)-Romans
πλεῖστα πάλαι φλεγμαίνουσαν κατὰ τοῦ Σικελίας ῥηγός,
much long-ago inflamed against the of-Sicily king
ὡς εἶχε, μετέθετο. ὡς οὖν ἐπέστη τις ἐκ βασιλέως τὴν
as it-was he-had-changed when then arrived someone from (the)-emperor the
ἀγγελίαν Ἀλεξίῳ τῶν σπονδῶν διαφέρων, λάθρᾳ τῶν
message to-Alexios of-the treaties bearing secretly from-the(-men)
ἐκεῖ τὰ χρήματα μετατίθησι καὶ συνεκπέμπει ταῦτα τοῖς
there the money he-transfers and sends-off them with-the
πιστοτάτοις ἑαυτῷ ἀνδράσι· τὰ δὲ κιβώτια καταλείπει
most-faithful to-himself men the and chests leaves
τούτων κενά, σφραγῖδάς τε τούτοις ἐπιβαλὼν τοῖς κατὰ
their empty seals both on-them having-put to-the(-men) in
χώραν μέγα δυναμένοις παρέθετο, ἐπισκήψας ἀσυλίαν
place greatly being-powerful he-entrusted(-them) having-enjoined inviolability

ἐπὶ τούτοις ἅπασαν εἶναι, καὶ μηδένα μεταλλᾶν τὰ
on these all to-be and nobody to-change the(-things)
ἔνδον, μήτε μὴν ἄλλως διαλῦσαι τὰ σημεῖα, εἰ μήγε αὐτὸς
inside nor indeed otherwise to-break the seals if not he-himself
ἐς βασιλέα ἱκόμενος ἐκεῖθεν ἐπανελεύσεται. καὶ Ἀλέξιος
to (the)-emperor having-come thence will-return and Alexios
μὲν οὕτως ἐκ τοῦ Ἀγκῶνος ἀπενόστησε, βασιλέως δὲ
indeed thus from — Ancona returned-home of-(the)-emperor and
καὶ ῥηγὸς εἰρηνικὰ φρονησάντων καὶ βλεψάντων πρὸς
and of-(the)-king peaceful(-things) having-minded and having-looked to
τὰς σπονδάς, ἢ τἀληθὲς εἰπεῖν, οὐ καθαρῶς ὁμονοησάντων
the treaties or the-truth to-say not purely having-agreed
λυκοφιλίαν δὲ σχηματισαμένων, ὤναντο τῆς τούτων
(a)-wolf-friendship and having-feigned benefited from-the their
ὁποιασοῦν ἑνώσεως οἱ αἰχμάλωτοι λυθέντες ἀνάποινοι, οὐ
whatever union the captives released ransomless not
μόνον οἱ λαμπροὶ τὸ γένος καὶ βασιλείῳ τιμήεντες
only the(-ones) brilliant in-the race and with-imperial honored
αἵματι, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἳ τοῖς στρατιωτικοῖς καταλόγοις
blood but also (those)-who in-the military rolls
ἐνετάττοντο, πλὴν τῶν ἐκ Κορίνθου καὶ Θήβηθεν
were-ranked except the(-ones) from Corinth and from-Thebes
ὁρμωμένων, καὶ τούτων ὅσοι τὸ γένος ἀφανεῖς καὶ
coming and of-these as-many-as in-the race obscure and
οἱ τὰς εὐητρίους ὀθόνας ὑφαίνειν ἔλαχον, καὶ τῶν
the(-ones) the fine-warped linens to-weave were-allotted and of-the
γυναικῶν αἱ καλαὶ καὶ βαθύζωνοι καὶ τὴν αὐτὴν ἀνδράσι
women the beautiful and deep-girdled and the same as-the-men
τέχνην ἐκμελετήσασαι. καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ἰδεῖν τοὺς ἐν Σικελίᾳ
craft having-practiced and now it-is-possible to-see the in Sicily
καταίροντας Θηβαίων παῖδας καὶ Κορινθίων ἱστῷ
landing of-Thebans children and of-Corinthians to-(the)-loom

προσανέχοντας τῶν ἑξαμίτων καὶ χρυσοπάστων στολῶν
attending of-the six-threaded and gold-sprinkled robes
ὡς Ἐρετριεῖς πάλαι παρὰ Πέρσαις δουλεύοντας, ὅτι
as Eretrians of-old among Persians slaving because
πολέμων ἦρξαν Δαρείῳ στρατείαν καθ' Ἑλλάδος ἐλάσαντι.
of-wars they-began for-Darius (an)-expedition against Greece having-driven
Ἀλλ' οὔπω μακρὸς διαλελοίπει καιρός, καὶ αὖθις ἑκάτεροι
but not-yet long had-intervened time and again both
ὡς ἀχανεῖς ἀμπώτιδες καὶ σύρτεις, αἳ κῦμα ὀρθὸν
as gaping ebb-tides and shoals which (a)-wave upright
ἐπαιγίζουσιν, ἐς τὰς μάχας ἐπωγκοῦντο καὶ ὠροθύνοντο. καὶ
rush-upon(-it) to the battles swelled and were-roused and
βασιλεὺς μὲν ἀνέσειε τῷ ῥηγὶ τοὺς μέγα δυναμένους
(the)-emperor indeed stirred-up against-the king the greatly being-powerful
ἀστυγείτονας ἐκείνῳ· δυνάστας, χρημάτων ἐπαίρων αὐτοὺς
neighboring to-him lords with-money raising them
ὑποσχέσεσιν· ὁ ῥὴξ δὲ τῷ κόμητι τοῦ στόλου Μαΐῳ
with-promises the king and to-the count of-the fleet Maio
διακελεύεται νῆας τεσσαράκοντα ταχυναυτούσας πάσας
orders ships forty swift-sailing all
καθελκύσαι τῶν νεωρίων, καὶ φραξάμενον καινότερον τὴν
to-launch from-the dockyards and having-fortified newer the(-city)
Κωνσταντίνου καταλαβεῖν, καὶ αὐτὸν μὲν ἐπ' ἀκροάσει τῶν
of-Constantine to-reach and himself indeed in hearing of-the
ἀστυπόλων ἀναγορεῦσαι Σικελίας καὶ Ἀκυλίας Καπύης τε
townsmen to-proclaim of-Sicily and Apulia Capua both
καὶ Καλαβρίας καὶ τῶν μεταξὺ τούτων χωρῶν καὶ νήσων
and Calabria and of-the between these lands and islands
ὅλων κύριόν τε καὶ βασιλέα, βασιλέα δ' ἐκφαυλίσαι
whole lord both and king (the)-emperor and to-belittle
Ῥωμαίων, καὶ κακῶς εἰπόντα ἐπανελθεῖν. ἀμέλει τοι καὶ
of-(the)-Romans and badly having-spoken to-return indeed surely also

τὰ ἐντεταλμένα πληρῶν Μάϊος, Μαλέαν ἐπικάμψας
the(-things) commanded fulfilling Maio Malea having-rounded
καὶ τὸν Αἰγαῖον κόλπον παραλλάξας καὶ παρημειφὼς
and the Aegean gulf having-passed and having-passed-by
Ἑλλήσποντον τῇ βασιλίδι πόλει προσώκειλε. καὶ πρῶτα
Hellespont at-the imperial city put-in and first
μὲν τὸν ἐσέχοντα πορθμὸν διαπλεύσας, καὶ τοῖς ἐν
indeed the leading-in strait having-sailed-through and at-the in
Βλαχέρναις βασιλείοις κατακολπίσας, βέλη κατ᾽ αὐτῶν
Blachernai palaces having-entered-the-bay arrows against them
ἀφῆκεν ἀργυρέους ἔχοντα τοὺς ἀτράκτους ἀληλιμμένους ἐς
let-fly silver having the shafts smeared to
βάθος χρυσῷ, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἐκεῖθεν τὸν αὐτὸν ἐπαναμετρεῖν
depth with-gold in and the thence the same to-measure-back
πλοῦν ἀπέναντι τοῦ μεγάλου παλατίου τὰς κώπας σχάσας
voyage opposite the great palace the oars having-rested
τὸν οἰκεῖον ῥῆγα ταῖς εὐφημίαις διατρανοῖ, συνεπηχοῦντος
the own king with-the acclamations proclaims-loudly echoing-with
τοῦ ναυτικοῦ πληρώματος καὶ θορυβώδη τελοῦντος τὴν
of-the naval complement and noisy accomplishing the
ἀνακήρυξιν. καὶ ὁ μὲν οὕτω τὸν πλοῦν ἐπιταχύνας τῆς
proclamation and he indeed thus the voyage having-hastened than-the
πάλαι ᾀδομένης Ἀργοῦς πτηνότερον, Σηστοῦ καὶ Ἀβύδου
of-old sung Argo more-winged from-Sestos and Abydos
ὡς ἄλλων Συμπληγάδων ἐξέθορε, πολὺς δὲ ἀνὰ τὴν
as from-other Symplegades leapt-out much and through the
πόλιν ἐπεκύμαινε τάραχος, βασιλέως μὴ παρόντος ἐντός.
city surged confusion (the)-emperor not being-present inside
καὶ ἦν δὲ τοῦτο καύχημα τῷ Σικελίας ῥηγί, καὶ εἰς
and was too this (a)-boast for-the of-Sicily king and as
μέγιστον ἀνεγράφετο τροπαιούχημα. ὁ δὲ Μανουὴλ εἰς
greatest was-recorded trophy — and Manuel to

παίγνιον τὸ γεγονὸς καὶ γέλωτα ἀναφέρων, τὸν
play the(-thing) having-happened and laughter referring the
τοιαύτας ἑαυτῷ τιμὰς μνηστευόμενον ῥῆγα ἢ τό γε
such for-himself honors wooing king or the(-thing) at-least
ἀληθέστερον εἰπεῖν λῃστεύοντα διακενῆς ἀφῆκε βρενθύεσθαι
more-truly to-say robbing in-vain let swagger
καὶ φυσᾶν ἐπ᾽ οὐδενὶ χρηστῷ κατορθώματι.
and puff-up over no good success

MANUEL I, BOOK THREE

I · THE HUNGARIANS AND ANDRONIKOS

Manuel sets out again against the Hungarians, but makes peace at Sardike and turns against the Serbs. In Pelagonia he arrests his cousin Andronikos, accused of plotting with the Hungarians against him, and sends him to prison in Byzantium. When the Hungarians besiege Branitzova, he sends Basil Tzintziloukes and then comes himself, and they come to terms; he then marches east against Toroses of Armenia, who deceives him with false pledges, and on to Antioch.

Τοιοῦτον μὲν οὖν εἰλήφει πέρας τὰ κατὰ Σικελίαν τε καὶ
such indeed then had-taken (an)-end the in Sicily both and
Καλαβρίαν τοῦ βασιλέως Μανουὴλ ἀγωνίσματα, λαμπρὰ
Calabria of-the emperor Manuel contests brilliant
μὲν καὶ πλεῖστα τῶν χρημάτων ἐκεῖσε μετηγγικότα,
indeed and very-many of-the money there having-drawn-away
εἰς οὐδὲν δὲ τέλος εὔχρηστον Ῥωμαίοις κατηντηκότα ἢ
to no and end useful to-(the)-Romans having-arrived or
εὐσπούδαστον τοῖς ὕστερον αὐτοκράτορσιν. ἀλλὰ τί ἔχοι
worth-striving-for to-the later autocrats but what could
τις εἰπεῖν πρὸς ἄνθρωπον οὕτω προθύμως ἀγωνισάμενον
anyone say to (a)-man so eagerly having-contended

πρὸς τὸ τὰ τῆς βασιλείας εἰς τὸ κρεῖττον ἀποκαταστῆσαι
for the the of-the empire to the better to-restore
πράγματα καὶ τὸ ἀλλόφυλον ὑποτάξαι, μὴ δυνηθέντα
affairs and the foreign(-race) to-subject not having-been-able
δέ; ἀλλ' οὗτος αὖθις κατὰ Παιόνων, οὓς Οὔγγρους καὶ
and but this(-man) again against Paeonians whom Hungarians and
Οὔννους φασί, στρατείαν ἐκήρυξε, καὶ τοῖς κατὰ δυσμὴν
Huns they-call (an)-expedition proclaimed and to-the in (the)-west
ἔχουσι τὰς οἰκήσεις ὁπλίταις ἁμάξας ἐπέταξεν ἄγειν εἰς τὸ
having the dwellings hoplites wagons ordered to-bring to the
στρατόπεδον, δι' ἃς καὶ οὗτοι ἐφοδιάσονται τὰ βιώσιμα,
camp through which also these will-be-supplied-with the livelihood
καὶ τῷ λοιπῷ δὲ οὕτω συναροῦνται στρατεύματι, ὅσοι
and to-the rest too thus will-help-carry army as-many-as
τοιούτων σκευαγωγημάτων σπανίζειν ἤμελλον. ὡς οὖν εἰς ἓν
of-such baggage-trains to-lack were-about as then into one
συνήθροιστο τὰ στρατεύματα, εἶχε καὶ αὐτὸν παρόντα τὸν
had-been-gathered the armies held also himself present the
βασιλέα πόλις ἡ Σαρδική, ἣ νῦν Τριάδιτζα ὀνομάζεται.
emperor (the)-city — Sardike which now Triaditza is-named
καιρὸν δ' οὐχὶ πολὺν ἐκεῖσε προσμείνας, ἐπεὶ ἵκετο
time and not much there having-stayed since came
πρεσβεία ἐκ τῶν Παιόνων καὶ λόγοι συμβατικοί, ἑτέραν
(an)-embassy from the Paeonians and words conciliatory another
τραπόμενος πρὸς τὸν τῶν Σέρβων μεταβαίνει σατράπην·
having-turned(-road) to the of-the Serbs passes satrap
καὶ διαθροήσας τοῦτον ὁδοῦ πάρεργον, καὶ πείσας
and having-dismayed him of-(the)-road (as)-a-by-work and having-persuaded
αὐτὸν μόνον εἰδέναι βασιλέα καὶ δεδιέναι, τῶν δὲ μετὰ
him only to-know (the)-emperor and to-fear from-the and with
τῶν Οὔννων ἀφεστάναι σπονδῶν, πρὸς μὲν τὰ οἰκεῖα
the Huns to-stand-aloof treaties to indeed the own

ἤθη τὸ πολὺ τῆς στρατιᾶς διαφῆκεν, αὐτὸς δὲ τὴν
haunts the greater-part of-the army he-dismissed himself and the
Θετταλῶν καταλαβὼν ἐπαρχίαν, κἀκεῖ προσδιατρίψας ἐφ᾽
of-Thessalians having-reached province and-there having-tarried for
ὅσον αὐτῷ ἐδόκει καίριον, τὴν βασιλίδα εἴσεισιν πόλιν.
as-much-as to-him seemed timely the imperial enters city
Ἡλίου δ᾽ ἄρτι τὰς χειμερινὰς τροπὰς παρελαύνοντος εἰς
of-(the)-sun and just the winter solstices passing to
Πελαγονίαν ἔξεισιν αὖθις, ὁρμητήριον αὐτὴν κρίνων ἱκανὸν
Pelagonia he-goes-out again (as)-base it judging sufficient
ὑποδέξασθαι στρατόπεδον εἰς πεδία ἱππήλατα ὑπτιάζουσαν,
to-receive (an)-army into plains horse-driven lying-open
καὶ πρὸς τὰς πεύσεις εὖ ἔχειν καὶ τὴν τῶν δρωμένων
and for the inquiries well to-be and the of-the(-things) being-done
κατάληψιν ὑπὸ τῶν ἐθνῶν μεθ᾽ ὧν ἀντεπαλαμᾶτο καὶ
grasp by the nations with whom he-wrestled and
διεφέρετο. ἔτι γὰρ τὰ κατὰ Σικελίαν μεθεῖλκον αὐτὸν
quarreled still for the(-things) in Sicily drew-away him
καὶ ὑπέθραττον, μήπω κατασιγασθέντα τέλεον. καὶ ὁ τῶν
and troubled not-yet silenced wholly and the of-the
Οὔννων τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐζωσμένος πρὸς ξιφουλκίαν ἔβλεπεν,
Huns the rule girded-with to sword-drawing looked
ὡς ἔδειξεν ἐξ ὧν ἔδρασεν. ἐπειδὴ γὰρ παρελύθη τῆς
as he-showed from what-things he-did since for was-relieved of-the
δουκικῆς ἀρχῆς Βρανιτζόβης καὶ Βελεγράδων ὁ Κομνηνὸς
ducal office of-Branitzova and of-Belgrade — Komnenos
Ἀνδρόνικος, ὁ καὶ ὕστερον τυραννεύσας Ῥωμαίων,
Andronikos the(-one) also later having-become-tyrant of-(the)-Romans
οἷα κρύβδην κατὰ Ῥωμαίων, ὡς ἤδετο, τοῖς Παίοσι
as secretly against (the)-Romans as was-sung with-the Paeonians
συντιθέμενος καὶ περὶ τοῦ παραλυθῆναι μὲν τὸν Μανουὴλ
covenanting and about the to-be-removed indeed — Manuel

τῆς ἀρχῆς αὐτὸν δ᾽ ἐπιβήτορα ταύτης γενέσθαι τῷ
from-the rule himself and usurper of-it to-become with-the
τούτων κοινολογούμενος ἄρχοντι, καὶ μετάπεμπτον τοῦτον
their conferring ruler and summoned him
εἶχεν εὐθὺς ἡ Πελαγονία, ὁπόσα μὴ εὐθὺν ἐκεῖνον εἰς
had at-once — Pelagonia as-many-as not straight him toward
τὸν ἐξάδελφον καὶ βασιλέα διήλεγχον, κἀκεῖθεν ἡ πόλις
the cousin and emperor proved and-from-there the City
ἀναπεμπόμενον δέσμιον καὶ ἐν μιᾷ τῶν τοῦ μεγάλου
sent-up (a)-prisoner and in one of-the of-the great
παλατίου φρουρῶν καθειργνύμενον τὸν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων
palace prisons shut-up the against (the)-Romans
εὐθὺς ὁ Οὐννάρχης ἐξέφερε πόλεμον, καὶ ἦν πολιορκῶν
at-once the Hun-ruler brought-out war and was besieging
Βρανίτζοβαν καὶ κατατρέχων τὰ ἐκεῖ πάντα, λεηλατῶν
Branitzova and overrunning the(-things) there all plundering
τε καὶ ἄγων ὡς ἥρητο. στέλλεται γοῦν παρὰ
both and carrying-off as he-had-chosen is-sent at-any-rate by
βασιλέως στρατηγὸς κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ ὁ χαρτουλάριος Βασίλειος
(the)-emperor (a)-general against him the chartoularios Basil
ὁ Τζιντζιλούκης. καὶ ὃς τὰς συνειλεγμένας δυνάμεις
the Tzintziloukes and he the gathered forces
παραλαβὼν καὶ εἰς τάξεις καταστήσας καὶ φάλαγγας,
having-taken-over and into ranks having-set and phalanxes
καὶ δόξας ἄξιον νίκης ἔχειν στρατόν, τοῖς Οὔγγροις
and having-thought worthy of-victory to-have (an)-army with-the Hungarians
συμπλέκεται. καὶ πρὸς βραχὺ μὲν κατηγωνίσατο τὸ
engages and for (a)-little indeed overcame the
πολέμιον· ἐπαναστραφὲν δὲ ὡς ἀσυντάκτως ὑπὸ Ῥωμαίων
enemy(-force) having-turned and as disorderly by (the)-Romans
καταδιωκόμενον, ὃ πέπονθεν ἔδρασε γενναιότερον. βασιλεὺς
pursued what it-suffered did more-nobly (the)-emperor

τοίνυν ἐνωτισάμενος ταῦτα τὴν ἐκεῖσε πορείαν ἐπέτεινεν,
therefore having-heard these(-things) the there march extended
εἴ πως οἱ Παίονες πρὸς τὴν αὐτοῦ διαταραχθέντες
if somehow the Paeonians at the his having-been-thrown-into-confusion
ἄφιξιν τῶν ἐκεῖθι χωρῶν ἀπανασταῖεν· ὃ καὶ ἦσαν
arrival from-the there lands might-depart which also they-were
διαπραξάμενοι, συμβιβασθέντες μετὰ τοῦ βασιλέως, ὡς ὁ
having-done having-come-to-terms with the emperor as the
καιρὸς τότε ἔδωκεν. αὐτὸς δὲ ὡς εἶχε τὰ κατὰ
time then gave himself and as he-had(-means) the(-things) in
Βρανίτζοβαν καὶ Βέλγραδα καταστησάμενος πράγματα,
Branitzova and Belgrade having-settled affairs
εἰς τὴν βασιλίδα πόλιν μετασκηνοῖ.
to the imperial city moves-camp
Οὐκοῦν καὶ τῶν δυσμικῶν ἐχθρῶν ἠρεμησάντων ἐπὶ βραχὺ
therefore also the western enemies having-been-quiet for (a)-little
δι' ὁμολογίας καὶ φιλιώσεως, καὶ μηδένα ἔχων τῷ
through agreement and friendship and nobody having with-the
τέως ἀνθέλκοντα ἐξ ἑσπέρας ἀντίμαχον ἀξιόμαχον,
meanwhile pulling-against(-him) from (the)-west opponent fit-to-fight
κυροῖ τὴν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν ἀνάβασιν. ἀπάρας οὖν ἐς Ταρσὸν
he-ratifies the to Armenia ascent having-set-out then to Tarsus
καὶ ἀφιγμένος εἰς Ἄδαναν καὶ ὅσα τῇ κάτω Ἀρμενίᾳ
and having-arrived to Adana and as-many-as to-the Lower Armenia
πρόσχωρα, καὶ ταῦτα κακοδαιμονοῦντα ὑπὸ τοῦ Τορούση
neighboring and these suffering-ill by — Toroses
διαθάλψας καὶ ἀσφαλείας τῆς δεούσης ἠξιωκώς,
having-cherished and of-security the needful having-deemed-worthy
καὶ καταπλήξας τῇ παρουσίᾳ τὸν οὐχ ἁπλοῦν τὴν
and having-astounded by-the presence the not simple in-the
γνώμην ἀλλὰ κρυψίνουν καὶ ὕφαλον Ἀρμένιον, σχάζει
mind but secret-minded and underwater Armenian he-relaxes

τὸ πρόθυμον, οὐδὲ περὶ τῆς ὅλης Ἀρμενίας διαγωνίζεται,
the eagerness nor about the whole Armenia contends
τὸν οἰκεῖον πατέρα ἐζηλωκώς, ἢ γοῦν ὅσα ἐκεῖνος
the own father having-emulated or at-any-rate as-many-as that(-man)
ὑπηγάγετο φρούρια πολεμῶν, ταῦτα ὡς ἐκ φάρυγγος
brought-under forts by-warring these as from (the)-throat
λύκου ποιμὴν λοβὸν ἥπατος προσαπαιτῶν καὶ λαμβάνων
of-(a)-wolf (a)-shepherd (a)-lobe of-liver demanding-back and receiving
ἐκ τοῦ τῶν Ἀρμενίων κατάρχοντος· ἀλλὰ τῇ διπλόῃ
from the of-the Armenians ruler but by-the duplicity
καὶ ἀπάτῃ τῶν λόγων τοῦ Τορούση φενακισθεὶς καὶ
and deceit of-the words — of-Toroses having-been-cheated and
τῇ αἱμυλίᾳ τῶν συνθηκῶν ἁπαλυνθεὶς τὴν διάνοιαν,
by-the wiliness of-the covenants softened in-the mind
τὰ χαλινὰ μεταστρέψας εἰς Ἀντιόχειαν παραγίνεται, τὴν
the reins having-turned to Antioch he-arrives the
τῆς ἁπάσης Συρίας προκαθημένην καλλίπολιν.
over-the all Syria presiding fair-city

II · ANDRONIKOS' ESCAPE

Andronikos is suspected for his freedom of speech, strength, and noble blood, and for his affair with his cousin's daughter Eudokia, whose kinsmen try to kill him in her tent at Pelagonia; he cuts his way out with his sword. In prison he finds an old passage under the floor and hides there, so that his guards think he has fled; his wife is imprisoned in his cell, and he comes out to her and fathers a son. He then escapes but is caught at Melangeia and imprisoned more strictly.

Ὄντι δὲ κατὰ Ταρσὸν τῷ βασιλεῖ Μανουὴλ ἡ τοῦ
being and at Tarsus to-the emperor Manuel the of-the
ἐξαδέλφου Ἀνδρονίκου ἐκ τῆς φυλακῆς φυγὴ καταγγέλλεται,
cousin Andronikos from the prison escape is-announced

ἧς τὸ αἴτιον καὶ ὅσα μὲν ἐρρέθη ἄνωθεν, οὐδὲν δὲ
of-which the cause also as-many-as indeed were-said above nothing and
ἧττον τὸ ἐλευθεροστομεῖν ἀεὶ καὶ τὸ τῇ ῥώμῃ τῶν
less the to-speak-freely always and the in-the strength than-the
πολλῶν διαφέρειν καὶ ἡ εὖ ἔχουσα πλάσις τοῦ σώματος
many to-differ and the well being shaping of-the body
ἀξία οὖσα τυραννεῖν καὶ τὸ τοῦ φρονήματος ἀταπείνωτον,
worthy being to-play-the-tyrant and the of-the spirit unhumbled
ἃ δὴ πάντα πεφύκασιν οἱ κρατοῦντες ὑποβλέπειν
which indeed all are-wont the(-men) ruling to-eye-askance
καὶ κνίζον ἔχειν καὶ ἕως καρδίας αὐτῆς βάλλοντα διὰ
and stinging to-have and to (the)-heart itself striking because-of
τὸ περὶ τὴν βασιλείαν περιδεές. διὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν,
the about the empire fearfulness because-of these(-things) therefore
ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὸ ἐν μάχαις ἐνδέξιον καὶ τὸ τοῦ γένους
but indeed also the in battles dexterity and the of-the family
ἐπίσημον (ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ αὐτοῦ πατρὸς Ἀλεξίου τοῦ τῷ
distinction from for the same father Alexios the —
Μανουὴλ προπάτορος ὅ τε τούτου πατὴρ ὁ βασιλεὺς
to-Manuel grandfather the both his father the emperor
Ἰωάννης καὶ ὁ τοῦ Ἀνδρονίκου γενέτης ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ
John and the — of-Andronikos father the sebastokrator
προῆλθοσαν Ἰσαάκιος) ὀφθαλμοβολούμενος ἦν καὶ ὕποπτος
came-forth Isaac eyed was and suspect
μάλιστα. συνέβη δέ τι καὶ ἕτερον δι' ὃ τοῦτον
especially it-happened and something also other because-of which him
ἐν φρουρᾷ συνεῖχεν ὁ Μανουήλ, τῷ βασιλεῖ τούτῳ τρεῖς
in prison held — Manuel to-the emperor this three
ἦσαν ὁμαίμονες, Ἀλέξιος Ἀνδρόνικος καὶ ὁ πολλάκις
were brothers Alexios Andronikos and the often
ῥηθεὶς Ἰσαάκιος. τούτων, οἱ μὲν δύο τὸ ζῆν μετήλλαξαν
mentioned Isaac of-these the indeed two the life exchanged

ἔτι τοῖς ζῶσι κατειλεγμένου τοῦ πατρὸς αὐτοῖς καὶ
still among-the living counted the father their and
βασιλέως Ἰωάννου τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ, ἐσάλευε δὲ τὰς τοῦ
emperor John the Komnenos anchored and the of-the
γένους διαδοχὰς ὁ μὲν Ἀλέξιος ἐπὶ μιᾷ θυγατρί, ἣν καὶ
family successions — indeed Alexios on one daughter whom also
εἰς γαμετὴν γυναῖκα ἡρμόσατο ὁ τοῦ μεγάλου δομεστίκου
as wedded wife took the of-the grand domestic
Ἰωάννου υἱὸς Ἀλέξιος, ὧν πέρι καὶ εἰπόντες ἔφθημεν· τῷ
John son Alexios whom about also saying we-anticipated —
δ' Ἀνδρονίκῳ θυγατέρες ἐγεγόνεισαν τρεῖς, Μαρία Θεοδώρα
and to-Andronikos daughters had-been three Maria Theodora
καὶ Εὐδοκία, καὶ υἱοὶ δύο, Ἰωάννης τε καὶ Ἀλέξιος. τῶν
and Eudokia and sons two John both and Alexios of-the
θηλειῶν τοίνυν ἡ Εὐδοκία τὸν ἐκ παρθενίας ὁμευνέτην
females therefore — Eudokia the from maidenhood bedfellow
ἀποβαλοῦσα θανάτῳ ἀνοσίως Ἀνδρονίκῳ συνήρχετο, οὐ
having-lost by-death unholily with-Andronikos came-together not
κρύβδην ἀλλ' ἀνέδην. καὶ τοῖς ἐπιτιμῶσιν Ἀνδρονίκῳ
secretly but openly and to-the(-ones) rebuking Andronikos
διὰ τὸ τῆς συνουσίας ἀθέμιτον ἡ ἀφ' ἑστίας μίμησις
for the of-the intercourse unlawfulness the from (the)-hearth imitation
πρόχειρος εἰς ἀπόλογον ἦν, καὶ χαριεντιζόμενος ἀνθυπέφερεν
ready for defense was and jesting he-retorted
ὡς φιλεῖ τὸ ἀρχόμενον ἐξομοιοῦσθαι τῷ ἄρχοντι καὶ
that loves the ruled(-subject) to-be-made-like to-the ruler and
τὰ τῆς αὐτῆς ὁμοστοιχεῖ καὶ συνᾴδει πως κεραμείας,
the(-pots) of-the same keep-in-line and harmonize somehow pottery
εἰς τὸν ἐξάδελφον ἀποσκώπτων ταῦτα καὶ βασιλέα
at the cousin jeering these(-things) and emperor
τὸν Μανουὴλ ὡς ὁμοιοπαθέσιν ὑποκύπτοντα πάθεσιν ἢ
— Manuel as to-like stooping passions or

γοῦν καὶ χείροσιν ἁλισκόμενον, εἴπερ ὁ μὲν ἀδελφοῦ
at-any-rate also by-worse being-caught if-indeed he indeed with-(a)-brother's
θυγατρὶ συνουσίαζεν, ὁ δ' Ἀνδρόνικος ἐξαδέλφου παιδὶ
daughter consorted — and Andronikos with-(a)-cousin's child
συγκατέκειτο. τὸ γοῦν τοιοῦτον οὔτε τῷ Μανουὴλ
lay-with the at-any-rate such neither — to-Manuel
ἤνδανε καὶ τοὺς ἐκ γένους τῆς γυναικὸς μαίνεσθαι
was-pleasing and the(-ones) from family of-the woman to-rage
ἐποίει κατ' Ἀνδρονίκου καὶ διαπρίεσθαι ἀτεχνῶς, ἐκ τοῦ
made against Andronikos and to-be-sawn-through simply from the
πλείονος δὲ τὸν τῆς Εὐδοκίας ὁμαίμονα Ἰωάννην, ὃς
more and the — of-Eudokia brother John who
τῇ τοῦ πρωτοσεβαστοῦ καὶ πρωτοβεστιαρίου ἐκυδροῦτο
with-the of-the protosebastos and protovestiarios gloried
τιμῇ, καὶ τὸν ἐπ' ἀδελφῇ τῇ Μαρίᾳ ὡσαύτως γαμβρὸν
honor and the by sister — Maria likewise brother-in-law
τὸν Καντακουζηνὸν Ἰωάννην. πολλαὶ μὲν οὖν, ὡς εἰκός,
— Kantakouzenos John many indeed then as (was)-likely
ἐπιβουλαὶ κατὰ τοῦ Ἀνδρονίκου αἱ μὲν ἐνδόμυχοι
plots against — Andronikos the(-ones) indeed hidden
ἦσαν καὶ σκότιοι τυρευόμεναι, αἱ δὲ καὶ προδήλως
were and darkly contrived the(-ones) and also openly
τολυπευόμεναι· ἀλλὰ διέλυε ταύτας ὡς ἱστὸν ἀράχνης
wound-up but dissolved them as (a)-web of-spider
Ἀνδρόνικος, καὶ ὡς παιδίων ἐπὶ ψάμμου ἀθύρματα
Andronikos and as of-children on sand toys
διεσκέδαζεν, ἀνδρείᾳ τε τῇ σφετέρᾳ πίσυνος ὢν καὶ κατὰ
scattered in-courage both the his-own trusting being and in
σύνεσιν τῶν ἐναντίων ὑπερφέρων πολὺ καὶ ὅσον αἱ
intelligence the opponents surpassing much also as-much-as the
ἄλογοι φύσεις τῶν λογικῶν ἥττηνται, ὥστε καὶ συμβὰν
irrational natures by-the rational are-defeated so-that also it-having-happened

οὕτω πολλάκις προσπλακεὶς ἐτρέψατο τούτους, τὰ φίλτρα
thus often having-grappled he-routed them the love-charms
τῆς Εὐδοκίας γέρας ἀρνύμενος. ἦν δ' ὅτε καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν
— of-Eudokia (as)-prize winning was and when also himself indeed
ἐπὶ σκηνῆς τῇ γυναικὶ κατὰ Πελαγονίαν συνεπλέκετο,
in (a)-tent with-the woman at Pelagonia was-entwined
οἱ δὲ καθ' αἷμα τῇ Εὐδοκίᾳ προσήκοντες, περιστάντες
they and by blood — to-Eudokia related having-surrounded
τὴν σκηνὴν ὡς τοῦτο ἔγνωσαν, μετὰ συχνῶν ὁπλοφόρων
the tent as this they-knew with many armed-men
ἐτήρουν τὴν ἔξοδον ὡς αὐτίκα μάλα τοῦτον διαχειρισόμενοι.
watched the exit as at-once very him going-to-kill
ἀλλ' οὐκ ἔλαθε ταῦτα τὴν Εὐδοκίαν καίπερ ἐφ' ἑτέροις
but not escaped these(-things) — Eudokia although on other(-things)
τὸν νοῦν ἔχουσαν, εἴτε διαγγελθέντα παρά του τῶν ἐκ
the mind having whether announced by some of-the(-ones) from
τοῦ γένους ἐκείνῃ, εἴθ' ἑτέρως τὸν κατὰ τοῦ φθορέως αὐτῆς
the family to-her or otherwise the against the seducer her
λόχον γνωρίσασα· ἦν γὰρ κἀκείνῃ δραστήριον τὸ φρονεῖν,
ambush having-recognized was for also-in-her energetic the thinking
οὐμενοῦν κατὰ γυναῖκας πλουτούσῃ τὴν σύνεσιν. διασαφεῖ
not-indeed as women being-rich-in the intelligence she-makes-clear
τοίνυν τῷ Ἀνδρονίκῳ συγκατακειμένῳ τὴν ἐπιβουλήν. ὁ
therefore — to-Andronikos lying-with(-her) the plot he
δὲ διαθροηθεὶς ἐπὶ τῷδε τῷ ῥήματι ἐξανέθορέ τε αὐτίκα
and alarmed at this the word leapt-up both at-once
τῆς κλίνης, καὶ τὴν ἐπιμήκη διαζωσάμενος μάχαιραν
from-the bed and the long having-girded-on sword
διεσκοπεῖτο τὸ ποιητέον. ἡ μὲν οὖν ὑπετίθει τῷ ἐρωμένῳ
considered the to-be-done she indeed then suggested to-the beloved
γυναικείαν ὑποδῦναι στολήν, κἀν τῷ ἐπιτάξαι αὐτήν τινι
(a)-woman's to-put-on garment and-in the to-order her some

τῶν προκοίτων καὶ κατευναστριῶν γυναικῶν λαμπτῆρα
of-the bed-chamber and bedmaking women (a)-lamp
εἰσενεγκεῖν τῇ σκηνῇ, πρὸς ὄνομα καλέσασαν, καὶ οὕτως
to-bring-in to-the tent by name having-called and thus
εἰς ἐξάκουστον ὡς τοῖς ἐλλοχῶσι τὴν ταύτης ἐνηχηθῆναι
to audible so-that to-the ambushers the her to-resound
φωνήν, εὐθέως ἐξελθεῖν καὶ λαθεῖν. τῷ δὲ οὐκ ἤρεσκεν
voice at-once to-go-out and to-escape-notice to-him but not pleased
ἡ παραίφασις, ἐκτρεπομένῳ μὲν καὶ τὸ ἁλῶναι κἀπὶ
the advice shunning indeed also the to-be-caught and-to
τὸν βασιλέα ἐπισπώμενον τῆς κόμης ἄγεσθαι ἀγεννῶς,
the emperor dragged by-the hair to-be-led ignobly
καὶ θάνατον δὲ οὐχ ἧττον ὑφορωμένῳ τὸν γυναικώδη καὶ
and death too no less suspecting the womanish and
ἀκλεᾶ. οὐκοῦν τὸ ξίφος γυμνώσας καὶ δοὺς τοῦτο τῇ
inglorious therefore the sword having-bared and having-given it to-the
δεξιᾷ ἀφάλλεται, τὴν σκηνὴν ἐγκαρσίως διατεμών,
right(-hand) leaps-off the tent crosswise having-cut-through
καὶ ἐν ἑνὶ πηδήματι Θετταλῷ ἄντικρυς ὑπερβαίνει τόν τε
and in one leap Thessalian outright he-leaps-over the both
ξυγκείμενον τῇ σκηνῇ τυχὸν οὕτω θριγγόν, καὶ ὅσον
built-with the tent perhaps thus (a)-fence and as-much-as
ἐπεῖχον οἱ πάσσαλοι καὶ οἱ σχοῖνοι χῶρον, ὡς ἀχανεῖς
held the pegs and the ropes space so-that agape
γενέσθαι τοὺς ἐνεδρεύοντας καὶ τὸ διαδρᾶναι σφᾶς τὸ
to-become the ambushers and the to-have-escaped them the
θήραμα θαῦμα καὶ θέαμα ἡγεῖσθαι καινόν. ταῦτα μὲν
prey (a)-wonder and (a)-sight to-consider new these(-things) indeed
οὖν ἀκουόμενα τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ὑπέθραττε Μανουήλ, καὶ
then heard the autocrat troubled Manuel and
αἱ διαβολαὶ δὲ ὅσα καὶ ῥανίδες ἐνδελεχεῖς ἐκοίλαινον ἐς
the slanders too just-as also drops continual hollowed for

ὑποδοχὴν τῶν κατὰ τοῦ ἐνδιαβαλλομένου ἐπιχεομένων
reception of-the(-things) against the slandered poured-on
τὴν τοῦ ἐνηχουμένου ψυχήν, καὶ ἀπῆγον κατὰ βραχὺ
the of-the(-one) being-dinned soul and led-away by little
οὗ εἶχεν οὗτος εἰς τὸν ἄνδρα ζωπύρου φιλίας, καὶ
from-what had he toward the man spark of-friendship and
ὡς ἀληθῆ ἐνῆγον τὰ λεγόμενα παραδέχεσθαι· μηδὲ
as true induced the(-things) said to-accept not
γὰρ πάμπαν τὴν φήμην ἀπόλλυσθαι, μηδὲ εἰκῇ λύουσαν
for at-all the report to-perish nor at-random loosing
τὸ πτίλον ἀμφιπεριτροχάζειν αὐθάδη καὶ βασιλειῶντα
the feather to-run-around self-willed and desiring-to-reign
τὸν Ἀνδρόνικον. ὡς ἄρα οὐδέν τι διαβόλου γλώττης
— Andronikos so then nothing at-all than-(a)-slanderous tongue
χείριστον ἐνέφυ τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἕτερον κακόν. εἰκότως
worst grew-in in-the men other evil fittingly
οὖν καὶ Δαβὶδ ὁ φιλῳδὸς καὶ φιλόψαλμος ἐν πλείστοις
then also David the song-loving and psalm-loving in very-many
τῶν αὐτοῦ θεοπλόκων καὶ ἡδυφραδῶν εἰδυλλίων διασύρει
of-the his God-woven and sweet-speaking idylls mocks
ταύτην καὶ κωμῳδεῖ, στηλογραφῶν ἀτεχνῶς τὴν ἐξ
it and satirizes inscribing simply the from
ἐρήμου ταύτης ἰσχύν, καὶ ῥυσθῆναι τῶν ἑλίκων αὐτῆς
(the)-desert its strength and to-be-rescued from-the coils its
ἐπευχόμενος. τῷ τοι καὶ ὁ Μανουὴλ ὡς ἄρκυσι ληφθεὶς
praying for surely also — Manuel as in-nets caught
οἷς ἦσαν τοῦ Ἀνδρονίκου πολλάκις οἱ πρὸς γένους
which were — of-Andronikos often the(-ones) by family
αὐτῷ κατεπᾴδοντες, ἑκὼν ἀέκοντί γε θυμῷ τίθησιν
to-him singing-charms willing with-unwilling at-least spirit puts
αὐτὸν ἐν φρουρᾷ, καὶ ποδοκάκαις σιδηραῖς ἀσφαλίζεται
him in prison and with-stocks iron secures

ἀρρήκτοις ὡς ἐνῆν καὶ ἀλύτοις. ἔμενεν οὖν ἐφ' ἱκανὸν
unbreakable as was-possible and unloosable he-remained then for sufficient
χρόνον τῇ φυλακῇ κακουχούμενος. θερμουργὸς δὲ ὢν καὶ
time in-the prison ill-treated hot-headed and being and
ἀνθρώπων πολυτροπώτατος κἀν τοῖς ἀπόροις ποριστικὸς
of-men most-versatile and-in the hopeless(-straits) resourceful
καὶ εὐμέθοδος, παλαίτατον κατανοήσας ὑπόνομον καθ'
and methodical very-old having-noticed (a)-tunnel under
ὃν εἴργνυτο οἰκίσκον (πύργος δὲ οὗτος ἦν ἐκ πλίνθου
which he-was-shut-up chamber (a)-tower and this was of brick
ἅπας ὀπτῆς) ὕπεισι τοῦτον, ταῖς χερσὶ πρότερον
all baked he-goes-under it with-the hands first
ὡς ἀμάλαις ἢ σκαλίσι διαμησάμενος τὰ πρὸς τὴν
as with-mattocks or hoes having-cleared the(-things) at the
εἴσοδον καὶ τὴν ἔξοδον, ὡς εἶεν ἀνύποπτα, καί
entrance and the exit so-that they-might-be unsuspected and
τι προεκπετάσας ἔπιπλον. ἐνστάσης τοίνυν ὥρας
something having-spread-before furnishing having-come therefore (the)-hour
ἀρίστου αἱ θύραι τοῦ δεσμωτηρίου παρὰ τῶν φρουρῶν
of-breakfast the doors of-the prison by the guards
ἀνεῴγεσαν καὶ τὸ δεῖπνον εὐτρεπὲς παρεισήγετο, οὐδαμοῦ
were-opened and the dinner ready was-brought-in nowhere
δὲ φαινόμενος ἦν ὁ δαιτυμών. περιεβλέπετο γοῦν τοῖς
and appearing was the diner was-looked-around at-any-rate by-the
φύλαξιν ἡ φρουρά, μή πού τι ταύτης ἀποθραύσας
guards the prison lest somewhere something of-it having-broken-off
ἢ διατορήσας ὁ πολύμητις Ἀνδρόνικος οἴχοιτο. ὡς δ'
or having-bored-through the much-scheming Andronikos had-gone as and
οὐδὲν ὅλως ἦν οὐδαμῶς λυμανθέν, οὐ θαιρός, οὐ φλιά, οὔτε
nothing at-all was in-any-way damaged not hinge not lintel nor
μὴν οὐδὸς τῶν πυλῶν, οὐκ ὄροφος, οὐκ ὀπισθόδομος, οὐδ'
indeed threshold of-the gates not roof not back-chamber nor

ἡ σιδηρόδετος ἀναφωτίς, οὐκ ἄλλο τι τῶν ἁπάντων
the iron-bound skylight not other anything of-the all
οὐθέν, ἀνώμωζον διωλύγιον, τὴν ὄψιν ὄνυξιν ἔδρυπτον,
whatever they-wailed loudly the face with-nails tore
ὡς ὃν ἐφρούρουν οὐκ ἔχοντες, μηδὲ τὸν τρόπον ἢ
as whom they-guarded not having nor the manner or
τὸν τόπον κατανοοῦντες καθ' ὅν ἐστιν ἀποδράς. δῆλα
the place perceiving by which he-is having-escaped plain
ταῦτα ποιοῦσι τῇ βασιλίσσῃ καὶ τοῖς ἐν τέλει καὶ
these(-things) they-make to-the empress and to-the(-ones) in office and
ὅσοι τὴν βασιλικὴν ἀμφεπονοῦντο αὐλήν. οὐκοῦν ὁ μὲν
as-many-as the imperial attended court therefore one indeed
ὡς φυλάξων τὰς αἰγιαλίτιδας πύλας ἐστέλλετο, τῷ
as going-to-guard the seashore gates was-sent to-another
δὲ ἡ τῶν χερσαίων ἐπετέτραπτο φυλακή, ἄλλος τοὺς
and the of-the land(-gates) was-entrusted guard another the
λιμένας διηρευνᾶτο, ἕτερος ἄλλο τι τῆς πόλεως μέρος
harbors searched another other some of-the city part
ἀπολαβὼν ἄνετον ἐζήτει τὸν δραπέτην Ἀνδρόνικον. οὐδὲ
having-taken unrestrained sought the runaway Andronikos nor
αἱ ἄμφοδοι ἦσαν ἀδιασκόπητοι, οὐδ' ἀφύλακτοι αἱ τρίοδοι.
the streets were unsurveyed nor unguarded the crossroads
συχνὰ δὲ καὶ κατὰ πᾶσαν χώραν τὰ βασίλεια διίπτατο
often and also through every land the imperial flew
γράμματα, ἄφαντον ἀπαγγέλλοντα τὸν Ἀνδρόνικον καὶ
letters vanished announcing — Andronikos and
σχολὴν ἐπίμονον ἐπιτάττοντα, ὅπως ἁλοὺς ἐπαναπεμφθῇ.
diligence persistent ordering so-that caught he-be-sent-back
ἐπὶ δὴ τούτοις καὶ ἡ τούτου συλληφθεῖσα γυνὴ ὡς
on indeed these(-things) also the his seized wife as
τῆς φυγῆς συνίστωρ τῷ δεσμωτηρίῳ παραρριπτεῖται ἐν
of-the flight accomplice into-the prison is-thrown in

ᾧπερ καθεῖρκτο Ἀνδρόνικος, ὡς ἐκεῖσε τίνῃ δίκας
which had-been-shut-up Andronikos as there she-might-pay penalties
τῆς φιλανδρίας ἔνθα ὁ ταύτης συνείληπτο σύζυγος,
for-the husband-love where the her had-been-seized spouse
ᾧ ὑπέθετο τὴν δραπέτευσιν. ἐλάνθανον δὲ ἄρα
to-whom she-suggested the escape they-were-unaware and then
καὶ Ἀνδρόνικον πεδήτην ὡς πρότερον ἔχοντες καὶ
also Andronikos fettered as before having and
μάτην εἰς γυναῖκα ταλαίπωρον τὸν χόλον ἐκχέοντες καὶ
in-vain on (a)-woman wretched the wrath pouring-out and
τὰ πρὸς χάριν Ἀνδρονίκῳ ποιοῦντες· ἐξαναδὺς γὰρ
the(-things) for pleasure for-Andronikos doing having-come-up for
οὗτος τοῦ θόλου καὶ τὸν ὑπόνομον ἐκλελοιπὼς τῇ
this(-man) from-the vault and the tunnel having-left with-the
γυναικὶ ἐντυγχάνει, δόξας ὅσα καὶ δαίμων τὰ πρῶτα
woman meets having-seemed just-as also (a)-demon the first
ὑποταρτάριος ἢ νεκύων ἀμενηνὸν ἴνδαλμα, καὶ διαταράξας
from-under-Tartarus or of-the-dead (a)-feeble phantom and having-troubled
τῷ ἀέλπτῳ τῆς θέας τὴν ἄνθρωπον. καὶ προσπλακεὶς
by-the unexpectedness of-the sight the woman and having-embraced(-her)
ἐδάκρυσε μέν, πλὴν οὐχ ὅσον ἤθελον αἱ συμφοραὶ καὶ
wept indeed however not as-much-as wished the misfortunes and
τὰ τότε δυστυχῆ συναντήματα, φειδοῖ τοῦ μὴ τὸν θρῆνον
the then unhappy encounters from-sparing the not the lament
ἀναβῆναι εἰς ὦτα τοῖς δεσμοφύλαξι. καὶ δὴ ἐφ' ἱκανὸν
to-rise into ears to-the jailers and indeed for sufficient(-time)
συγγεγονὼς τῇ εὐνέτιδι κατὰ τὴν φρουράν, καὶ ἐγκύμονα
having-been-with the bedfellow in the prison and pregnant
ταύτην ἐκ τῆς τότε συνουσίας ἀπεργασάμενος, ἐξ ἧς
her from the then intercourse having-made from which
καὶ παιδὸς ἄρρενος ἀκούσοι πατήρ, τὸν Ἰωάννην
also of-(a)-son male he-would-be-called father — John

λέγω, ᾧ καὶ βασιλείας Ἀνδρόνικος μετέδωκεν ἔπειτα,
I-mean to-whom also of-empire Andronikos gave-a-share later
ὡς ὁ λόγος εἴπῃ κατὰ καιρόν, ἐκεῖθεν ἀναχωρεῖ, οἷα τῶν
as the narrative will-say in time thence he-withdraws as the
φυλάκων μηκέτι κἀπὶ τῇ γυναικὶ οἵαν καὶ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ τῆς
guards no-longer also-over the woman such-as also over him of-the
φρουρᾶς παρεχομένων ἀκρίβειαν. γενόμενος δὲ κατὰ τὰ
guard providing exactness having-come and at the
Μελάγγεια συλλαμβάνεται παρά του στρατιώτου, ὅτῳ
Melangeia is-seized by (a)-certain soldier for-whom
ἦν Νικαίας ἐπίκλησις· καὶ εἶχε πάλιν αὐτὸν κουστωδία
was of-Nicaea (the)-surname and held again him (a)-guard
μείζων καὶ χείρων τῆς προτέρας φρουρὰ καὶ ποδοπέδαι
greater and worse than-the former prison and fetters
σιδηραῖ διπλαῖ. ταῦτα οὖν ὡς ἠγγέλθη τῷ Μανουὴλ
iron double these(-things) then as were-announced — to-Manuel
κατ᾽ Ἀρμενίαν ἔτι στρατοπεδεύοντι, στέλλεται ὁ λογοθέτης
in Armenia still encamped is-sent the logothete
τοῦ δρόμου Ἰωάννης ὁ Καματηρός, καὶ τὴν τοῦ ἄνακτος
of-the course John the Kamateros and the of-the lord
μὲν ὅσον οὐδέπω παρουσίαν εὐαγγελισόμενος, καὶ τὰ
indeed as-much-as not-yet presence going-to-announce and the
συμβάντα δὲ κρειττόνως διασκεψόμενος καὶ παραδηλώσων
events too better going-to-examine and going-to-indicate
βασιλεῖ σαφέστερον.
to-(the)-emperor more-clearly

Antioch receives Manuel unwillingly but in splendor. He holds a joust with the Latins and himself unhorses two knights in one charge, and the Latins admire him. On the way home he dismisses his army too soon, and the Turks fall on the stragglers; Manuel returns and drives them off, grieving over the dead.

Οἱ δ' Ἀντιοχεῖς τὴν ἄφιξιν τοῦ βασιλέως τὰ πρῶτα μὲν
the and Antiochenes the arrival of-the emperor the first indeed
ἀγαπητῶς οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλὰ καὶ λίαν βαρέως ἔφερον καὶ
gladly not received but also very heavily bore(-it) and
ὅπως ἐσκέπτοντο ἀποπέμψαιντο· ὡς δὲ κωλύειν οὐκ
how considered they-might-send-(him)-away as and to-prevent not
ἦν οὐδ' ἀναλύειν ὅλως τὰ δεδογμένα ἐκείνῳ, οὐ
was(-possible) nor to-undo at-all the(-things) decided by-him not
μόνον τῶν πυλῶν διεκχυθέντες μετὰ δουλικοῦ σχήματος
only from-the gates having-poured-out with servile bearing
καὶ φρονήματος ὑπηντίαζον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὴν εἴσοδον αὐτῷ
and spirit came-to-meet but also the entry for-him
ἐς τὸ πομπικώτερον διεσκεύασαν, τάς τε ἀγυιὰς καὶ
to the more-processional prepared the both streets and
ἀμφόδους ἐπίπλοις καὶ τάπησι διεκόσμουν, καὶ δένδρων
lanes with-hangings and carpets adorned and of-trees
νεοδρέπτοις κλωσὶ κατηγλάϊζον, τὰς τῶν λειμώνων καὶ
with-fresh-plucked shoots made-splendid the of-the meadows and
ἀνθέων χάριτας ἐς τὸ ἄστυ μέσον διακηπεύοντες, καὶ
flowers graces into the city middle planting and
φιλότιμον αὐτῷ τὴν πρόοδον σχεδιάζοντες, οὐχ ὁ μὲν ὁ
ambitious for-him the procession improvising not the one the
δ' οὔ, ἀλλ' οἰκήτωρ ἅπας ἁπαξαπλῶς, ὡς παρεῖναι καὶ
other not but inhabitant every simply so-that to-be-present both

Σύρον ὀψοφάγον καὶ ληστὴν Ἰσαυρὸν καὶ πειρατὴν Κίλικα
Syrian fish-eater and (the)-robber Isaurian and (the)-pirate Cilician
καὶ ἱππότην κοντοφόρον Ἰταλιώτην ὁμοῦ, καὶ ἵππον
and (the)-knight lance-bearing Italian together and (the)-horse
ὑψαύχενα καὶ ὑπέραυχον φρόνημα παρωσάμενον καὶ βάδην
high-necked and (the)-overweening spirit having-thrust-aside and at-a-walk
παριόντα τὸν θρίαμβον. ὁρῶν δὲ καὶ τὸ ἐκ τῶν Λατίνων
passing the triumph seeing and also the from the Latins
ἐκεῖσε στρατιωτικὸν μέγα τῷ δόρατι ἐγκαυχώμενον καὶ
there military great in-the spear boasting and
τῷ τούτου ἐνδεξίῳ φυσῶν ἀγωνίσματι, παιδιᾶς ἡμέραν
in-the its dexterous puffing-up feat of-sport (a)-day
συνθηματίζεται δι' ἀσιδήρων δορατισμῶν. ὡς οὖν ἡ
he-appoints through ironless spear-fights when then the
προθεσμία ἐνειστήκει, ἀριστίνδην τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἐξάγει
appointed-day had-come by-merit of-the Roman he-leads-out
καταλόγων τοὺς περὶ τὸ κραδαίνειν δόρατα εὐφυεῖς καὶ
rolls the about the to-brandish spears gifted and
ὅσοι πρὸς αὐτὸν τὸ γένος ἀνέφερον. ἔξεισι δὲ καὶ
as-many-as to him the race referred goes-out and also
αὐτὸς ὑποσεσηρὼς βραχὺ καὶ πρὸς τὸ σύνηθες μεδίαμα
himself grinning slightly and to the customary smile
ὑγραινόμενος, ἐς πεδίον ὑπτιάζον καὶ ἱκανὸν ἀντιτάξαι
being-softened into (a)-plain lying-open and sufficient to-array
δισχιδεῖς ἱππότιδας φάλαγγας, τὸ δόρυ μετεωρίζων,
split cavalry phalanxes the spear lifting
χλαμύδα ἠσθημένος ἀστειοτέραν περὶ τὸν δεξιὸν ὦμον
(a)-cloak having-put-on more-elegant about the right shoulder
περονουμένην καὶ ἀφιεῖσαν ἐλευθέραν τὴν χεῖρα κατὰ τὸ
pinned and leaving free the hand at the
πόρπημα. ὤχει δὲ αὐτὸν ἵππος πολεμιστήριος καλλίθριξ
brooch carried and him (a)-horse for-war fair-maned

καὶ χρυσοφάλαρος, ὃς ἠρέμα ὑπογυρῶν τὸν αὐχένα
and gold-trapped which gently curving the neck
καὶ ὑποσκαίρων τὼ πόδε, ὡς δρόμων ἐρωτιῶν, οἷον
and skipping-with the two-feet as for-races longing as-it-were
ἀνθημιλλᾶτο τῇ τοῦ ἀναβάτου λαμπρότητι. καὶ ἑκάστῳ
vied with-the of-the rider splendor and to-each
δὲ τῶν συγγενῶν, καὶ ὅσοι διαγωνίζεσθαι ἄλλοι τοῖς
too of-the kinsmen and as-many-as to-contend others with-the
Ἰταλοῖς ἐπεκρίθησαν, λαμπροφορεῖν ἐπέταξεν ὡς ἐνῆν.
Italians were-chosen to-wear-splendor he-ordered as was-possible
ἐξῆλθε δὲ καὶ ὁ πρίγκιψ Γεράρδος λευκοτέρῳ χιόνος
came-out and also the prince Gerard on-(a)-whiter than-snow
ἔποχος ἵππῳ, ἀμπισχόμενος χιτῶνα διάσχιστον ποδηνεκῆ,
mounted horse wearing (a)-tunic split foot-length
καὶ πῖλον ἔχων ἐπὶ κεφαλῆς κατὰ τιάραν ἐπικλινῆ, χρυσῷ
and (a)-felt-cap having on head like (a)-tiara slanting with-gold
κατάπαστον. συνεξίασι δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽ αὐτὸν ἱππόται,
sprinkled go-out-with and also the around him knights
πάντες ἀρεϊκοὶ τὴν ἰσχύν, εὐμήκεις τὰ σώματα. ὡς δ᾽
all Ares-like in-the strength tall in-the bodies as and
ἔφριξεν ἐγχείῃσιν ἡ μάχη ἄγευστος αἵματος, συνεπλέκοντο
bristled with-spears the battle untasting of-blood they-grappled
ἐκθύμως ἐξ ἀμφοῖν ἱκανοὶ ἀλλήλους διαδορατίζοντες καὶ
furiously from both sufficient one-another spearing and
τοὺς κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἀκοντισμοὺς ὑπεκκλίνοντες, ὅτε καὶ
the against them casts avoiding when also
ἦν ἰδεῖν κατὰ τὸν ἄχαλκον ἐκεῖνον ἄρεα πῇ
was(-possible) to-see in the bronzeless that battle in-one-place
μὲν κύμβαχον ἐπὶ βρεχμόν τε καὶ ὤμους ἀνατρεπόμενον,
indeed headlong on forehead both and shoulders overturned
ἄλλοσε ἱππείας ἀστράβης ἐκσφαιριζόμενον, ἄλλον
elsewhere from-(the)-horse's saddle knocked-off another

πρηνῆ, ἐξυπτιάζοντα ἕτερον, ἄλλον μεταβαλόντα τὰ νῶτα
prone thrown-on-back another another having-turned the backs
καὶ προτροπάδην φεύγοντα. ὁ μὲν ἐχλώριζεν ὑπὸ δέους,
and headlong fleeing one indeed grew-pale from fear
τὸν ἀκοντίζοντα δεδιώς, καὶ τῷ σάκει πᾶς ἐνεθάπτετο·
the spearman fearing and in-the shield wholly was-buried
ὁ δὲ ἀνθηρὸς ἦν, τὸν ἀνταγωνιστὴν κατεπτηχότα ὁρῶν.
the other blooming was the opponent cowering seeing
τὸ δὲ τοῦ ἀέρος ῥόθιον τῇ ὁρμῇ τῶν ἵππων τεμνόμενον
the and of-the air rush by-the onset of-the horses cut
ἠνέμου τὰς σημαίας καὶ λιγυρὸν ὑπεσύριττεν. εἶπεν ἄν
fluttered the banners and sbrill whistled would-have-said —
τις οὐκ ἀκόμψως, πρὸς τὴν τηνικαῦτα διάχυσιν ἀπιδών,
anyone not unwittily at the then merriment having-looked
Ἀφροδίτην Ἄρεϊ συνελθεῖν, τῇ δ' Ἐνυοῖ συμπλέκεσθαι
Aphrodite with-Ares to-have-come-together — and with-Enyo to-be-entwined
Χάριτας· οὕτω τὰ τότε παίγνια μῖγμα ποικιλοῦ καλοῦ
(the)-Graces thus the then games (a)-mixture of-varied beauty
ἐτύγχανεν ὄντα. ἐποίει δ' ἁμιλλᾶσθαι καὶ παραλογώτερον
happened being made and to-vie also more-incredibly
Ῥωμαίους μὲν τὸ ὑπερφέρειν βούλεσθαι τῶν Λατίνων
(the)-Romans indeed the to-excel to-wish the Latins
καὶ κατὰ τὴν τῶν δοράτων ἀγκοίνησιν, καὶ βασιλέως
also in the of-the spears bending and of-(the)-emperor
αὐτοῦ ὀφθαλμοὶ ἀγωνοθέται τῶν δρωμένων γινόμενοι,
himself (the)-eyes judges of-the(-things) done becoming
Ἰταλοὺς δὲ ὁ ἀεὶ ὀρθὸς αὐχὴν καὶ τὸ ὑβρίζον φρόνημα,
Italians and the always upright neck and the insolent spirit
ἔτι γε μὴν τὸ μηδ' ὅλως ἀνέχεσθαι Ῥωμαίους κρατεῖν
still at-least indeed the not-even at-all to-endure (the)-Romans to-prevail-in
τὸν διὰ κοντῶν πόλεμον. βασιλεὺς δὲ αὐτὸς σύνδυο
the through lances war (the)-emperor and himself two-together

ἱππότας προσούδισε, καθ' ἑνὸς μὲν ἐλάσας τὸν ἵππον
knights brought-to-the-ground by one indeed having-driven the horse
καὶ τὸ δόρυ κραδάνας, ἐκείνου δὲ συγκαταβαλόντος
and the spear having-brandished that(-one) and having-thrown-down-with
τὸν σύνεγγυς τῇ ῥύμῃ τοῦ διακοντίζοντος.
the(-one) near by-the rush of-the spearman
Πλήσας οὖν ἐπ' ἀνδρείᾳ τοὺς Ἀντιοχεῖς θαύματος, ὄψεσι
having-filled then with courage the Antiochenes of-wonder by-sights
παρειληφότας ἅπερ ἀκοαῖς ἐνηχοῦντο πρότερον, ἔγνω
having-received what-things by-hearings were-dinned before resolved
παλινῳδίαν ᾄσαι πρὸς τὴν Κωνσταντίνου τραπόμενος.
(a)-palinode to-sing to the(-city) of-Constantine having-turned
ἔνθεν τοι καὶ ὡς διὰ φιλίας μέλλων ἰέναι διαφήσι
whence surely also as through friendly(-land) about to-go he-lets-go
τὸ στρατόπεδον, ὅποι φίλον ἑκάστῳ μεθίστασθαι. τοῦτο
the army wherever dear to-each to-move this
δὲ μὴ καθ' ἡγεμόνα ὁποῖος ἦν αὐτὸς βουλευσάμενος,
and not like (a)-commander such-as was himself having-planned
ἔλαθε παραπολέσας τὸ πολὺ τοῦ στρατοῦ καὶ κακῶς
was-unaware having-lost the greater-part of-the army and badly
τὰ κατ' οὐρὰν διαθέμενος· ἡ γὰρ πρὸς πορείαν ὀξεῖα
the(-things) at (the)-tail having-managed the for to march sharp
τούτου ῥοπὴ καὶ ἡ πρὸς τὰ οἰκεῖα ἤθη τῶν στρατιωτῶν
his inclination and the to the own haunts of-the soldiers
ἀχαλίνωτος ἄπαρσις καὶ ἀλόγιστος οὐκ ὀλίγα τῶν ταγμάτων
unbridled departure and thoughtless not few of-the units
διαλυθέντα παρελυμήνατο, τῶν Τούρκων ἐπεισπεσόντων
dispersed destroyed the Turks having-fallen-on
ἀθρόως αὐτοῖς, ὡς πείρᾳ γνῶναι τὸ τότε πολλοὺς
in-a-mass upon-them so-that by-experience to-know the then many
οἷον ἀγαθὸν ἡ προμήθεια, τὴν δ' ὑστεροβουλίαν
what-sort-of good (is)-the forethought the and afterthought

πρᾶγμα ἀνόνητον καὶ ἀξύμφορον, καὶ ὡς κρεῖσσον τὸ
(a)-thing unprofitable and inexpedient and how better the(-thing)
μεθ᾽ ἡμέραν, εἰ σώζει καὶ δίδωσιν εὔκλειαν, τοῦ
by day if it-saves and gives glory than-the(-thing)
κατασπῶντος αὐτίκα εἰς θάνατον, κἂν ὑποσαίνῃ χρηστότητι.
dragging-down at-once to death even-if it-fawns with-kindness
τάχα δ᾽ ἂν καὶ εἰς χείριστον προὔβη τὰ οἴκτιστα,
perhaps and — also to worst would-have-advanced the most-pitiable(-things)
εἰ μὴ βασιλεὺς ἐπαναστραφεὶς τῶν Τούρκων ἀνέστειλε τὴν
if not (the)-emperor having-turned-back of-the Turks had-checked the
φοράν, καὶ προὔπεμψε τὰ στρατόπεδα μεθ᾽ οἵας ἔδει
onset and sent-forward the armies with such-as was-needful
συντάξεως πρότερον, ὅτε καὶ λέγεται τοῖς τῶν πεσόντων
ordering first when also it-is-said over-the of-the fallen
ἐπιστάντα πτώμασι, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν διαφθαρέντων
having-stood corpses and the multitude of-the destroyed
ὅσον κατανοήσαντα, πλῆξαί τε τῇ χειρὶ τὸν μηρὸν
how-great having-perceived to-have-struck both with-the hand the thigh
ἀχθόμενον καὶ περιψοφῆσαι τὰ χείλη πυκνὰ καὶ ἀνοιμῶξαι
vexed and to-have-smacked the lips often and to-have-groaned
βύθιον καὶ δακρῦσαι, ταῦτα δὴ τὰ τῶν παθαινομένων
deep and to-have-wept these indeed the of-the(-ones) suffering
σημαντικὰ ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁρωμένοις ἢ καὶ ἐνωτιζομένοις ἀλγεινοῖς
signifying at the seen or also heard painful
θεάμασι καὶ ἀκούσμασι, καὶ ὁρμῆσαι μὲν τὸ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς
sights and hearings and to-have-set-out indeed the in (the)-eyes
ἀναμαχέσασθαι ὄνειδος, γενναῖον δέ τι ἐξ ὑπογυίου
to-retrieve-in-battle disgrace noble but something from (the)-moment
δρᾶσαι μὴ ἔχοντα ὁδοῦ τῆς προκειμένης αὖθις ἔχεσθαι.
to-do not being-able of-road the lying-before again to-hold

Envy destroys Theodore Styppeiotes, Manuel's favored minister. The logothete John Kamateros, jealous of his influence, has a forged letter to the king of Sicily planted among his papers, and Manuel has Styppeiotes blinded. Niketas then describes Kamateros' gluttony and drinking: he drains a basin of water at a wager and devours whole fields of green beans. Dying, he begs Styppeiotes' forgiveness and receives it.

Ὁ δὲ μὴ τοῖς ὑψηλοῖς μόνον καὶ ἐθνῶν καὶ πόλεων
the and not on-the lofty only both of-nations and of-cities
δυνάσταις λοξὸν ἀεὶ ἐνορῶν φθόνος καὶ τοὺς ἐπιβούλους
lords askance always looking envy and the plotters
τρέφων ἀεὶ ἐγγύς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς μετριωτέροις ἐπιφυόμενος,
nourishing always near but also on-the more-moderate growing-upon
οὗτος οὐδὲ τὸν Στυππειώτην Θεόδωρον τῆς παρὰ
this(-envy) not-even — Styppeiotes Theodore from-the with
βασιλεῖ παρρησίας εἴασεν ἀμετάθετον, ἀλλὰ πνεύσας
(the)-emperor freedom-of-speech let unmoved but having-blown
καταιγιδῶδες καὶ ἄγριον ὁ δυσπάλαιστος πολλάκις
stormy and wild the hard-to-wrestle often
μὲν τοῦ στασίμου στυφελίξας μετήνεγκε, τέλος δὲ
indeed from-the standing having-buffeted moved (at-the)-end and
καὶ ἀνέτρεψε καὶ εἰς πτῶμα κατήνεγκεν οἴκτιστον.
also overturned and into (a)-fall brought-down most-pitiable
παρενείρω δὲ καὶ τὰ τοιάδε τῇ ἱστορίᾳ, δεικνὺς
I-weave-in and also the such(-things) into-the history showing
τοῖς ἀναγινώσκουσιν ὡς κἂν ἀσυλλόγιστόν τι χρῆμα
to-the readers that even-if incalculable some thing
καὶ δυσφύλακτον ἡ πονηρία, χρῆναι γοῦν ὡς
and hard-to-guard-against (is)-the wickedness one-must at-any-rate as
ἐξὸν ὑποβλέπεσθαι τῶν ἀντιτέχνων ὁπόσοι τὸν μὲν
(is)-possible to-eye-suspiciously of-the rivals as-many-as in-the indeed

τρόπον οὐκ ἐλευθέριοι τὸ δὲ ἦθος ὑποκαθειμένοι
manner (are)-not free in-the and character subtle
καὶ τὴν γλῶτταν τῇ καρδίᾳ πλουτοῦντες ἀντίφθογγον,
and the tongue to-the heart being-rich-in contrary-sounding
πρὸ πάντων δὲ τιθέναι τῷ στόματι φυλακὴν καὶ μὴ
before all(-things) and to-set on-the mouth (a)-guard and not
ἐᾶν τὴν γλῶτταν προπετῶς ἐκπηδᾶν τοῦ ἕρκους τῶν
to-allow the tongue rashly to-leap-out-of the fence of-the
ὀδόντων καὶ τοῦ τῶν χειλέων ἐπιτειχίσματος, ἅπερ οἷα
teeth and of-the of-the lips outwork which as
διπλοῦν περίβολον ἡ φύσις ταύτῃ περιεγύρωσεν. ὁ γάρ
(a)-double enclosure the nature for-it has-built-round the for
τοι τότε λογοθέτης τοῦ δρόμου οὐχ οἷός τε ὢν στέγειν
surely then logothete of-the course not able — being to-bear
τὴν ἐς τὸν Στυππειώτην τῆς τύχης εὐμένειαν καὶ τὴν
the toward — Styppeiotes of-the fortune goodwill and the
ἀκροτάτην τοῦ βασιλέως ῥοπὴν καὶ τὸ τῷ μὲν ἅπαντα
highest of-the emperor inclination and the for-the one all
τὸν χρόνον τῆς ἐς τὸν κρατοῦντα παρρησίας τε καὶ
the time of-the toward the ruler freedom-of-speech both and
παρουσίας εἶναι καιρὸν καὶ ἐξεῖναι δακτύλῳ πάντα
presence to-be (the)-occasion and to-be-allowed with-(a)-finger all(-things)
μεταφέρειν καὶ νεύματι, αὐτῷ δὲ κατὰ τακτὰς ὥρας τὴν
to-move and with-(a)-nod for-himself and at appointed hours the
ἐς αὐτὸν ἀνεῳγέναι πυλαίαν, καὶ τἆλλα ὅσα τῷ
to him to-stand-open gate and the-other(-things) as-many-as —
μὲν Στυππειώτῃ καὶ μόνον βουληθέντι ἀνύσιμα ἦν, τῷ
indeed for-Styppeiotes and only having-wished achievable were for-the
δὲ οὐδ' ὄναρ διὰ τοῦ φανταστικοῦ ἐφιπτάμενα
other not-even in-(a)-dream through the imagination flying-by
καὶ διὰ τοῦτο τοῦ φθόνου γινόμενα ὑπεκκαύματα καὶ
and because-of this of-the envy becoming kindlings and

ἕως τοῦ ταμιείου πλήττοντα τῆς καρδίας, σκαιωρεῖ κατὰ
to the storeroom striking of-the heart contrives against
τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τὰ οἰκτρότατα. καὶ δεινὸς ὢν καττῦσαι
the man the most-pitiable(-things) and clever being to-stitch
δόλους καὶ δικρόαν εὐτυχῶν γλῶτταν, ὁποίαν ὄφις
tricks and forked being-blessed-with (a)-tongue such-as (the)-serpent
ὁ ψίθυρος καὶ ἀρχέκακος, φιλίᾳ ὑποκλέπτει τὸν
the whispering and author-of-evil with-friendship he-steals the
ἄνδρα, καλῷ πράγματι συσκιάζων ἄτοπα διαβούλια καὶ
man with-(a)-fine thing shading-over outrageous designs and
δηλητηρίου σκύφον περὶ χείλη ἀγάπης μέλιτι περιχρίων.
of-poison (a)-cup about (the)-lips with-love's honey anointing
ἀμέλει τοι καὶ ἄλλα λέγων καὶ διανοούμενος ἕτερα,
indeed surely also other(-things) saying and thinking others
καὶ χείλεσι μὲν τιμῶν τῇ δὲ καρδίᾳ πόρρω πλαζόμενος,
and with-lips indeed honoring with-the but heart far wandering
ἐλελήθει τὸν κατὰ τοῦτο μόνον ἀρχαῖον καὶ
had-escaped-the-notice-of the in this only old-fashioned and
ἁπλοϊκὸν Στυππειώτην. ἐνδιαβάλλει τοίνυν ὡς μαγγανευτὴν
simple Styppeiotes slanders therefore as (a)-sorcerer
τοῦτον καὶ δολιόφρονα, καὶ γράφεται προδοσίας, τὰ
him and deceitful-minded and indicts for-treason the
κατὰ Σικελίαν λέγων ἀναταράττειν πράγματα. ἀπαιτηθεὶς
in Sicily saying to-stir-up affairs having-been-asked
οὖν ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλέως πίστεις τῶν λεγομένων,
then by the emperor proofs of-the(-things) said
τῇ Κιλικίᾳ ἔτι ἐνδιατρίβοντος, αὐτὸν μὲν ἐφίστησι
— in-Cilicia still tarrying him indeed he-stations
παραπετάσματι, τὸν δὲ Στυππειώτην ἀπολαβὼν ὡς
behind-(a)-curtain — and Styppeiotes having-taken-aside as
ἔχων τι μόνος μόνῳ προσδιαλέγεσθαι, ἄγει ὅπου
having something alone with-alone to-converse leads where

ἦν ἀθέατος ὁ βασιλεὺς ἑστηκώς, καὶ λόγους ἀνακινήσας
was unseen the emperor standing and words having-stirred
ἑτέρους εἶτα καὶ τοῖς κατὰ Σικελίαν δολίως ἐνέβαλε,
other then also on-the(-things) in Sicily craftily threw(-the-talk)
καὶ διδοὺς αὐτὸς ἀφορμὰς τοῦ μεμψιμοιρεῖν μήτε μὴν
and giving himself occasions of-the complaining nor indeed
ἀσπάζεσθαι τὸν Στυππειώτην ὅσα ὁ βασιλεὺς εἶχεν
approving — Styppeiotes what-things the emperor had
ἐπὶ τοῖς κατὰ Σικελίαν διαπραξάμενος πράγμασιν, οὕτω
in the in Sicily having-done affairs thus
διαλύει τὴν ἐντυχίαν, καὶ τοιοῦτον ἐνθάψας σπινθῆρα
breaks-up the meeting and such having-buried (a)-spark
τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως ψυχῇ καὶ κατὰ τοῦ Στυππειώτου
in-the of-the emperor soul and against — Styppeiotes
ἀφεὶς ὑποτύφεσθαι· ἐσκέπτετο καὶ φορυτοῦ εὐπορήσειν
having-let to-smolder be-considered also of-litter to-have-plenty
ἑτέρων συκοφαντήσεων, δι' ὧν προχειροτάτη ἐσεῖται
of-other calumnies through which most-ready will-be
τοῦ σπινθῆρος ἡ κίνησις. οὐκοῦν κατὰ καρδίας ἑτέραν
of-the spark the movement therefore at (the)-heart another
πληγὴν ἀνταίαν εἰληφὼς ὁ δηλωθεὶς λογοθέτης ἐκ τοῦ
blow straight having-received the mentioned logothete from the
τῷ Στυππειώτῃ δοθῆναι δοχεῖον ἐρυθροδάνου διάλιθον
— to-Styppeiotes to-have-been-given (a)-vessel of-madder jeweled
χρύσεον, καὶ τοῖς ὅρκοις τοῦτον ἐπιστατῆσαι κατὰ τὸν
golden and to-the oaths him to-preside in the
ἐν Βλαχέρναις μέγαν νεὼν οἳ τὴν τοῦ κράτους διαδοχὴν
in Blachernai great temple where the of-the rule succession
ἐνεπέδουν Ἀλεξίῳ τε τῷ ἐξ Οὐγγρίας καὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ
confirmed to-Alexios both the(-one) from Hungary and to-the daughter
τοῦ βασιλέως Μαρίᾳ, ἃ τῷ λογοθετικῷ δήπουθεν
of-the emperor Maria which(-things) to-the logothete's surely

ὀφφικίῳ ἦσαν ἁρμόδια, συνθέσθαι λέγεται χάρτην λήρων
office were fitting to-have-composed is-said (a)-paper of-nonsense
ἔμπλεων παρὰ τοῦ Στυππειώτου δῆθεν τῷ τῆς Σικελίας
full by — Styppeiotes supposedly to-the — of-Sicily
ῥηγὶ σταλησόμενον, καὶ τοῦτον ἀναφύρας τοῖς τοῦ
king going-to-be-sent and this having-mixed-up with-the —
Στυππειώτου τόμοις καὶ γράμμασι πεῖσαι τὸν βασιλέα
of-Styppeiotes volumes and letters to-persuade the emperor
στεῖλαι τοὺς κατὰ ζήτησιν τοῦ πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα γράμματος
to-send the(-men) for search of-the to the king letter
τὴν τοῦ Στυππειώτου σκηνὴν ἐρευνήσοντας· οὗ καὶ
the — of-Styppeiotes tent going-to-search which also
γενομένου ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ οἷα πυρσὸν αἰθέριον τὴν κατὰ
having-happened the autocrat like (a)-torch high-flaming the against
τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ὀργὴν ἀνέκαυσε. καὶ τὸ ἐντεῦθεν ἐκκοπεὶς τὰς
the man wrath kindled and the thence cut-out the
κόρας ἀδίκως τυφλὸς ἦν, μὴ βλέπων τὸν ἥλιον. ὦ πάντ'
pupils unjustly blind was not seeing the sun O all
ἐφορῶν ὀφθαλμὲ τῆς δίκης ἀλάθητε, πῶς ἐπιμύεις
overseeing eye of-the justice unescapable how you-close-(your-eyes)
πολλάκις ἐπὶ τηλίκοις παρανομήμασιν ἢ καὶ μείζοσιν
often at so-great transgressions or also greater
ἑτέροις ἀνθρώπων κακοπραγήμασιν, οὐδ' ἐπάγεις εὐθὺς τοὺς
other of-men misdeeds nor bring at-once the
πρηστῆρας καὶ τὸ κεραύνιον ἄναμμα, ἀλλ' ὑπερτιθέμενος
hurricanes and the thunderbolt kindling but putting-off
ἐπέχεις τὴν κόλασιν. ἀνεξιχνίαστόν σου τὸ κρίμα, καὶ
you-hold-back the punishment untraceable (is)-your the judgment and
ἀνθρώπων λογισμοῖς ἀνεπίβατον. πλὴν εἶ σοφός, ναί,
to-men's reasonings inaccessible nevertheless you-are wise yes
καὶ γνώμων ἀκριβὴς τοῦ συνοίσοντος, κἂν ἡμᾶς τοὺς
and (a)-judge exact of-the(-thing) going-to-profit even-if us the

σμικρογνώμονας λέληθας. ἤδη μὲν οὖν τις θηρητὴρ
small-minded you-have-escaped already indeed then (a)-certain hunter
ὄφιν δαφοινὸν ἢ λέοντα λασιαύχενα εἰσορῶν καὶ ἀΐων ἐν
(a)-serpent blood-red or (a)-lion shaggy-necked seeing and hearing in
ὄρεσιν εὐθέως ἐξέκλινεν. ἀλλὰ καὶ κακόεργος ὅστις δὴ
(the)-mountains at-once turned-aside but also (an)-evildoer whoever indeed
παραιτητός ἐστι, δάκρυσι καὶ λιταῖς παρυπάγεται. ἄνδρα
to-be-entreated is by-tears and by-prayers is-led-aside (a)-man
δὲ κακὰ τῷ πλησίον βυσσοδομεύοντα καὶ ἄλλα μὲν
but evil(-things) for-the neighbor plotting-deep and other(-things) indeed
ἐν φρεσὶ κεύθοντα ἕτερα δὲ βάζοντα σοφίας δεῖ πολλῆς
in mind hiding others and speaking of-wisdom is-needful much
ἐκφυγεῖν, καὶ χρεία τῆς ἀπὸ τοῦ κρείττονος ἐφάψεως.
to-escape and need of-the from the stronger(-one) touch
Ἦν δὲ ὁ λογοθέτης οὗτος, ἵνα καὶ ἔτι μικρὸν παρακινήσω
was and the logothete this that also still (a)-little I-may-move
τῆς ἱστορίας μοι τὸν εἱρμόν, μαθημάτων μὲν ὑψηλοτέρων
of-the history for-me the sequence of-studies indeed loftier
ἄκρῳ λιχανῷ γεγευμένος καὶ τῆς ὑπερσέμνου
with-(the)-tip-of (the)-forefinger having-tasted and of-the very-august
φιλοσοφίας οὐκ ἀκριβὴς ἐραστὴς οὐδ' εὐμαθὴς ὀπαδός,
philosophy not (an)-exact lover nor (a)-quick-learning follower
κράτιστος δὲ τῇ φυᾷ καὶ τῷ ἀμελετήτῳ χαίρων
strongest and in-the nature and in-the unpracticed delighting
τῆς φράσεως, ῥέων τε τῷ λόγῳ κατὰ πηγάδα
of-the diction flowing both with-the speech like (a)-spring
καλλίρειθρον διεκδιδοῦσαν τῶν πρανῶν ἐκ τοῦδε κλέος
fair-streaming gushing-forth from-the slopes from this fame
ἀπηνέγκατο μέγιστον. ἀνθρώπων δὲ ὀψοφαγώτατος ὢν
he-carried-off greatest of-men and most-gluttonous being
καὶ οἰνοφλύγων ὁ κράτιστος πρὸς λύριον ἔψαλλε καὶ
and of-wine-bibbers the strongest to (the)-lyre he-sang and

πρὸς κιθάραν μετερρυθμίζετο καὶ κόρδακα ὠρχεῖτο καὶ
to (the)-cithara kept-time and (the)-cordax danced and
τὼ πόδε πολλάκις παρενεσάλευε. χανδὸν δὲ τῶν οἴνων
the two-feet often swayed gapingly and with-the wines
ἐμφορούμενος, καὶ κατὰ τοὺς θαλαττίους χόας καὶ τὰς
filling(-himself) and like the sea measures and the
σπογγιὰς συχνάκις τὸ ποτὸν ἀνιμώμενος, οὐ κατεπόντου
sponges often the drink drawing-up not he-drowned
τὸν νοῦν τῇ ἀρδείᾳ, μήτε παρασφαλλόμενος ὡς οἱ
the mind with-the watering nor stumbling as the
ἔξοινοι, μήτε τὸ κάρη βάλλων ἑτέρωσε ὡς ὑπὸ μέθης
drunk nor the head throwing the-other-way as by drunkenness
ἐπικλυζόμενος, ἀλλ' ἔλεγέ τι σοφόν, ἀναφλέγων τε
flooded but he-said something wise kindling both
καὶ ἄρδων ἐν τῷ πίνειν τὸ λογιζόμενον, καὶ πρὸς
and watering in the drinking the(-faculty) reasoning and for
βλάστην λόγων μᾶλλον ἐπερωννύετο. διώκων δὲ τὰ
(the)-sprouting of-words rather was-strengthened pursuing and the
συμπόσια οὐ βασιλεῖ μόνον πλεῖστα κεχάριστο,
drinking-parties not to-(the)-emperor only very-much he-had-been-pleasing
ἀλλὰ καὶ δυνάσταις μάλα πεφίλητο τῶν ἐθνῶν, ὁπόσοι
but also to-lords greatly had-been-loved of-the nations as-many-as
τοὺς κώμους περιεσπούδαζον. κατὰ γὰρ πρεσβείαν αὐτοῖς
the revels were-zealous-for on for embassy to-them
παραβάλλων τοὺς μὲν ὑπερέβαλεν ἐν τοῖς πότοις καὶ
meeting some indeed he-surpassed in the drinkings and
πρὸς τὴν ὀψὲ κατήνεγκεν ἐκ τῆς μέθης ἀνάνηψιν καὶ
to the late brought(-them)-down from the drunkenness sobering and
τοῦ κάρου ἀνάνευσιν, τοῖς δὲ καὶ ἰσοφάρισεν· οὗτοι δὲ
from-the stupor recovery to-others and also he-was-equal these and
ἦσαν οἳ πιθάκνας ὅλας ἐς τὴν γαστέρα μετήγγιζον
were (those)-who jars whole into the belly drained

καὶ ἀμφορέας ὤχουν τοῖς δακτύλοις ὡς κύλικας καὶ
and amphoras carried with-the fingers as cups and
τὸν σκύφον εἶχον ἀεὶ ἐπιδείπνιον τὸν Ἡράκλειον. ἐπεὶ
the cup had always after-dinner the Heraclean since
δὲ εἰς τοὺς περὶ τοῦ ἀνδρὸς τοῦδε λόγους καθάπαξ
and into the about the man this words once-for-all
ἐνεπεπτώκειν, δεδόσθω κἀκεῖνα τῇ ἱστορίᾳ, μνήμης ὄντα
I-had-fallen let-be-given also-those to-the history of-memory being
καὶ διηγήσεως ἄξια. συνέθετό ποτε τῷ βασιλεῖ Μανουὴλ
and of-narration worthy he-covenanted once with-the emperor Manuel
ὕδατος πλησθεῖσαν διεκροφῆσαι τὴν πορφύρεον λεκανίδα,
with-water filled to-gulp-down the purple basin
ἣν εἶχε πρότερον μὲν ἡ αἰθριώδης τοῦ κοιτῶνος αὔλειος
which had formerly indeed the open-air of-the bedchamber court
τοῦ βασιλέως Νικηφόρου τοῦ Φωκᾶ, ἡ ἄνωθεν
of-the emperor Nikephoros the Phokas the(-court) above
τοῦ Βουκολέοντος ὑπτιάζουσα, νυνὶ δὲ ὁ παρὰ τοῦ εἰς
— Boukoleon lying-open now and the by the for
ἱστορίαν προκειμένου βασιλέως οἰκοδομηθεὶς χρυσόπαστος
history set-before emperor built gold-sprinkled
μέγιστος ἀνδρών. βασιλεὺς δ' ἐν θαύματι θέμενος τὸ
greatest hall (the)-emperor and in wonder having-set the(-thing)
λεχθέν, καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν „ὑπέρευ γε, λογοθέτα" φάμενος,
said and to him very-well at-least logothete having-said
ὀθόνας εὐανθεῖς καὶ χρυσίου μνᾶς ἱκανὰς ξυνέθετό οἱ
linens flowery and of-gold minas sufficient covenanted to-him
καταβαλέσθαι δρῶντι ὡς ἔφησεν, ἦ μὴν ταὐτὰ
to-pay(-him) doing(-it) as he-said truly indeed the-same(-things)
τουτονὶ καταθέσθαι μὴ περατοῦντα τὰ ξυγκείμενα. ὡς
this(-man) to-deposit not completing the(-things) agreed as
δὲ τὸν λόγον ἀσμένως ὁ ἀνὴρ ἠνωτίσατο, ἡ μὲν λεκανὶς
and the word gladly the man heard the indeed basin

ἦν ὑπερχειλὴς ὕδατος, κεχαδυῖα περὶ χόας δύο, ὁ δὲ
was brimful of-water holding about measures two he and
κύψας τὸ ἄγγος ἐκένωσεν ὅσα βοῦς, ἅπαξ ἀνακόψας
having-stooped the vessel emptied as (an)-ox once having-checked
τὸ συνεχὲς τῆς πόσεως, καὶ τότε ὡς τὸ πνεῦμα πλεῖον
the continuity of-the drinking and then as the breath more
συλλέξειε, καὶ εἶχεν εὐθὺς τὰ ἐκ συμφώνου πρὸς
he-might-gather and had at-once the(-things) from agreement by
βασιλέως ἀποδιδόμενα. ἥττων δὲ ὢν τῆς τῶν χλωρῶν
(the)-emperor paid weaker and being than-the of-the green
κυάμων ἑστιάσεως οὐκ ἀπὸ ῥινός, ὅ φασιν, ἀλλ' ἐξ
beans feast not from (the)-nose as they-say but from
ὀδόντων τῷ θαλῷ τούτων εἵλκετο. ὅλας οὖν ἀρούρας
(the)-teeth by-the shoot of-these was-drawn whole then fields
κατεδαπάνα καὶ θωὸς ἀκριβέστερον ἐπεξήρχετο. καὶ
he-consumed and than-(a)-jackal more-exactly went-through(-them) and
τότε παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν ἐνσκηνησάμενος, ἐπειδήπερ εἰς
then by the river having-encamped whenever to
τὴν περαίαν κυάμων θεάσαιτο γήδιον, ἐξ αὐτῆς
the opposite-bank of-beans he-saw (a)-patch from (the-hour)-itself
καὶ τὸν ἔσχατον χιτῶνα ἀποδυσάμενος διενήξατο, καὶ τὸ
also the last tunic having-stripped swam-across and the
πλεῖον ἀποτραγὼν οὐδ' οὕτως ἀπέσχετο, ἀλλ' ἐς δεσμὰς
more having-munched not-even thus refrained but into bundles
τὸ μὴ κατεδηδομένον ξυνενεγκὼν ἐπὶ νώτου τε ἀράμενος
the not eaten having-gathered on back both having-raised
διέβη τε τὸν ποταμὸν αὐτίκα δὴ μάλα, καὶ ἐπὶ δαπέδου
crossed both the river at-once indeed very and on (the)-floor
τῆς σκηνῆς καθιζήσας ἀνελέγετο τοὺς κυάμους ἡδέως,
of-the tent having-sat-down picked the beans with-pleasure
ὡς εἰ νῆστις ἦν ἐπὶ μακρὸν καὶ ἀπόσιτος. ἡρωϊκοῦ

δὲ σώματος μετέχων καὶ εἰς ἀρίστην ἡλικίας ἀνατείνας
and body sharing and to (the)-best of-age having-stretched
ἀναδρομὴν οὐκ ἀπόμαχος ἦν, ἀλλ᾽ ἔβλεπε γενναῖον καὶ
course not past-fighting was but looked noble and
τοῦ αἵματος ἄξιον ἐξ οὗ τὸ πρὸς μητρὸς ἐκείνῳ
of-the blood worthy from which the on (the)-mother's(-side) to-him
γένος καθείλκετο. τελευτῶν δὲ τὸν βίον, καὶ πλῆττον
race was-drawn ending and the life and striking
ἔχων αὐτὸν τὸ οἰκεῖον κριτήριον ἐφ᾽ οἷς κατὰ τοῦ
having him the own tribunal for what-things against —
Στυππειώτου ἐλογοποίησε, μετάπεμπτον ποιεῖται τὸν ἄνδρα
Styppeiotes he-had-fabricated summoned makes the man
καὶ συγγνώμην μετὰ δακρύων αἰτεῖται. ὁ δὲ βραβεύων
and forgiveness with tears asks he and arbitrating
ἀμνησικάκως ἄφεσιν καὶ σωτηρίαν ψυχῆς προσεπηύξατο.
without-malice remission and salvation of-soul prayed-for(-him)
καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω, καὶ οὐ κατὰ διήγησιν, οἶμαι,
and these(-things) indeed thus and not by narration I-think
ἀλυσιτελῆ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὐδ᾽ ἀκαλλῆ τε καὶ ἀχαρίτωτον.
unprofitable to-the many nor without-beauty both and without-grace

V · MARIE OF ANTIOCH; KILIJ ARSLAN IN THE CITY

Manuel's German wife dies, and he marries Marie, daughter of the Poitevin prince of Antioch, a woman of extraordinary beauty. Niketas describes the division of the Turkish lands among the sons and sons-in-law of Mas'ud and prays for their end. Sultan Kilij Arslan visits Constantinople, where an earthquake mars the triumph Manuel holds with him and a Saracen who tries to fly from a tower in the Hippodrome falls to his death, to the people's mockery of the Turks.

Ὁ δέ γε Μανουὴλ ἀποβαλόμενος θανάτῳ τὴν ἐξ
— and at-least Manuel having-lost by-death the from
Ἀλαμανῶν σύνευνον ἐκόψατο μὲν τὸν ἐκείνης μόρον
Alamans bedfellow mourned indeed the her fate
διασπασμὸν οἰηθεὶς σώματος, καὶ ὡς λέων θρηνῶδες
(a)-tearing-apart having-thought of-body and as (a)-lion mournfully
ἠρεύξατο, ταφῆς δὲ ἠξιωκὼς μεγαλοπρεποῦς, καὶ
roared burial and having-deemed-worthy magnificent and
τῷ σκήνει ἐπιτελέσας τὰ ὅσια ἐν τῇ τοῦ Παντοκράτορος
for-the body having-performed the rites in the of-the Pantokrator
πατρῴᾳ μονῇ, καὶ καιρὸν ὃν ἐδοκίμασε παριππεύσας
ancestral monastery and (a)-time which he-approved having-passed
ἡμιθανὴς καὶ ἡμίτομος πρὸς μνῆστρα δεύτερα ἔβλεψε,
half-dead and cut-in-half to wooing second looked
πατὴρ ἀκοῦσαι παιδὸς γλιχόμενος ἄρρενος. πολλαχόθεν
father to-be-called of-(a)-son longing male from-many-places
μὲν οὖν ἐπεφοίτων αὐτῷ καὶ γράμματα καὶ προμνώμενοι
indeed then came to-him both letters and matchmakers
ἐκ βασιλέων, ἀπὸ ῥηγῶν καὶ δυναστῶν ἁπάσης τῆς γῆς·
from emperors from kings and lords of-all the earth
ὁ δὲ προέκρινεν ἁπασῶν μίαν τῶν θυγατέρων τοῦ τῆς
he and preferred of-all one of-the daughters of-the —
Ἀντιοχείας σατραπεύοντος Πετεβίνου. ταύτην λέγω τὴν
of-Antioch satrap Poitevin this(-city) I-mean the
τῆς Κοίλης Συρίας προκαθημένην, ἣν Ὀρόντης ποτίζει
of-the Hollow Syria presiding which (the)-Orontes waters
καὶ καταπνέει ζέφυρος ἄνεμος. ἦν δὲ ὁ Πετεβῖνος οὗτος
and breathes-on (the)-west wind was and — Poitevin this(-man)
Ἰταλιώτης μὲν τὸ γένος, ἱππότης δ' ἀκράδαντος καὶ
Italian indeed in-the race (a)-knight and unshaken and
ὑπὲρ τὸν Πρίαμον ἐκεῖνον εὐμέλιος. στείλας οὖν ἐκ τῶν
beyond — Priam that with-good-ash-spear having-sent then from the

τῆς γερουσίας καὶ τὸ γένος ἐπισήμους ἄνδρας εἰσοικίζεται
of-the senate and in-the race notable men he-brings-home
τὴν κόρην, καὶ θύσας εἶχε τὰ γαμοδαίσια. ἦν δὲ καλὴ
the girl and having-sacrificed held the wedding-feasts was and beautiful
τὸ εἶδος ἡ γυνή, καὶ λίαν καλή, καὶ ἕως σφόδρα καλή,
in-the form the woman and very beautiful and to exceedingly beautiful
καὶ τὸ κάλλος ἀξύμβλητος, ὡς μῦθον εἶναι ἀτεχνῶς
and in-the beauty incomparable so-that (a)-myth to-be simply
πρὸς αὐτὴν Ἀφροδίτην τὴν φιλομειδῆ καὶ χρυσῆν, Ἥραν
beside her Aphrodite the laughter-loving and golden Hera
τὴν λευκώλενον καὶ βοῶπιν, καὶ τὴν δολιχόδειρον καὶ
the white-armed and ox-eyed and the long-necked and
καλλίσφυρον Λάκαιναν, ἃς οἱ πάλαι διὰ τὸ κάλλος
fair-ankled Laconian(-woman) whom the(-men) of-old for the beauty
ἐθέωσαν, καὶ τὰς λοιπὰς δὲ ἁπάσας ὅσας βίβλοι καὶ
deified and the rest too all as-many-as books and
ἱστορίαι διαπρεπεῖς τὴν θέαν παραδεδώκασιν.
histories distinguished in-the appearance have-handed-down
Ὁ δὲ λόγος τὰ κατὰ τοὺς Τούρκους μέλλων αὖθις
the and narrative the(-things) about the Turks about again
διεξιέναι, ἅτε εἰς ἀρχὴν καθιστάμενος, καί τινα τῶν
to-go-through as into (a)-beginning establishing(-itself) also some of-the(-things)
ἄνωθεν σαφηνείας ἕνεκα δοίη ἂν εἰς ἀφήγησιν. τῷ
above of-clarity for-the-sake would-give — for narration to-the
κατάρχοντι τῶν Τούρκων Μασοὺτ πολλοὶ μὲν ἦσαν υἱεῖς,
ruler of-the Turks Mas'ud many indeed were sons
καὶ θυγατέρες οὐκ ἐλάττους ἐγεγόνεισαν· ἐν δὲ τῷ μέλλειν
and daughters not fewer had-been-born in and the being-about
ἐξ ἀνθρώπων γίνεσθαι καὶ ταῖς ἐκεῖθεν κολάσεσιν ὡς
from men to-become(-gone) and to-the thence punishments as
ἀσεβὴς παραπέμπεσθαι διανέμει τοῖς ἐκείνου παισὶ τὰς
impious to-be-sent he-distributes to-the his children the

ποτὲ μὲν τοῖς Ῥωμαίων ὅροις κληρουμένας τότε δὲ
once indeed to-the of-(the)-Romans borders allotted then and
ὑπ᾽ ἐκείνῳ ταττομένας πόλεις καὶ χώρας, καὶ ἄλλοις
under him ranked cities and lands and to-some
μὲν εἰς κλῆρον πατρῷον κατέλιπεν ἕτερα, τὴν δὲ
indeed for inheritance paternal he-left other(-things) the and
Ἰκονιέων μητρόπολιν καὶ ὅσα τετάχαται ὑπ᾽ αὐτὴν
of-Ikonians metropolis and as-many-as have-been-ranked under it
τῷ Κλιτζασθλᾶν ἀπομερίζει υἱῷ. τῶν δὲ γαμβρῶν τῷ
— to-Kilij-Arslan he-apportions son of-the and sons-in-law —
μὲν Ἰαγουπασὰν Ἀμάσειαν καὶ Ἄγκυραν ἐκληροῦτο, καὶ
one to-Yaghi-Basan Amaseia and Ankyra was-allotted and
τὴν Καππαδοκῶν εὐδαίμονα χώραν, καὶ ὅσα ταῖς
the of-Cappadocians prosperous land and as-many-as to-the
πόλεσι ταύταις ὅμορα· Δαδούνῃ δὲ ἀπονενέμηνται πόλεις
cities these bordering to-Dadoun and have-been-assigned cities
εὐδαίμονές τε καὶ μέγισται, Καισάρεια καὶ Σεβάστεια.
prosperous both and greatest Caesarea and Sebasteia
ἀλλ᾽ ἕως τίνος τὸν οἰκεῖον παρόψει κλῆρον, κύριε, εἰς
but until what(-time) the own will-you-overlook inheritance Lord to
ἀπαγωγὴν ἐκκείμενον καὶ προνομὴν μακραίωνα καὶ κίνησιν
carrying-off exposed and plunder age-long and shaking
κεφαλῆς λαῷ μωρῷ καὶ οὐχὶ σοφῷ καὶ πόρρωθεν
of-head for-(a)-people foolish and not wise and from-afar
ἀπεσχοινισμένῳ τῆς εὐσεβοῦς περὶ σὲ δόξης καὶ πίστεως;
severed from-the pious about you glory and faith
μέχρι τίνος ἀφ᾽ ἡμῶν ἀποστρέφεις τὸ οἰκεῖον πρόσωπον
until what(-time) from us turn-away the own face
ὁ φιλάνθρωπος, καὶ τῆς πτωχείας ἡμῶν ἐπιλανθάνῃ,
the(-one) man-loving and the poverty our forget
οὐδ᾽ ἐνωτίζῃ τοὺς στεναγμοὺς καὶ τὰ δάκρυα ὁ ταχὺς
nor hear the groans and the tears the swift

τῶν θλιβομένων ἐπακουός, οὐδὲ δίκην ἐπιτίθης ὁ τῶν
of-the afflicted hearer nor justice impose the of-the
ἐκδικήσεων κύριος; ἕως πότε παραλλὰξ ἕρποντα ἐσεῖται
vengeances Lord until when alternately creeping will-be
τὰ ἄτοπα, καὶ οἱ μὲν τῆς δουλίδος Ἄγαρ ἀπόγονοι
the outrageous(-things) and the indeed of-the bondwoman Hagar descendants
κατακυριεύσουσι τῶν ἐλευθέρων ἡμῶν, ἀπολοῦσί τε καὶ
will-lord-over the free us will-destroy both and
ἀποκτενοῦσι τὸ σὸν ἅγιον ἔθνος, ὃ τὸ ὑπὲρ πᾶν
will-kill the your holy nation which the above every
ὄνομα τὸ σὸν ἐπικέκληται ἅγιον ὄνομα, τοῦτο δὲ χρονίαν
name the your is-called holy name this and long
ὑπηρεσίαν ὑπομενεῖ, καὶ τοὺς ὀνειδισμοὺς ὑποίσει καὶ τοὺς
servitude will-endure and the reproaches will-bear and the
κονδυλισμοὺς τῶν ἐπιτρίπτων τούτων ἀλλογενῶν; εἰσελθέτω
knuckle-blows of-the accursed these foreigners let-enter
ἐνώπιόν σου ὀψέ ποτε, φιλάγαθε δέσποτα, τῶν ἐν
before you late at-last good-loving Master of-the(-ones) in
πέδαις ἡ συνοχή. βοησάτω πρὸς σὲ καὶ νῦν τὸν φίλοικτον
fetters the distress let-cry to you and now the compassionate
τὸ ἐκχεόμενον αἷμα τῶν σῶν οἰκετῶν, ὡς τὸ τοῦ Ἄβελ
the poured-out blood of-the your servants as the(-blood) — of-Abel
πρότερον. ἐπιλαβοῦ ὅπλου καὶ θυρεοῦ, καὶ ἀνάστηθι εἰς τὴν
formerly take-hold-of weapon and shield and stand-up for the
βοήθειαν ἡμῶν, καὶ κραταιώσας ὃν αὐτὸς αἱρετίσῃ ἄνδρα
help our and having-strengthened whom yourself may-choose (a)-man
καὶ ἐφ᾽ ὃν εὐδοκήσειας. ἀπόδος τοῖς πονηροῖς γείτοσιν
and in whom you-may-be-well-pleased render to-the wicked neighbors
ἡμῶν εἰς τὸ ἑπταπλάσιον ὅσα ἐπονηρεύσαντο κατὰ τῆς
our to the sevenfold what-things they-did-wickedly against the
κληρονομίας σου· καὶ πόλεις καὶ χώρας ἐπανασώσας ἡμῖν
inheritance your and cities and lands having-restored to-us

ἐν ἀνδρείᾳ, ἃς ὑφείλοντο οἱ ἀλλόφυλοι, ὅρια στήσαις
in courage which took-away the foreigners boundaries may-you-set
τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ σοῦ καλουμένοις ὀνόματος ἀνίσχοντος
for-the(-ones) by the your called name of-rising
ἡλίου καὶ δυομένου πρώτας καὶ ὑστάτας αὐγάς.
sun and of-setting first and last rays
Ἀλλὰ ταῦτα μὲν ἴσως οὐκ ἀκαίρως οὐδὲ μάτην
but these(-things) indeed perhaps not unseasonably nor in-vain
ἐξετοξεύσαμεν, θεῷ τι μικρὸν προσλαλήσαντες, καὶ
we-shot-out to-God something small having-spoken and
κενώσαντες τῆς λύπης βραχὺ ἐξ ὑπεράντλου ταύτῃ
having-emptied of-the grief (a)-little from overflowing thereby
ψυχῆς· οἱ δ' οὖν τοῦ Μασοὺτ τριχῇ δασάμενοι τὰ
soul the and then — of-Mas'ud threefold having-divided the
κεφαλαιώδη τῆς ἀρχῆς ὁρίσματα, ἢ τὸ νητρεκές εἰπεῖν
principal of-the dominion boundaries or the exact(-thing) to-say
τὰ τῶν Ῥωμαίων σχοινίσματα, παῖδες παρὰ πατρὸς ἐς
the of-the Romans measured-lands children from father to
αὐτοὺς καταβάντα διαδεξάμενοι, ὀλίγα μὲν εἰρήνῃ καὶ
them having-come-down having-succeeded-to few(-things) indeed to-peace and
τοῖς τῆς συγγενείας θεσμοῖς ἐπέθυσαν, τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα εἰς
to-the of-the kinship laws sacrificed the and most to
διαφορὰς οἰκείας ἀπεῖδον καὶ προσέσχον ταῖς διαστάσεσιν.
quarrels own looked and attended to-the dissensions
αὐτίκα γὰρ ὁ τοῦ Ἰκονίου σουλτὰν τῷ τῆς Καππαδοκίας
at-once for the — of-Ikonion sultan at-the — of-Cappadocia
τοπάρχῃ σκαιόν τι καὶ ἄγριον ἐπωφθάλμισε, καὶ
toparch sinister something and savage cast-an-eye and
οὗτος αὖ ἐκείνῳ βλέμμα ὀλέθριον ἔρριψε. καὶ ἦν
this(-one) in-turn at-that(-one) (a)-look deadly threw and were
τὰ κατ' ἀλλήλων πονηρὰ διαβούλια οὐχ ὑπὸ σκότον καὶ
the against one-another wicked designs not under darkness and

κρύφα τελούμενα, ἀλλ᾽ ἔκπυστα καὶ βασιλεῖ καὶ ἔκφορα
secretly accomplished but known also to-(the)-emperor and published
ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν. ὁ δὲ ἐπαρώμενος ἀμφοῖν πανώλειαν, ἠγάπα
by them he and praying-for both destruction was-pleased
μὴ μόνον μέχρι τοῦ ἐριθεύειν ἀπονεύειν ἀλλήλων καὶ
not only to the to-intrigue to-turn-away from-one-another and
ἀποσχίζεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅπλα ἄραντας εἰς μοῖραν διαστῆναι
to-split-off but also arms having-raised into (a)-part to-stand
ἀντίθετον, ἵν᾽ ἄγων ἠρεμίαν αὐτὸς τοῖς ἐκείνων ἐπιχαίρῃ
opposed so-that leading quiet himself at-the their might-rejoice
κακοῖς ὡς ὁμοῦ τε ἀλλοφύλων καὶ ἀσεβῶν· καὶ πέμπων
evils as at-once both of-foreigners and of-impious and sending
λάθρᾳ ἀγγέλους θάτερον θατέρῳ ἐνῆγεν εἰς πόλεμον.
secretly messengers the-one against-the-other he-urged into war
ἐκ δὲ τοῦ προδήλου τῷ Ἰαγουπασάνῃ προσέκειτο, καί
from and the open — to-Yaghi-Basan he-adhered and
οἱ τοῦ Ἄρεος συνεθίγγανεν οἷς ἐδωρεῖτο, μυσαττόμενος
to-him — of-Ares joined-in by-what he-gave loathing
τὸν σουλτὰν ὡς ὑποκαθειμένην ἀεὶ τὴν γνώμην ἔχοντα
the sultan as subtle always the mind having
καὶ ὕπουλον τὸ φρονεῖν καὶ περίστροφον, καὶ μὴ μόνον
and festering in-the thinking and twisting and not only
δολοπλοκοῦντα τοῖς ἐκ γένους ἐκείνῳ καὶ αἵματος
plotting against-the(-ones) from family to-him and of-blood
τὰ ἀνήκεστα, ἀλλὰ καὶ Ῥωμαίων ἀεὶ κατὰ ληστείαν
the incurable(-things) but also of-(the)-Romans always by brigandage
τὸ γειτονοῦν ἐκτρίβοντα. πεποιθὼς τοίνυν Ἰαγουπασάνης
the neighboring(-land) wearing-out trusting therefore Yaghi-Basan
τῷ αὐτοκράτορι ἐκφέρει κατὰ τοῦ σουλτὰν πόλεμον,
in-the autocrat brings-out against the sultan war
καὶ οὗτος αὖθις ἀντέξεισι κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ, καὶ συρραγέντες
and this(-one) again goes-out-against against him and having-clashed

πολλάκις ἐμάχοντο. ὀψὲ δὲ καὶ μεθ' αἵματα ἐξ ἑκατέρων
often they-fought late and also after bloods from both
ῥεύσαντα τῶν στρατῶν πρὸς Ἰαγουπασάνην ἔβλεψε τὸ
flowed of-the armies to Yaghi-Basan looked the
νικᾶν. καὶ πρὸς καιρὸν τὰ ὅπλα καταθέμενοι, ὁ μὲν
to-win and for (a)-time the arms having-laid-down the one
ἐπέμενε κατὰ χώραν, ὁ δὲ σουλτὰν τῷ βασιλεῖ πρόσεισιν
remained in place the other sultan to-the emperor comes
ἄρτι πρὸς τὴν πόλιν τὴν βασιλεύουσαν ἐκ τῶν δυσμικῶν
just to the city the reigning from the western
ἐπανιόντι μερῶν, καὶ φιλοφρόνως προσδεχθεὶς καὶ ἐντίμως
returning parts and kindly received and honorably
οὐχ ἧττον ἐπ' αὐτῷ τὸν βασιλέα διαχυθῆναι πεποίηκεν
no less over him the emperor to-be-cheered made
ἤπερ αὐτὸς ἐπὶ τῷ τῆς ξενίας ἐνευφράνθη ἀπροσδεεῖ. οὐκ
than himself at the of-the hospitality was-delighted lavish not
ἐλπίσι γὰρ μόνον χρηστοτέραις ὑπεσαίνετο Μανουήλ, ὡς εὖ
with-hopes for only better was-fawned-on Manuel that well
τὰ κατὰ τὴν ἕω διάθοιτο διὰ τῆς τοῦ σουλτάνου
the(-things) in the east he-might-arrange through the of-the sultan
παρουσίας καὶ τοῦ κεχαρισμένου τῆς ξενίας, δυναμένου
presence and the charming of-the hospitality being-able
γοητεῦσαι φιλοχρήματον βάρβαρον· ἀλλὰ καὶ δόξαν αὐτῷ
to-bewitch (a)-money-loving barbarian but also glory for-him
τῆς βασιλείας τὸ συμβὰν ᾤετο. εἰσιὼν τοίνυν ἅμα τῷ
of-the empire the event he-thought entering therefore with the
σουλτάνῳ τὴν Κωνσταντίνου κηρύττει θρίαμβον. καὶ
sultan the(-city) of-Constantine he-proclaims (a)-triumph and
ἦν εὐπρεπὴς ὁ θρίαμβος, καλλίστοις καὶ τιμήεσι πέπλοις
was seemly the triumph with-finest and precious robes
παμφαίνων καὶ τῷ τοῦ κόσμου πολυειδεῖ δαίδαλος·
all-shining and with-the of-the ornament many-formed artful

καὶ ἤμελλε βασιλεὺς διὰ τοῦ θριάμβου προϊέναι πρὸς
and was-about (the)-emperor through the triumph to-advance by
αὐτῶν τῶν ἀστῶν κροτούμενος, καὶ μέρος εἶναι τῆς τότε
themselves the citizens applauded and (a)-part to-be of-the then
δορυφορίας τε καὶ λαμπρότητος καὶ τῶν κυδρούντων
bodyguard both and splendor and of-the(-ones) glorifying
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα καὶ σουλτάνος αὐτὸς ἐπιπαριών. θεὸς δ'
the autocrat also (the)-sultan himself going-alongside God and
ἠκύρωσε τὰ τῆς ἡμέρας ἐκείνης λαμπρά· ἥ τε γὰρ γῆ
annulled the of-the day that brilliant the both for earth
κλονηθεῖσα πολλὰς κατεβεβλήκει λαμπροτάτας οἰκήσεις,
having-been-shaken many had-thrown-down most-brilliant dwellings
καὶ ὁ ἀὴρ ταραχώδης ἦν ἐπιεικῶς καὶ ἀνώμαλος, καὶ
and the air troubled was fairly and irregular and
ἕτερ' ἄττα ἐπισυμβάντα δείματα ἐκείνοις, οὐ θριάμβοις
other some having-happened terrors to-those not to-triumphs
ἠναγκάκει προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, καὶ τὸ τῆς ψυχῆς ἐκύμαινε
had-compelled to-attend the mind and the of-the soul surged
λογιζόμενον. ἔφασκον δὲ καὶ οἱ τοῦ θείου νεὼ καὶ τοῦ
reasoning(-part) said and also the of-the divine temple and of-the
βήματος ἔντροφοι καὶ αὐτὸς βασιλεύς, οὐκ ἀγαθὰς κληδόνας
sanctuary nurslings and himself (the)-emperor not good omens
δεχόμενος τὰ λεγόμενα, μηνίειν τὸ θεῖον καὶ μηδ'
receiving the(-things) said to-be-wroth the divine and not-even
ὅλως ἀνέχεσθαι προκύψειν εἰς θρίαμβον μὴ θεοσεβείας
at-all to-endure to-come-forth into triumph not of-piety
ἄνδρα μετεσχηκότα, ὃν κοσμοῦσιν ἔπιπλα παναγῆ καὶ
(a)-man having-partaken whom adorn furnishings all-holy and
ἁγίων ἔκτυπα διειλήφασι καὶ χαρακτὴρ καθαγιάζει Χριστοῦ.
of-saints images have-embraced and (the)-figure hallows of-Christ
καὶ οὕτω μὲν εἰκαίως ὁ θρίαμβος ἐσχεδίαστο, μηδαμῶς
and thus indeed at-random the triumph had-been-improvised in-no-way

αὐτῷ προσεσχηκότος τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, οὐδ' ἐς ὅσον
to-it having-attended the autocrat nor for as-much-as
τὸ ἔθος ἀφοσιώσασθαι· εἰς ἱκανὸν δὲ ὁ σουλτάνος τῷ
the custom to-satisfy for sufficient and the sultan with-the
βασιλεῖ συνδιέτριψε χρόνον, καὶ ἵππων σταδιοδρόμων
emperor spent time and of-horses race-running
ἁμίλλαις τὸν ὀφθαλμὸν καθειστίακεν, ὅτε καί τις ἀνὴρ τῆς
with-contests the eye feasted when also some man —
Ἄγαρ ἀπόγονος, ὡς μὲν ἐδόκει τὰ πρῶτα θαυματοποιός,
of-Hagar descendant as indeed seemed the first (a)-wonder-worker
ὡς δ' ὕστερον ἔδειξε, ταλάντατος ἀνθρώπων καὶ αὐτοέντης
as and later he-showed most-wretched of-men and self-slayer
ἄντικρυς, ἐπὶ τὸν κατὰ τὸ θέατρον πύργον ἀναλάμενος,
outright on the at the theater tower having-leapt-up
οὗ κάτωθεν μὲν αἱ τῶν ἐπὶ σταδίου θεόντων
of-which below indeed the of-the(-ones) on (the)-track running
ἀφετηρίαι εἰς ἀψίδας παραλλήλους κεχήνασιν, ἄνωθεν δ'
starting-gates into arches parallel gape above and
ἵπποι χαλκήλατοι πεπήγασι πίσυρες χρυσῷ ἠλειμμένοι,
horses bronze-wrought have-been-fixed four with-gold anointed
τοὺς αὐχένας ὑπόγυροι, ἀντιβλέποντες ἀλλήλοις καὶ δρόμον
the necks curved looking-at one-another and (the)-race
καμπτῆρος πνέοντες, διαπτῆναι τὸ στάδιον ἐπηγγέλλετο.
of-the-turning-post breathing to-fly-across the track he-promised
εἱστήκει οὖν ὡς ἐφ' ὕσπληγγος τοῦ πύργου, ἠμφιεσμένος
he-stood then as on (the)-starting-rope of-the tower clad
ποδηρέστατον εὐρέα χιτῶνα. λευκὸς δὲ ἦν ὁ χιτών,
(in)-very-foot-length wide tunic white and was the tunic
λύγοι δὲ εἰς κύκλον περιαχθέντες ἐποίουν κολπῶδες τὸ
withies and into (a)-circle bent-round made bosom-like the
ὕφασμα. ἦν δὲ σκοπὸς τῷ Ἀγαρηνῷ ὥσπερ ἱστίῳ
fabric was and (the)-aim for-the Hagarene as with-(a)-sail

ναῦς πτερωθῆναι τῷ πέπλῳ, ταῖς τούτου κοιλότησι
(a)-ship to-be-winged with-the robe in-the its hollows
τοῦ πνεύματος ἐμφωλεύοντος. πᾶς οὖν ἐπέστραπτο πρὸς
the wind nestling every then was-turned toward
αὐτὸν ὀφθαλμός, καὶ ἐμειδία τὸ θέατρον, καὶ πυκνὰ
him eye and smiled the theater and often
ἐκραύγαζον οἱ θεώμενοι „πέτασον, πέτασον,” καὶ „ἕως
cried-out the watchers fly fly and until
τίνος αἴρεις Σαρακηνὲ τὰς ψυχὰς ἡμῶν, ταλαντεύων ἐκ
when do-you-raise Saracen the souls our weighing from
τοῦ πύργου τὸν ἄνεμον;” βασιλεὺς δὲ πέμψας διεκώλυεν
the tower the wind (the)-emperor and having-sent tried-to-stop
αὐτὸν τοῦ ὁρμήματος. θεατὴς δ’ ὢν τῶν δρωμένων
him from-the attempt spectator and being of-the(-things) done
καὶ σουλτάνος αὐτὸς ἐπ’ ἀμφιβόλῳ τῷ ἀποτελέσματι
also (the)-sultan himself at doubtful the outcome
ἀνεκήκιέ τε καὶ ἐσεσήρει, μετέωρος ὢν τὴν γνώμην καὶ
sweated both and grinned in-suspense being in-the mind and
δεδιὼς περὶ τῷ ὁμογενεῖ. ὁ δὲ περιχάσκων τὸν ἀέρα
fearing about the kinsman he and gaping-at the air
συχνά, καὶ τὸ πνεῦμα διακριβούμενος, τὰς τῶν θεατῶν
often and the wind examining-exactly the of-the spectators
ἐλπίδας ὑπέκλεπτε. καὶ πολλάκις διάρας τὰς χεῖρας
hopes stole and often having-raised the hands
καὶ σχηματίσας ταύτας ὡς πτέρυγας εἰς κίνησιν πτήσεως
and having-shaped them as wings for movement of-flight
ὑπεστείλατο, τὸ πνεῦμα μεταπεμπόμενος. ἐπεὶ δέ ποτε
drew-back the wind summoning when and at-last
φορὸν παρεῖναι καὶ οὔριον δέδοκτο, διατινάσσεται πτηνοῦ
favorable to-be-present and fair it-had-seemed he-shakes-himself-off of-(a)-bird
δίκην, ἀεροβατεῖν οἰηθείς. ἀλλ’ ἦν οὐρανοδρόμος Ἰκάρου
like to-walk-the-air having-thought but was (a)-sky-runner than-Icarus

ἐλεεινότερος. καὶ ὡς σῶμα κεντροβαρὲς χαμαιριφής, οὐχ
more-pitiable and as (a)-body center-heavy thrown-to-ground not
ὡς κοῦφος ἱπτάμενος, καὶ τέλος δὲ καταπεσὼν διέρρηξε
as light flying and (at-the)-end too having-fallen-down he-burst-out
τὴν ψυχήν, γαστροκνημῖδας καὶ χεῖρας καὶ ὅσα τοῦ
the soul calves and hands and as-many-as of-the
σώματος ὀστώδη διαθρυβείς. ἦν τοίνυν ὁ ἐκπετασμὸς
body bony(-parts) shattered was therefore the flying
οὗτος εἰς μωκίαν καὶ γέλωτα τῶν μετὰ τοῦ σουλτάνου
this for mockery and laughter of-the with the sultan
Τούρκων τοῖς ἀστυπολίταις διαθρυλούμενος, οὐδ' ἦν
Turks to-the townsmen noised-about nor was(-it-possible)
ἐπ' ἀγορᾶς ἀκαταγελάστους αὐτοὺς παριέναι, τῶν
in (the)-marketplace unmocked them to-pass of-the
ἀργυροκόπων ἀγοραίων τὰ τῶν τραπεζῶν διαψοφούντων
silversmiths marketmen the of-the tables clattering
σιδήρια. ὡς δ' ἠνωτίζετο ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεύς, διεχεῖτο
irons as and heard these(-things) the emperor was-cheered
μὲν ὡς εἰκός, τὸ στωμύλον καὶ φιλοπαῖγμον τῶν
indeed as (was)-likely the glibness and love-of-jesting of-the(-ones)
ἐπὶ τῶν τριόδων εἰδώς, σουλτάνῳ δὲ χαριζόμενος (κατὰ
at the crossroads knowing to-(the)-sultan and gratifying by
βραχὺ γὰρ τὴν τοῦ βαρβάρου ψυχὴν ὑπεισερχόμενα
little for the of-the barbarian soul entering
ἔδακνε τὰ βωμολοχεύματα) ἐπλάττετο τὸν τὸ ἐκείνων
stung the buffooneries he-feigned the(-one) the their
ἐλευθερόστομον ἀναστέλλοντα.
outspokenness checking

Manuel shows Kilij Arslan a hall heaped with treasure and gives it all to him, and the sultan promises to cede Sebasteia but breaks his word, seizing the lands of his rivals Dadoun and Yaghi-Basan. He calls himself Manuel's son but raids Roman lands, sacks Laodikeia, and kills its bishop. Manuel's generals ambush Turkish herdsmen at night, using a watchword to tell friend from foe.

Μετὰ δὲ τὴν ἀξιάγαστον φιλοφροσύνην δῶρα πολλὰ
after and the admirable kindness gifts many
καὶ λαμπρὰ ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν χρυσώνων ὁ σουλτάνος
and brilliant from the imperial gold-chambers the sultan
ἀπαρυσάμενος, ἐφ' οἷς καὶ ἔκθαμβος ἐγεγένητο καὶ
having-drawn-off at which also astounded he-had-become and
διαπορούμενος ἦν εἰ καὶ ἑτέρων τοσούτων τὸ πλῆθος
at-a-loss was if also of-others so-many the multitude
καὶ τηλικούτων τὸ μέγεθος εὐπορεῖ βασιλεύς, χαίρων
and so-great the size has-plenty (the)-emperor rejoicing
ἐπανέζευξεν ἔμφορτος. ὁ γὰρ αὐτοκράτωρ εἰδὼς μὲν
returned laden the for autocrat knowing indeed
ὅτι βάρβαρος ἅπας λημμάτων ἥττηται, λαμπρυνόμενος
that (a)-barbarian every by-gains is-overcome showing-off
δὲ μάλιστα καὶ ἐκπλῆξαι θέλων τὸν Κλιτζασθλάνην ἐπὶ
and especially and to-astound wishing — Kilij-Arslan at
τοῖς πολυταλάντοις τῶν θησαυρῶν οἷς ἡ βασιλεία
the many-talented of-the treasures with-which the empire
Ῥωμαίων περιερρέετο, ἐν ἑνὶ τῶν κατὰ τὸ ἀρχεῖον
of-(the)-Romans overflowed in one of-the in the palace
λαμπροτάτων ἀνδρώνων ἑξῆς διατέθεικεν ὅσα τούτῳ
most-brilliant halls in-order set-out as-many-as to-him
παρασχέσθαι δῶρα προέθετο. ἦν δὲ ταῦτα χρυσός τε
to-provide (as)-gifts he-purposed were and these gold both

καὶ ἄργυρος κεχομμένος εἰς νόμισμα, καὶ τρυφῶσα ἐσθής,
and silver struck into coin and luxurious clothing
ἀργύρεά τε ἐκπώματα καὶ Θηρίκλεια χρύσεα, καὶ ὀθόναι
silver both cups and Thericlean golden and linens
τῶν ἐξ ὑπερηφάνου ὑφῆς, ἄλλοι τε κόσμοι ἐξαίρετοι,
of-the(-ones) from proud weaving other both ornaments choice
Ῥωμαίοις μὲν καὶ πάνυ εὐπόριστοι, σπάνιοι δὲ παρὰ
for-(the)-Romans indeed and very easy-to-get rare and among
βαρβάροις αὐτοῖς καὶ τὰ πολλὰ μηδὲ θεατοί. εἰσιὼν
barbarians themselves and the most(-part) not-even seen entering
οὖν ὁ βασιλεὺς τὸν ἀνδρῶνα, καὶ τὸν σουλτάνον ἐκεῖσε
then the emperor the hall and the sultan there
μεταπεμψάμενος, ἤρετο εἰ δωρηθῆναί οἱ τοῦ παρόντος
having-summoned asked if to-be-given to-him of-the present
βούλοιτο θησαυροῦ. τοῦ δὲ εἰπόντος ὡς αἱρεῖται ὅσοις
he-would-wish treasure he and having-said that he-chooses as-many-as
αὐτὸν δωρήσηται βασιλεύς, αὖθις ἐπήγαγεν εἴ τις τῶν
him should-give (the)-emperor again added if any of-the
ἀντιπάλων Ῥωμαίοις, αὐτοῦ ταῦτα κενωσαμένου εἰς
opponents to-(the)-Romans him these(-things) having-emptied on
ξενικὸν καὶ ἐνδαπὸν στράτευμα, ὑπενέγκοι ἂν ὅλως τὴν
foreign and native army would-withstand — at-all the
κατ᾽ ἐκείνου τῶν Ῥωμαίων ὁρμήν. τοῦ δὲ ἀγασαμένου
against him of-the Romans onset he and having-admired
καὶ εἰπόντος ὡς εἰ δεσπόζων ἦν τοσούτων χρημάτων,
and having-said that if being-master he-were of-so-much money
εἶχεν ἂν πάλαι τὸ κύκλῳ πολέμιον εἰς ὑπήκοον
he-would-have — long-ago the round-about enemy(-land) to subject
αὐτῷ μεταθέμενος, „φιλοτιμοῦμαί σε τοῖς πᾶσί" φησι
to-himself having-changed I-honor you with-the all says
βασιλεύς, „ἵνα καὶ τοὐμὸν εἰδείης φιλόδωρόν τε ἅμα
(the)-emperor that also the-my you-might-know generosity both at-once

καὶ μεγαλόδωρον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅσων ἐστὶ κύριος χρημάτων
and munificence but also of-how-much is lord of-money
ὁ τοιούτοις καὶ τοσούτοις ἕνα δωρούμενος." ὁ δὲ
the(-one) with-such and so-great(-gifts) one giving he and
ἥσθη τε καὶ ἐξέστη τῇ ἀπομαγδαλιᾷ τῶν χρημάτων,
was-pleased both and was-amazed at-the bread-crumb of-the money
τυφλώττων πρὸς κέρδος, καὶ βασιλεῖ τὴν Σεβάστειαν
being-blind toward gain and to-(the)-emperor — Sebasteia
καὶ τὴν ταύτης χώραν παρασχέσθαι κατεπηγγείλατο. ὁ
and the its land to-provide promised —
Μανουὴλ δὲ τὴν ὑπόσχεσιν ταύτην ἀσμένως δεξάμενος,
Manuel and the promise this gladly having-received
καὶ ἕτερα δώσειν ξυνέθετο χρήματα, εἰ τοὺς λόγους τοῖς
also other to-give covenanted money if the words with-the
ἔργοις πιστώσηται. καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν τὴν τοῦ βαρβάρου
deeds he-should-confirm and himself indeed the of-the barbarian
προφθάνων ῥοπήν, καὶ ἕως ἔτι ὁ σίδηρος ἐν ἀκμῇ, ἐνεργῷ
anticipating inclination and while still the iron in heat effective
χρήσασθαι τούτῳ βουλόμενος, διεπεπράχει ὡς εἰρήκει
to-use this wishing had-done as he-had-said
μετὰ καιρόν· στείλας γὰρ τὸν Γαβρᾶν Κωνσταντῖνον
after (a)-time having-dispatched for — Gabras Constantine
ἐξέπεμψεν αὐτῷ φιλοτιμήματα ἄλλα ἄττα συχνὰ καὶ
he-sent to-him gifts other some many and
παντοδαποὺς ὁπλισμούς. ὁ δὲ ἀπατεὼν ὢν καὶ μηδ' ὅλως
all-kinds-of armaments he and (a)-cheat being and not at-all
ἀλήθειαν ἐγνωκώς ποτε, τῶν τε συνθηκῶν ἐπελάθετο
truth having-known ever of-the both covenants forgot
ἀπελθὼν εἰς Ἰκόνιον, καὶ τὴν Σεβάστειαν ἐκπορθήσας
having-gone-away to Ikonion and — Sebasteia having-sacked
καὶ τὰ ὑπ' αὐτὴν χειρωσάμενος γέγονε τῶν ὅλων
and the(-places) under it having-subdued he-became of-the whole

αὐτὸς ἐγκρατής. ἐπειδὴ δὲ καὶ τὸν Δαδούνην τῆς οἰκείας
himself master since and also — Dadoun from-the own
ἀρχῆς παρέλυσεν, ἐκεῖνον μὲν δραπέτην καὶ πλανήτην
rule he-removed that(-man) indeed (a)-runaway and (a)-wanderer
εἰργάσατο, τῆς δὲ Καισαρείας αὐτὸς λαβόμενος καὶ τὸν
he-made — and of-Caesarea himself having-taken-hold and the
λοιπὸν μετήρχετο ξύμφυλον, τὸν Ἰαγουπασάνην φημί,
remaining pursued kinsman — Yaghi-Basan I-mean
νοσήσας κἀπὶ τῇ τούτου ἔρωτα χώρᾳ καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα
having-been-sick also-for the his love land and the man
διψῶν ἀνελεῖν. ὁ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς τὸ οἰκεῖον συγκροτῶν ἐν
thirsting to-destroy he and also himself the own assembling in
τῷ μέρει στρατόπεδον, καὶ ὡς πρὸς ἀνταγωνιστὴν ἤδη
his turn army and as against (an)-antagonist already
μείζονα περιβαλλόμενον δύναμιν παραταττόμενος, φθάνει
greater surrounding-himself-with power drawing-up is-anticipated
θανάτῳ τὴν προθυμίαν διακοπείς. Δαδούνης δὲ ὡς εἰς
by-death the eagerness having-been-cut-short Dadoun and as into
ἐρήμην δυνάστου τὴν τῶν Ἀμασέων σατραπείαν παρεισιὼν
(a)-deserted of-(a)-lord the of-the Amaseans satrapy entering
ἐκεῖθέν τε ἀποκρούεται, καὶ τῇ μεταπεμψαμένῃ
thence both is-repulsed and to-the(-woman) having-summoned
τοῦτον τῇ τοῦ Ἰαγουπασάνη συνεύνῳ θανάτου αἴτιος
him the — of-Yaghi-Basan bedfellow of-death (the)-cause
γίνεται· οἱ γὰρ Ἀμασεῖς ἐπαναστάντες αὐτήν τε ὡς
becomes the for Amaseans having-risen-up her both as
λάθρᾳ τῷ Δαδούνῃ μνηστεύουσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ἠμύναντο
secretly — for-Dadoun courting the rule punished
τελευτῇ, καὶ Δαδούνην ἀδοξήσαντες ἄρχοντα μακρὰν
with-death and Dadoun having-scorned (as)-ruler far
ἀπεώσαντο. ἀλλ' οὐχὶ καὶ τοῦ Κλιζασθλᾶν γεγόνασιν
thrust-away but not also — than-Kilij-Arslan became

ἰσχυρότεροι, ἀλλ᾽ οὗτος αὐτῶν φανεὶς δυνατώτερος,
stronger but this(-man) than-them having-appeared more-powerful
ὡς εἶχε πρώην Καππαδοκίαν, οὕτω καὶ Ἀμάσειαν εἵληφεν
as he-had formerly Cappadocia thus also Amaseia took
ὕστερον, ὀξείᾳ καὶ ἐπιτυχεῖ τύχῃ πρὸς τὰ πράγματα
later with-sharp and successful fortune for the affairs
χρώμενος, ἄνθρωπος οὐκ εὐφυὴς τὴν διαρτίαν τοῦ
using (a)-man not well-formed in-the arrangement of-the
σώματος, ἀλλ᾽ ἠκρωτηριασμένος ἐν οὐκ ὀλίγοις τῶν
body but mutilated in not few of-the
καιρίων μελῶν. αὐτίκα γὰρ αἱ χεῖρες τούτῳ ἐξήρθρωντο
vital members for-instance for the hands to-him had-been-dislocated
καὶ τὼ πόδε ὑποσκάζοντε ἦσαν, καὶ τὰ πολλὰ ἐφ᾽
and the two-feet limping were and the most(-part) on
ἁρμαμάξης τὴν πορείαν πεποίητο. ὅθεν καὶ τὰς ἀρχὰς
(a)-carriage the journey he-had-made whence also the beginnings
τῶν κατ᾽ αὐτοῦ σκωμμάτων ἐξ αὐτοῦ δὴ Ἀνδρόνικος
of-the against him jests from him indeed Andronikos
ἐσέπειτα πoριζόμενος Κουτζασθλάνην τοῦτον ὠνόμαζε,
thereafter procuring Koutzasthlanes this(-man) named
φιλολοίδορος ὢν εἴπερ τις ἄλλος, καὶ καθάψασθαι
fond-of-abuse being if-indeed anyone else and to-attack
ἀνθρώπων δεινότατος, καὶ λόγοις Κερκώπων ἁπαλοῖς
men most-clever and with-words of-Kerkopes soft
τοῖς οὐ καλῶς πεπραγμένοις τῶν ἔργων ἢ τοῖς
at-the not well done of-the deeds or at-the(-ones)
ἀηδῶς τοῦ σώματος ἔχουσι μῶμον προστρίψασθαι
unpleasantly in-the body being blame to-rub-on
ἱκανώτατος. ὁ μὲν οὖν ὁποῖος ἂν καὶ ἦν τὴν πλάσιν τοῦ
most-able he indeed then whatever — also was in-the shape of-the
σώματος, — εἶχε δὲ ὡς αὐτόν, οἶμαι, ἡ πλάστρια φύσις
body had and as him I-think the shaping nature

ἐπαλαμήσατο, — μεγάλην ἀρχὴν εἰληχὼς καὶ τοσαύτας
had-contrived great rule having-obtained and such
δυνάμεις περιβαλόμενος οὐχ εἵλετο ἐντεῦθεν βίοτον
forces having-surrounded-himself-with not chose thence life
ἤρεμον, ἀλλὰ φύσει ταραχώδης ὢν καὶ ἀκαταστόρεστος
quiet but by-nature troublesome being and unquietable
ὥσπερ τις κόλπος θαλάττιος, Ῥωμαίοις μὲν ἐν
as some gulf of-the-sea with-(the)-Romans indeed in
οἷς εἶχε λυπεῖν ἀκηρυκτὶ διεφέρετο καὶ ἀνέγκλητον
what-things he-was-able to-grieve without-herald quarreled and blameless
πολλάκις ἐπῆγε τὸν πόλεμον, σὺν οὐδενὶ λόγῳ θεσμὰ
often brought the war with no reason ordinances
παρατρέχων, καὶ συγχέων μὲν σπονδάς, τῇ οἰκείᾳ δ'
overrunning and confounding indeed treaties by-the own and
ἐφέσει ταλαντεύων τὸ πραχθησόμενον. οὐδ' αὐτῆς
desire weighing the to-be-done not-even from-the-very
οὖν ἀπέσχετο τῆς Μελιτηνῆς, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸν ταύτης
then refrained — Melitene but also the its
ἔχων καθελεῖν ἀμηρᾶν, μηδὲ τὸ τῆς θρησκείας
having(-power) to-overthrow emir not-even the of-the religion
ταὐτὸν ὑπειδόμενος ἢ τὸ μηδὲν ἔχειν ἐπεγκαλεῖν ἀλγεινὸν
sameness regarding or the nothing to-have to-charge grievous
τῷ ἀνθρώπῳ, αὐτὸς ἀνεπικαλύπτως αἰτίαν πλασάμενος
against-the man himself openly (a)-cause having-feigned
καὶ γραψάμενος ἐκεῖθεν αὐτὸν ἐξήλασεν. ἔπειτα καὶ
and having-indicted(-him) thence him drove-out then also
τὸν οἰκεῖον ὑφέρπων κασίγνητον μετανάστην κἀκεῖνον
the own creeping-on brother (an)-emigrant that(-one)-too
ἔθετο. οἱ δὲ φυγάδες πρὸς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα ἵκοντο. καὶ
he-made the and fugitives to the autocrat came and
ταῦτα μὲν συμβέβηκεν ὕστερον· τότε δὲ πολυδύναμος
these(-things) indeed happened later then and very-powerful

γεγονὼς τὸ πρὸς τὸν βασιλέα αἰδῆμον ἀπεξύσατο, καὶ
having-become the toward the emperor respect scraped-off and
ἣν αὐτὸς θεραπείαν προσῆγε ταῖς τῶν πραγμάτων
which himself service brought by-the of-the affairs
δυσκολίαις ἀγχόμενος, ταύτην ἐξῃτεῖτό οἱ παρέχειν
difficulties being-choked this he-demanded to-him to-provide
τὸν αὐτοκράτορα, βαρβαρικῶς μεταλλοιούμενος τῷ
the autocrat barbarously changing with-the
καιρῷ, καὶ δεῆσαν ὑπὲρ τὸ δέον ὑποστελλόμενος, καὶ
time and when-needful beyond the needful shrinking and
πτεροῦ αὖθις ἐλαφριζόμενος εὐπετέστερον, ὅτε τῇ ἑτέρᾳ
than-(a)-feather again being-lightened more-easily when to-the other
πλάστιγγι ῥοπὴν ἡ τύχη παρείχετο, τοῖς παλινστρόφοις
scale inclination the fortune provided for-the shifting
βραβεύουσα πράγμασι. παττάλῳ δ' ὑπεκκρουόμενος
arbitrating affairs with-(a)-peg and being-knocked-out
πάττακος ἐξομαλίζων ἦν τὸν βασιλέα καὶ θεραπεύων
(a)-peg smoothing was the emperor and courting
ἐνιαχοῦ, οὐ μὴν ὑπ' ἐκείνου θηροκομούμενος διεδείκνυτο,
sometimes not indeed by that(-man) being-tamed was-shown
καὶ δόξαν ἀπονέμων πατρὸς υἱοθεσίας τιμὴν ἐλάμβανε·
and glory assigning of-father of-adoption honor received
καὶ ἦν τὰ παρ' ἀλλήλων χαραττόμενα γράμματα πατέρα
and were the from one-another written letters father
βασιλέα καὶ σουλτάνον υἱὸν καταγγέλλοντα. πλὴν οὐδ'
emperor and sultan son proclaiming however not-even
οὕτως ἐς φιλίαν ἀκραιφνῆ συνηρμόζοντο ἢ γοῦν τὰς
thus into friendship pure were-fitted or at-any-rate the
σπονδὰς οὐ ξυνέχεον. ὅθεν ὁ μὲν κατὰ χειμάρρουν
treaties not confounded whence he indeed like (a)-torrent
πληθύοντα ἢ κατὰ πολλὰ ἐδηδοκότα φάρμακα δράκοντα
swelling or like many having-eaten drugs (a)-serpent

κατέκλυζέ τε καὶ παρέσυρε τὸ προστυχόν, καὶ συχνὰ
flooded both and swept-away the(-thing) meeting(-him) and often
τῶν ἡμετέρων πολιχνίων κατέχασκε, τὸν τῆς κακίας
of-the our townlets gaped the of-the wickedness
ἀποπτύων ἰόν· ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς περιεφράγμου τούτου
spitting venom the and emperor fenced-around his
τὰς διεξόδους καὶ εἰς ἀνάρρουν τὸ ῥεῦμα ὑπανεστοίβαζε
the outlets and into backward-flow the stream piled-up
θριγγίῳ ἀρραγεῖ στρατοπέδου, ἢ ὁλκῇ χρυσίου
with-fence unbreakable of-camp or with-(the)-weight of-gold
ἐφολκοῦ κατεκοίμιζε πρὸς εἰρήνην τὸ τούτου βλέφαρον,
attractive lulled to peace the his eyelid
καὶ ἧν τέως εἰς λῃστείαν ἐπηγρίαινε λοφιὰν καὶ τὸν
and which hitherto for brigandage he-roused crest and the
ὁλκὸν ὃν ἐπεσύρετο τοῦ στρατεύματος κατασιγάζων
trail which he-dragged of-the army silencing
ἐπράϋνεν. ἐνίοτε δὲ τοὺς ὡς πώεα πλατέα διεκκεχυμένους
he-calmed sometimes and the as flocks broad poured-out
τοῖς Ῥωμαϊκοῖς σχοινίσμασι Τούρκους ἀναστέλλων τοῖς
over-the Roman measured-lands Turks checking the(-ones)
περὶ τὴν πεντάπολιν ἐπιτίθεται, καὶ σωμάτων ἀνθρωπίνων
about the Pentapolis attacks and of-bodies human
καὶ ζώων πολλῶν γενόμενος ἐγκρατής, μηδ' εἰς χεῖρας
and of-animals many having-become master not-even into hands
δεξαμένων αὐτὸν τῶν Περσῶν, τροπαιοφόρος ἐπανέζευξεν,
having-received him the Persians trophy-bearing returned
ὁπηνίκα καὶ Σολυμᾶς ὁ τῶν παρὰ τῷ σουλτάνῳ τὰ
when also Solymas the of-the(-men) with the sultan the
μέγιστα δυναμένων κορυφαιότατος τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐποφθεὶς
greatest being-powerful chief to-the emperor having-been-seen
πολλὰ μὲν ὑπερηγόρει τοῦ σουλτάνου, ἀποτρέπων τῆς
much indeed pleaded-for the sultan turning-away from-the

ἐκείνου γνώμης τὰ παρὰ τῶν Τούρκων πραττόμενα καὶ
his mind the(-things) by the Turks done and
σοφιστικῶς οἷς διεξῄει καταχαριζόμενος, ἀσύμφωνα δ'
sophistically by-what he-went-through ingratiating discordant but
ὅμως τοῖς πράγμασι φθεγγόμενος ἡλίσκετο ψευδολογίας
nevertheless with-the facts speaking was-caught on-(a)-charge
ἐγκλήματι· πλὴν οὐδ' οὕτω τι πρὸς βασιλέως
of-lying however not-even thus anything from (the)-emperor
πέπονθεν ἄχαρι Σολυμᾶς. θεραπεύων δὲ καὶ ὑπὲρ τὸ
suffered unpleasant Solymas courting and even beyond the
ἀληθές, ὡς ἔθος τοῖς βαρβάροις, τὸν ἄνακτα, καὶ
true as (is)-custom for-the barbarians the lord and
τὰ ἐς ἀπάτην τεχναζόμενος ἵπποις αὐτὸν ὠκύποσιν
the(-things) for deceit contriving with-horses him swift-footed
ἐκολάκευσεν, οὓς τὸ ἐκείνου ἐσίτευεν ἱππostάσιον. ὁ
flattered which the his fed stable the
δὲ βασιλεὺς τοὺς ἵππους δεξάμενος καὶ Σολυμᾶν τῆς
and emperor the horses having-received and Solymas for-the
εὐγνωμοσύνης καὶ ὑποταγῆς ἀποδεξάμενος, εἰ καὶ μὴ τῆς
good-feeling and submission having-approved if even not of-the
ἐκείνου γνώμης ἴδιον ἦν, τοῦ δὲ καιροῦ ὑπῆρχε δῶρον τὸ
his mind (its)-own was of-the and occasion was (a)-gift the
φιλοφρόνημα, πρὸς τὸν σουλτάνον ἀπέστειλεν ἐξηγησόμενον
kindness to the sultan sent going-to-explain
ἐκείνῳ ἃ οὐκ ἦν ἀγνοῶν, καὶ ἐς αὐτὸ τοῦ τρόπου
to-him what-things not he-was ignorant-of and to it of-the character
ἀποσκώψοντα τὸ παλίμβολον τὸ ἄπιστόν τε καὶ τὸ
going-to-jeer-at the changeability the faithlessness both and the
κακόηθες, κἂν οὐκ ἦν αὐτὸν ἠρεμήσειν ἐπὶ τούτοις
malice even-if not was(-it-likely) him to-be-quiet at these(-things)
ἢ γοῦν καθυπερθέσθαι καὶ πρὸς βραχὺ Ῥωμαίοις τὴν
or at-any-rate to-put-off even for (a)-little to-(the)-Romans the

ἀντιπάθειαν. ἐκλόπευε γοῦν ταῖς συνήθεσι ληστείαις
hostility he-pilfered at-any-rate the customary brigandages
χρώμενος. στείλας δὲ καὶ φάλαγγας ἐπιλέκτους τὴν κατὰ
using having-sent and also phalanxes picked the in
Φρυγίαν ἐκπορθεῖ Λαοδίκειαν, οὐκέτι οὖσαν συνοικουμένην
Phrygia sacks Laodikeia no-longer being inhabited
ὡς νῦν ἑώραται, οὐδ' εὐερκέσι φραγνυμένην τείχεσι,
as now it-is-seen nor by-well-fenced fortified walls
κατὰ δὲ κώμας ἐκκεχυμένην περὶ τὰς ὑπωρείας τῶν
in but villages poured-out about the foothills of-the
ἐκεῖσε βουνῶν. ἤλασε δ' ἐκεῖθεν βαρεῖαν λείαν ἀνθρώπων
there hills drove and thence heavy booty of-men
καὶ ζώων πλῆθος οὐ σταθμητόν· οὐ μετρίους δὲ
and of-animals (a)-multitude not weighable not moderate(-numbers) and
καὶ κατέκτανεν, ἐν οἷς καὶ τὸν ἀρχιερέα Σολομῶντα,
also he-killed among whom also the high-priest Solomon
ἐκτομίαν μὲν ἄνθρωπον, χαρίεντα δ' ἄλλως τὸ ἦθος
(a)-eunuch indeed (a)-man graceful but otherwise in-the character
καὶ θεῷ δι' ἀρετῆς προσεγγίζοντα. εἰρωνευόμενος δ'
and to-God through virtue drawing-near dissembling and
ἔφασκε πρὸς τοὺς οἰκείους ὡς ὅσῳ ἂν μείζω δράσειε
he-said to the own(-men) that by-as-much-as — greater he-might-do
Ῥωμαίους δεινά, τοσούτῳ μείζω παρὰ βασιλέως
(the)-Romans terrible(-things) by-so-much greater from (the)-emperor
ἀγαθὰ πείσεται· „ᾧ γὰρ πάρεστί" φησι „τὸ κρατεῖν,
good(-things) he-will-suffer for-whom for is-present he-says the to-prevail
τούτῳ καὶ αἱ δωρεαὶ φιλοῦσιν ἐπιξενίζεσθαι, ἵνα μὴ πλεῖον
for-him also the gifts love to-be-entertained that not more
ᾖ τὸ νικᾶν, ἐπειδὴ καὶ τὰ φλεγμαίνοντα τῶν σωμάτων
be the to-win since also the inflamed(-parts) of-the bodies
τὰς νοσοκομίας ἐπισπῶνται πλείονας, ἵνα ἀντισπῶνται καὶ
the cares draw more that they-be-drawn-back and

σταῖεν τὰ πρόσω νεμόμενα.” οὐδ’ ὁ Μανουὴλ μέντοι
might-stand the(-things) forward spreading nor — Manuel however
ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡσυχίαν ἠσπάσατο, ἀλλὰ πρῶτα μὲν διὰ
at these(-things) quiet welcomed but first indeed through
τοῦ Γουδελίου Τζυκανδήλη, εἶτα καὶ διὰ τοῦ Ἀγγέλου
— Goudelios Tzykandeles then also through — Angelos
Μιχαὴλ τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπέθετο, ὅσοι πολυθρέμμονες
Michael the Turks attacked as-many-as many-flocked
ὄντες ἀναδιφῶσι πόας τὰς λειμωνίτιδας καὶ τούτων ἕνεκα
being search grasses the meadow and of-these for-the-sake
τῶν οἰκείων ἠθῶν ἀπανιστάμενοι παγγενεὶ τὰ Ῥωμαίων
from-the own haunts departing with-all-the-race the of-(the)-Romans
ἐπεισίασιν ὅρια. οὗτοι γὰρ ἐς λόχους τὸ τῶν στρατοπέδων
enter borders these for into ambushes the of-the armies
συντάξαντες εὔζωνον καὶ μεθ’ ἑαυτῶν παραλαβόντες
having-arranged light-armed(-force) and with themselves having-taken
ἐξήεσαν. ἀμείνω δὲ τὴν νύκτα κρίνοντες εἰς τὴν τῶν
went-out better and the night judging for the of-the
ἐναντίων ἐπίθεσιν, σύνθημα δεδώκασι τῷ στρατῷ ἐν
opponents attack (a)-password gave to-the army in
τῷ κατὰ σκότον συμπλέκεσθαι τοῖς Τούρκοις ἀναφωνεῖν
the in darkness to-grapple with-the Turks to-call-out
„σίδηρος,” ὡς εἴη αὐτοῖς οὕτως ἀντιπαρέρχεσθαι
iron so-that it-might-be for-them thus to-pass-by
μὲν τὸ ὁμόφυλον ὡς ὁμόφωνον, τὸ δὲ σιγῇ ἐπιὸν
indeed the kindred as same-voiced the(-one) and in-silence approaching
καίνοιεν ὡς ἀλλόγλωσσον. καὶ τοῦτο δι’ ὅλης τῆς τότε
they-might-kill as of-other-tongue and this through whole the then
συμπλοκῆς ἐπιφωνούμενον διέστελλε τὰ γένη, καὶ τὸ
clash called-out distinguished the races and the(-word)
τοῦ Δαβίδ, ὁ σίδηρος τὰς τῶν Περσῶν ψυχὰς διήρχετο.
— of-David the iron the of-the Persians souls went-through

μετὰ δὲ πολὺν ὀψέ ποτε φόνον οἱ Τοῦρκοι συνιέντες
after and much late at-last slaughter the Turks understanding
ὃ βούλεται τὸ ἀνὰ στόμα Ῥωμαίοις κείμενον,
what means the(-word) on (the)-mouth of-(the)-Romans lying
ξυνῳδὰ σφίσι καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐφθέγγοντο, ἕως τῆς νυκτὸς
in-unison with-them also themselves uttered until the night
διαγενομένης ἀπ᾽ ἀλλήλων διέστησαν τὰ στρατεύματα.
having-passed from one-another separated the armies
πολλαὶ μὲν οὖν ἐκδρομαὶ τὸ τηνικαῦτα καιροῦ τῷ
many indeed then sallies at-the then of-time by-the
βασιλεῖ τούτῳ κατὰ τῶν Τούρκων ἐγένοντο, καὶ παρὰ
emperor this against the Turks happened and by
τούτων αὖθις Ῥωμαίοις ἐπιξυνέστησαν· παρῆκα δὲ
them again against-(the)-Romans were-raised I-have-passed-over and
τούτων ὅσαι σὺν τῷ μὴ ἀξιαφήγητόν τι κεκτῆσθαι
of-these as-many-as with the not worth-telling anything to-possess
καὶ κόρον τοῖς φιληκόοις ἐμποιήσειν ἤμελλον, οἷα τὰ
also satiety in-the lovers-of-listening going-to-produce were-likely as the
πολλὰ εἰς ταὐτὰ τὴν ἱστορίαν ἐπαναστρέφουσαι καὶ
most(-part) to the-same(-things) the history turning-back and
μηδέν τι παρεξηλλαχὸς εἰς τὴν διήγησιν ἔχουσαι.
nothing at-all different for the narration having

I · THE HUNGARIAN SUCCESSION

Of the Hungarian king Geza's brothers, Stephen and Ladislaus flee to Manuel; Stephen marries his niece. When Geza dies, Manuel backs Stephen, but the Hungarians reject him for his Roman marriage; Ladislaus rules briefly, then Geza's son Stephen. Manuel betroths his daughter Maria to Geza's son Bela and plans to make him his heir. The elder Stephen, Manuel's candidate, is poisoned by his own servant, bribed by his Hungarian enemies, and the Hungarians take Zeugminon.

Ἐπάνειμι δ' αὖθις ἐπὶ τὰ Παιονικά, σαφηνείας δ'
I-return and again to the Paeonian(-affairs) of-clarity and
ἕνεκα τοῦ ἱστορεῖν προαναβαλοῦμαι ταυτί. τῷ τότε
for-the-sake of-the narrating I-shall-first-set-out these(-things) to-the then
ἄρχοντι τῶν Οὔννων Ἰατζᾷ δύο ἦσαν ὁμαίμονες, Στέφανός
ruler of-the Huns Geza two were brothers Stephen
τε καὶ Βλαδίσθλαβος, καὶ παῖδες Στέφανος καὶ Βελᾶς. τῶν
both and Ladislaus and children Stephen and Bela of-the
ἀδελφῶν τοίνυν ὁ Στέφανος τὰς ὁμογνίους ἐκφυγὼν χεῖρας
brothers therefore — Stephen the kindred having-escaped hands
κατ' αὐτοῦ φονώσας τὴν Κωνσταντίνου κατέλαβε, καὶ
against him murderous the(-city) of-Constantine reached and
προσδεχθεὶς ἀσπασίως τῷ αὐτοκράτορι Μανουὴλ ἄλλης
having-been-received gladly by-the autocrat Manuel of-other
τε φιλοφροσύνης ὡς πλείστης ηὐμοίρησεν, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ
both kindness as most was-blessed but indeed also
Μαρίαν ἔγημε τὴν τούτου ἀνεψιάν, ἣν ὁ σεβαστοκράτωρ
Maria married the his niece whom the sebastokrator
ἐφύτευσεν Ἰσαάκιος. μετὰ βραχὺ δὲ καὶ ὁ τῶν ἀδελφῶν
begot Isaac after (a)-little and also the of-the brothers

τρίτος Βλαδίσθλαβος κατ᾽ ἴχνια βαίνων τῷ Στεφάνῳ τῷ
third Ladislaus in (the)-tracks going — of-Stephen —
Μανουὴλ προσεχώρησεν, οὐ τοσοῦτον Ἰατζᾶ καταγνοὺς
to-Manuel went-over not so-much Geza having-condemned
ὡς μὴ φιλοῦντος ὅσον εἰκός, ἢ ἐξ ἐκείνου ἐπιβουλὴν
as not loving as-much-as (was)-likely or from that(-man) (a)-plot
πτοηθείς, ὅσον τῇ τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ Στεφάνου φήμῃ
having-feared as-much-as by-the of-the brother Stephen fame
γοητευθεὶς καὶ πρὸς αὐτὸν τὴν πορείαν τεινάμενος. τῷ τοι
bewitched and toward him the journey having-stretched for surely
οὐδ᾽ αὐτὸς ἐξέπεσε τῶν ἐλπίδων ἢ ἀναξίως τοῦ γένους
not-even himself fell-short of-the hopes or unworthily of-the family
τῷ βασιλεῖ προσείληπται, ἀλλὰ πάντα οἱ ἀπηντήκει
by-the emperor was-received but all(-things) to-him had-turned-out
κατὰ σκοπόν. καὶ γυναῖκα δὲ ἣν ἠβούλετο ἀγαγέσθαι,
according-to aim and (a)-wife too whom he-wished to-take
καὶ ταύτην ἐκ βασιλείου ἂν ἔγημεν αἵματος.
and this(-one) from imperial — he-would-have-married blood
ἀλλὰ γάμου μὲν ἀπέσχετο, ἵνα μὴ τῆς ἐς πατρίδα
but from-marriage indeed he-refrained that not of-the to (the)-fatherland
λαθόμενος ἐπανόδου τὰ οἴκοι διαφθεροῖ, τῷ λωτῷ
having-forgotten return the(-things) at-home he-might-ruin to-the lotus
τῆς γυναικὸς προσηλούμενος. ἀλλ᾽ οἷα τὰ ἐπὶ τούτοις;
of-the woman nailed but as the(-things) upon these
τελευτᾷ ὁ τῶν Οὔννων ῥὴξ Ἰατζᾶς, καὶ ὁ θάνατος
ends the of-the Huns king Geza and the death
ἥμερος, τῆς φύσεως ὃ ἐνέτεινε βάρβιτον ὑποχαλασάσης
tame of-the nature which stretched (a)-lyre having-slackened
τῆς ἁρμονίας καὶ διαλυσάσης πρὸς ἃ καὶ ἐξ ὧν
the harmony and having-dissolved(-it) into what-things also from which
συντέθειται. ἡ δ᾽ ἀρχὴ ἐπὶ τὸν ἐκείνου διαβαίνει παῖδα
it-has-been-composed the and rule to the his passes child

τὸν Στέφανον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ὡς ἐκ ῥίζης ἀνομοίου
— Stephen the and emperor as from (a)-root unlike
φυέν τι κάλλιστον τὸ γεγονὸς ἡγησάμενος, καὶ
having-grown something most-fine the event having-considered and
κατὰ νοῦν ἀναπολήσας ὡς εἰ πρὸς τὸν ἐπ᾽ ἀνεψιᾷ γαμβρὸν
in mind having-pondered that if to the by niece in-law
Στέφανον, ὡς δῆθεν εἰς ἀρχὴν δικαιούμενον, ἡ τῶν
Stephen as supposedly to rule entitled the of-the
Οὔννων μεταβαίη σατράπευσις, σχοίη ἂν τὰ πρῶτα κλέος
Huns should-pass satrapy would-have — the first glory
αὐτός, ἔπειτα ἡ βασιλεία Ῥωμαίων μέρος ἴσως ἐκεῖθεν
himself then the empire of-(the)-Romans (a)-part perhaps thence
δασμοῦ, ἐκ τοῦ ἀναντιρρήτου δ᾽ οὖν ἀσφαλῆ τὴν τοῦ
of-tribute from the indisputable(-ground) and at-any-rate secure the —
Ζευγμίνου καὶ τοῦ Φραγγοχωρίου κατάσχεσιν, συντείνει τὸ
of-Zeugminon and — of-Frankochorion possession strains the
πρόθυμον πρὸς τὴν τῶν σκοπουμένων ἐκπλήρωσιν.
eagerness toward the of-the(-things) considered fulfillment
καὶ εἶχεν εὐθὺς τοὺς μὲν πρέσβεις ἡ τῶν Οὔννων
and had at-once the indeed envoys the of-the Huns
χώρα, οἵτινες αὐτοῖς καταστάντες ἤμελλον ξυνδιαθέσθαι
land who among-them having-arrived were-about to-help-arrange
Στεφάνῳ τὸν τῆς ἀρχῆς στέφανον, μετὰ βραχὺ δὲ αὐτὸν
for-Stephen the of-the rule crown after (a)-little and him
ἡ Σαρδική. Οὖννοι μὲν οὖν καὶ πρὸς τὴν πρώτην ἀκοὴν
— Sardike Huns indeed then even at the first hearing
ἀπεπήδησαν τοῦ Στεφάνου, καὶ τοῖς ὠσὶ βαρέως ἤκουσαν
leapt-away — from-Stephen and with-the ears heavily heard
τὴν τούτου προσηγορίαν, καὶ δι᾽ ἄλλα μὲν φάσκοντες
the his name and for other(-reasons) indeed saying
ἀποπέμπεσθαι τοῦτον, μάλιστα δὲ διὰ τὸ γῆμαι παρὰ
to-send-away him especially and for the to-have-married among

Ῥωμαίοις· αὐτοῖς δὲ ἀσύμφορον ὅλως εἶναι προσέσθαι
(the)-Romans for-themselves and unprofitable wholly to-be to-receive
ἄνδρα κατὰ κῆδος τῷ βασιλεῖ Ῥωμαίων συναπτόμενον·
(a)-man by marriage to-the emperor of-(the)-Romans joined
ὑποβλέπεσθαι γὰρ μή πως Οὖννοι μὲν ὑπ' αὐτοῦ
to-be-suspected for lest somehow Huns indeed by him
βασιλεύωνται, αὐτὸς δὲ ὑπὸ τοῦ τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἄρχηται
should-be-ruled himself and by the of-the Romans be-ruled
καὶ ὁρίζηται βασιλεύοντος. διὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν οὔτε τῷ
and be-bounded reigning(-one) because-of these(-things) therefore neither —
Στεφάνῳ ἐκεῖσέ ποι ἀφικομένῳ προσέκειντο, καὶ τοὺς
to-Stephen there somewhere having-arrived adhered and the(-ones)
κατάγοντας αὐτὸν ἐκ βασιλέως ἀπράκτους ἠφίεσαν. ἔνθεν
bringing him from (the)-emperor unsuccessful let-go whence
τοι καὶ διὰ μείζονος ἰσχύος ἐπιβοηθῆσαι τῷ Στεφάνῳ
surely also through greater strength to-help — Stephen
δεῖν ὁ βασιλεὺς οἰηθεὶς αὐτός τε ἐκ Σαρδικῆς ἀπάρας
needful the emperor having-thought himself both from Sardike having-set-out
ἀφικνεῖται πρὸς τὰ παρίστρια, λέγω δὴ τὰ κατὰ
arrives at the (lands)-by-the-Ister I-mean indeed the(-lands) about
Βρανίτζοβαν καὶ Βελέγραδα, καὶ τὸν ἀδελφιδοῦν Ἀλέξιον
Branitzova and Belgrade and the nephew Alexios
τὸν Κοντοστέφανον συνεκπέμπει τῷ Στεφάνῳ μετὰ ἰσχύος,
the Kontostephanos sends-with — Stephen with strength
οἳ καὶ ὡς τὸν Χράμον κατέλαβον, ὡς ἐνῆν τὰ
who also as — Chramon reached as was-possible the(-things)
πρὸς ἀρχὴν διεπράττοντο, ὑποποιούμενοί τε δώροις τοὺς
for rule did winning-over both with-gifts the(-ones)
μέγα παρὰ Παίοσι δυναμένους καὶ κολακείᾳ ὑποφθείροντες
greatly among Paeonians being-powerful and with-flattery corrupting
καὶ ὑποσχέσεσι μεγίσταις ἐπαίροντες· ἐπέραινον δὲ οὐδὲν
and with-promises greatest raising accomplished and nothing

ἢ ὅσον Βλαδίσθλαβον τὸν τοῦ Στεφάνου κασίγνητον
than as-much-as Ladislaus the — of-Stephen brother
Οὔννους εἰς ἄρχοντα δέξασθαι. ἀλλὰ καὶ τούτου βραχύν
Huns as ruler to-receive but also this(-man) short
τινα χρόνον ἐπιβιώσαντος τῇ ἀρχῇ, ἐς τὸν τοῦ Ἰατζᾶ
some time having-survived in-the rule to the — of-Geza
υἱὸν Στέφανον οἱ Οὔννοι πάλιν προσέρρεψαν. ἀλλ᾽ οὔτε
son Stephen the Huns again inclined but neither
βασιλεὺς πράως ἤνεγκε τὸ γεγονός, καὶ ὁ τοῦ Ἰατζᾶ
(the)-emperor mildly bore the event and the — of-Geza
κασίγνητος Στέφανος βασιλέως συναιρομένου πάντα ἦν
brother Stephen (the)-emperor helping all(-things) was
μηχανώμενος, εἴ πως τῆς ἀρχῆς ἐπιτεύξεται. πολλῶν
contriving if somehow the rule he-will-obtain many
οὖν ἕνεκα τούτου συμβεβηκότων πολέμων, καὶ τοῦ
then for-the-sake of-this having-happened wars and the
βασιλέως τὸν τοῦ Ἰατζᾶ υἱὸν τὸν Βελᾶν εἰς γαμβρὸν
emperor the — of-Geza son — Bela as son-in-law
ἀνελομένου ἐπὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ ἐκείνου Μαρίᾳ, ὃν καὶ
having-taken-up for the daughter his Maria whom also
διάδοχον τῆς βασιλείας ἐμελέτα ποιῆσαι, οἱ τῶν Οὔννων
successor of-the empire he-planned to-make the of-the Huns
ἀντικαθήμενοι τῷ Στεφάνῳ τὰς πρώτας τῶν ἐλπίδων
opposing — to-Stephen the first of-the hopes
ἐκριζοῦντες βλάστας καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες, τὸ ἐκ περιόδων
uprooting shoots and cutting-off the from roundabout-ways
τε ἐκείνῳ καὶ κύκλων μακρῶν ἀντιπράττειν ἀπολιπόντες
both to-him and circles long to-work-against having-abandoned
καὶ ἑαυτοὺς πραγμάτων ἀλλοτριοῦντες, ἔγνωσαν ἐκποδὼν
and themselves from-affairs estranging resolved out-of-the-way
ποιήσασθαι δόλῳ τὸν ἀπεχθῆ Στέφανον. διὰ ταῦτα
to-make by-guile the hated Stephen because-of these(-things)

τὴν φαρμακοποσίαν ἐπῃνεκότες ὡς πρόχειρον ζωῆς
the poisoning having-approved as (a)-ready of-life
κατευνάστριαν, περιεσκόπουν τὸν τὴν θανατηφόρον
putter-to-sleep looked-around(-for) the(-one) the death-bearing
κύλικα τῷ Στεφάνῳ τοῖς δακτύλοις ὀχήσοντα. ὡς δ'
cup — for-Stephen in-the fingers going-to-carry as and
εὗρον ὑποδρηστῆρά τινα τοῦ Στεφάνου Θωμᾶν λεγόμενον,
they-found attendant some — of-Stephen Thomas called
ἔστησαν τὸν μισθόν. οὕτω δ' ἦν ὀξύτατος ἐκεῖνος
they-set the wage thus and was quickest that(-man)
καὶ δεινότατος ἀνθρώπου καταλῦσαι ζωὴν καὶ σώματος
and cleverest of-man to-end life and from-body
διαστῆσαι ψυχήν, πονηρῷ κέρδει χεῖρα ὑποσχών, ὡς
to-separate soul for-wicked gain (the)-hand holding-out so-that
καὶ οἴκοθεν προσεφευρεῖν ἑτέραν μέθοδον δι' ἧς εἰς
also from-home to-devise another method through which to
ᾅδου τάχιον καταχθήσεται Στέφανος. ἀμέλει καὶ ἐν τῷ
Hades more-quickly will-be-brought-down Stephen indeed also in the
ἐξαιματοῦσθαι τὴν φλέβα τῷ Στεφάνῳ ἐγχρίεται φαρμάκῳ
to-be-bled the vein — for-Stephen is-anointed with-poison
τὸ ἐπίθεμα τῆς τομῆς· τὸ δὲ ὅλῳ περιχυθὲν τῷ σώματι
the dressing of-the incision it and over-whole poured the body
καὶ διαδραμὸν καὶ τοῖς καιριωτέροις ἐνσκῆψαν μέρεσιν
and having-run-through and on-the more-vital having-fallen parts
ἀπάγει τοῦ ζῆν τὸν ἄνθρωπον, πράγμασιν αὐτοῖς σαφῶς
leads-away from-the living the man by-facts themselves clearly
πιστωσάμενον τὰς τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἐπινοίας ἀκροσφαλεῖς
having-confirmed the of-the men designs precarious
καὶ δειλάς, καὶ ὡς εἰκῇ καὶ μάτην τοῖς ἀκιχήτοις
and cowardly and how at-random and in-vain on-the unattainable
ἐγχειροῦσί τινες ἐφετοῖς καὶ διαπονοῦνται τοῖς οἰκείοις
attempt some desired(-things) and labor at-the own

ἐπιτηδεύμασι, μὴ καὶ θεϊκῆς συνεφαπτομένης χειρὸς ἄνωθεν
pursuits not also divine taking-hold-with (a)-hand from-above
καὶ τοῖς πραττομένοις ἐπευδοκούσης καὶ κατευθυνούσης
and with-the (things)-done being-well-pleased and directing
τὰ τούτων διαβούλιά τε καὶ διαβήματα. καὶ ὁ μὲν ἔκειτο
the their designs both and steps and he indeed lay
οὕτως, καὶ ἦν ὁ νεκρὸς αὐτοῦ ὑβριζόμενος καὶ ὁσίας
thus and was the corpse his outraged and of-holy-rites
ἄμοιρος, καὶ τὸ Ζεύγμινον ὑπὸ Οὔννων ὁμολογίᾳ ἑάλωκε.
without-share and — Zeugminon by Huns by-agreement was-taken
Ταῦτα ὡς ἠνώτιστο βασιλεύς, κατὰ τῶν Οὔννων
these(-things) when had-heard (the)-emperor against the Huns
κηρύσσει πόλεμον.
proclaims war

II · ANDRONIKOS IN GALICIA

Andronikos escapes again, making wax impressions of the keys and hiding for days in the long grass of the palace before slipping out by boat. Caught near Constantinople, he poses as a runaway slave and is freed by his rescuer. He flees toward Galicia, is captured by Vlachs, escapes by a ruse, leaving a dummy squatting by the road, and is welcomed by the prince of Galicia. Poupakes, who helped him, is flogged, and Manuel, fearing a Scythian invasion, seeks his cousin's return.

Ὅτε καὶ Ἀνδρόνικος πάλιν ἀποδρὰς καὶ παραγενόμενος εἰς
when also Andronikos again having-escaped and having-arrived at
Γάλιτζαν ἐκεῖθεν ἐπανέζευξεν. ἔστι δὲ ἡ Γάλιτζα μία τῶν
Galitza thence returned is and — Galitza one of-the
παρὰ τοῖς Ῥὼς τοπαρχιῶν, οὓς καὶ Σκύθας Ὑπερβορέους
among the Rus toparchies whom also Scythians Hyperborean
φασίν. ὁ δὲ τρόπος τῆς φυγῆς ἦν οὗτος. πλάττεται
they-call the and manner of-the flight was this he-feigns

τὸν νοσοῦντα, καὶ προκοίτου παιδὸς εἰς τὰς σωματικὰς
the sick(-man) and of-(a)-bed-chamber boy for the bodily
ὑπηρεσίας ηὐμοιρηκὼς ἀλλοεθνοῦς, καὶ τούτου καὶ
services having-been-blessed-with foreign-born and this(-one) and
τὰ πολλὰ τῆς ἡμετέρας διαλέκτου παραγραμματίζοντος,
the most(-part) of-the our dialect mangling
ἐπισκήπτει τούτῳ, ἐπεὶ καὶ μόνῳ ἀπὸ πάντων ἡ πρὸς
he-enjoins on-him since also to-him-alone of all the to
τὴν φρουρὰν ἀνεῖτο εἴσοδος, ὑφελέσθαι λάθρᾳ τὰς κλεῖς
the prison was-allowed entry to-steal secretly the keys
τῶν τοῦ πύργου πυλῶν, ὁπότε πρὸς ἡμερινὸν ὕπνον οἱ
of-the of-the tower gates when to midday sleep the
φύλακες τράποιντο δαψιλεστέρῳ χρησάμενοι τῷ ποτῷ,
guards should-turn more-abundant having-used the drink
καὶ κηρῷ ἐκμάξασθαι ταύτας εἰς τὸ εὐτύπωτον, ὡς
and in-wax to-impress them to the well-molded so-that
τῷ ἀρχετύπῳ εἶναι τὸ ἐκμαγεῖον κατὰ πᾶν ἐμφερὲς
to-the original to-be the impression in all like
καὶ εἰκασμένον πρὸς ἴνδαλμα ἀπαράλλακτον. δρᾷ τὸ
and resembling to (a)-likeness unvarying does the
ἀνδράποδον τὰ προσταχθέντα, εἰσάγει Ἀνδρονίκῳ τὰ
slave the(-things) ordered brings-in to-Andronikos the
τῶν κλείθρων ἴχνη. ὁ δὲ τῷ παιδαρίσκῳ ὑποτίθησιν
of-the keys traces he and to-the boy suggests
ἐμφανίσαι ταῦτα τῷ υἱῷ ἐκείνου τῷ Μανουήλ, καὶ
to-show these to-the son his — Manuel and
εἰπεῖν ὡς δεῖ τὴν ταχίστην τοιαῦτα χαλκεύσασθαι,
to-say that one-must the quickest such(-keys) to-forge
οὐ ταῦτα δὲ μόνον, ἀλλὰ κἂν τοῖς ἀμφορεῦσι τῶν
not these(-things) and only but also-in the amphoras of-the
οἴνων, οἵπερ αὐτῷ τὸ τοῦ ἀρίστου στέγουσι πόμα,
wines which for-him the of-the breakfast hold drink

παραβύειν ἐκ λίνου νενησμένα καλώδια καὶ ἀγαθῖδας
to-stuff-in from flax spun cords and balls
καὶ κρόκας καὶ μηρίνθους λεπτάς. ὡς δ' εἶχε πέρας
and woofs and threads thin as and had (an)-end
τὰ βουληθέντα, ἀναπτύσσονται τὰ κλεῖθρα νυκτός,
the(-things) wished are-opened the bolts by-night
τὸ δεσμωτήριον ἀπραγμόνως ἀναπετάννυται· ὁ παῖς
the prison without-trouble is-opened-wide the boy
ὑπουργεῖ τὸ ἔργον, παρ' Ἀνδρονίκου λαβὼν τὸ ἐνδόσιμον·
serves the deed from Andronikos having-taken the cue
ὁ Ἀνδρόνικος ἔξεισι τὰ λίνα φέρων ἐν ταῖν χεροῖν.
— Andronikos goes-out the linens carrying in the two-hands
γίνεται οὖν αὐτῷ τὸ κατάντημα τῆς τότε νυκτὸς χόρτος
becomes then for-him the lodging of-the then night grass
ἀμφιλαφὴς περί που τὰ ἄβατα μέρη τῶν ἀνακτόρων
thick about somewhere the untrodden parts of-the palace
φυεὶς καὶ εἰς ὕψος ἀναδραμών. καὶ περὶ δευτέραν δὲ
grown and to height having-run-up and about second too
καὶ τρίτην ἡμέραν ταῖς πόαις ἐνειλημένος τοὺς διώκτας
and third day in-the grasses wrapped the pursuers
ἐλάνθανεν. ὡς δ' ἄλις εἶχον οἱ διφῶντες τῆς κατὰ
he-escaped as and enough had the(-ones) searching of-the in
τὰ ἀρχεῖα ἐρεύνης, διατίθησιν Ἀνδρόνικος τὰς στάλικας
the palace search arranges Andronikos the stakes
εἰς κλίμακας, καὶ διὰ μεσοπυργίου χαλασθεὶς ἀκάτιον
into ladders and through (a)-curtain-wall let-down (a)-skiff
εἴσεισιν ἐκ συνθήματος περὶ τὰς ἀκτὰς σαλεῦον καὶ
enters by agreement about the shores riding-at-anchor and
τοὺς προβλῆτας, οἳ τὸ πάραλον τεῖχος τῆς πόλεως
the breakwaters which the coastal wall of-the city
διειλήφασι, τὰς τῶν κυμάτων ἀποθραύοντες ἐμβολάς. ἦν δὲ
have-enclosed the of-the waves breaking onsets was and

τοὐπίκλην Χρυσοχοόπουλος ὁ τῇ ἁλιάδι Ἀνδρόνικον
by-surname Chrysochoopoulos the(-one) in-the fishing-boat Andronikos
εἰσδεξάμενος. ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω ἀκριβῶς ἀνάγεσθαι ἤρξαντο, καὶ
having-received but not-yet exactly to-put-out had-begun and
συνέχονται παρὰ τῶν κατὰ τὸν Βουκολέοντα προφυλάκων,
are-seized by the at — Boukoleon outposts
οἳ πᾶσαν νύκτα σκοπεύουσι καὶ τῶν ἀνακτόρων οὐκ
who all night keep-watch and the palace not
ἐῶσιν ἐχόμενα ἐνίας νῆας διαπλωΐζεσθαι. ἐξ ἐκείνου δὲ
allow near some ships to-sail-past from that(-time) and
τὰ τῆς σκοπιᾶς ταύτης ἤρξαντο, ἐξ ὅτουπερ ὁ
the(-practices) of-the watch this began from when —
Τζιμισκὴς Ἰωάννης τῷ Φωκᾷ Νικηφόρῳ νυκτὸς ἐπέθετο
Tzimiskes John — Phokas to-Nikephoros by-night attacked
διὰ σαργάνης ἀνιμηθείς. παρὰ βραχὺ γοῦν ἦν
through (a)-basket drawn-up within (a)-little at-any-rate would-have-been
ἂν καὶ πάλιν Ἀνδρόνικος χείροσι δεσμοῖς καὶ φυλακαῖς
— also again Andronikos by-worse bonds and guards
ἐνισχημένος, ἢ καὶ ξίφος τοῦ ζῆν αὐτὸν ὑπεξήγαγε
held or also (a)-sword from-the living him would-have-led-away
τὰς πολλὰς εἰσέπειτα πλάνας ὑποτεμόμενον. νῦν δὲ ἡ
the many thereafter wanderings cutting-off now and the
οἰκεία εὐτραπελία ἐρρύσατο καὶ τότε τὸν βαθυγνώμονα, ἐκ
own wit rescued(-him) and then the deep-minded from
τῶν ἑαυτῆς ῥιζοτομήσασα κήπων τὰ τῷ καιρῷ προσφυῆ
the her-own having-cut-roots-from gardens the to-the occasion suited
φάρμακα, ὥσπερ καὶ Δαβὶδ ἐξέσωσε πρότερον ἡ ἐν Γὲθ
drugs as also David saved before the in Gath
τοῦ προσώπου ἀλλοίωσις ἐπιψόφησίς τε τοῦ τυμπάνου
of-the face alteration drumming both of-the tambourine
καὶ ἡ μανικὴ τῶν ποδῶν παρενσάλευσις. οἰκέτου
and the mad of-the feet swaying of-(a)-servant

γὰρ οἰκότριβος ὑποδὺς προσωπεῖον, χρόνια δεσμὰ
for home-born having-put-on (the)-mask long bonds
ἐκδιδράσκοντος, ἐδεῖτο τῶν συλλαβόντων μὴ παριδεῖν
escaping he-begged the(-men) having-seized(-him) not to-overlook
αὐτὸν οὐκ ὀλίγα πρὸς τοῦ δεσπότου πεπονθότα πάλαι
him not few at the master's(-hands) having-suffered long-ago
δεινὰ καὶ νῦν δὲ δίκας εἰσπραττόμενον τῆς φυγῆς.
terrible(-things) and now too penalties exacted for-the flight
ἐκάλει δ' οὕτω τὸν Χρυσοχοόπουλον, μεταρρυθμίζων ἅμα
called and thus — Chrysochoopoulos re-shaping at-once
πρὸς τὴν βάρβαρον φωνὴν τὴν Ἑλληνίδα διάλεκτον, καὶ
to the barbarous voice the Greek dialect and
μηδ' ἐπαΐειν τὰ πλεῖστα ταυτησὶ πλαττόμενος. καὶ
not-even to-understand the most of-this feigning and
αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Χρυσοχοόπουλος δώροις παρακρουσάμενος
himself too — Chrysochoopoulos with-gifts having-cheated
τοὺς σκοποὺς ἴσχυσεν Ἀνδρόνικον ἐξελεῖν, ὡς δραπέτην
the watchers was-able Andronikos to-take-out as (a)-runaway
ἑαυτοῦ δοῦλον αἰτησάμενος καὶ λαβών. ἀμέλει καὶ
his-own slave having-asked-for(-him) and having-received indeed also
παρὰ δόξαν Ἀνδρόνικος εἰς τὸν οἰκεῖον οἶκον παρελθών,
beyond expectation Andronikos into the own house having-passed
ὃς τοῦ Βλάγγα ἐπικέκληται, ὁμοῦ τε προσεῖπε τοὺς
which — of-Blanga is-called at-once both addressed the
φιλτάτους τὰ εἰσιτήρια ἐποφθεὶς καὶ προσεφθέγξατο
dearest the entry-greetings having-been-seen and addressed
τὰ ἀπόδημα, τοὺς πόδας τῶν σιδήρων ἀπολυθείς.
the departure-greetings the feet from-the irons released
καὶ τὸ Μελίβοτον καταλαβὼν καὶ τῶν ἐκεῖσε ἵππων
and — Meliboton having-reached and the there horses
ἐπιβάς, οἵπερ ἐκείνῳ πρὸς ἀπόδρασιν ἡτοιμάσθησαν,
having-mounted which for-him for escape had-been-prepared

τὴν εὐθὺ τῆς Ἀγχιάλου ἴεται. ἔνθα δὴ γεγονὼς
the(-road) straight-to — Anchialos hastens where indeed having-come
καὶ τῷ Πουπάκῃ ἑαυτὸν ἐμφανίσας, ὃς πρῶτος, ὡς ἤδη
and — to-Poupakes himself having-shown who first as already
ἐρρέθη μοι, τὴν κατὰ Κορυφὼ ἐσανέβη κλίμακα, καὶ
was-said by-me the at Korypho climbed ladder and
παρ᾽ ἐκείνου λαβὼν τὰ ἐφόδια καὶ ἡγεμόνων ὁδοῦ
from that(-man) having-received the supplies and of-guides of-(the)-road
εὐπορήσας τὴν ἐς Γάλιτζαν ἐπορεύετο. ἀλλ᾽ ὅτε
having-had-plenty the(-road) to Galitza went but when
τοῦ δειμαίνειν ἀπεῖχεν Ἀνδρόνικος ὡς ἤδη τὰς χεῖρας
from-the fearing was-far Andronikos as already the hands
τῶν διωκόντων λαθὼν καὶ τῶν τῆς Γαλίτζης ὁρίων
of-the pursuers having-escaped and the — of-Galitza borders
λαβόμενος, πρὸς ἣν ὡς εἰς σῶζον κρησφύγετον ὥρμητο,
having-taken-hold to which as to saving refuge he-had-hastened
τότε θηρευτῶν ἐμπίπτει ταῖς ἄρκυσι· συλληφθεὶς γὰρ
then of-hunters falls into-the nets seized for
παρὰ Βλάχων, οἷς ἡ φήμη τὴν αὐτοῦ φθάσασα φυγὴν
by Vlachs whom the report the his having-anticipated flight
ὑφηγήσατο, ἐς τοὐπίσω πρὸς βασιλέα πάλιν ἀπήγετο.
had-informed to the-back to (the)-emperor again he-was-led-away
μὴ ἔχων οὖν τὸν σώζοντα καὶ λυτρούμενον, οὐ φίλον
not having then the(-one) saving and ransoming not friend
παρόντα παρήγορον, οὐχ ὑπασπιστήν, οὐ θεράποντα, τῇ
present comforting not shield-bearer not servant to-the
οἰκείᾳ αὖθις μεθοδείᾳ συνερίθῳ κέχρηται ὁ πολύφρων.
own again method (as)-fellow-worker uses the much-minded
τῷ τοι καὶ πρὸς ἀπάτην τῶν ἀπαγόντων ῥύσιν
for surely also for deceit of-the(-ones) leading-(him)-away flux
γαστρὸς πλασάμενος συχνάκις τοῦ ἵππου ἀποκατέβαινε
of-belly having-feigned often from-the horse got-down

καὶ ἐξέκλινεν εἰς ἀπόπατον παρασκευαζόμενος καὶ καθ'
and turned-aside to (a)-privy preparing and by
ἑαυτὸν ἀφιστάμενος καὶ ἰδιάζων, ὡς δῆθεν ἐνοχλούσης
himself standing-apart and being-alone as supposedly troubling
ἀποκενώσεως. τοῦτο οὖν πολλάκις τοῦ νυχθημέρου τελῶν,
(an)-evacuation this then often of-the night-and-day performing
λανθάνει κατασοφισάμενος τοὺς ἐφομαρτοῦντας. τὸν γὰρ
he-escapes having-outwitted the(-ones) following the for
σκίπωνα ᾧ ἦν βακτηρευόμενος ὡς καχεξίᾳ δῆθεν
staff with-which he-was leaning as with-ill-health supposedly
παλαίων, σκοταῖος ἀναστὰς τῇ γῇ προσήρεισε, καὶ
struggling in-the-dark having-risen into-the ground he-fixed and
τῇ μὲν χλαμύδι τοῦ σώματος περιείλησε τὸν λύγον, τὸν
with-the indeed cloak of-the body wrapped-round the withy the
δ' ἐπὶ κρατὸς πῖλον ἐπέθηκεν ἄνωθεν, καὶ ἀνθρωπόμορφόν
and on head cap he-put-on above and man-shaped
τι τὸ γόνυ κάμπτον καὶ ἀφοδεῦον τεκτηνάμενος τοὺς
something the knee bending and easing(-itself) having-contrived the
μὲν φύλακας τὸ ὑποκρινόμενον αὐτὸν ἀνδρείκελον ἐκλείπει
indeed guards the counterfeiting him image he-leaves
περιαθρεῖν, αὐτὸς δὲ τὸν ἐκεῖσε λοχμώδη χῶρον καθυποδὺς
to-look-at himself and the there thicketed place having-crept-into
ὥσπερ δορκὰς ἐκ βρόχων καὶ ὄρνις ἐκ παγίδων ῥυσθεὶς
as (a)-gazelle from snares and (a)-bird from traps rescued
ἐφέρετο. ὡς δ' ὀψέ ποτε τὸν δόλον ἐκεῖνοι ἔγνωσαν, οἱ
was-borne-off as and late at-last the trick those knew they
μὲν συνέτεινον τὸν δρόμον ἐπὶ τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, οἰόμενοι
indeed stretched the course to the(-parts) ahead thinking
καὶ πάλιν Ἀνδρόνικον ἐκείνης ἧς καὶ πρότερον ἔχεσθαι,
also again Andronikos of-that(-road) which also before to-hold
ὁ δὲ παλίμπους γενόμενος δι' ἄλλης εἰς Γάλιτζαν
he and back-footed having-become through another to Galitza

ᾤχετο. τὸν δὲ Πουπάκην ὁ βασιλεὺς συλλαβὼν ἔξαινε
went — and Poupakes the emperor having-seized combed
πολλαῖς διὰ λώρων δημοσίᾳ κατά τε τοῦ νώτου καὶ
with-many through thongs publicly on both the back and
τῶν ὤμων. μετὰ δὲ προάγων αὐτὸν ὁ κῆρυξ ἐκ τοῦ
the shoulders after and leading him the herald from the
τραχήλου σχοινόδετον, ἐπεβόα οὑτωσὶ τρανότερον „ὅστις
neck rope-bound shouted thus more-clearly whoever
τὸν ἐχθρὸν τοῦ βασιλέως προσιόντα οἱ εἰσοικίζεται
the enemy of-the emperor approaching for-himself brings-into-(his)-house
καὶ διδοὺς ἐφόδια ἐκπέμπει, οὕτω καὶ μαστίζεται καὶ
and giving supplies sends-off thus also is-scourged and
πομπεύεται.” ὁ δὲ πρὸς τοὺς συνιόντας ἀτενὲς ὁρῶν
is-paraded he and to the(-ones) coming-together intently looking
διακεχυμένῳ προσώπῳ „αὕτη μοι αἰσχύνη πρὸς τοῦ
with-cheerful face this to-me (the)-shame by the(-one)
βουλομένου ἤτω παντός” ἐφθέγγετο, „μὴ ἐπιστάντα τὸν
wishing let-it-be every he-uttered not having-stood-up-to the
εὐεργέτην καταπροδόντι ἢ ἐμβριθῶς ἀποπεμψαμένῳ, ἀλλ’
benefactor having-betrayed or harshly having-sent-away but
ὡς ἐξῆν τεθεραπευκότι καὶ ἀποπέμψαντι χαίροντα.”
as was-possible having-served and having-sent-off rejoicing
τότε δ’ οὖν ὑπτίαις ἀγκάλαις πρὸς τοῦ τῆς Γαλίτζης
then and therefore with-open arms by the — of-Galitza
ἐπιτροπεύοντος Ἀνδρόνικος προσδεχθεὶς ἔμεινε παρ’ ἐκείνῳ
governing Andronikos having-been-received remained with him
χρόνον συχνόν. οὕτω δὲ πρὸς τὸν ἑαυτοῦ πόθον ὅλον
time long thus and to the his-own longing whole
ἐκεῖνον Ἀνδρόνικος ἀνηρτήσατο, ὡς καὶ συνθηρεύειν καὶ
him Andronikos attached so-that also to-hunt-with and
συνθωκεύειν ἐκείνῳ ὁμέστιός τε εἶναι καὶ σύσσιτος.
to-sit-with him of-the-same-hearth both to-be and table-companion

Ἀλλὰ τὴν τοῦ ἐξαδέλφου φυγὴν καὶ τὴν ἐκ τῆς
but the of-the cousin flight and the from the(-land)
ἐνεγκαμένης ἀπαλλοτρίωσιν οἰκεῖον ὄνειδος κρίνων ὁ
having-borne(-him) estrangement own reproach judging the
βασιλεὺς Μανουήλ, καὶ ἄλλως δὲ ὑφορώμενος τὸ τούτου
emperor Manuel and otherwise too suspecting the his
ἐπὶ πλεῖστον ἀπόδημον, ἐπεὶ καὶ ᾔδετο παλεύειν μυρίαν
for most(-time) absence since also it-was-sung to-be-decoying (a)-countless
Σκυθίδα ἵππον ὡς ἐς τὰ Ῥωμαίων ὅρια ἐσβάλῃ, ἔργον,
Scythian horse so-that into the of-(the)-Romans borders it-might-invade (a)-deed
ὅ φασι, τίθησιν ἀσχολίας ἀνώτερον ἐπανελθεῖν Ἀνδρόνικον.
which they-say puts of-business above to-return Andronikos

III · ZEUGMINON RETAKEN

Manuel recalls Andronikos with pledges. The Hungarians rout Michael Gabras and Michael Branas, and Branas swears that Gabras fled at the first charge. Manuel besieges Zeugminon; Andronikos directs one of the engines, and the wall falls. In the sack a citizen kills his beautiful wife rather than let Roman soldiers rape her. Manuel returns home, leaving his uncle Constantine Angelos and Basil Tripsychos, who strengthen Zeugminon, Belgrade, Nis, and Branitzova.

Οὐκοῦν μετάπεμπτον ἐκεῖθεν ποιεῖται, πίστεις δοὺς καὶ
therefore summoned thence makes pledges having-given and
λαβών, καὶ τοῦ πλάνου τοῦτον ἐναγκαλίζεται, καθ' ὅν,
having-received and from-the wandering him embraces at which
ὡς ἔφην, καιρὸν οἱ Παίονες τὰς σπονδὰς ἀθετήσαντες τὴν
as I-said time the Paeonians the treaties having-set-aside the
παρίστριον Ῥωμαίων κατέτρεχον ἐπικράτειαν. συμβαλόντες
by-the-Ister of-(the)-Romans overran dominion having-engaged
δὲ καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς τῷ τε Γαβρᾷ Μιχαὴλ καὶ τῷ
and also with-the generals — both Gabras Michael and —

Βρανᾷ Μιχαήλ, κατὰ κράτος τούτους ἐτρέψαντο καὶ λείαν
Branas Michael by force them routed and booty
ὅτι πλείστην ἤλασαν. ἦν δὲ ὁ Γαβρᾶς οὗτος νεωστὶ
as most drove was and — Gabras this newly
θύσας τὰ γαμοδαίσια μετὰ τῆς Κομνηνῆς Εὐδοκίας,
having-sacrificed the wedding-feasts with — Komnene Eudokia
ᾗ Ἀνδρόνικος ἐπλησίαζεν, ὡς ἤδη φθάσαντες
with-whom Andronikos consorted as already anticipating
ἐδηλώσαμεν. οὐκοῦν καὶ τῶν προσγενῶν Εὐδοκίας συνιστᾶν
we-showed therefore also the relatives of-Eudokia to-commend
αὐτὸν θελόντων τῷ αὐτοκράτορι, πολὺς ἦν ἐπὶ βασιλέως
him wishing to-the autocrat much was before (the)-emperor
ὁ τούτου κρότος καὶ ἔπαινος, καὶ ἐρρωμένως αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ
the his applause and praise and strongly him in the
κατὰ τῶν Οὔννων μάχῃ διαγωνίσασθαι ἰσχυρίζοντο, καὶ
against the Huns battle to-have-contended they-insisted and
παρῆγον τῶν λεγομένων μάρτυρα τὸν συστράτηγον
brought-forward of-the(-things) said (as)-witness the fellow-general
αὐτῷ Μιχαὴλ τὸν Βρανᾶν. ὁ δὲ πρὸς τοῦ βασιλέως
to-him Michael the Branas he and by the emperor
ἐπιταχθείς, ὅρκον τὴν οἰκείαν κεφαλὴν ἐπαγαγόντος,
having-been-charged (the)-oath the own head bringing-on
ἀληθῶς εἰπεῖν ὃ περὶ τοῦ Γαβρᾶ γενναῖον σύνοιδεν
truly to-say what about — Gabras noble he-knows
ἔργον, τὸ τέως μὲν ὑπερέθετο τὸν ἀπόλογον, πρὸς
deed for-the meantime indeed put-off the defense to
δὲ τὸν Γαβρᾶν στραφεὶς ἤρετο τοῦτον εἰ καὶ αὐτὸς
and — Gabras having-turned asked him if also himself
ἀνδρειόν τι καὶ ἄξιον ἐπαίνου ἐνεδείξατο, εἴτε μὴν
manly something and worthy of-praise showed whether indeed
ὡς στρατηγὸς τὰ λώονα διεπράξατο, ὅτε συμπεσόντες
as general the better(-things) he-did when having-engaged

μετὰ τῶν Οὔγγρων Διονυσίου στρατηγοῦντος ἐμάχοντο.
with the Hungarians Dionysios being-general they-fought
τῷ τοι καὶ καθομολογοῦντα σχὼν τὸν Γαβρᾶν, καὶ
for surely also confessing having — Gabras and
ὡς οὐκ ἄλλον ὄντως τὸ τότε αὐτὸν ἀνδρίσασθαι
that not another(-man) truly the(-time) then him to-have-been-manly
μαρτυροῦντα, ἐπήγαγεν ὡς οὐκ ἔχων βασιλέως ἐνώπιον
bearing-witness he-added as not being-able of-(the)-emperor before
παρανοσφίζεσθαι τὴν ἀλήθειαν, εἰς τὴν οἰκείαν κεφαλὴν
to-embezzle the truth to the own head
αὐτὸν ἐξορκίζοντος, φησὶ μηδαμῶς ὑποστῆναι τὴν τῶν
him adjuring he-says in-no-way to-have-withstood the of-the
ἐναντίων ἐμβολὴν τὸν Γαβρᾶν, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκ πρώτης προσβολῆς
opponents charge — Gabras but from (the)-first attack
ἀποδειλιάσαντα οἴχεσθαι φεύγοντα, καὶ ταῦτα αὐτοῦ
having-turned-coward to-have-gone fleeing and this he
πολλάκις ἀνακαλουμένου τοῦτον καὶ „στῆθι ὦ φίλος"
often calling-back him and stand O friend
εἰπόντος μετ᾽ ἐκβοήσεως. ἀτὰρ καὶ σπεύδων ὁ βασιλεὺς
saying with shouting but also hastening the emperor
αὐτό τε τὸ Ζεύγμινον Ῥωμαίοις ἐπανασώσασθαι καὶ
itself both — Zeugminon for-(the)-Romans to-recover and
δίκας τοὺς Οὔννους εἰσπράξασθαι ὧν εἰς Στέφανον
penalties the Huns to-exact for-what against Stephen
πεπαρῳνήκασι, τοῖς ἐκεῖσε παρενέβαλε μέρεσιν. οἱ δὲ
they-have-outraged in-the there encamped parts the and
βάρβαροι παρὰ τὰς ὄχθας τοῦ Ἴστρου ποταμοῦ ὡς
barbarians along the banks of-the Ister river as
εἰς πόλεμον διαταξάμενοι διεκώλυον τῆς στρατιᾶς τὴν
for war having-drawn-up hindered of-the army the
περαίωσιν, παντοῖα βέλη ἐπαφιέντες καὶ τὰς ἐμβολὰς
crossing all-kinds-of missiles letting-fly and the landings

προκαταλαμβάνοντες, κἂν ἦσαν οὐδὲν περαίνοντες· οἱ γὰρ
seizing-first even-if they-were nothing accomplishing the for
ἑκηβόλοι Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ τὸ ἄλλο ἅπαν ὁπλιτικὸν ὠσάμενοι
far-shooting Romans and the other all hoplite(-force) having-pushed
τούτους ἐξέκρουσαν τῶν παρακτίων μερῶν. βασιλεὺς δὲ
them drove-out from-the coastal parts (the)-emperor and
σὺν παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι κατὰ τὸ Ζεύγμινον ἀφικόμενος
with all the army at — Zeugminon having-arrived
ἐκεῖ που στρατήγιον βάλλεται. ἔστι δὲ τοῦτο κατὰ
there somewhere (a)-headquarters pitches is and this on
μεσημβρίαν ἀπρόσβατον γηλόφῳ παρήκοντι καὶ ποταμίῳ
(the)-south unapproachable by-(a)-hill extending and by-river
τειχιζόμενον ῥεύματι. ᾤετο μὲν οὖν αὐτοβοεὶ αἱρήσειν
walled current he-thought indeed then at-the-first-shout to-take
τὸ πόλισμα οἷα τῶν ἔνδον καὶ πρὸς τὴν πρώτην
the town as the(-men) inside even at the first
αὐτοῦ θέαν καταπλαγέντων καὶ τὰς πύλας ἀνακλινάντων
his sight being-dismayed and the gates opening
καὶ δεξαμένων αὐτὸν ἔνδοθι· ὡς δ' οὗτοι τὰς εἰσόδους
and receiving him inside as and these the entrances
παντάπασιν αὐτῷ ἐπεζύγωσαν, τά τε τείχη παντοίοις
wholly to-him barred the both walls with-all-kinds-of
ὅπλοις καὶ ἀφετηρίοις ὀργάνοις ἐκράτυναν, ἀλλὰ καὶ
arms and catapulting engines strengthened but also
φαινόμενοι ἄνωθεν τὰς γλώσσας ἔθηγον ὡσεὶ ὄφεως, οὐκ
appearing from-above the tongues whetted as of-(a)-serpent not
ἀπὸ χειρῶν μόνον ἀφιέντες βέλη θανάσιμα, ἀλλὰ κἀκ
from hands only letting-fly missiles deadly but also-from
τοῦ τῶν ὀδόντων ἔρκους αἰσχρορρημοσύνας τοξεύοντες
the of-the teeth fence foul-speakings shooting
ἰῷ ἀσπίδων τῷ ὑπὸ τὰ χείλη χρισθείσας, οὐδ'
with-venom of-asps the(-one) under the lips anointed nor

οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε χερσὶ κεναῖς αὐτοῖς
the Romans the(-time) from this with-hands empty them
προσεφέροντο, ἀλλὰ τοῦ κακορρημονεῖν ὡς ἀγεννοῦς
attacked but from-the abusing as (an)-ignoble
ὅπλου καὶ γυναικείου ἀφιστάμενοι σιδήρῳ μάλιστα κακῶς
weapon and womanish abstaining with-iron especially badly
διετίθεσαν. πρῶτος τοίνυν ὁ βασιλεὺς τῷ τῆς μιμήσεως
treated(-them) first therefore the emperor by-the of-the imitation
ὁμοίῳ διερεθίζων τοὺς ὑπ' ἐκεῖνον κατὰ τῶν τῆς πόλεως
likeness provoking the(-men) under him against the of-the city
πυλῶν τὸν ἵππον ἐπαφίησι καὶ μέσον αὐτῶν τὸ δόρυ
gates the horse lets-go and (in)-the-middle of-them the spear
ἤλασεν. ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις τὴν τάφρον ἐμπλήσας ἀφυσγετοῦ
drove on and these(-things) the ditch having-filled with-rubble
διὰ τὴν τῶν λίθων στέρησιν, τάς τε πετροβόλους
for the of-the stones lack the both stone-throwing
μηχανὰς περιστήσας (τέσσαρες δ' ἦσαν αὗται) τὰ τείχη
engines having-set-round four and were these the walls
κατασείειν ἐπέταττεν. ἐνεργεῖς μὲν οὖν ἅπασαι ἦσαν, καὶ
to-shake he-ordered effective indeed then all were and
οἱ πέτροι ταλαντιαῖοι ἀφιέμενοι τὰς τῶν τειχῶν παρέλυον
the stones talent-weight let-fly the of-the walls loosened
ἁρμογάς· μία δ' ἐξ αὐτῶν μάλιστα, ἧς ἀρχιτέκτων ἦν
joints one and of them especially of-which master-builder was
Ἀνδρόνικος, αὐτὸς τὴν σφενδόνην τόν τε στρόφαλον καὶ
Andronikos himself the sling the both pivot and
τὸν λύγον διατιθέμενος, πλειόνως διεσάλευε τὸν περίβολον,
the withy arranging more shook the circuit-wall
ὡς καὶ τὸ μεσοπύργιον, καθ' ὃ τὰ βάρη τῶν πετρῶν
so-that also the curtain at which the weights of-the stones
ἠκοντίζοντο, ὑποχαλᾶν ἤδη καὶ μεθίστασθαι τοῦ κεῖσθαι
were-hurled to-slacken already and to-shift from-the to-lie

ὀρθόν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὀρυκτῆρσιν ὑπομοχλευόμενον. τότε
upright besides — and by-diggers being-levered-under then
τοίνυν κατά τινα τῶν νυκτῶν τινὲς τῶν μεγιστάνων
therefore during some of-the nights some of-the magnates
Παιόνων μίαν εἰσιόντες τῶν ἐκκρεμῶν τοῦ τείχους καὶ
of-Paeonians one entering of-the hanging of-the wall and
προνευουσῶν ἔξωθεν μηχανῶν (ἄρκλας οἷδε ταύτας
projecting outside engines arklai is-wont these
ἡ κοινὴ καὶ πάνδημος φράσις καλεῖν) τῶν κουλεῶν
the common and popular phrase to-call from-the sheaths
τὰς σπάθας εἵλκυσαν, καὶ γυμνὰς αὐτὰς ἀνατείναντες
the swords drew and bare them having-raised
διηπειλοῦντο Ῥωμαίοις ὑπέραυχα, καὶ τὸ τέως βάπτειν
threatened to-(the)-Romans overweening(-things) and the meantime to-dip
μὴ ἔχοντες τὰ ξίφη αἵματι σχήμασι τὸν ἀέρα ἔπληττον καὶ
not having the swords in-blood with-gestures the air struck and
φωνῶν ἐγέμιζον, κεκραγότες ὅσον ἐχώρουν αἱ κεφαλαί.
with-cries filled having-shouted as-much-as held the heads
ἀλλὰ κατὰ πόδας ἡ δίκη μέτεισι τούτους· τιτήνας
but at (their)-feet the justice pursues them having-stretched
γὰρ κατὰ τῆς ἀνεχούσης αὐτοὺς μηχανῆς τὸ βλῆμα
for against the holding them engine the missile
Ἀνδρόνικος οὕτω διαφῆκεν ἐπιτυχὲς ὡς διαλυθῆναι μὲν
Andronikos thus let-go successful so-that to-be-dissolved indeed
αὐτίκα τοῦ τείχους τὸ προεκκρεμάμενον ἐκεῖνο ξύλινον
at-once from-the wall the overhanging that wooden
σύνθεμα, ἐπικαταβληθῆναι δὲ καὶ τούτους ἐκτὸς ἐς ᾅδου
structure to-be-thrown-down and also these outside into of-Hades
στόμιον κατωκάρα πίπτοντας καὶ κυβιστῆρας ὁρωμένους
mouth head-down falling and tumblers seen
ἐλεεινούς, διανηχομένους ἀθλίως Ἀχέροντα. μετὰ βραχὺ
pitiable swimming wretchedly Acheron after (a)-little

δὲ καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ τεῖχος ὑπέκυπτε, καὶ διὰ κλιμάκων εἶχε
and also itself the wall stooped and through ladders had
Ῥωμαίους ἀνιόντας καὶ τὴν πόλιν εἰσιόντας. πολλοὶ μὲν
(the)-Romans climbing and the city entering many indeed
οὖν βληθέντες εἰς θάνατον κατεβλήθησαν, οὐκ ὀλίγοι δὲ
then struck to death were-thrown-down not few and
καὶ προσκεχωρηκότες τοῖς ἤδη κρατοῦσιν ἐσώθησαν·
also having-gone-over to-the(-ones) already prevailing were-saved
εἰσὶ δ' οἳ καὶ ἀποδράντες σωτηρίαν ἐντεῦθεν εὕραντο.
are and (those)-who also having-escaped safety thence found
εἷς δὲ τῶν οἰκητόρων ἐκείνης τῆς πόλεως, καὶ οὗτος
one and of-the inhabitants of-that the city and this(-one)
οὐ τῶν συγκλύδων καὶ συρφάκων ἀλλὰ τῶν πλούτῳ
not of-the rabble and riffraff but of-the(-ones) in-wealth
λαμπρῶν καὶ γένει ἐπισήμῳ διαπρεπῶν, ἀστεῖον τὸ
brilliant and in-family notable distinguished (a)-pretty in-the
εἶδος ηὔχει γύναιον καὶ σφόδρα καλὸν τὴν μορφήν. ὁρῶν
form boasted wife and very beautiful in-the form seeing
δὲ παρά του τῶν Ῥωμαίων εἰς ὕβριν ἑλκόμενον, καὶ
and by some of-the Romans to outrage being-dragged and
μὴ ἔχων ἐπαμῦναι τυραννουμένῳ ἢ βίᾳ τὴν βίαν
not being-able to-defend(-her) being-tyrannized or by-force the force
ὠθῆσαι καὶ στῆσαι τὸν ἄδικον ἐκεῖνον ἔρωτα, βουλεύεται
to-push and to-stop the unjust that love plans
βουλὴν οὐχ ἥκιστα γενναίαν ἢ τολμηρὰν καὶ ἀθέμιτον
(a)-plan not least noble or daring and lawless
καὶ τῷ τῆς τύχης ἐνεστῶτι κατάλληλον· διελαύνει
and to-the of-the fortune present suited he-drives-through
τῶν σπλάγχνων τῆς φιλτάτης ὃν ἔφερεν ἀκινάκην.
the bowels of-the dearest which he-bore dagger
οὐκοῦν ὁ μὲν τῇ γυναικὶ ἐπιμαινόμενος ἄθεσμος ἐκεῖνος
therefore the indeed for-the woman raging lawless that

ἐραστὴς τὴν ἄλογον ἐμάρανεν ἔφεσιν, οὐκέτι ὄντος τοῦ
lover the irrational withered desire no-longer being the
ὑπεκκαύματος, τὴν δὲ σχετλίαν τῷ ὄντι ἐρωμένην τὸ
kindling the and wretched in-the truth beloved the
ἦμαρ ἔλιπε τὸ εὐφρόσυνον. φεῦ πραγμάτων ἀναγκαίας
day left the cheerful alas of-affairs necessary
ἐπιπλοκῆς καὶ φθονεροῦ Τελχῖνος καὶ ἐπιβούλου, τοιαύτας
entanglement and of-(an)-envious Telchine and treacherous such
τραγῳδίας σκηνοποιοῦντος ἐπὶ θεάτρου πολυπληθοῦς! ὦ
tragedies staging on (a)-theater crowded O
δύο ἀντιφερομένων ἐρώτων ἐπ᾽ ἄθλῳ ἑνί, ἐπιλήπτου καὶ
two opposing loves for prize one wicked and
σώφρονος, καὶ τοῦ μὲν ἐπ᾽ ἀθεμίτοις λέκτροις σώζειν
chaste and the one on lawless beds to-save
ἐθέλοντος, τοῦ δὲ φθάνοντος τὸ αἶσχος καὶ νεκροῦντος
wishing the other anticipating the shame and putting-to-death
καινότερον καὶ πάθει πάθος ἐκκρούοντος! συνήραντο
more-newly and with-passion passion knocking-out helped
δὲ τοῖς Ῥωμαίοις εἰς τὴν τοῦ Ζευγμίνου ἐκπόρθησιν καὶ
and the Romans for the — of-Zeugminon sacking also
οὐκ ὀλίγοι τῶν ἔνδοθι, τὰ Ῥωμαίων φρονοῦντες
not few of-the(-men) inside the(-things) of-(the)-Romans minding
καὶ τὰ τούτων ὡς εἶχον διανιστῶντες φρονήματα·
and the their as they-had(-means) rousing spirits
οὗτοι γὰρ ἀτράκτοις ἀσιδήροις βιβλία προσδέοντες, καὶ
these for with-arrows ironless papers binding and
ταῦτα πρὸς τὸ Ῥωμαϊκὸν στράτευμα νυκτὸς ἐκτοξεύοντες,
these to the Roman army by-night shooting
παρίστων δι᾽ αὐτῶν ὅσα τε οἱ βάρβαροι ἐβουλεύοντο
set-forth through them as-many-as both the barbarians planned
καὶ ὅση τούτων ἰσχὺς ἀκμάζουσα ἦν. ἤγετο δὲ τῶν
and how-much their strength flourishing was was-led and of-the

Παιόνων τις τηνικαῦτα αἰχμάλωτος ἔτι τὸν ἐγχώριον
Paeonians someone then captive still the native
πῖλον ἐπὶ κεφαλῆς ἔχων καὶ τὴν λοιπὴν ἠμφιεσμένος
cap on head having and the rest clad-in
πάτριον στολήν. ἀλλὰ τοῦτον Ῥωμαῖός τις ἐπιπαριὼν
ancestral garment but this(-man) Roman someone passing-by
σιδήρῳ πλήττει καὶ θανατοῖ, καὶ τὸ τῆς κεφαλῆς ἐκείνου
with-iron strikes and kills and the of-the head his
ἑαυτῷ περιτίθησι κάλυμμα, καὶ ἦν ἀνύων οὑτωσὶ τὴν
on-himself puts covering and was completing thus the
ὁδόν. τῆς δὲ δίκης ἑφεπομένης ἀψόφῳ ἐμβάδι, καὶ ὃ
road of-the and justice following with-noiseless shoe and what
ἄλλῳ τέτευχε κακὸν τουτωὶ καθ' ἑαυτοῦ ἀγχωμάλως
for-another he-has-wrought evil for-this(-man) against himself evenly
ἀναστρεφούσης, ἐφίσταταί οἱ τομώτερος ἕτερος ξιφήρης
turning stands-over him sharper another sword-bearing
ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν Ῥωμαίων, καὶ παίει καιρίαν κατὰ
from the behind Romans and strikes (a)-mortal(-blow) on
τοῦ τένοντος ὡς ζωγρίαν Παίονα, καὶ τοῦ ζῆν ἐκ τοῦ
the tendon as (a)-captive Paeonian and from-the living from the
σχεδὸν μεθίστησιν.
near removes(-him)
Ἀλλ' οὕτω μὲν ἑάλω τὸ Ζεύγμινον, ὡς ἐπιτρέχοντά
but thus indeed was-taken — Zeugminon as running-over(-it)
με εἰπεῖν, μὴ ἐμβραδύνοντα ταῖς διηγήσεσι. καὶ βασιλεὺς
me to-say not lingering in-the narrations and (the)-emperor
ἐκεῖθεν ἀπονοστήσας πρὸς τὰ Ῥωμαίων ὅρια μεταβέβηκεν,
thence having-returned to the of-(the)-Romans borders has-passed
τὸν δὲ ἑαυτοῦ θεῖον, τὸν ἀπὸ Φιλαδελφείας λέγω
the and his-own uncle the from Philadelphia I-mean
Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Ἄγγελον, ἐπιτειχιστὴν εἴασε τοῦ
Constantine the Angelos (as)-fortifier left —

Ζευγμίνου, σὺν αὐτῷ δὲ καὶ τὸν Τρίψυχον Βασίλειον· καὶ
of-Zeugminon with him and also — Tripsychos Basil and
οὗτοι τὰ ἐντεταλμένα περατοῦντες τό τε Ζεύγμινον
these the(-things) commanded completing — both Zeugminon
ἠρτίωσαν, ὅσαι κατηρείποντο τύρσεις ἐπισκευάσαντες,
repaired as-many-as had-been-thrown-down towers having-restored
καὶ τῆς ἄλλης ὁμοίως φρουρᾶς πεφροντίκασι, καὶ τὰ
and of-the other likewise garrison have-taken-thought and the
ἐν Βελεγράδοις πολίχνια πλείστης ὅσης ἐπιμελείας
in Belgrade townlets of-very-much as-much-as care
ἠξίωσαν. καὶ αὐτὸν δὲ τὸν Νίσον τείχεσι περιέβαλον,
deemed-worthy and itself too — Nis with-walls surrounded
καὶ τὴν Βρανίτζοβαν συνῴκισαν. καὶ τὰ λοιπὰ πρὸς τὸ
and — Branitzova peopled and the rest for the
εὖ διαθέμενοι, ἔνθα διάγων ἦν βασιλεύς, ἀφίκοντο.
well having-arranged where spending-time was (the)-emperor arrived

IV · DESE, THE OATH, AND ANDRONIKOS IN CILICIA

The Serbian zoupan Dese, fearing invasion, asks for safe conduct, comes, is rebuked, and is sent home on oath, which he means to break. Manuel makes the nobles swear to Maria and her betrothed Alexios of Hungary as his heirs; Andronikos alone refuses, saying Manuel will yet have a son. Sent to Cilicia, Andronikos is beaten by Toroses, and in a reckless charge he unhorses the Armenian prince in the midst of his guard.

οὗτος δὲ τὸν Δεσὲ μετελευσόμενος ἑαυτοῦ γενόμενον
this(-man) and — Dese going-to-pursue than-himself having-become
κακουργότερον τὴν ἐς Σερβίαν ὥρμα τραπέσθαι. ἀλλ᾽
more-mischievous the(-road) to Serbia hastened to-turn but
ὁ Δεσὲ καὶ πόρρωθεν ἐπιτηρῶν τὰ πραττόμενα,
— Dese also from-afar watching the(-things) being-done

μάλιστα δ᾽ ὅπερ ἦν ἀληθὲς δεδιώς, μή τι ἀηδὲς
especially and which was true fearing lest something unpleasant
πάθοι καὶ ἀπευκταῖον βασιλέως εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ χώραν
he-might-suffer and abominable (the)-emperor into the his-own land
παρεμβαλόντος, πέμψας εἰς βασιλέα ἐνδοθῆναί οἱ
having-invaded having-sent to (the)-emperor to-be-granted to-him
καθικετεύει τὴν ἐς αὐτὸν ἀπαθῆ ἄφιξιν. ὡς οὖν εἶχεν ὃ
he-beseeches the to him harmless arrival as then he-had what
ἤτησεν, ἀφίκετο δορυφορίας μετέχων σατραπικῆς, καὶ εἰς
he-asked he-arrived bodyguard having satrapal and into
θέαν τῷ βασιλεῖ καταστὰς τὸ δολιόφρον τῆς γνώμης
sight to-the emperor having-come the deceitfulness of-the mind
κατονειδίζεται, καὶ οὕτως ὡς ἄσπονδος ἀποπέμπεται. καὶ
he-is-reproached-for and thus as treaty-breaker is-sent-away and
ἐγγὺς ἐλθὼν τοῦ συλληφθῆναι διαφίεται πάλιν οἴκαδε
near having-come to-the being-seized is-let-go again homeward
ἀπελθεῖν, τὴν τοῦ τρόπου μεταβολὴν καὶ τὸ μηκέτι τὰ
to-go-away the of-the character change and the no-longer the(-things)
μὴ δοκοῦντα βασιλεῖ διαπράττεσθαι φρικώδεσιν ὅρκοις
not seeming(-good) to-(the)-emperor to-do with-dreadful oaths
ἐμπεδωσάμενος, κἂν οὐκ ἦν τὸν χαμαιλέοντα πρὸς
having-confirmed even-if not was(-it-possible) the chameleon to
τὴν τῆς ἀληθείας μεταβαλέσθαι λευκότητα, ἐφ᾽ ἑτέραν
the of-the truth to-change whiteness to other
πᾶσαν χροιὰν ῥαδίως μετατιθέμενον. ἐξιὼν γὰρ ἀπὸ
every color easily changing going-out for from
προσώπου τοῦ βασιλέως πολλοῖς ἅμα τὴν ψυχὴν ἐμερίζετο
(the)-face of-the emperor by-many at-once the soul was-divided
πάθεσιν. ἠσχύνετο ἐφ᾽ οἷς τῷ βασιλεῖ προσελήλυθεν,
passions he-was-ashamed at what-things to-the emperor he-has-come
ὠργίζετο ὧν ἕνεκα πέπονθεν, ἐπαθαίνετο οἷς
was-angry for-what for-the-sake he-has-suffered was-grieved at-what(-things)

τὰς τῆς γνώμης παρεκτροπὰς θριγγίοις ὅρκων ἑαυτῷ
the of-the mind deviations with-fences of-oaths for-himself
ἐπετείχισε. τέλος δέ, ὅσα ὁμωμόκει τῷ βασιλεῖ τὴν
he-had-walled (at-the)-end and as-many-as he-had-sworn to-the emperor the
οἰκείαν ἀποκρύπτων γνώμην καὶ συνέθετο, κατανωτισάμενος
own hiding mind and had-covenanted having-thrown-behind
τὴν συνήθη παρδαλέην ἑαυτῷ περιτίθησι, τὸ τοῦ
the customary leopard-skin on-himself puts the(-word) of-the
τραγῳδοῦ ὁ βάρβαρος ἐκεῖνος ἐπαινέσας ἄντικρυς, καὶ
tragedian the barbarian that having-praised outright and
εἰπὼν „ἡ γλῶσσ' ὀμώμοχ', ἡ δὲ φρὴν ἀνώμοτος."
having-said the tongue has-sworn the but mind (is)-unsworn
Καὶ εἶχε μὲν οὕτω ταῦτα· μήπω δὲ γεννήσας ὁ
and held indeed thus these(-things) not-yet and having-begotten —
Μανουὴλ υἱόν, ἀλλ' ἐπὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ Μαρίᾳ, ἣν αὐτῷ
Manuel (a)-son but on the daughter Maria whom to-him
ἡ ἐξ Ἀλαμανῶν ἀπέτεκεν ἄλοχος, τὰς τοῦ γένους
the from Alamans bore wife the of-the family
σαλεύων διαδοχάς, ὅρκοις πάντας κατενεπέδωσε μετὰ τὸν
anchoring successions with-oaths all bound after the
αὐτοῦ μόρον αὐτήν τε τὴν Μαρίαν καὶ τὸν μνήστορα
his fate her both — Maria and the betrothed
ταύτης Ἀλέξιον, ὅς, ὡς εἰρήκειμεν, ἐξ Οὐγγρίας ὥρμητο,
her Alexios who as we-had-said from Hungary had-come
κληρονόμους τῆς οἰκείας ἔχειν ἀρχῆς καὶ ὡς Ῥωμαίων
(as)-heirs of-the own to-have rule and as of-(the)-Romans
ἄναξι σφίσι καθυπείκειν καὶ προσκυνεῖν. ἔνθα οἱ μὲν
lords to-them to-yield and to-do-obeisance where the indeed
ἄλλοι πάντες τοῖς ἐπιτεταμμένοις ὑπέκυπτον, καὶ
others all to-the(-things) enjoined submitted and
τοὺς ὅρκους ὡς ὁ κρατῶν ἐκέλευεν ἀπεδίδοσαν· μόνος
the oaths as the ruler ordered rendered alone

δ᾽ ἦν ἀποδυσπετῶν Ἀνδρόνικος, φάσκων ὡς ὁ βασιλεὺς
and was protesting Andronikos saying that the emperor
εἰς δευτέρους ἀποκλίνας γάμους ἀρρενοτοκήσει δήπουθεν,
into second having-inclined marriage will-bear-a-son surely
καὶ πιστουμένους ἡμᾶς τῷ ὑστέρῳ τόκῳ τοῦ βασιλέως
and confirming us to-the later offspring of-the emperor
τὰ τῆς ἀρχῆς δι᾽ ὅρκων ἐσέπειτα ἀνάγκη τῇ
the(-things) of-the rule through oaths thereafter necessity to-the
θυγατρὶ ἀρτίως ὅρκια διδόντας μὴ εὐορκεῖν. καὶ ἄλλως δὲ
daughter just-now oaths giving not to-keep-faith and otherwise too
τίς ἡ τῷ βασιλεῖ θεοβλάβεια, ὡς πάντα μὲν Ῥωμαῖον
what the to-the emperor God-sent-madness that every indeed Roman
τοῦ θυγατρίου κρίνειν ἀπόλεκτρον, τὸν δ᾽ ἀλλογενῆ καὶ
for-the little-daughter to-judge unfit-for-bed the and foreign-born and
παρέγγραπτον τουτονὶ εἰς ὄνειδος Ῥωμαίοις Ῥωμαίων
enrolled-aside this(-one) to (the)-reproach to-(the)-Romans over-(the)-Romans
βασιλεύειν προκεκρίσθαι καὶ ὑπερκαθῆσθαι ὅλων ὡς κύριον;
to-reign to-have-been-preferred and to-sit-above all as lord
ἀλλ᾽ οὐκ εἶχε λέξας τὰ χρηστὰ ταῦτα τὸν βασιλέα
but not had having-said the good these(-things) the emperor
πειθόμενον, ἀθερίζοντα τὰ λεγόμενα ὡς ἀνδρὸς
obeying slighting the(-things) said as of-(a)-man
ἀντιδοξοῦντος καὶ ἰσχυρογνώμονος τερετίσματα. εἰσὶ δ᾽
contrary-minded and stubborn twitterings are and
οἳ μετὰ τοὺς ὅρκους Ἀνδρονίκῳ γεγόνασι σύμψηφοι,
(those)-who after the oaths with-Andronikos became of-like-vote
καὶ οἱ μὲν αὐτόθεν τὸ δοκοῦν ἀπεφήναντο, οἱ δὲ καὶ
and some indeed at-once the seeming declared others and also
τὸ λέγειν ἀφέντες ἀγωνιστικῶς μετεσκεύασαν, μήθ᾽ ὅλως
the to-speak having-let-go combatively contrived neither at-all
τῇ θυγατρὶ τοῦ βασιλέως μήτε μὴν τῷ τῶν Ῥωμαίων
for-the daughter of-the emperor nor indeed for-the of-the Romans

ξυνοῖσον εἶναι πληρώματι τὸν ἐκ φυταλιᾶς ἑτεροφύλου
profitable to-be complement the from (a)-plantation of-foreign-stock
ῥάδαμνον εἰς καλλιέλαιον μετεγκεντρίζειν πιότατον καὶ
shoot into (a)-cultivated-olive to-graft richest and
πρὸς τὸ ἀναζώσασθαι τὸ κράτος τῶν ὅλων προτίθεσθαι.
for the to-gird-on the rule of-the whole to-be-preferred
Ὁ δὲ λόγος προσθήσει τῇ ἱστορίᾳ καί τι ἕτερον τοῦ
the and narrative will-add to-the history also something other than-the
λαθεῖν ὑπέρτερον ὄν. τῷ βασιλεῖ τούτῳ πολλή τις
to-escape-notice higher being to-the emperor this much some
ἦν ἡ μελεδὼν τῶν κατὰ Κιλικίαν πόλεων καὶ φρουρίων,
was the care of-the in Cilicia cities and forts
ὧν ἡ λαμπρὰ καὶ περιφανὴς Ταρσὸς ὡς μητρόπολις
over-which the brilliant and conspicuous Tarsus as metropolis
προκαθέζεται. ὅθεν πολλῶν τῶν ἐπὶ δόξης καὶ τοῦ
presides whence many of-the(-men) in glory and of-the
ἐπισήμου αἵματος ἡγεμόνων ἐκεῖσε ἀφικομένων, ἐφεξῆς
notable blood commanders there having-come in-succession
ἡ ψῆφος περιελήλυθεν ἐς τὸν Κομνηνὸν Ἀνδρόνικον καὶ
the vote came-round to — Komnenos Andronikos both
ὡς γένει μέγαν καὶ ὡς ἐν ἀνδράσιν ἀξιοθέατον. τῷ
as in-family great and as among men worth-seeing for
τοι ἀφιγμένος ἐκεῖσε καὶ τὴν τῆς Κύπρου δασμολογίαν
surely having-arrived there and the — of-Cyprus tax-collection
προσειληφώς, ὡς ἔχοι τὰς δαπάνας ἐκεῖθεν ἀντλεῖν,
having-taken-on so-that he-might-be-able the expenses thence to-draw
πολλάκις μὲν τῷ Τορούσῃ πρὸς μάχην ἀντικατέστη
often indeed — with-Toroses for battle he-stood-against
καὶ ἀνεκήρυξε πόλεμον, ἐχθρά οἱ νοῶν καὶ ὑπ᾽
and proclaimed war hostile(-things) to-him thinking and by
ἐκείνου πάλιν ἀποστυγούμενος, οὐδὲν δέ τι γενναῖον
that(-man) again being-loathed nothing and anything noble

κατώρθωσε πώποτε, οὐδ' ἧς ἔτρεφε πολυτρόπου πείρας
he-achieved ever nor of-what he-nourished versatile experience
περὶ πολέμους καὶ πανουργίας εἰργάσατο ἄξιον. τελευταῖον
about wars and of-villainy he-did worthy at-the-last
δὲ ἡττηκότος αὐτὸν αἰσχρῶς τοῦ Τορούση καὶ τρόπαιον
and having-defeated him shamefully — Toroses and (a)-trophy
στήσαντος, βουλεύεταί τι παραβολώτατον, ὁποῖον ὁ
having-set-up he-plans something most-reckless such-as the
λόγος λέξων ἔρχεται. ὡς γὰρ τὰς οἰκείας δυνάμεις
narrative going-to-say comes as for the own forces
ἑκάτερος κατ' ἀλλήλων ἐξήνεγκαν, Ἀνδρόνικος μὲν ὅσα
each against one-another brought-out Andronikos indeed like
καὶ ζῶον τὴν στρατιὰν εἰς κεφαλὴν καὶ μέρος τὸ
also (a)-living-being the army into head and part the
κατόπιν καὶ μέλη ἀνάλογα τῷ παντὶ συνδιαθέμενος
hinder and limbs proportionate to-the whole having-arranged
εἶχεν, ὁ δὲ Τορούσης εἰς πολλὰ καταδιεῖλε τμήματα
had — and Toroses into many divided sections
καὶ διασπείρας ἦν εἰς σπείρας καὶ λόχους τὸ οἰκεῖον
and having-scattered was into companies and ambushes the own
στρατόπεδον. ἐπεὶ δὲ συμβαλόντες ἐμάχοντο, ἡ νίκη
army when and having-engaged they-fought the victory
καὶ πάλιν ἐπεφοίτα τῷ Τορούσῃ λαμπρά· τοῖς γὰρ ἀεὶ
also again came — to-Toroses brilliant to-the for always
ἐπιβοηθοῦσιν ἀκμῆσι καὶ τοῖς ἐκ τῶν λόχων λαθρηδὸν
reinforcing fresh(-troops) and to-the(-ones) from the ambushes secretly
ἐκπηδῶσιν Ἀρμενίοις αἱ τοῦ Ἀνδρονίκου ἐνέδωκαν φάλαγγες
leaping-out Armenians the — of-Andronikos gave-way phalanxes
καὶ εἰς τροπὴν ἐνέκλιναν ἄκοσμον. διὰ ταῦτα τῇ
and to rout inclined disorderly because-of these(-things) by-the
λύπῃ καταποθεὶς Ἀνδρόνικος, καὶ μὴ ἔχων ὅπως ἢ
grief swallowed-up Andronikos and not having how either

τὴν ἥτταν ἀναμαχέσαιτο ἢ γοῦν ἐξ ὑπογυίου δράσειέ
the defeat he-might-retrieve or at-any-rate from (the)-moment he-might-do
τι γενναῖον κατὰ τῶν θυόντων ἤδη πολεμίων τὰ
something noble against the sacrificing already enemies the
νικητήρια, τοῖς ἐγγὺς ἀνεφίκτων ἐπιχειρεῖ. κατοπτεύσας
victory-offerings at-the near unattainable(-things) attempts having-espied
γὰρ τὸν Τορούσην μετὰ τῶν δορυφορούντων αὐτὸν ἔτι
for — Toroses with the(-men) guarding him still
που ἱστάμενον ἔφιππον, τὴν τῶν ταγμάτων συλλογὴν
somewhere standing on-horseback the of-the units gathering
ἀναμένοντα ἐξ ἧς εἶχοντο ἐπιδιώξεως, ὅλῳ ῥυτῆρι
awaiting from which they-were-held pursuit with-whole rein
τὸν ἵππον ἀνεὶς ἐνσείει κατ᾽ ἐκείνου τὸ δόρυ, καὶ δὴ
the horse having-let-go he-thrusts against him the spear and indeed
κατὰ τοῦ θυρεοῦ βαλὼν ἀνατρέπει τοῦτον τοῦ ἵππου,
on the shield having-struck overturns him from-the horse
καὶ διεκπαίσας τὸ περὶ ἐκεῖνον ἐπίλεκτον, ὡς πτηνὸς
and having-broken-through the about him picked(-band) as (a)-winged
ἱππότης ἢ ὀλισθηρά τις ἔγχελυς, τὰς τῶν ἁπάντων χεῖρας
knight or slippery some eel the of-the all hands
ἐξήλυξεν. ἀλλ᾽ ἕως τούτου σεμνὸν τὸ τοῦ Ἀνδρονίκου
escaped but up-to this (was)-august the — of-Andronikos
κατόρθωμα· τὸ δὲ παθεῖν τὸν Τορούσην κακῶς ἀπεκώλυσαν
success the and to-suffer — Toroses badly prevented
οἵ τε σιδήρεοι χιτῶνες οὓς ἐνεδέδυτο, καὶ θυρεὸς ἐπιμήκης
the both iron tunics which he-had-put-on and (the)-shield long
παρὰ πλευρὸν καταβαίνων τοῦ ἵππου πλάγιος.
along (the)-side coming-down of-the horse slanting

V · PHILIPPA AND THEODORA

Andronikos abandons the war for love of Philippa, the young sister of the empress, and courts her in Antioch in splendid dress; she yields. Manuel sends Constantine Kalamanos to replace him and win Philippa, but she scorns him, and Kalamanos is captured by the Armenians. Andronikos flees toward Jerusalem and seduces Theodora, the widowed queen of Jerusalem and daughter of his cousin Isaac. Warned of Manuel's order to blind him, he flees with her among foreign princes until he settles with Saltouch near Koloneia.

Οὐ πολλαὶ δ' ἡμέραι παρήλθοσαν ὕστερον, καὶ λογίζονται
not many and days passed later and are-reckoned
τῷ Ἀνδρονίκῳ δευτέρου λόγου καὶ πάρεργα ἀνδροκτασίαι
— by-Andronikos of-second account and by-works man-slayings
καὶ μάχαι καὶ πόλεμοι καὶ σάλπιγξ ἠχοῦσα τὸ ἐνυάλιον
and battles and wars and (the)-trumpet sounding the war-cry
Δεῖμός τε Φόβος τε καὶ Ἄρης βροτολοιγός, καὶ ἔργα
Terror both Fear both and Ares man-destroying and deeds
πολέμια παρωσάμενος τὰ τῆς Ἀφροδίτης μέτεισιν ὄργια.
war-like having-thrust-aside the of-the Aphrodite pursues rites
ἡ δὲ Ἑλένην μὲν οὐχ ὑποβάλλει, οὐδ' οἷον ὑπ' ὄψιν
she and Helen indeed not suggests nor as-it-were before (the)-eyes
παρίστησι καθ' Ἑλλάδα καὶ μέσον Ἄργους τὴν οἴκησιν
sets in Greece and (the)-middle-of Argos the dwelling
ἔχουσαν, καὶ διαχεῖ τῷ κάλλει, καὶ ἐκμαίνει πρὸς ἔρωτα,
having and cheers with-the beauty and maddens to love
καὶ πηγνύει σκάφην, καὶ ναύαρχον ἐφίστησι Φέρεκλον, ἐκ
and fixes (a)-hull and (as)-admiral sets Phereklos from
γειτόνων δὲ ὂν τὸ τῆς Φιλίππας εἶδος καθυπογράφει καὶ
neighbors and being the — of-Philippa form sketches and
μαστροπεύει τῷ δυσέρωτι Ἀνδρονίκῳ· ἦν γὰρ ἐξ ἀκοῆς
panders for-the sick-with-love Andronikos he-was for from hearsay

ἐρωτόληπτος. ῥίψας οὖν τὴν ἀσπίδα καὶ τὸ κράνος
love-seized having-thrown then the shield and the helmet
ἀποβαλόμενος καὶ τὸν ὅλον στρατιώτην ἀποσεισάμενος
having-cast-off and the whole soldier having-shaken-off
πρὸς τὴν ἐρωμένην αὐτομολεῖ οὖσαν κατὰ πόλιν τὴν
to the beloved deserts being in (the)-city the
Ἀντιόχειαν. ἔνθα δὴ γεγονώς, καὶ τὴν Ἐρώτων ἀγλαΐαν
Antioch where indeed having-come and the of-(the)-Loves splendor
τῆς Ἄρεος σκευῆς ἀνθελόμενος, μόνον οὐκ ἔξαινεν ἔρια οὐδ᾽
to-the of-Ares gear having-preferred all-but — carded wool nor
ἱστῷ προσανεῖχε καὶ συνῆρεν ἠλάκατα, ὡς Ὀμφάλῃ πρὶν
at-(the)-loom attended and took-up spindles as for-Omphale before
Ἡρακλῆς τῇ Φιλίππᾳ δουλεύων. ἡ δ᾽ ἄρα ἦν τῆς
Heracles — to-Philippa slaving she and then was of-the(-woman)
συναφθείσης τῷ τούτου ἐξαδέλφῳ τῷ βασιλεῖ Μανουὴλ
having-been-joined to-the his cousin the emperor Manuel
πρώην οὔπω πάνυ θυγατρὸς τοῦ Πετεβίνου ἀδελφή.
recently not-yet quite daughter — of-Poitevin sister
καὶ ὁ μὲν τὴν Ἀντιόχειαν καταλαβὼν τρυφαῖς ἐκεχήνει
and he indeed — Antioch having-reached at-luxuries gaped
καὶ καλλωπισμοῖς ὑπελύττα καὶ δορυφόροις ἐπ᾽ ἀγυιῶν
and with-adornments raged and with-bodyguards in streets
ἀργυροτόξοις ἐπόμπευε, τὴν ἡλικίαν εὐμήκεσιν, ἰούλῳ τε
silver-bowed paraded in-the stature tall with-down both
πρώτῳ λαχνουμένοις καὶ κόμαις πυρσαινομένοις ξανθαῖς,
first growing-downy and with-hair reddened blond
καὶ ἣν ἐντεῦθεν θηρῶν τὴν θηράσασαν, ἣν καὶ
and whom thence hunting the(-woman) having-hunted(-him) whom also
εἶχε ταῖς οἰκείαις ἐρωτοδέσμαις καταγοητεύσας Ἀνδρόνικος,
he-held by-the own love-bonds having-bewitched Andronikos
καὶ ὅπερ ἐπεπόνθει τοῦτο δράσας φιλοτιμότερον, πλουτῶν
and what he-had-suffered this having-done more-ambitiously being-rich-in

μὲν καὶ ἄλλως εἶδος ἀξιάγαστον καὶ ὡς ἔρνος
indeed also otherwise (a)-form admirable and as (a)-sapling
ἀναβαίνων ἐλάτινον, ἐπτοημένος δὲ καὶ περὶ τὰς
going-up of-fir being-excited and also about the
ἐξάλλους στολάς, καὶ τούτων ὅσαι περὶ γλουτὸν καὶ
outlandish robes and of-these as-many-as about buttock and
μηροὺς καταβαίνουσαι διασχίζονται καὶ οἷον εἰσί πως
thighs coming-down are-split and as-it-were are somehow
συνυφασμέναι τῷ σώματι, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις τῶν τοιούτων
woven-together with-the body and to-the others of-the such(-things)
ἡγεμὼν καθιστάμενος. οὐκοῦν τὸ μὲν βλοσυρὸν ἐκεχάλαστο
leader becoming therefore the indeed grimness had-been-slackened
καὶ τὸ ἐπὶ συννοίας εἶναι ἀεί, καὶ τὸ τοῦ ἤθους ἐμβριθὲς
and the in thought to-be always and the of-the character severe
καὶ φροντιστικὸν ἐνδεδώκει, καὶ τὸ ἐπισκύνιον ὁ θὴρ
and anxious had-yielded and the frown the beast
ἀπεβάλετο· ἡ δὲ ὡς ἑάλω κατάκρας, ὑπέκυψεν εἰς
cast-off she and as she-was-taken utterly stooped to
εὐνήν, οἴκου τε καὶ πατριᾶς ἐπελάθετο, καὶ τοῦ ἐραστοῦ
(the)-bed of-house both and fatherland forgot and the lover
αὐτῆς ὀπίσω κατηκολούθησεν. ὁ βασιλεὺς δὲ ὡς τοῖς περὶ
her after followed the emperor and as by-the about
τούτου κατεβροντήθη ἀκούσμασι, μικροῦ καὶ ἐννεὸς ἦν καὶ
this was-thunderstruck hearings by-little also speechless was and
πρὸς ἄμφω μεμέριστο· καὶ ὡς ἐρῶντα γὰρ ἔρον ἀξύμφυλον
between both was-divided both as loving for (a)-love not-kindred
καὶ ἀθεμιτογαμοῦντα ἤχθραινε τὸν Ἀνδρόνικον, καὶ ὡς
and marrying-unlawfully he-hated — Andronikos and as
αὐτὸν τῶν κατ᾽ Ἀρμενίων ἐλπίδων ψευσάμενον συλλαβεῖν
him of-the against Armenians hopes having-cheated to-seize
ἐζήτει καὶ δίκας ἐξ ἐκείνου λαβεῖν. στέλλει τοίνυν τὸν
sought and penalties from him to-take he-sends therefore the

σεβαστὸν Κωνσταντῖνον τὸν Καλαμᾶνον, ἄνδρα καὶ τόλμης
sebastos Constantine the Kalamanos (a)-man also of-daring
λελογισμένης μεστὸν καὶ τὸ γενναῖον εὐτυχοῦντα στάσιμον,
reasoned full and the nobility being-blessed-with steady
καὶ τοῖς κατ᾽ Ἀρμενίαν μὲν ἐπιστατήσοντα πράγμασι,
and to-the in Armenia indeed going-to-oversee affairs
καὶ τῇ Φιλίππᾳ δ᾽ ὅπως συναφθείη πειραθησόμενον.
and — with-Philippa too how he-might-be-joined going-to-try
ὁ δὲ τὰ μὲν πρῶτα εἰς νυμφίον ἑαυτὸν διευθετήσας,
he and the indeed first(-things) into (a)-bridegroom himself having-arranged
καὶ λαμπρυνάμενος ὡς εἰκὸς καὶ καθ᾽ ὅσον ἤδει τὴν
and having-made-splendid as (was)-likely and as much-as he-knew the
ἐρωμένην ὑπαγαγέσθαι, τὴν Ἀντιόχου εἴσεισι. τοσοῦτον δὲ
beloved to-bring-under the(-city) of-Antiochos enters so-much and
προσέσχεν αὐτῷ Φιλίππα, καὶ οὕτως αὐτὴν τοῦ προτέρου
attended to-him Philippa and thus her from-the former
μετέθηκεν ἔρωτος, ὡς μηδὲ βλέμματος γοῦν μεταδοῦναι
moved love that not-even of-(a)-look at-any-rate to-give-a-share
ἢ προσρήματος ἀξιῶσαι τὸν Καλαμᾶνον, μᾶλλον μὲν
or of-(an)-address to-deem-worthy — Kalamanos rather indeed
οὖν καὶ προσονειδίσαι τἀνδρὶ τὸ τῆς ἡλικίας βραχύ, καὶ
then also to-reproach the-man the of-the stature shortness and
ἐς αὐτὸν ἀποσκῶψαι τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Μανουήλ, εἰ οὕτως
to him to-jeer the autocrat Manuel if so
ἀμαθῶς καὶ εὐήθως αὐτὴν ἔχειν ᾠήθη ὡς ἀποστατήσει
ignorantly and simply her to-be he-thought that she-will-desert
μὲν Ἀνδρονίκου αὕτη τοῦ ἥρωος, οὗ τὸ κλέος εὐρὺ καὶ
indeed Andronikos she the hero whose the fame (is)-wide and
οὗ τὸ γένος πολύ, προσκολληθήσεται δὲ ἀνδρὶ ὃς τὸ
whose the race (is)-great she-will-be-glued and to-(a)-man who in-the
γένος ἀπεσβεσμένος καὶ χθὲς καὶ πρώην εἰ ἔστιν ὅλως
race (is)-extinguished and yesterday and the-day-before if he-is at-all

ἐγνώρισται. ἐπεὶ γοῦν ὁ Κωνσταντῖνος ἀδοξοῦντας
is-known since at-any-rate — Constantine scorning
αὐτὸν ἑώρα τοὺς τῆς Φιλίππας ἔρωτας καὶ πρὸς ἄλλον
him saw the — of-Philippa loves and to another
λύοντας τὸ πτερόν, μηλοβολοῦντάς τε καὶ δᾳδουχοῦντας
loosing the wing pelting-with-apples both and carrying-torches-for
Ἀνδρόνικον, ἐκεῖθεν μεθίσταται, καὶ τὴν Ταρσὸν καταλαβὼν
Andronikos thence he-moves and — Tarsus having-reached
μετὰ τῶν ἀντιπάλων Ῥωμαίοις Ἀρμενίων συνερρήγνυ
with the opponents to-(the)-Romans Armenians broke-into
πόλεμον. ὡς δέ ποτε τούτῳ ἐπέβρισαν οἱ διάφοροι,
war as and at-last on-him pressed the adversaries
ἑάλω τε καὶ ἦν ἐν δεσμοῖς. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἐλύσατο
he-was-taken both and was in bonds the and emperor ransomed
τοῦτον, ἱκανὰ ζωάγρια καταθέμενος. Ἀνδρόνικος δὲ τὰς
him sufficient life-ransoms having-paid Andronikos and the
ἀπειλὰς τοῦ Μανουὴλ δεδιώς, καὶ πτοηθεὶς μή πως
threats — of-Manuel fearing and having-been-scared lest somehow
συλληφθεὶς τῶν φιλοτήτων Φιλίππας τὴν προτέραν εἱρκτὴν
having-been-seized for-the loves of-Philippa the former prison
ἀνταλλάξαιτο καὶ ὑποσταίη χρόνιον κάκωσιν, ἄρας
he-might-take-in-exchange and might-undergo long ill-treatment having-set-out
ἐκεῖθεν τῆς ἐπὶ τῶν Ἱεροσολύμων εἶχετο, γαλῆ
thence the(-road) to — Jerusalem held (a)-weasel
τὸ τοῦ λόγου πρὸς στέαρ ἐλεγχθείς, κἀπὶ τὰς πρώην
the(-thing) of-the saying at (the)-fat convicted and-to the former
ἐπαναδραμὼν δραπετεύσεις, καὶ πρὸς τὰς παλαιτέρας
having-run-back escapes and to the older
αὐτοῦ μηχανὰς ἀπιδών. ἀδιαφόρως δ' ἔχων τοῦ βίου,
his contrivances having-looked indifferently and being of-the life
καὶ ὡς ἵππος θηλυμανὴς ταῖς παραλόγοις ἐπιθορνύμενος
and as (a)-horse female-mad in-the unreasonable leaping

μίξεσιν, ἐγχρίπτει σαρκικῶς καὶ ἐνασελγαίνει ἀκολάστως
mixings approaches carnally and wantons licentiously
τῇ τοῦ πρώτου ἐξαδέλφου θυγατρὶ Θεοδώρᾳ (Ἰσαακίου
with-the of-the first cousin daughter Theodora of-Isaac
φημὶ τοῦ σεβαστοκράτορος, τοῦ βασιλέως Μανουὴλ
I-mean the sebastokrator of-the emperor Manuel
ὁμαίμονος) θανάτῳ ἄρτι ἀποβαλούσῃ τὸν παρθένιον
brother by-death just having-lost the maiden
σύνευνον, ὃς ἦρχε πρὸ βραχέος τῆς Παλαιστίνης·
bedfellow who ruled before (a)-little — Palestine
Βαλδουῖνος ἦν οὗτος, τὸ γένος ἕλκων ἐξ Ἰταλῶν. ἑτέραν
Baldwin was this(-man) the race drawing from Italians another
ἐπὶ τούτοις πληγὴν ὁ βασιλεὺς δέχεται Μανουήλ, καὶ
on these(-things) blow the emperor receives Manuel and
πράττων ἦν πάντα καὶ διατεχνώμενος, εἴ πως εἴη
doing was all(-things) and contriving if somehow he-might-be
συνειληφὼς Ἀνδρόνικον τῶν οἰκείων ἀμφιβλήστρων ἐντός,
having-caught Andronikos the own nets within
ὅθεν ἐρυθροδάνῳ ἐνσημανθὲν ἀφῆκε γραμμάτιον, ἐνάγων
whence with-madder marked he-sent (a)-letter urging
τοὺς κατὰ Κοίλην Συρίαν ἰσχύοντας Ἀνδρόνικον συσχεῖν
the(-men) in Hollow Syria powerful Andronikos to-hold
ὡς ἀντίφρονα καὶ περὶ τὸ γένος ἀκολασταίνοντα, καὶ
as contrary-minded and about the family licentious and
τοῦ φάους στερῆσαι τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν. καὶ τάχ᾽ ἂν τοὺς
of-the light to-deprive of-the eyes and perhaps — the
ὀφθαλμοὺς Ἀνδρόνικος ἐξ αἵματος ἠρευθοῦτο, ὠχρός
eyes Andronikos from blood would-have-reddened paleness
τέ μιν εἶλε παρειὰς συνεχόμενον καὶ δεσμούμενον,
both him would-have-seized (the)-cheeks held and bound
ἢ καὶ εἰς πορφύρεον ἐβάπτετο θάνατον, εἰ χεῖρες
or also into purple would-have-been-dipped death if hands

εἶχον ἑτέρων τὸ τῆς βασιλικῆς ἐκεῖνο βαφῆς δελτάριον.
held of-others the of-the imperial that dye note
νῦν δὲ τοῦ θεοῦ τηροῦντος αὐτόν, ὡς ἔοικεν, εἰς ἡμέραν
now and — God keeping him as it-seems for (the)-day
ὀργῆς καὶ τοῖς μετόπισθεν κακοῖς ταμιεύοντος, ἅ τε
of-wrath and for-the hereafter evils storing what-things both
παρὰ τὸ δέον εἰς τὸ ὑπήκοον ἐνεδείξατο, Ῥωμαίων
beyond the needful toward the subject(-people) he-showed of-(the)-Romans
ἄρξας ἐκ τυραννίδος, καὶ οἷς αὐτὸς ἀσυμπαθῶς
having-ruled from tyranny and into-what himself pitilessly
ἐσέπειτα περιπέπτωκε, χερσὶ τὸ ἐπιστόλιον τῆς Θεοδώρας
thereafter fell into-hands the letter — of-Theodora
δίδοται. ἡ δὲ ἀναγνοῦσα τοῦτο, καὶ γνοῦσα τὰ
is-given she and having-read it and having-learned the(-things)
κατ᾽ Ἀνδρονίκου τυρευόμενα, ἐξ αὐτῆς τὸν χάρτην
against Andronikos contrived from (the-hour)-itself the paper
αὐτῷ ἐγχειρίζει. συνεὶς οὖν Ἀνδρόνικος ὡς χωρεῖν
to-him hands having-perceived then Andronikos that to-go
ἐκεῖθεν δέον καὶ ἐγκονεῖν, μηδ᾽ ἕδρας εἶναι τὸ ἀπὸ
thence (was)-needful and to-hurry nor of-sitting to-be the(-time) from
τοῦδε ἀκμήν, φρίκη τε ὑφέρπεται, καὶ πρὸς ἀπόδρασιν
this (the)-moment shuddering both creeps-over(-him) and for escape
ἐνσκευάζεται. σοφιστὴς δὲ ὢν καὶ ἀπατεὼν καὶ αὐτὴν
he-gets-ready (a)-sophist and being and (a)-cheat also her
ἀποπλανᾷ Θεοδώραν, καὶ ὥσπερ Εὐρώπην πάλαι ὁ Ζεὺς
leads-astray Theodora and as Europa of-old — Zeus
τοῦ χοροῦ τῶν παρθένων ἀποβουκολήσας ἦκε φέρων
from-the chorus of-the maidens having-lured-away came carrying
ἐπὶ νώτων, εἰς βοῦν ἑαυτὸν μεταμορφώσας καλλίκερων,
on (his)-back into (an)-ox himself having-transformed fair-horned
οὕτω καὶ οὗτος ἀποστήσας τῶν οἴκοι τὴν γυναῖκα
thus also this(-man) having-detached from-the(-ones) at-home the woman

καὶ συμφοιτῆσαί οἱ σαββάτου ὁδὸν αἰτησάμενος ὡς
and to-come-with him (a)-sabbath's road having-asked as
προπέμψουσαν ἐκεῖθεν καὶ συνταξομένην ἐκείνῳ τὰ
going-to-escort thence and going-to-take-leave-with him the
ἐξιτήρια, συνέκδημον καὶ συμπλανῆτιν ἑκοῦσαν ἐπεσπάσατο
departure-rites (as)-fellow-traveler and fellow-wanderer willing drew
ἄκουσαν. χώραν δ' ἐκ χώρας ἀμείβων, καὶ ἡγεμόσι
unwilling land and from land exchanging and by-commanders
καὶ δυνάσταις ἐπιξενιζόμενος πολυπλανής, καὶ παρ' οἷς
and lords entertained much-wandering and among whom
κατέλυε, τιμήεις ὢν καὶ αἰδέσιμος καὶ φιλοφροσύνης ὅτι
he-lodged honored being and venerable and of-kindness as
πλείστης καταξιούμενος καὶ δωρεῶν ἁδρῶν ἐν μεθέξει
most deemed-worthy and of-gifts rich in sharing
γινόμενος, ὀψέ ποτε καὶ μόλις παρὰ τῷ Σαλτούχῳ τῆς
becoming late at-last and barely with — Saltouch from-the
πλάνης ἵσταται. ἦν δ' οὗτος τὰ τῇ Κολωνείᾳ τότε
wandering stops was and this(-man) the(-lands) — to-Koloneia then
κληρούμενος ὅμορα, καὶ ὅσα τῆς Χαλδαίας πρόσοικά
being-allotted bordering and as-many-as — of-Chaldia neighboring
τε καὶ ἔγγιστα καρπιζόμενος. κἀκεῖσε ἦν ἀλύων καὶ συνὼν
both and nearest enjoying and-there was roaming and being-with
Θεοδώρᾳ, μεθ' ὧν ἀπέτεκεν αὕτη τούτῳ παίδων δυοῖν
Theodora with whom bore she to-him children two
Ἀλεξίου τε καὶ Εἰρήνης, ἔτι δὲ καὶ Ἰωάννου, ὃν ἐκ
Alexios both and Irene still and also John whom from
τῶν προτέρων καὶ γνησίων οἱ σπερμάτων συνέκδημον
the former and legitimate to-him seeds (as)-fellow-traveler
ἐκ Βυζαντίου ἐπήγετο, ἕως τῆς ἐς αὐτὸν αὖθις τὸν
from Byzantium he-brought until the to him again the
αὐτοκράτορα Μανουὴλ ἐπαναλύσεως, ἣν κατὰ τὸν οἰκεῖον
autocrat Manuel return which in the own

χρόνον καὶ πρόσφορον ὁ λόγος τῇ ἱστορίᾳ παρέξεται,
time and fitting the narrative to-the history will-provide
ὡς εἴη συνημμένα δήπου καὶ συναφῆ τὰ ἐφεξῆς
so-that might-be joined surely and connected the(-things) in-order
ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ πεπραγμένα καὶ τὰ παρ᾽ ἡμῶν αὖθις ἐπ᾽
by him done and the(-things) by us again over
αὐτῷ ῥηθησόμενα. ἐν πολλοῖς μέντοι καὶ πολλάκις ὁ
him going-to-be-told in many(-things) however and often —
Μανουὴλ τὴν Ἀνδρονίκου δεσμεύων ψυχήν, καὶ ζητῶν
Manuel the of-Andronikos binding soul and seeking
ταύτην λαβεῖν, τοῖς ἀνηνύτοις ἐγχειρῶν διηλέγχετο· ὁ
it to-take on-the unachievable(-things) attempting was-convicted the
γὰρ πολύπλαγκτος οὗτος καὶ ταλασίφρων Ἀνδρόνικος
for much-wandering this(-man) and much-enduring Andronikos
τὰς καθ᾽ αὐτοῦ προσβολὰς εὐμαρῶς ἀπεκρούετο, καὶ τῶν
the against him attacks easily repelled and over-the
θηράτρων κούφως ὑπεραλλόμενος, ἅπερ αὐτῷ πολλάκις
traps lightly leaping which for-him often
ὑφηπλοῦτο καὶ ἐξετείνετο, ἀπαγίδευτος ἦν καὶ ἀθήρευτος.
were-spread-under and stretched untrappable was and uncatchable

VI · THE FALL OF ALEXIOS THE PROTOSTRATOR

Rulers fear the great and cut down whatever stands tall. Manuel, on mere suspicion of his popularity and wealth, has Alexios Axouch, the protostrator, husband of his niece, seized at Sardike, stripped of his property, and tonsured, and accusers led by Isaac Aaron charge him with sorcery. Alexios' wife, a model of chastity, begs in vain for him and dies deranged by grief; Alexios lives as a monk, a gourmand who learns at last to fast.

Ἀλλὰ τίνα τὰ παρὰ πόδας; χρεὼν γὰρ μηδὲ
but what (are)-the(-things) at (our)-feet needful for not-even
τούτων ἀφέξεσθαι. περιδεεῖς οἱ πολλοὶ τῶν κρατούντων
from-these to-refrain fearful the many of-the ruling(-men)
εἰσὶ καὶ καχύποπτοι, καὶ χαίρουσι διαπραττόμενοι ὅσα
are and suspicious and rejoice doing what-things
θάνατος καὶ Χάος καὶ Ἔρεβος ἐν τῷ τοὺς εὐπατρίδας
death and Chaos and Erebus in the the patricians
ἀκροτομεῖν καὶ ἐκποδὼν τιθέναι πάντα ὑψηλὸν καὶ
to-lop-off and out-of-the-way to-put every(-thing) lofty and
μετέωρον, καὶ ἐοίκασιν ἀτεχνῶς ὑψιτενέσι καὶ ἀκροκόμοις
raised and they-resemble simply high-stretching and leafy-topped
πίτυσιν. ὡς γὰρ αὗται καὶ βραχείαις ἀνέμων πνοαῖς
pines as for these even at-short of-winds breaths
τὰς τῶν κλάδων βελόνας διατινασσόμεναι ψιθυρίζουσιν,
the of-the branches needles shaking whisper
οὕτω δὴ καὶ οὗτοι καὶ τὸν πλούτῳ κομῶντα
thus indeed also these both the(-man) with-wealth flourishing
ὑποβλέπονται καὶ τὸν ἐπ᾽ ἀνδρείᾳ τῶν πολλῶν
eye-askance and the(-man) in courage from-the many
διαφέροντα κατεπτήχασι. κἂν εἴη τις τὸ κάλλος
differing cower-before even-if should-be anyone in-the beauty
ἀγαλματίας, καὶ τὴν γλῶτταν ὡς ὄρνις μουσηγέτης
statue-like and in-the tongue as (a)-bird Muse-leading
ἐστόμωτο, κἂν τὸ ἦθος ὁρῷτο εὐτράπελος, οὐκ ἐᾷ
be-sharpened even-if in-the character he-be-seen witty not lets(-him)
καθεύδειν τὸν ἐπὶ τοῦ στέφους οὐδ᾽ ἠρεμεῖν, ἀλλὰ
to-sleep the(-one) on the crown nor to-rest but
γίνεται τούτῳ τῶν ὕπνων ἐκκοπή, τῆς τρυφῆς ἀνατροπή,
becomes for-him of-the sleeps (a)-cutting-off of-the luxury (an)-overthrow
ἡδονῆς ὑφαίρεσις, φροντίδων ἀπόθεσις· καὶ τὴν φύσιν
of-pleasure (a)-removal of-cares (a)-putting-away and the nature

μέμφονται τὴν πλάστριαν, ὅτι καὶ ἑτέρους εἰς τὸ ἄρχειν
they-blame the shaper because also others for the ruling
ἐπιδόξους ἐπαλαμήσατο, καὶ μὴ πρώτους αὐτοὺς καὶ
likely she-contrived and not first them and
ὑστάτους καλλίστους ἀνθρώπων ἐφύτευσεν. οὐκοῦν καὶ
last most-beautiful of-men she-begot therefore also
ἀντιστρατεύονται τὰ πολλὰ τῇ προνοίᾳ καὶ τῷ θείῳ
they-campaign-against the most(-part) the providence and against-the divine
ὑπέροπλοι γίνονται, πάντα ἀγαθὰ ἐκ τοῦ πλείονος
overweening become all good(-things) from the more
ἐκχορδεύοντες καὶ ὡς θύματα σφαγιάζοντες, ὡς ἔχοιεν
gutting and as victims slaughtering so-that they-might-have
ἐφ᾽ ἡσυχίας δήπουθεν οὗτοι σπαθᾶν καὶ ὡς πατρῷον
at quiet surely they to-squander and as ancestral
κλῆρον καθηδυπαθεῖν μονώτατοι τὰ δημόσια καὶ ὡς
inheritance to-enjoy alone the public(-things) and as
ἀνδραπόδοις χρῆσθαι τοῖς ἐλευθέροις καὶ ὡς ὠνητοῖς τοῖς
slaves to-use the free and as bought(-ones) the
ἀξιωτέροις ἐνίοτε ἄρχειν προσφέρεσθαι, κακῶς εἰδότες καὶ
more-worthy sometimes to-rule to-treat badly knowing and
τὸ φρονεῖν ὑπὸ τῆς ἐξουσίας ἀφῃρημένοι καὶ κακοβούλως
the thinking by the power deprived and ill-advisedly
τῶν πρότριτα λανθανόμενοι. καὶ ὁ Μανουὴλ τοίνυν
of-the(-things) three-days-before forgetting and — Manuel therefore
οὐδὲν ἄχαρι ἔχων ἐπεγκαλεῖν Ἀλεξίῳ τῷ πρωτοστράτορι,
nothing unpleasant having to-charge to-Alexios the protostrator
ἢ ὅ τι ὅλως παραλελύπηκεν ἢ παρηνώχλησεν ἢ τῆς
or what — at-all he-has-grieved or annoyed or from-the
ὀφειλομένης εὐνοίας καὶ πίστεως καθυφῆκε βραχύ τι
owed goodwill and faith had-slackened little at-all
γοῦν ἀντίρροπα δράσας ὧν ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ πέπονθεν
at-any-rate counterpoised having-done of-the(-things) by him he-had-been-treated

εὖ, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ ζυγοῦ τὴν ἑτέραν παρήνεγκεν πλάστιγγα,
well and as on (a)-balance the other had-brought-down scale
ἐξ ὑπονοίας δὲ μόνης ὁρμώμενος, κακοσχόλων τινῶν, ὡς
from suspicion and only setting-out of-malicious some as
ἄνθρωπος, ὑπαχθεὶς ὑφηγήσεσιν, ἐκ τοῦ τὸν ἄνδρα ὁρᾶν
(a)-man led by-suggestions from the the man to-see
καὶ στρατηγοῖς καὶ στρατιώταις ἐρώμενον καὶ φιλοτίμῳ
and by-generals and by-soldiers loved and with-ambitious
γνώμῃ καὶ χειρὶ φιλοδώρῳ πρὸς ἅπαντας χρώμενον,
mind and with-hand generous toward all using
ἴσως δὲ καὶ τοῦ προσόντος αὐτῷ πλούτου ὑποτύφων
perhaps and also for-the present to-him wealth smoldering
ἔφεσιν, συλλαμβάνει τοῦτον διάγων ἐν Σαρδικῇ, μήπω
desire seizes him spending-time in Sardike not-yet
ἐπιφαυσκούσης ἡμέρας, τῇ οἰκείᾳ ἔτι συγκατακείμενον
dawning day with-the own still lying-with
ὁμευνέτιδι, καὶ οὐ μόνον τῶν ὄντων ἁπάντων ἀπογυμνοῖ,
bedfellow and not only of-the possessions all strips
ἀλλὰ καὶ εἰς μοναχὸν ἀποκείρας ἐν ἑνὶ τῶν κατὰ τὸ
but also into (a)-monk having-tonsured in one of-the on —
Παπύκιον ὄρος φροντιστηρίων παραρριπτεῖ. ἵνα δὲ μὴ ᾖ
Papikion mountain monasteries casts(-him) that and not be
τὸ πραχθὲν ἀπροφάσιστον καὶ προῦπτον διὰ τοῦτο
the(-thing) done without-pretext and open because-of this
τὸ βασιλικὸν ἀδίκημά τε καὶ ἀσχημόνημα, οἱ συκοφάνται
the imperial wrong both and disgrace the calumniators
παρῆσαν ἐγγὺς ὑφειμένοι παρ᾽ ὧν ὑπεβλήθησαν, καὶ
were-present near suborned by whom were-alleged also
γοητεῖαι κατὰ βασιλέως τὰ αἰτιάματα οὔπω πάνυ τι
sorceries against (the)-emperor the charges not-yet very at-all
πιθαναὶ καὶ δραστήριοι ὡς ποιεῖν τὸν κεχρημένον
plausible and effective as to-make the (one)-using(-them)

πετόμενον καὶ μηδ᾽ ὅλως θεώμενον καθ᾽ ὧν ἂν
flying and not-even at-all seen against whom —
ἐπεισπέσθαι ξιφηφόρος βούλοιτο, καὶ ἕτερ᾽ ἄττα βωμόλοχα
to-fly-in-upon sword-bearing he-might-wish and other some buffoonish
καὶ ἀκοαῖς ὑγιαινούσαις οὐκ εὐπαράδεκτα, ὁποῖα πάλαι
and to-ears healthy not acceptable such-as of-old
τοῦ Περσέως λογοποιοῦντες κατηγόρευον Ἕλληνες. ἦν δέ,
the of-Perseus fabling told Greeks was and
ὡς ᾄδετο, τῶν συκοφαντῶν τοῦ ἀνδρὸς ὁ προχειρότατος
as was-sung of-the calumniators of-the man the readiest
Ἀαρών τις Ἰσαάκιος, Κορινθόθεν μὲν ὁρμώμενος, τὴν δὲ
Aaron some Isaac from-Corinth indeed setting-out the and
Λατινίδα γλῶτταν ἄκρως ἐξησκηκὼς ἡνίκα συναπήχθη
Latin tongue highly having-practiced when he-was-led-away-with
τοῖς πατριώταις εἰς Σικελίαν αἰχμάλωτος, καὶ τοῖς
the countrymen to Sicily (a)-captive and to-the(-ones)
ἐκ τῆς διαλέκτου ταύτης τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐντυγχάνουσιν
from the dialect this with-the emperor meeting
ὑποβολεὺς τηνικαῦτα γενόμενος. ἡ δὲ τοῦ Ἀλεξίου
(a)-prompter then having-become the and — of-Alexios
γυνή, θυγάτηρ οὖσα τοῦ πορφυρογεννήτου Ἀλεξίου ὃς
wife daughter being of-the purple-born Alexios who
ἐπρωτοτόκει τῶν τοῦ Μανουὴλ ἀδελφῶν, ἐφιλοτιμεῖτο μὲν
was-first-born of-the — of-Manuel brothers was-eager indeed
ἑαυτὴν ἀνελεῖν, φιλανδρίαν καὶ σωφροσύνην ἐν ταῖς
herself to-kill love-of-husband and chastity among the
μάλιστα τῶν γυναικῶν ἀγαπήσασα καὶ τιμήσασα, καὶ
most of-the women having-loved and having-honored and
τῶν ἐκ τοῦ γένους θηλυτέρων καλλιστεῖον οὖσα καὶ
of-the(-ones) from the family females (the)-prize-of-beauty being and
λαμπρὸν ἐπικόσμημα καὶ περιλάλημα τοῖς πᾶσιν ἐράσμιον·
(a)-brilliant ornament and (a)-talk to-the all lovely

τοῦ τοιούτου δ' ἐγχειρήματος ἐκκρουσθεῖσα πεσοῦσα
from-the such but attempt having-been-knocked-off having-fallen
προσεκνυζᾶτο τοῖς τοῦ θείου καὶ βασιλέως ποσί, καὶ
fawned at-the of-the uncle and emperor feet and
ἐδεῖτο κοπτομένη θερμότερον φήνης καὶ ἐλεεινότερον,
begged beating(-herself) more-hotly than-(a)-vulture and more-piteously
δρακόντων ὀδυνηρότερον, ἀλκυόνος πολυπενθέστερον,
than-serpents more-painfully than-(a)-halcyon more-mournfully
χαρίσασθαι τὸν ἄνδρα αὐτῇ, μαρτυρομένη θεόν, καὶ εἴ
to-grant the man to-her calling-to-witness God and if
τί που φρικῶδες τοῖς εὐσεβοῦσι πρᾶγμα καὶ ὄνομα
anything somewhere dreadful to-the pious (a)-thing and name
ἀπαραλόγιστον, εἶναι τῆς ἐκείνου βασιλείας θεράποντα
not-false to-be of-the his empire (a)-servant
καὶ ἀκαταιτίατον πάντῃ τὸν εὐνέτην αὐτῆς. ἀλλ' οὐκ
and blameless wholly the husband her but not
ἴσχυσε μεταθέσθαι τὴν γνώμην τοῦ αὐτοκράτορος, οὐδ'
was-able to-change the mind of-the autocrat nor
ἀναλῦσαι ὅλως ἅπερ ἐκείνῳ ἤδη κεκύρωτό πως
to-undo at-all what-things to-him already had-been-ratified somehow
καὶ δέδοκτο, καὶ ταῦτα ἕως δακρύων αὐτὸν καὶ θέᾳ
and had-been-decided and this to tears him and by-sight
ἐλεεινῇ καὶ σχήμασιν ἱλασίμοις καὶ ῥήμασιν οἰκτροῖς
pitiable and gestures propitiatory and words piteous
ἐκθηλύνασα. ἀμέλει καὶ τὸν βίον φιλόδακρυν ἔχουσα κατὰ
having-unmanned indeed also the life tear-loving having like
τὰς φιλοσώφρονας τρυγόνας τὰ οἰκόπεδα περιέτρυζεν
the chastity-loving turtledoves the house-sites she-cooed-round
ὀλολύζουσα, καὶ τὴν μόνωσιν ἀπωδύρετο· ὅθεν καὶ τῇ
wailing and the solitude lamented whence also by-the
περισσοτέρᾳ λύπῃ καταποθεῖσα τὸ φρονεῖν παρακέκοπται,
excessive grief swallowed-up in-the thinking was-deranged

ἐπὶ παισὶν ἄρρεσι δυσὶ τὸ βιοῦν καταξαίνουσα καὶ ἑαυτὴν
with children male two the living wearing-away and herself
εἰς τέλος καταμαραίνουσα. καὶ Ἀλέξιος μὲν τὸ μέλαν
to (the)-end withering and Alexios indeed the black
ἀσπασάμενος ἄμφιον τοῖς θείοις ἐκουφίζετο ἔρωσι, τοῦ
having-embraced garment by-the divine was-lightened loves of-the
ἀκροτάτου τῶν ἐφετῶν ἐφιέμενος καὶ ὡς ὑψιπέτης
highest of-the desired(-things) desiring and as (a)-high-flying
ἀετὸς τῶν κάτω ὑπεριπτάμενος. κρεωδαισίας δ'
eagle over-the(-things) below flying of-meat-feasts and
ἄκρος ὢν ἐραστὴς καὶ καρυκείαις χαίρων βρωμάτων
extreme being (a)-lover and in-sauces rejoicing of-foods
καὶ πανθοινίαις προσκείμενος, ὁπηνίκα πλούτῳ πολλῷ
and to-banquets devoted when with-wealth much
περιερρεῖτο καὶ τοῖς κατὰ κόσμον ἐνευπάθει τερπνοῖς,
he-overflowed and in-the(-things) in (the)-world enjoyed delights
ὡς καὶ τὰς νηστίμους τῶν ἡμερῶν (τετράδα φημὶ καὶ
so-that also the fasting of-the days (the)-fourth I-mean and
παρασκευήν) κρεωβόρον αὐτῷ παρατίθεσθαι τράπεζαν,
(the)-preparation meat-eating for-him to-be-set-before (a)-table
ἢ δεσποτικῆς κατὰ ταύτας τελετῆς ἀγομένης ἢ μνήμης
or of-(a)-Lord's on these festival being-held or memory
ἐνδόξου μάρτυρος τελουμένης ἤ τινος τῶν ὀπαδῶν τῶν
of-(a)-glorious martyr being-celebrated or of-some of-the followers the(-ones)
Χριστοῦ, τότε ποηφαγῶν καὶ ταῖς ὀπώραις ἐνεστιώμενος
of-Christ then grass-eating and on-the fruits feasting
καὶ ταῖς ἀκάπνοις θύων τῶν τραπεζῶν καὶ τὸ πεινῆν
and to-the smokeless sacrificing of-the tables and the hunger
πεινῶν ἀτεχνῶς, ὀψὲ δὲ καὶ ἰχθύων ἐνεορτάζων ταῖς
hungering simply late and also of-fish feasting at-the
παραθέσεσιν ἔχαιρεν ὅτι μάλιστα, καὶ μνήμην τῶν
servings rejoiced as most and memory of-the

προτέρων λαμβάνων ὀψαρτυμάτων καὶ τῆς περιέργου τῶν
former taking of-dishes and of-the curious of-the
κρεῶν δαιτρεύσεως ἀκκισμὸν ἐκάλει κοιλίας καὶ ὀρέξεως
meats carving (a)-coyness called of-belly and of-appetite
μέθοδον ὅσα οἱ ἀδδηφάγοι καὶ κρεωφάγοι προτίθενται,
(a)-method what-things the gluttons and meat-eaters put-forward
μὴ δύνασθαι λέγοντες τοῦ ἄγαν ὑποχαλᾶν· πᾶν γὰρ
not to-be-able saying from-the excess to-slacken all for
τὸ παρατιθέμενον εἰδέναι τὸ σωμάτιον συνιστᾶν καὶ
the(-food) set-before to-know the poor-body to-make-firm and
εὐεξίας εἶναι ποιητικόν.
of-good-health to-be productive
Τί δὲ ἡ φίλη δίκη; ἆρα πολύπους καὶ πολύχειρ οὖσα
what and the dear justice then many-footed and many-handed being
ὀξυδερκής τε καὶ πανδερκής, καὶ μικροῦ ποδῆρες τὸ οὖς
sharp-sighted both and all-seeing and by-little foot-long the ear
ἔχουσα, λήθεται ἢ οὐκ ἐννοεῖ ἢ τέλεον παρίησιν ἀνεκδίκητα
having forgets or not considers or wholly lets-pass unavenged
ὅσα ἐπί τισιν ἀναιδῶς οἱ τῶν ἐπαινετέων κατήγοροι
what-things against some shamelessly the of-the praiseworthy accusers
συρράπτουσιν ἔκδικα; οὐμενοῦν, ἀλλὰ παρυπέφηνε καὶ
stitch-together unjust(-things) not-at-all but she-appeared and
τότε ὡς τὰ ἐν μυχῷ γῆς διορᾷ καὶ τὰ
then as the(-things) in (the)-depth of-earth she-sees-through and the(-things)
ὑπὸ γλῶτταν ἐνωτίζεται τονθορυζόμενα. εἰ μὲν οὖν καὶ
under (the)-tongue hears muttered if indeed then also
βασιλεῖ ἐνεμέσησε τῆς μὴ ἐνδίκου ταυτησὶ πράξεως,
on-(the)-emperor she-was-wroth for-the not just this deed
οὐ τοῦ παρόντος καταλέγειν καιροῦ· ἔδει δὲ σοφὸν
not of-the present to-tell (is)-the-time it-was-needful and wise
ὄντα τὸν Μανουὴλ μηδ' ἀμαθῆ τε καὶ ἀναλφάβητον οὐχ
being — Manuel not ignorant both and illiterate not

ὡς διαδεξόμενον ἐκεῖνον καὶ τῆς ἀρχῆς παραλύσοντα
as going-to-succeed that(-man) and from-the rule going-to-remove
τὸ Α περιεργάζεσθαι, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκείνῳ τὰ τοῦ ἄρχειν ἀνάπτειν
the A to-busy-himself-with but to-him the of-the ruling to-fasten
πείσματα ὃς εἶναί φησι τὸ Α καὶ τὸ Ω, τουτέστιν ἡ ἀρχὴ
cables who to-be says the A and the Omega that-is the beginning
καὶ τὸ τέλος, ὡς Ἰωάννης ὁ εὐαγγελιστὴς καὶ θεολόγος
and the end as John the evangelist and theologian
ἐν τῇ ἀποκαλύψει διδάσκει με· οὐ γὰρ λείπει τῷ θεῷ Α.
in the revelation teaches me not for is-lacking — to-God A

VII · AARON, SKLEROS, AND SIKIDITES; THE NEW CASTLES

Justice finds the accusers. Isaac Aaron is caught practicing magic with a book of Solomon and secretly urging Western envoys to hold out against Manuel, and Manuel has him blinded; under Andronikos he urges harsher punishments and is himself mutilated by Isaac Angelos. Michael Sikidites and Seth Skleros are blinded for sorcery, of which Niketas tells three tales. Manuel fortifies the cities of the Asian frontier, the New Castles, which then prosper.

Τοὺς συκοφάντας μέντοι μετῆλθε, καὶ ἄλλῳ μὲν ἄλλην
the calumniators however she-pursued and on-one indeed another
δίκην ἐπέθηκε, τῷ δ᾽ Ἀαρὼν ἐπέβρισε χαλεπώτερον, ταῖς
penalty imposed — but on-Aaron pressed more-harshly with-the
οἰκείαις ἀρπεδόσι περισχοινίσασα. μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺν γάρ τινα
own cords having-roped(-him) after not much for some
χρόνον ἁλίσκεται μαγείαις προσανέχων, καὶ προύκειτο
time he-is-caught to-sorceries devoting(-himself) and lay-before(-them)
χελώνης ἔκφορον μίμημα, ἔνδον στέγον τῆς χέλυος
of-(a)-tortoise portable imitation inside containing of-the shell
ἀνθρωπόμορφον εἴκασμα, πεπεδημένον ἄμφω τὼ πόδε καὶ
(a)-man-shaped image fettered both the two-feet and

τὸ στέρνον ἐληλαμένον ἥλῳ διαμπερές. ἑάλω δὲ καὶ
the breast driven with-(a)-nail through he-was-caught and also
βίβλον Σολομώντειον ἀνελίττων, ἥτις ἀναπτυσσομένη τε
(a)-book Solomonic unrolling which opened both
καὶ διερχομένη κατὰ λεγεῶνας συλλέγει καὶ παρίστησι τὰ
and gone-through by legions collects and presents the
δαιμόνια, συχνάκις ἀναπυνθανόμενα ἐφ' ὅτῳ προσκέκληνται,
demons often inquiring for what they-have-been-called
καὶ τὸ ἐπιταττόμενον ἐπισπεύδοντα περατοῦν, καὶ
and the(-thing) enjoined hastening to-complete and
προθύμως δρῶντα τὸ κελευόμενον. οὐκ ἐπὶ τούτοις
eagerly doing the(-thing) ordered not for these(-things)
δὲ μόνον Ἀαρὼν συνείληπτο, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὅτι βασιλέως
and only Aaron had-been-seized but also because of-(the)-emperor
ἐνώπιον ὑποβάλλων ἃς ἐκ τῶν δυσμόθεν ἐθνῶν ἀφικόμενοι
before suggesting what from the western nations having-come
πρέσβεις ἐκόμιζον ἀγγελίας, καὶ μὴ δυσαχθοῦντας ὁρῶν
envoys brought messages and not chafing seeing
πρὸς τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως θελήματα, ἐπιπλήττει τούτοις ἐν μιᾷ
at the of-the emperor wishes he-rebukes them in one
τῶν αἰτήσεων ὡς πρὸς τὰς καταθέσεις ἑτοιμορρόποις τε καὶ
of-the requests as toward the concessions ready-to-incline both and
εὐκόλοις, καὶ ὑποτίθησιν ἀντιτεῖναι πρὸς τὸ τῶν ζητημάτων
compliant and suggests to-resist against the of-the questions
τηνικαῦτα προκείμενον καὶ μὴ ῥᾳδίως οὕτω καὶ ἐκ πρώτης
then before(-them) and not easily thus and from (the)-first
καθυπενδοῦναι, ὡς ἐντεῦθεν κερδανοῦντας καὶ φιλίαν μείζω
to-give-in as thence going-to-gain and friendship greater
ἐκ βασιλέως κἀκ τῶν ὁμογλώττων πλείω τιμήν. καὶ
from (the)-emperor and-from the same-tongued more honor and
τότε μὲν ἡ διάλεξις διελέλυτο, ἀφώρατα τῷ βασιλεῖ
then indeed the conversation had-broken-up unseen to-the emperor

θεμένη τὰ τοιαδὶ τοῦ Ἀαρὼν εἰσηγήματα καὶ τῷ τῆς
having-set the such — of-Aaron proposals and by-the of-the
διαλέκτου διαφόρῳ τὰ ἔκθεσμα σκέμματα συσκιάσασα· κατὰ
dialect difference the lawless thoughts having-shaded in
μόνας δὲ τὰ προβληθέντα τῶν ζητημάτων ἡ βασιλὶς
private and the(-things) put-forward of-the questions the empress
ἀναπεμπάζει φρενί, Λατινὶς οὖσα τὸ γένος καὶ τῶν
counts-over in-mind Latin being in-the race and the(-things)
λεγομένων ἀκριβῶς συνιεῖσα, καὶ ἀνακαλύπτει πάντα
said exactly understanding and uncovers all
τῷ ἄνακτι. ὁ δ' ἐπὶ τοῖς ἠκουσμένοις ἀγανακτήσας
to-the lord he and at the(-things) heard having-been-indignant
κακῶς τὸν Ἀαρὼν τίθησι, τῶν τε ὀφθαλμῶν τὸ φῶς
badly — Aaron treats of-the both eyes the light
ἀμαυρώσας καὶ τῆς οὐσίας πάσης ἀποστερήσας. κακοεργὸς
having-darkened and of-the property all having-deprived (an)-evildoer
δ' ὢν ὁ Ἀαρών, καὶ λιχνείαν φύσεως περὶ τὰ χείριστα
and being — Aaron and greed of-nature about the worst
δυστυχῶν, ἐς ὕστερον ἐνῆγεν Ἀνδρόνικον τυραννήσαντα μὴ
being-unlucky-in to later urged Andronikos having-become-tyrant not
μέχρι τοῦ ἐκκόπτειν τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς τὴν τῶν ἀντιφρόνων
up-to the to-cut-out the eyes the of-the contrary-minded
ἐκείνῳ τιμωρίαν περιστᾶν ἀλλ' ἢ θάνατον ἁπάντων
to-him punishment to-set but either death of-all
καταψηφίζεσθαι ἢ βαρυτέραις ἐκμοχλεύειν κολάσεσιν, ἑαυτὸν
to-vote or with-heavier to-lever-out punishments himself
τιθεὶς εἰς παράδειγμα κἀντεῦθεν πιστούμενος τὰ
setting as (an)-example and-thence confirming the(-things)
λεγόμενα, ζῶντά τε καὶ κινούμενον καὶ πνέοντα καὶ
said living both and moving and breathing and
φθεγγόμενον καὶ συμφράδμονα εἶναι δυνάμενον, καὶ μὴ μόνον
speaking and consulting to-be being-able and not only

διὰ χειρῶν ἀντιλαβῆς ἀλλὰ καὶ διὰ γλώττης αὐτῆς ὡσεὶ
through hands' grip but also through (the)-tongue itself as
καὶ μαχαίρας ὀξείας ἀποδειροτομεῖν ἰσχύοντα τὸν ἀντίδοξον,
also (a)-sword sharp to-behead being-able the opponent
καὶ ἕτερ' ἄττα φλύαρα καὶ ἀπάνθρωπα ὑφηγούμενος, δι'
and other some silly and inhuman suggesting through
ὧν τὸ ἀκροχολώτατον ἐκεῖνο καὶ ὑποδύσχολον τὸν τρόπον
which the most-irascible that and somewhat-difficult in-the character
γερόντιον χαιρησιφονεῖν ἐπὶ μᾶλλον ἐπώτρυνεν. ὧν δὴ
old-man to-rejoice-in-murder for more urged-on of-which indeed
πονηρῶν διαβουλίων καὶ παραιφάσεων πικρὰν ἀποτινὺς
wicked designs and pretexts (a)-bitter paying
ἀμοιβὴν τῷ γεννήτορι Ἀαρὼν ὁ τὸν Ἀνδρόνικον ὕστερον
requital to-the father Aaron the — Andronikos later
τῆς ἀρχῆς καθελὼν Ἰσαάκιος ὁ Ἄγγελος ἐκτέμνει
from-the rule having-overthrown Isaac the Angelos cuts-out
τὴν αὐτοῦ γλῶτταν, συναφελεῖν τε καὶ ἀφανιεῖν τὸν
the his tongue to-take-away-with both and to-make-vanish the
ἐπὶ ταύτης σπεύδων ἰόν.
in it hastening venom
Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Μανουὴλ ἐπέβλεψέ ποτε θυμῷ πλαγίῳ
the and emperor Manuel looked once with-wrath sidelong
καὶ κινήσει ἐνδίκῳ κατὰ τοῦ Σκληροῦ Σὴθ καὶ τοῦ
and with-movement just upon — Skleros Seth and —
Σικιδίτου Μιχαήλ, ὅθεν καὶ προστάξει τούτου ταῖς
Sikidites Michael whence also by-command his in-the
οἰκείαις ὄψεσιν ἄμφω τὸν σίδηρον ἐδέξαντο σίζοντα,
own eyes both the iron received hissing
λόγῳ μὲν ἀστρονομίας ἐχόμενοι, ἔργῳ δὲ μαγγανείαις
in-word indeed to-astronomy holding in-deed and to-sorceries
προσκείμενοι καὶ δαιμονώδεσιν ἑτέροις φενακισμοῖς. ὁ
devoted and to-demonic other deceptions —

μὲν γὰρ Σκληρὸς ἐπιγάμου παρθένου ἦρα καὶ
indeed for Skleros of-(a)-marriageable maiden was-in-love and
ἐπείρα λαμπρῶς, παρορώμενος δὲ ὑπὸ τῆς κόρης καὶ
tempted(-her) openly being-overlooked and by the girl and
ἀδοξούμενος στέλλει ταύτῃ διὰ προαγωγοῦ τινὸς γυναίου
scorned he-sends to-her through procuress some woman
μῆλον Περσικόν. ἡ δὲ παρθένος καταθεμένη τοῦτο τῷ
(an)-apple Persian she and maiden having-put it in-the
κόλπῳ ἐκμαίνεται μάλα δὴ πρὸς ἔρωτα καὶ ἀφροδισίου
bosom is-maddened very indeed to love and with-sexual
ὑποπίμπλαται οἴστρου, καὶ τέλος διακορεῖται παρ' αὐτοῦ.
is-filled frenzy and (at-the)-end is-deflowered by him
οἱ δὲ τῆς παιδὸς προσγενεῖς βαρέως ἐνεγκόντες τὴν
the and of-the girl relatives heavily having-borne the
ταύτης ταπείνωσιν καταβοῶνται γενναίως μάλα τοῦ
her humiliation cry-out-against nobly very the(-one)
ταῖς νεάνισιν ἐφοπλίζοντος δαίμονας καὶ δίκην ὄφεως
against-the young-women arming demons and like (the)-serpent
ἀρχεκάκου δι' ὀπώρας τὰς παρθένους συλαγωγοῦντος
author-of-evil through fruit the maidens carrying-off-as-plunder
καὶ τῆς σώφρονος βιοτῆς ὡς ἐξ Ἐδὲμ ἀπελαύνοντος.
and from-the chaste life as from Eden driving-away
καὶ πικρόγαμος ἐντεῦθεν γενόμενος, ἣν κακῶς ἔβλεψεν,
and bitter-wedded thence having-become whom wickedly he-looked-at
οὐδ' ὅλως ἔτι ἑώρακεν. ὁ δὲ Σικιδίτης διά τινων
not-even at-all again he-saw — and Sikidites through some
ἀρρητουργιῶν καὶ δεδορκότα τῶν θεωμένων ἐσκότου τὰ
unspeakable-rites also seeing of-the watchers darkened the
βλέφαρα καὶ ἀπεπλάνα τοῦ τὰ θεατὰ ὡς ὄντα
eyelids and led-astray from-the the(-things) visible as being
ὁρᾶν, καὶ τῶν ὁρώντων τὰς ὄψεις παρέφερε, κατὰ
to-see and of-the(-ones) seeing the sights deranged by

φάλαγγας ἐπισυνιστῶν τοὺς δαίμονας, οὓς ἂν ἐκπλῆξαι
phalanxes assembling the demons whom — to-astound
βούλοιτο. ἔτυχε γοῦν ποτὲ ἀπὸ μετεώρου τῶν βασιλείων
he-wished happened at-any-rate once from (a)-height of-the palace
βλέπων εἰς θάλασσαν, κατήγετο δὲ ἁλιὰς τρυβλία
looking to (the)-sea was-going-down and (a)-fishing-boat dishes
καὶ λοπάδας ἔχουσα τὰ ἀγώγιμα. φησὶ τοίνυν πρὸς τοὺς
and platters having the cargo he-says therefore to the(-ones)
συνεστῶτας ὡς τίνα ἂν αὐτῷ κατάθωνται τὸν μισθόν,
standing-with(-him) that what — to-him they-would-pay the wage
εἰ τὸν νηΐτην τῶν ὀρθῶν φρενῶν διεκπλεύσαντα μὴ ἂν
if the boatman from-the right mind having-sailed-out not —
ὀκνῆσαι παρασκευάσειεν ἀναστῆναί τε τῶν σελμάτων,
to-hesitate he-should-make to-stand-up both from-the benches
τὴν δικωπίαν προέμενον, καὶ συντρῖψαι εἰς λεπτὰ τὰ
the pair-of-oars having-let-go and to-smash into pieces the
κεράμια. τῶν δὲ εὐγνωμονεῖν εἰπόντων πρὸς ἅπαν
earthenware they and to-agree having-said to every(-thing)
τὸ παρ᾽ αὐτοῦ αἰτηθέν, ὁ πρωρεὺς μετὰ βραχὺ τῆς
the(-thing) by him asked the bowman after (a)-little from-the
ἕδρας ἀνίσταται, καὶ τὴν κώπην ἀνὰ χεῖρας λαβὼν
seat stands-up and the oar in hands having-taken
κατέφερέ τε τῶν σκευαρίων συχνά, καὶ οὐκ ἀνῆκεν
brought-down both on-the wares often and not ceased
οὕτω διαπραττόμενος ἕως αὐτὰ εἰς κόνιν ἐλέπτυνεν. ἐκ
thus doing until them into dust he-ground from
δὲ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἄνωθεν θεώμενοι τῷ γέλωτι
and this the(-ones) indeed from-above watching with-the laughter
διερρήγνυντο, τὸ γεγονὸς τιθέμενοι διὰ θαύματος· ὁ δὲ
burst the event setting through wonder the and
πλωτὴρ ἀμφοτέραις μετ᾽ οὐ πολὺ τῶν γενείων δραξάμενος
sailor with-both after not much the beard having-grabbed

γοερὸν ἐπωδύρετο, καὶ ὡς θεοβλαβείᾳ τὰς φρένας
tearfully lamented and as by-God-sent-madness in-the wits
παρακοπέντα πολλῷ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἀνανήψας τοῦ ζόφου
deranged by-much still more having-recovered from-the gloom
ἑαυτὸν ὠλοφύρετο. ἐρωτώμενος δὲ ὅ τι πεπονθὼς τὸν
himself bewailed being-asked and what — having-suffered the
φόρτον οὑτωσὶ διέθετο, διεξῄει περιπαθῶς ὡς ταῖς κώπαις
cargo thus he-treated recounted passionately that to-the oars
προσανέχων αἴφνης ὄφιν ὁρᾷ δαφοινόν, πυρσώδη τὸν
attending suddenly (a)-serpent he-sees blood-red fiery in-the
λόφον, ἄνω τῶν τρυβλίων ἐκτεταμένον, ἐς αὐτὸν ἀτενὲς
crest above the dishes stretched-out at him intently
ὁρῶντα κατὰ τοὺς τῶν δρακόντων ἀκλινεῖς τὸ ὄμμα,
looking like the of-the dragons unbending in-the eye
καὶ καταπιεῖν ὀριγνώμενον, ὃς καὶ οὐκ ἔληξε τῶν
and to-swallow reaching which also not ceased from-the
ἑλίξεων πρὶν ἢ κατηλοήθη τὰ κεράμια· τὸ δ' ἐκ
coilings before than were-ground the earthenware the(-thing) and from
τούτου ἠφάντωται, ὥσπερ ἐκ μέσων οἱ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν
this has-vanished as from (the)-midst his of-the eyes
ἀποπτάς. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν τοιοῦτον, ἕτερον δὲ κἀκεῖνο. ἐν
having-flown-away and this indeed such other and also-that in
βαλανείῳ λουόμενος ἦν, ἐς διαφορὰν δὲ καταστὰς μετὰ
(a)-bath bathing he-was into quarrel and having-come with
τῶν τοῖς αὐτοῖς νίτροις ἁγνιζομένων εἰς τὰ ἀπόδυτρα
the(-ones) with-the same sodas cleansing to the undressing-rooms
ἔξεισι. μετὰ μικρὸν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐν τῷ λουτρῷ φεύγοντες
he-goes-out after (a)-little and also the(-ones) in the bath fleeing
καὶ συμπατοῦντες ἀλλήλους ἐξῄεσαν ἐκεῖθεν περιδεεῖς, οἳ
and trampling one-another went-out thence terrified who
καὶ τοῖς συνειλεγμένοις πυκνὰ τὸ πνεῦμα συλλέγοντες
also to-the(-ones) gathered often the breath collecting

ἔφασκον ὡς ἐκ τῆς θερμορρόης ἐκπηδήσαντές τινες ἄνδρες
said that from the hot-spring having-leapt-out some men
πίσσης μελάντεροι ἐξῶσαν αὐτοὺς τοῦ λουτροῦ, παίοντες
than-pitch blacker pushed-out them from-the bath striking
κατὰ τῶν γλουτῶν τῷ πλατεῖ τοῦ ποδός. διὰ ταῦτα
on the buttocks with-the flat of-the foot because-of these(-things)
τοίνυν ἀμφότεροι καὶ πράξεις δὲ ἀσελγεστέρας ἑτέρας
therefore both and deeds too more-licentious other
τῶν ὄψεων ἐστερήθησαν· οἱ δ' αὐτοὶ ἐπιβιώσαντες, ὁ
of-the eyes were-deprived they and themselves having-survived —
μὲν Σὴθ καὶ πάλιν τοῖς προτέροις ἐνησχόλητο, ἄτερος
indeed Seth also again to-the former was-busied the-other
δὲ εἰς μοναχὸν ἀποθριξάμενος, χρόνῳ ὕστερον σύγγραμμά
and into (a)-monk having-been-shorn in-time later treatise
τι περὶ τῶν θείων μυστηρίων ξυνθέμενος, ἀφῆκε δι'
some about the divine mysteries having-composed let-out through
αὐτοῦ κυνῶν ἐρυγὰς ὁ τῶν θείων δωρεῶν ἀνάξιος.
it of-dogs belchings the(-one) of-the divine gifts unworthy
Ἔργον κἀκεῖνο τοῦ βασιλέως τούτου περιφανές. αἱ Ἀσιαναὶ
(a)-deed also-that of-the emperor this conspicuous the Asian
πόλεις, τὰ Χλιαρὰ τὸ Πέργαμόν τε καὶ Ἀτραμύτιον,
cities — Chliara — Pergamon both and Atramytion
κακῶς ἔπασχον ὑπὸ τῶν Περσῶν· αἱ γὰρ περιοικίδες
badly suffered by the Persians the for surrounding
χῶραι ἀσυνοίκιστοί τε ἦσαν πρώην, κἀκ τοῦ κωμηδὸν
lands unsettled both were formerly and-from the village-wise
οἰκεῖσθαι εἰς προνομὴν τοῖς πολεμίοις ἐξέκειντο. καὶ αὐτὰς
to-be-inhabited for plunder to-the enemies were-exposed and them
τοίνυν ἐκρατύνατο τείχεσι, καὶ τὰ πλησίον δὲ ἱππήλατα
therefore he-strengthened with-walls and the near and horse-driven
πεδία φρουρίοις διέλαβεν ἐρυμνοῖς. οὕτω δὲ πλήθουσιν
plains with-forts he-occupied strong thus and swarm

οἰκητόρων ταῦτα δὴ τὰ πολίχνια καὶ τοῖς κατὰ
with-inhabitants these indeed the townlets and in-the(-things) of
τὸν ἥμερον βίοτον ἐνευθηνοῦνται χρηστοῖς ὡς ὑπεράνω
the tame life thrive good so-that above
κεῖσθαι πόλεων πολλῶν εὐδαιμόνων· ἀγροί τε γὰρ εἰς
to-lie cities many prosperous fields both for to
εὐφορίαν καρπῶν ἡμερωθέντες ἐπέδωκαν, καὶ φυτηκόμος
fertility of-fruits having-been-tamed grew and planting
χείρ ἐρριζούχισεν ἐκεῖσε ξύλον ἅπαν καρποδοτοῦν, ὡς
hand rooted there tree every fruit-giving so-that
μεταθέσθαι (φάναι τὸ τοῦ Δαβίδ) τὴν ἔρημον εἰς λίμνας
to-be-changed to-say the(-word) — of-David the desert into pools
ὑδάτων καὶ εἰς οἰκήσιμον τὴν πρώην ἀοίκητον. εἴ τι οὖν
of-waters and into habitable the(-land) formerly uninhabited if any then
κατόρθωμα μέγιστον, εἴ τι λυσιτελέστατον Αὔσοσιν ὁ
achievement greatest if anything most-profitable to-Ausonians —
Μανουὴλ διανενόηκέ τε καὶ διεπράξατο καθ' ὅσους ἦρξε
Manuel thought-out both and did during as-many-as he-ruled
Ῥωμαίων ἐνιαυτούς, τοῦτο εἴη ἂν τὸ κράτιστον ὁμοῦ καὶ
of-(the)-Romans years this would-be — the strongest at-once and
κοινωφελέστατον. τίς γὰρ παράγων ἐκεῖ, καὶ εἰδὼς οἵαν
most-beneficial who for passing there and knowing what-sort
μὲν ὁ χῶρος ἔτρεφεν ἀγριότητα οἵους δ' ἔστεγεν ἄνδρας,
indeed the place nourished savagery what-sort and it-housed men
ἀναιδεῖς μὲν ὑπὲρ τὸν κορυνήτην Περιφήτην, ἀγριωτέρους
shameless indeed beyond the club-bearer Periphetes more-savage
δὲ τοῦ πιτυοκάμπου Σίνιδος καὶ τοῦ Σκίρωνος, οὓς ἀνεῖλε
and than-the pine-bender Sinis and — Skiron whom killed
πάλαι Θησεύς, οὐκ ἂν τὰς χεῖρας ἀνατείνας τῷ βασιλεῖ
of-old Theseus not — the hands having-raised to-the emperor
ἐπεύξαιτο τῷδε κλῆρον ἐν Ἐδὲμ ἀΐδιον καὶ τόπον
would-pray for-this(-man) (a)-lot in Eden everlasting and (a)-place

χλοερὸν καὶ ἀνώλεθρον; οὐκοῦν καὶ ἴδιον ἐπώνυμον ταυτὶ
green and indestructible therefore also own name these
τὰ φρούρια κληρωσάμενα (Νεόκαστρα γὰρ ὀνομάζονται)
the forts having-been-allotted New-Castles for are-named
οἰκεῖόν τε ἁρμοστὴν ἐκ Βυζαντίου στελλόμενον ἔχουσι,
own both governor from Byzantium sent have
καὶ εἰς τὸ βασίλειον ταμιεῖον ἐτήσια ξυμφέρουσι κέρματα.
and into the imperial treasury annual contribute coins

MANUEL I, BOOK FIVE

I · THE STATUES AND THE HUNGARIAN WAR

Manuel sets up again the bronze statue of the Roman woman in the Forum and pulls down that of the Hungarian, thinking to turn fortune with them. At Sardike he hands the war to Andronikos Kontostephanos and exhorts the army; a Hungarian rider who falls on his face before them is taken as a good omen. The army crosses the Sava and the Danube and takes Zeugminon; hearing of it, Dionysios boasts he will pile Roman bones into a mound.

Αὖθις δὲ τῶν Παιόνων τοὺς ὅρκους συγχεάντων ὁ κατ᾽
again and the Paeonians the oaths having-confounded the against
αὐτῶν ἐκφύεται πόλεμος, καὶ πρὸς καιρὸν ἀπορρυεὶς
them springs-up war and for (a)-time having-flowed-away
καὶ δόξας τέλος καταλελύσθαι, ὁ δὲ κατὰ πολύχουν
and having-seemed (at-the)-end to-have-been-ended it and like much-heaped
ἀνέθηλε λήϊον μάκαρος ἀνδρὸς ἀκμαιοτέρους ἀμητῆρας
flourished (a)-crop of-(a)-blessed man more-vigorous reapers
ἐθέλον. ὡς οὖν ὑπέφαινεν ὥρα ὡραία τῇ ἐξόδῳ,
wanting as then appeared (the)-season seasonable for-the expedition
ᾔει τὴν ἐπὶ Σαρδικῆς βασιλεύς, ὅπου καὶ ταῖς
went the(-road) to Sardike (the)-emperor where also with-the

δυνάμεσιν, ἃς ἄγειν ἤμελλεν ἐπὶ Παίονας, τεταγμένον
forces which to-lead he-was-about against Paeonians appointed
ἦν αὐτῷ συμβαλεῖν. ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὰ στρατεύματα ξυνελέγετο,
was for-him to-meet in which and the armies were-collected
ἐνωτίζεταί οἱ ὡς ἄνωθεν τῆς ἀψῖδος, ἥτις ἔκτισται
he-hears to-him that above the arch which has-been-built
κατὰ τὸ πρὸς δυσμὰς μέρος τῆς Κωνσταντινείου ἀγορᾶς,
in the toward (the)-west part of-the Constantinian forum
εἰκόνες ἐκ χαλκοῦ δύο ἵδρυνται πάλαι γυναικόμορφοι,
statues of bronze two have-been-set-up of-old woman-shaped
ἡ μὲν καλουμένη Ῥωμαία θατέρα δὲ Οὔγγρισσα, νῦν δὲ
the one called Roman the-other and Hungarian now and
ὑπὸ τοῦ τὰ πάντα μετασκευάζοντος χρόνου ἡ μὲν ἀπὸ
by the the all changing time the indeed from
Ῥωμαίων τὴν κλῆσιν εἰληχυῖα τῆς ὀρθίας κατήρειπται
(the)-Romans the name having-obtained from-the upright has-been-thrown-down
στάσεως, ἡ δὲ λοιπὴ ἐπὶ τῆς προτέρας ἕδρασται βάσεως.
stance the and other on the former has-been-seated base
θαυμάσας οὖν ἐκεῖνος τὸ εἰρημένον, πέμψας εὐθὺς
having-wondered then he the(-thing) said having-sent at-once
τὴν μὲν ἀνέστησε τὴν δ' ἀνέτρεψε καὶ κατήνεγκε,
the one set-up the(-other) and overturned and brought-down
ταῖς τῶν εἰκόνων μετασκευαῖς μεταβαλεῖν καὶ μεθαρμόσειν
by-the of-the statues changes to-change and to-readjust
οἰόμενος καὶ τὰ πράγματα, καὶ τὰ μὲν τῶν Ῥωμαίων
thinking also the affairs and the(-things) indeed of-the Romans
οἷον μετεωρίσειν τὰ δὲ τῶν Παιόνων καθαιρήσειν.
as-it-were to-raise the(-things) and of-the Paeonians to-pull-down
συνηγμένων δὲ τῶν στρατοπέδων σκέψιν προύθηκεν
having-been-gathered and the armies (a)-consideration he-put-forward
εἰ δεῖ καὶ αὐτὸν συνεκστρατεύειν κατὰ Παιόνων,
whether one-must also himself to-campaign-with against Paeonians

εἴτε μὴν στρατηγῷ τὰς δυνάμεις ἐπιτρέψαντα μετελθεῖν
or indeed to-(a)-general the forces having-entrusted to-pursue
οὑτωσὶ τὸ ἀντίπαλον. ὡς οὖν πᾶσι δέδοκτο βασιλέα
thus the opponent as then to-all it-had-seemed(-good) (the)-emperor
μὲν ἐπὶ Σαρδικῆς καθῆσθαι, τῶν δ' ἡγεμόνων τοὺς
indeed at Sardike to-sit of-the and commanders the
γενικοὺς ἀναρρηθῆναι στρατηγοὺς τοῦ πολέμου, ὅπως αἱ
general(-ones) to-be-proclaimed generals of-the war so-that the
τῶν πραγμάτων ἄδηλοι ἐκβάσεις εἶεν οὕτω καὶ τὸ ἐκ
of-the affairs uncertain outcomes might-be thus both the from
τῆς ἥττης αἶσχος μετριάζουσαι καὶ τὸ κατορθωθὲν
the defeat disgrace moderating and the(-thing) succeeding
μεγαλύνουσαι μᾶλλον καὶ εἰς κλέος ἐξαίρουσαι μέγιστον, ὡς
magnifying rather and to glory raising greatest as
κἀκείνου τε καὶ τούτου ξυμβεβηκότος κατ' ἀπουσίαν τοῦ
both-of-that both and of-this having-happened in absence of-the
αὐτοκράτορος, ἀναδείκνυται τῆς ὅλης ἀρχηγὸς στρατιᾶς
autocrat is-appointed of-the whole commander army
ὁ τοῦ στόλου δοὺξ Ἀνδρόνικος ὁ Κοντοστέφανος. ἐν δὲ
the of-the fleet duke Andronikos the Kontostephanos in and
τῷ μέλλειν ἀπαίρειν τῆς Σαρδικῆς τὰ στρατεύματα, ἐν
the being-about to-set-out — from-Sardike the armies in
ἐπηκόῳ στὰς ὁ βασιλεὺς γίνεται καλῶν καὶ γενναίων
hearing having-stood the emperor becomes of-fine and noble
λόγων καὶ πολὺ τὸ πιθανὸν ἐχόντων ἀγορητής. αὐτόν
words and much the persuasive having speaker himself
τε γὰρ Κοντοστέφανον παρεθάρρυνεν εἰς τὴν προκειμένην
both for Kontostephanos he-encouraged for the lying-before
στρατήγησιν, οὐ μόνον μεθόδους ὑποτιθεὶς τακτικάς, ἀλλὰ
generalship not only methods suggesting tactical but
καὶ καιρὸν αὐτῷ τῆς προσβολῆς ἐπισημαινόμενος εἶδός τε
also (the)-time to-him of-the attack indicating form both

ὁπλίσεων καὶ σχήματα παρατάξεων, τούς τε ὑποστρατήγους
of-armaments and figures of-battle-lines the both lieutenant-generals
καὶ τοὺς ἰλάρχας καὶ καθεξῆς ἅπαντας τοὺς ἐν ὅπλοις
and the squadron-leaders and in-order all the(-men) in arms
διανίστη πρὸς μαχισμόν, ἐνάγων εἰς μνήμην τῶν
he-roused to fighting leading(-them) into memory of-the(-things)
προηγωνισμένων, καὶ πείθων τοῖς ὑποδείγμασι σπεῦσαι
fought-before and persuading by-the examples to-hasten
καὶ τὰ προκείμενα θαρρῆσαι δεινὰ καὶ ἀγαθὸν καὶ τούτοις
and the lying-before to-dare terrors and (a)-good also to-these
σὺν θεῷ ἐπιθεῖναι τέλος καὶ μετὰ λαμπρῶν τροπαίων
with God to-put end and with brilliant trophies
ἐπανελθεῖν· οὕτω γὰρ ὑπ᾽ αὐτῶν δοξασθεὶς ἐκεῖνος, κἂν
to-return thus for by them having-been-glorified he even-if
τῷ ἀπεῖναι τοὺς βαρβάρους νικήσας, ἀντικαταθήσει
in-the being-absent the barbarians having-conquered will-repay
καὶ αὐτὸς τούτοις οὐκ εὐαγκάλους τὰς ἀμοιβάς. οἱ δὲ
also himself to-them not easy-to-embrace the requitals they and
καὶ ὅτε μὲν ᾄδετο ταῦτα πρὸς τοῦ κρατοῦντος, τὸ
also when indeed was-sung these(-things) by the ruler the
ἡδέως ἀκούειν καὶ παραδέχεσθαι προθύμως ὑπέφαινον
gladly to-hear and to-receive eagerly showed
ἐξ ὧν τὰς ἀκοὰς ὑπέκλινον καὶ σιγὴν ἐπὶ τοῖς
from which(-things) the ears they-inclined and silence at the(-things)
λεγομένοις ἠσπάζοντο· ἐπεὶ δ᾽ ἐπαύσατο τοῦ λέγειν, ἔτι
said welcomed when and he-ceased from-the speaking still
μᾶλλον τὴν ἔνδον διάθεσιν ὑπεσήμαινον καὶ ὃν εἶχον
more the inner disposition they-indicated and which they-had
γάργαλον ἐν ψυχῇ, τῷ μέλιτι τοῦ λόγου κατακηλούμενοι,
tickling in (the)-soul by-the honey of-the speech being-charmed
ὑφ᾽ οὗ καὶ ἐῴκεσαν ἀτεχνῶς ἀποκλύσασθαι εἴ τί
by which also they-seemed simply to-wash-off if anything

που τούτοις εἰσερρύηκεν ἀηδὲς ἀπὸ τῆς μνήμης τῶν
somewhere into-them has-flowed unpleasant from the memory of-the
προτέρων πολέμων· βασιλέα τε γὰρ εὐφήμοις ἐκρότουν
former wars (the)-emperor both for with-auspicious applauded
φωναῖς, καὶ τὸ πρόθυμον καὶ ὑπὲρ ἰσχὺν ἐνδείξασθαι
voices and the eagerness even beyond strength to-show
ἰσχυρίζοντο. ἀμέλει μηδὲ μέλλειν ἐβόων τὸν στρατηγέτην,
insisted indeed not-even to-delay shouted the general
ἀλλὰ τὴν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἄγειν αὐτούς. οὕτως
but the(-road) against the enemies to-lead them thus
ἐξῃρμένων τῶν στρατευμάτων αἴφνης αἴρεται θροῦς ἐν τῷ
aroused the armies suddenly is-raised (a)-noise in the
στρατοπέδῳ συμμιγής· ἐκ γὰρ τοῦ τῶν Παιόνων τις
camp mixed from for the of-the Paeonians someone
ἔθνους τὸν ἵππον κατὰ κράτος ἐλαύνων, καὶ προσβαίνων
nation the horse by force driving and advancing
εἰς ὅσον καὶ ὅσον, ἐπὶ στόμα συγκατήνεκται τῷ
to as-much-as and as-much-as on (the)-mouth was-brought-down-with the
ὀχήματι. βασιλεὺς τοίνυν ὡς τοῦτο εἶχε πυθόμενος, αὐτός
mount (the)-emperor therefore as this he-had having-learned himself
τε διεκέχυτο καὶ θαρρεῖν παρεκελεύετο πᾶσιν, οὐκ
both was-cheered and to-take-courage exhorted all not
ἄχαρι τὸ μέλλον ἐντεῦθεν οἰωνιζόμενος, καὶ χαίρειν
unpleasant the future thence auguring and to-rejoice
ἐνάγων ὡς ἐπὶ δεξιᾷ ἤδη τῇ τοῦ πολέμου τελευτῇ. καὶ ὁ
urging as at (a)-right already the of-the war end and he
μὲν ἐν τούτοις ἦν, θεὸν σωτῆρα προηγὸν ἐπικαλούμενος
indeed in these(-things) was God (the)-savior leader calling-on
τοῖς στρατεύμασιν· ὁ δ' Ἀνδρόνικος τὸν στρατηλάτην
for-the armies — and Andronikos the general's(-belt)
ὑποζωσάμενος ἀπῆρεν ἐκεῖθεν μετὰ πασῶν τῶν δυνάμεων,
having-girded-on set-out thence with all the forces

καὶ εἶχεν αὐτὸν ἡμερῶν τινῶν διαλειπουσῶν ὁ Σάουβις
and had him days some having-intervened the Sava
καὶ Δάνουβις διαπεραιούμενον, καὶ τὸ Ζεύγμινον εἰσεδέχετο.
and Danube crossing and — Zeugminon received
οὐδ' οἱ Παίονες ἐπὶ τούτοις ἀναπεπτώκεσαν, ἀλλὰ τὰς
nor the Paeonians at these(-things) had-fallen-back but the
οἰκείας ἴλας ἀγειράμενοι καὶ συμμαχικὸν ξενολογήσαντες
own squadrons having-gathered and (an)-allied(-force) having-hired
οὐκ ὀλίγον ἐκ τῶν ὁμορούντων σφίσιν ἐθνῶν καὶ ἐξ
not small from the bordering on-them nations and from
αὐτῶν δὲ Ἀλαμανῶν, ὡς ἐλέγετο, καὶ Διονύσιον τούτοις
themselves and Alamans as was-said and Dionysios over-them
ἐπιστήσαντες στρατηγὸν αὐτοκράτορα, γενναῖον ἄνδρα
having-set (as)-general with-full-powers (a)-noble man
καὶ πολλάκις τὰς ἐναντίας συγκόψαντα φάλαγγας, καὶ
and often the opposing having-cut-up phalanxes and
φρονηματισθέντες οὕτω μετὰ κόμπου ἐπῄεσαν. οὗτος δὲ
having-been-made-proud thus with boasting they-came-on this(-man) and
ὁ Διονύσιος ὅτε πρώτως ἠκηκόει τὸν Ἴστρον διαβῆναι
— Dionysios when first he-had-heard the Ister to-have-crossed
Ῥωμαϊκὴν στρατιάν, γεγαυρωμένος ὢν ἐπὶ ταῖς πρότερον
(the)-Roman army being-arrogant being at the former
νίκαις ἃς ἤρατο κατὰ Ῥωμαίων, μεγαλορρημονῶν
victories which he-had-won against (the)-Romans boasting
ἔλεγεν ὡς εἰς κολωνὸν αὖθις ἐσεῖται ἀγηοχὼς τὰ τῶν
said that into (a)-mound again he-will-be having-brought the of-the(-ones)
εἰς πόλεμον πεσόντων Ῥωμαίων ὀστᾶ, καὶ οἷα τροπαίῳ
in war fallen (the)-Romans bones and as-for (a)-trophy
τούτοις ὡς καὶ ἄλλοτέ ποτε χρήσαιτο, ἐπεὶ καὶ ἦν
them as also at-other-time once he-might-use since also he-had

τι τοιοῦτον βαρβαρικῶς δεδρακώς, ὁπηνίκα τὸν Γαβρᾶν
something such barbarously having-done when — Gabras
καὶ τὸν Βρανᾶν, ὡς ἤδη μοι ἐρρέθη, κατηγωνίσατο.
and — Branas as already by-me was-said he-defeated

II · KONTOSTEPHANOS' SPEECH

Kontostephanos draws up his army on the feast of Saint Prokopios. A letter arrives from Manuel ordering a delay for astrological reasons, but he pockets it without telling anyone. He exhorts his men to fight beasts who flee from the bold, reminding them that the Romans surpass the barbarians in reason, learning, and generalship.

Ἐνστάσης δὲ τῆς ἑορτίου μνήμης Προκοπίου τοῦ μάρτυρος,
having-come and the festal memory of-Prokopios the martyr
ἐκτάσσει τὰς δυνάμεις εἰς πόλεμον ὁ Κοντοστέφανος, καὶ
draws-out the forces for war — Kontostephanos and
αὐτός τε ἐνέδυ τὸν θώρακα καὶ τὴν ἄλλην πανοπλίαν
himself both put-on the breastplate and the other panoply
ἠμφίεστο, καὶ τοῖς λοιποῖς ὡσαύτως ἐπέταττε δρᾶν,
was-clad-in and to-the rest likewise ordered to-do
καὶ τὴν ἑαυτοῦ ἕκαστος τάξιν ἐπεπορεύετο καὶ καθίστα
and the his-own each rank went-along and set
πρὸς τὸ εὔτακτον. καὶ τὸ μὲν τῆς φάλαγγος μέτωπον
for the good-order and the indeed of-the phalanx front
ἀπένειμεν ὁ στρατηγὸς ἑαυτῷ, τὸ δὲ κέρας τὸ δεξιὸν
assigned the general to-himself the and wing the right
Ἀνδρόνικος ἐπεῖχεν ὁ Λαπαρδᾶς, τὸ δὲ λαιὸν ἄλλοι
Andronikos held the Lapardas the and left other
ταξίαρχοι, οὓς ὁ στρατηγὸς συνεπήγετο. ἐξετετάχει δὲ
taxiarchs whom the general brought-with(-him) he-had-drawn-up and
καὶ ἄλλας φάλαγγας, μικρὸν ἄποθεν αὐτὰς διαστήσας
also other phalanxes (a)-little apart them having-set

ἑκατέρου κέρατος, ὅπως ἐπιπαριοῦσαι κατὰ καιρὸν
from-each wing so-that coming-alongside in time
εἴησαν ἐπαρήγουσαι τοῖς κάμνουσι τάγμασιν. οὕτω δ᾽
they-might-be helping to-the toiling units thus and
ἐκτάσσοντι τὰς δυνάμεις καὶ καθιστῶντι τῷ Ἀνδρονίκῳ
to-(him)-drawing-out the forces and setting — to-Andronikos
ἐφίσταταί τις ἐκ βασιλέως κομίζων γράμματα, ἐκείνην
stands-by someone from (the)-emperor bringing letters that
τὴν ἡμέραν καθυπερθέσθαι τὴν συμπλοκὴν ἐπιτάσσοντα ὡς
the day to-postpone the engagement ordering as
ἀσύμφορον ἐς ἔργα πολέμια, καὶ καθ᾽ ἑτέραν ἀναθέσθαι,
unprofitable for deeds war-like and on another to-defer
ἣν καὶ αὐτὴν τὸ ἐπιστόλιον ἀνεδίδασκε. δεξάμενος
which also itself the letter taught having-received
οὖν ὁ στρατηγὸς τὸ βιβλίον εἰς τὸν οἰκεῖον καθῆκε
then the general the paper into the own put
κόλπον, μήτε τοῖς γραφομένοις προσσχὼν μήτε
bosom neither to-the(-things) written having-attended nor
τοῖς συνοῦσι μεγιστᾶσι δῆλα τὰ προσταττόμενα
to-the with(-him) magnates plain the(-things) ordered
θέμενος, ἐπαινετῶς δὲ παρακρουσάμενος ἑτέρων ὑποθέσεων
having-made praiseworthily and having-cheated(-them) of-other subjects
διηγήσεσιν. ἀπετρέπετο δὲ ὡς ἀποφρὰς ἡ τότε ἡμέρα καὶ
with-narrations was-shunned and as ill-omened the then day and
ὅλως ἀξύμφορος πρὸς τὴν κατ᾽ Ἄρεα συμβολήν, ἐπεὶ καὶ
wholly unprofitable for the in Ares encounter since also
ἦν τὰς πλείστας καὶ μεγίστας τῶν πράξεων, καὶ παρὰ
he-was the most and greatest of-the deeds even from
θεοῦ τὸ πέρας κατ᾽ εὐδοκίαν εἴτε μὴ δεχομένας, ταῖς τῶν
God the end by good-pleasure or not receiving to-the of-the
ἄστρων οὐκ οἶδ᾽ ὅπως περιπλοκαῖς καὶ ταῖς τοιαῖσδε
stars not I-know how entanglements and to-the such

θέσεσι καὶ κινήσεσιν ἐπανατιθείς, καὶ τοῖς παρὰ τῶν
positions and movements referring and to-the(-things) by the
ἀστρολεσχούντων λεγομένοις καθυπαγόμενος ἴσα ταῖς ἐκ
star-babblers said being-led-under equal to-the from
θρανίδος θεοῦ ἀποφάσεσιν. ὁ δὲ μὴ τοῖς γραφομένοις
(the)-bench of-God sentences he and not to-the(-things) written
ὅλως προσσχών, ἀλλ' εἰδὼς ὡς μέγα ὤνησε πολλάκις τὸν
at-all having-attended but knowing that greatly helped often the
ἀθλοῦντα καὶ βραχεῖά τις ὑποφώνησις τοῦ ἀλείφοντος,
contestant even short some prompting of-the trainer
πρὸς τὸν ἐν χερσὶν ἀγῶνα διανίστησι λόγοις τὸ στράτευμα,
to the in hand contest rouses with-words the army
„μνήσασθε" ὑποφθεγγόμενος, „ἄνδρες Ῥωμαῖοι, πολεμίου
remember murmuring men Romans of-war-like
ἀλκῆς, μνήσασθε, καὶ μηδέν τι φρονήσητε τῆς δόξης καὶ
strength remember and nothing at-all think of-the glory and
τῆς τύχης τῆς ἐνούσης ἀνάξιον, εὖ εἰδότες ὡς καὶ θῆρες
of-the fortune the present unworthy well knowing that even beasts
ὀρεινόμοι τοῖς κατ' αὐτῶν εὐθαρσῶς ἐπιοῦσι δεδιάσί
mountain-ranging the(-ones) against them boldly attacking fear
τε προεγχειρῆσαι καὶ διασοβηθέντες ἀπίασιν, ὅσοι δὲ
both to-attack-first and scared go-away as-many-as and
αὐτοῖς ἀντιμέτωποι στῆναι πεφρίκασιν, εἰς ἑτοίμην θοίνην
to-them face-to-face to-stand have-shuddered for (a)-ready feast
ὠμοβορούμενοι πρόκεινται. ἀνδριστέον οὖν κατὰ τουτωνὶ
eaten-raw lie-before one-must-be-manly then against these
τῶν θηριογνωμόνων βαρβάρων, μή πως ὑπ' αὐτοῖς
the beast-minded barbarians lest somehow under them
γενώμεθα, φιλοψυχίαν ἀγεννῶς νοσήσαντες μὴ σώζουσαν
we-become love-of-life ignobly having-sickened-with not saving
ἀλλ' ἀπολλύουσαν, τοῦτο δὴ ὅπερ αἱ ταῖς ἀρεταῖς ἀντίθετοι
but destroying this indeed which the to-the virtues opposed

κακίαι εἰώθασι δρᾶν, εἰ καὶ παραπεπήγασιν αὐταῖς ἐκεῖναι
vices are-wont to-do if even they-are-fixed-beside them those
καὶ εἰσί πως ἀγχίθυροι. καὶ ἄλλως δὲ οὐχ ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐσμὲν
and are somehow next-door and otherwise too not we indeed are
καὶ βλητοὶ καὶ θνητοί, ἐκ δὲ χαλκοῦ τεχνητοὶ οἱ πολέμιοι·
both vulnerable and mortal of and bronze artificial the enemies
οὐδ' οὗτοι μὲν χιτῶνας περίκεινται σιδηρέους καὶ ὠκύποσιν
nor these indeed tunics wear iron and on-swift-footed
ἵπποις ἀνέχονται, ἡμεῖς δὲ τοὐναντίον ἅπαν καὶ σώματα
horses are-borne we and the-opposite wholly and bodies
γυμνὰ προβαλλόμενοι· οὐδ' εὐπάλαμνον μὲν τὸ ἀντίπαλον,
naked putting-forward nor skillful-handed indeed the opponent(-side)
ἀπόμαχον δὲ τὸ ἡμέτερον. τοῖς πᾶσιν ἡ αὐτὴ διάρτισις
unwarlike and the(-side) ours in-the all the same equipment
καὶ μέλησις πολέμων καὶ ὅπλισις. ἐῶ γὰρ λέγειν ὡς
and practice of-wars and armament I-pass-over for to-say that
ὅσῳ λόγῳ καὶ παιδείᾳ τῶν βαρβάρων διενηνόχαμεν,
by-as-much-as in-reason and education the barbarians we-have-surpassed
ὡς καὶ εἰπεῖν, ἔμπειροι καὶ ξυνιδεῖν οὐκ ἄποροι, τοσοῦτον
so-that also to-speak skilled and to-understand not at-a-loss so-much
καὶ τέχναις στρατηγικαῖς καὶ στρατιωτικαῖς μεθόδοις
also in-arts of-generalship and in-soldierly methods
ὑπερφέρομεν. ἤδη δὲ καὶ ἄλλοτέ ποτε συμβαλόντες
we-excel already and also at-other-time once having-engaged
διημιλλήθημεν Παίοσι, τὴν γῆν αὐτῶν ἐπιόντες καὶ
we-contended with-Paeonians the land their attacking and
κείροντες. οὕτω τοίνυν καὶ νῦν αὐτοῖς συμπλεκοίμεθα,
ravaging thus therefore also now with-them may-we-grapple
ὡς εἰς ἕξιν τοῦ νικᾶν προελθόντες. ναὶ ἄνδρες,
as into (the)-habit of-the conquering having-advanced yes men
ναὶ συστρατιῶται. οὕτω τέκνα καὶ συλλέκτρους ἴδητε.
yes fellow-soldiers so children and wives may-you-see

ἀράτω τὰς φωνὰς τῶν βαρβάρων ὁ βαθυδίνης οὑτοσὶ
let-raise the voices of-the barbarians the deep-eddying this
Ἴστρος ἐπιτριβομένων καὶ ταῖς δίναις ἐναποψυχόντων·
Ister being-crushed and in-the eddies expiring
ἀλλὰ καὶ αἱματώδης προρρέων δι᾽ ὧν χωρῶν ὁλκῷ
but also bloody flowing-forth through what lands in-(its)-course
σύρεται, διατρανούτω Παίονας ἡττημένους καὶ Ῥωμαίους
it-is-dragged let-it-proclaim Paeonians defeated and (the)-Romans
ἀνακηρυττέτω νικῶντας, ἐξιστῶν τοὺς θεωμένους τῷ
let-it-announce conquering astonishing the watchers by-the
ἀήθει τῆς προχοῆς. χρεὼν δὲ πρὸς τούτοις σκοπεῖν
unusualness of-the outpouring needful and besides these(-things) to-consider
ὡς ὁ ἐκπέμψας ἡμᾶς ἐς τόνδε τὸν πόλεμον ἅπας
that the(-one) having-sent us into this the war wholly
ἡμῶν ἐξήρτηται, καὶ χρησταῖς ἐλπίσιν ὑποθαλπόμενος ἐφ᾽
on-us hangs and by-good hopes being-warmed on
οἷς αὐτῷ καὶ ὑπὲρ ἰσχὺν ἀνδρίσασθαι συνεθέμεθα,
which(-things) to-him even beyond strength to-be-manly we-covenanted
μικροῦ τοὺς ζωγρίας ἀναπολεῖ καὶ τὸ τῆς νίκης φαντάζεται
by-little the captives counts-over and the of-the victory imagines
μέγεθος. μὴ τοίνυν κἀκεῖνον αἰσχύνωμεν καὶ ἡμᾶς
greatness not therefore also-that(-man) let-us-shame and us
αὐτοὺς κακῶς διαθώμεθα πρὸς τὸν ἐν ὄψει μαλακισθέντες
ourselves badly let-us-treat toward the in sight having-been-softened
κίνδυνον, οὐδὲν ὅτι μὴ θάνατον τὸ πέρας ἔχοντα. αἱ γὰρ
danger nothing except — death the end having the for
ἀκμαὶ τῶν κακῶν οὐ φιλοῦσιν ἀνάδυσιν, καὶ τὸ βραχέως
peaks of-the evils not love retreat and the briefly
ἐν τούτοις καθυπενδοῦναι καταπροδοῦναι τὸ πᾶν ἐστί.”
in these(-things) to-give-in to-betray the all is

Dionysios advances in a single mass under a banner on an ox-drawn cart; his knights and horses are fully armored. Kontostephanos attacks the flanks and the rear, the lances break, and the Romans win with iron maces. The Hungarians flee, and Kontostephanos returns. Manuel celebrates a magnificent triumph, with the icon of the Mother of God on a silver chariot drawn by white horses.

Τοιαῦτ' εἰπὼν ἐπὶ πεδίου ἀναπεπταμένου προῆγεν.
such(-things) having-said on (a)-plain spread-out he-led-forward
ἀντεξάγει δέ οἱ καὶ Διονύσιος τὰ οἰκεῖα στρατόπεδα,
leads-out-against and him also Dionysios the own armies
χαροπὸς τῷ προσώπῳ, κροτῶν ἅμα καὶ χαίρων ὡς ἐπὶ
bright-eyed in-the face clapping at-once and rejoicing as to
παιδιὰν ἐξιών. ὁπόθεν καὶ τὸ τί δεῖ ποιεῖν ἐπὶ καιροῦ
(a)-game going-out whence also the what one-must do at (the)-time
μὴ εἰδώς, οὔτε εἰς κέρας δεξιὸν καὶ εὐώνυμον τὴν ὑπ' αὐτὸν
not knowing neither into wing right and left the under him
ἐμέρισε στρατιὰν οὔτε εἰς ἴλας ἀποδιεῖλε καὶ φάλαγγας,
he-divided army nor into squadrons divided and phalanxes
ἀλλ' ἐς ὁμαιχμίαν συνεσπειρακὼς μίαν τοσοῦτον στράτευμα
but into one-battle-line having-gathered one so-great army
καὶ πυκνώσας οἷον αὐτὸ καὶ πυργώσας κατὰ νέφος
and having-packed as-it-were it and having-towered like (a)-cloud
μέλαν ἐπῆγεν, οὐδὲν ἐλλείπων ὑπεροψίας ὠμῆς. ἦν δὲ καὶ
black he-led-on nothing lacking of-contempt raw was and also
ἡ σημαία ἐκείνου μετέωρος, ἐπί τινος ἠνεμωμένη παχέος
the banner his aloft on some flying thick
καὶ ὑψιτενοῦς ἱστοῦ, τέτρασιν ὑποτρόχοις ἑλκομένου βοῶν
and high-stretched mast by-four wheels drawn of-oxen
ζεύγμασιν. αὐτὴ δὲ ἡ ἀντίμαχος ὁμαιχμία φρικαλέον ὄντως
by-yokes itself and the opposing battle-line (a)-dreadful truly

καὶ δυσαντίβλεπτον ὅραμα ἦν, πᾶσα οὖσα ἱππότης καὶ
and hard-to-look-at sight was all being cavalry and
λογχηφόρος. οὐ μόνον δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες μετεῖχον τοῦ ἀκριβοῦς
lance-bearing not only and the men shared of-the exact
ὁπλισμοῦ καὶ ποδηνεκοῦς, ἀλλ' ἦν ὁρᾶν καὶ τῶν
armament and foot-length but it-was(-possible) to-see also of-the
ἵππων αὐτῶν διαδήματα, μασχαλιστῆρας προφαινόντων
horses themselves headbands breast-straps showing
καὶ περικειμένων προμετωπίδια καὶ προστερνίδια τῶν
and wearing frontlets and breastplates of-the
βλημάτων ἐρύματα. ὁ δὲ τῶν ἵππων φριμαγμός, ἥ τε
missiles defenses the and of-the horses snorting the both
πρὸς ἥλιον ἀνταυγάζουσα τῶν ὅπλων στιλβηδών, ὡς
at (the)-sun flashing-back of-the arms gleam as
ἐγγὺς ἦν τὰ στρατεύματα, καινοτέραν ἐποίει τὴν θέαν καὶ
near were the armies more-new made the sight and
διὰ φόβου καὶ θαύματος τοῖς ἐκ τῶν στρατοπέδων
through fear and wonder to-the(-men) from the armies
ἀμφοῖν. ἐπεὶ δὲ προῆλθον ὡς εἰς μεταίχμιον καὶ περὶ
both when and they-advanced as into no-man's-land and about
μεσημβρίαν ἦν ἡ ἡμέρα καὶ καιρὸς ἐδόκει συρρήγνυσθαι, ὁ
midday was the day and (the)-time seemed to-clash —
μὲν Κοντοστέφανος τοῖς ἐκ δεξιοῦ καὶ λαιοῦ κέρως
indeed Kontostephanos to-the(-ones) from (the)-right and left wing
ἄγχιστα παρακολουθοῦσι τὰ τελευταῖα τῶν βαρβάρων
nearest following the last(-ranks) of-the barbarians
κόπτειν ἐφῆκε, μάλιστα δὲ τοῖς ἱπποτοξόταις θαμὰ βάλλειν
to-cut allowed especially and to-the mounted-archers often to-shoot
παρεκελεύετο. σκοπὸς δὲ ἦν ἐντεῦθεν τῷ στρατηγῷ
exhorted (the)-aim and was thence for-the general
κατασείσειν εἴτε μὴν ἐκκρούσειν τῆς συνεχείας τὰς
to-shake or indeed to-knock-out from-the continuity the

Παιονικὰς φάλαγγας· κατὰ γὰρ τὴν Ὁμηρικὴν καὶ τότε
Paeonian phalanxes in for the Homeric also then
παράταξιν „ἀσπὶς ἀσπίδ' ἔρειδε, κόρυς κόρυν, ἀνέρα δ'
battle-array shield on-shield pressed helmet on-helmet man and
ἀνήρ," καὶ ἴσας εἶχον οἱ ἵπποι τὰς κεφαλάς, ἔφριξε δ' ἡ
on-man and equal had the horses the heads bristled and the
μάχη ἐγχείῃσι φθισίμβροτος, καὶ κατὰ κινούμενον δράκοντα
battle with-spears mortal-destroying and like (a)-moving serpent
καὶ φρίσσοντα τὰς φολίδας ἐκύμαινον οἱ στρατοί. ὁ δὲ
and bristling the scales surged the armies — and
Διονύσιος ὡς τεῖχος ἀτίνακτον προύβαινεν, ἐς αὐτόν τε τὸν
Dionysios as (a)-wall unshaken advanced at himself both —
Κοντοστέφανον καὶ τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν τεταγμένον τιταίνων
Kontostephanos and the(-band) around him ranged stretching
τὸ ἔγχος. ὡς οὖν ἐδέξαντο τοῦτον Ῥωμαῖοι, διαδορατισμοὶ
the spear as then received him (the)-Romans spear-thrusts
παρ' ἀλλήλων ἦσαν καὶ ὠθισμοὶ καὶ ἀντωθισμοὶ μέχρι
from one-another were and pushings and counter-pushings up-to
τινός· ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ δόρατα κατεάγει καὶ ἦν τὸ μεταίχμιον
(a)-point when and the spears had-broken and was the no-man's-land
ἀποσχεδιασθὲν εἰς φραγμὸν τοῖς τῶν κοντῶν στοιβασμοῖς,
improvised into (a)-barrier by-the of-the lances heaps
τὰς ἐπιμήκεις ἐσέπειτα μαχαίρας ἐσπάσαντο καὶ αὖθις
the long thereafter swords they-drew and again
συμπεσόντες ἐμάχοντο. ὡς δ' ἤδη καὶ αὗται τὰ στόματα
having-clashed they-fought as and already also these the edges
ἠμβλύνθησαν διὰ τὸ τῶν στρατευμάτων πάγχαλκον καὶ
were-blunted because-of the of-the armies all-bronze and
πανσίδηρον, οἱ μὲν Παίονες ἠμηχάνουν τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε,
all-iron the indeed Paeonians were-at-a-loss the(-time) from this
μηδαμῶς κατὰ νοῦν θέμενοι ὡς ἐπιόντας αὐτοὺς Ῥωμαῖοι
in-no-way in mind having-set that attacking them (the)-Romans

δέξονται, Ῥωμαῖοι δὲ μετὰ χεῖρας τὰς ἐκ σιδήρου κορύνας
will-receive (the)-Romans and with (their)-hands the of iron maces
χειρισάμενοι (ἔθος δὲ αὐτοῖς καὶ τοιόνδε φέρειν ὁπλισμόν,
having-handled (a)-custom and for-them also such to-carry armament
ἡνίκα ἂν εἰς πόλεμον ἴοιεν) ἔπαιον τοὺς Παίονας δι'
when — to war they-go struck the Paeonians through
αὐτῶν· καὶ ἦν καίριον μάλα τὸ πλῆγμα, κατὰ κεφαλῆς
them and was mortal very the blow on head
καὶ προσώπων γινόμενον. πολλοὶ τοίνυν σκοτοδινιῶντες
and faces happening many therefore growing-dizzy
τῆς ἱππείας ἀνετρέποντο ἕδρας· εἰσὶ δ' οἳ καὶ
from-the riding were-overturned seats are and (those)-who also
ἐλειφαίμουν τοῖς τραύμασι. καὶ οὕτω τοῦ ἀρραγοῦς ἐκείνου
lost-blood from-the wounds and thus the unbreakable that
διασπασθέντος συντάγματος, οὐκ ἦν ὃς οὐκ ἦν τῶν
having-been-torn formation not was (one)-who not was of-the
Ῥωμαίων βάλλων καὶ καταβάλλων Παίονα, ἢ μὴ σκυλεύων
Romans striking and striking-down (a)-Paeonian or not despoiling
τὸν πεπτωκότα, ἢ μὴ πανοπλίαν ἑτέραν ἐπενδυόμενος,
the fallen or not panoply another putting-on
ἢ ἵππου μὴ ἐπιβαίνων οὗ τὸν ἀναβάτην κατέκανεν.
or (a)-horse not mounting whose the rider be-had-killed
ἐπειδὴ δὲ περὶ ὀψίαν ἦν ἡ ἡμέρα, τὸ μὲν ἀνακλητικὸν
when and about evening was the day the indeed recall
ἡ σάλπιγξ διατόρως συνεθημάτιζε, καὶ τὸ διαέριον ἐκεῖνο
the trumpet piercingly signaled and the airy that
καθῃρεῖτο τῆς τοῦ Διονυσίου σημαίας δίαρμα, ὁ δ'
was-taken-down of-the — of-Dionysios banner raising the and
Ἴστρος εἶχε τὰ πορθμεῖα καθειλκυσμένα, καὶ ὁ στρατὸς
Ister had the ferries launched and the army
εἰς τὴν περαίαν ἀνήγετο. φήμη γὰρ ἀνὰ τὰ Ῥωμαϊκὰ
to the opposite-bank put-out (a)-report for through the Roman

στρατόπεδα ἐπεφοίτα καὶ κατακρότους ἐτίθει τὰς τοῦ
camps came and pounding made the of-the
στρατηγοῦ μήνιγγας, ὡς οἱ Παίονες οὐκ ἀγεννῆ ξενολογίαν
general temples that the Paeonians not ignoble hired-force
κατὰ τὴν μετ' ἐκείνην εἰσὶν ἐκδεχόμενοι. διὰ ταύτην οὖν
on the after that(-day) are awaiting because-of this then
τὴν ἀκοήν, μὴ πεφυκυῖαν ἐπίπαν ἀπόλλυσθαι, αὐτίκα μετὰ
the hearing not being-wont at-all to-perish at-once after
τέλος αἴσιον τοῦ πολέμου ἀπῆρεν ἐκεῖθεν Ἀνδρόνικος.
(an)-end auspicious of-the war set-out thence Andronikos
Ἀλλ' οὕτω μὲν κατεστρατήγηντο Παίονες, βασιλεὺς δὲ
but thus indeed had-been-out-generaled Paeonians (the)-emperor and
τὴν καλλίστην ταυτηνὶ νίκην ἐνωτισάμενος θύει θεῷ
the finest this victory having-heard sacrifices to-God
χαριστήρια, καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἐν κρότοις καὶ χαρμοναῖς.
thank-offerings and himself was in applause and joys
κοινούμενος δὲ τοῖς τῆς βασιλίδος οἰκήτορσι πόλεως
sharing and with-the of-the imperial inhabitants city
ταῦτα δὴ τὰ εὐφρόσυνα κατορθώματα, γράμματα εὐθὺς
these indeed the cheerful successes letters at-once
εὐάγγελα στέλλει, τὴν τροπαιουχίαν περισαλπίζοντα. μεθ'
of-good-tidings he-sends the trophy-bearing trumpeting-round after
ἡμέρας δέ τινας καὶ αὐτὸς τὴν μεγαλόπολιν εἰσιὼν
days and some also himself the great-city entering
κατάγει θρίαμβον ἀπὸ τῆς ἑῴας πύλης, ἥτις ἀνέῳγε
leads-down (a)-triumph from the eastern gate which opens
κατὰ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν. οἷα δ' ἐπὶ μεγίστῳ τροπαίῳ
at the acropolis as and for (a)-greatest trophy
καὶ ἀκραιφνεῖ κατορθώματι θριαμβεύειν μεγαλοπρεπῶς
and pure success to-triumph magnificently
προθέμενος, καὶ τὰ τῆς πομπείας διασκευασθῆναι
having-purposed also the(-things) of-the procession to-be-arranged

πρὸς τὸ ὑπέρογκον διατέταχεν. ἅπας οὖν περιπόρφυρος
for the overweening he-ordered every then purple-bordered
πέπλος καὶ χρυσίῳ κατάστικτος ἀπῃώρητο, καὶ οἱ
robe and with-gold spotted was-hung-up and the
ἀστυνόμοι ἄλλος ἄλλοθεν ἐπὶ τὴν πρόοδον ἐκείνην
city-dwellers another from-another-place to the procession that
μεταρρυέντες ὡς ῥεῦμα κατὰ πρανοῦς ὀχετηγούμενον
having-flowed as (a)-stream down (a)-slope channeled
ἐξεκένωσαν ἀγορὰς οἴκους νεὼς ἐργαστήρια καὶ ἄλλο
emptied markets houses temples workshops and other
μέρος ἅπαν τῆς πολυχανδοῦς πόλεως. οὐδὲ τῆς τῶν
part all of-the capacious city nor of-the of-the
αἰχμαλώτων συμμορίας ὁ θρίαμβος ἀπεστέρητο, ἀλλὰ καὶ
captives company the triumph was-deprived but also
τούτων πολλοὶ διῆγον τοὺς παρόντας καὶ ἐσέμνυνον
of-these many led-through the(-ones) present and solemnized
τὴν πομπὴν παριόντες. αὐτὰ μέντοι τὰ καθ' ἑκάτερα
the procession passing themselves however the on both
μέρη τῆς ἀγυιᾶς, καθ' ἣν ἔμελλε τελεῖσθαι ὁ θρίαμβος,
parts of-the street along which was-about to-be-performed the triumph
παρυφιστάμενα δρύφακτα εἰς διώροφά τε καὶ τριώροφα
set-up stands to two-storied both and three-storied
παρυψούμενα πᾶσιν ἐνεποίουν θαυμασμόν, καὶ τὰ τέγη δ'
raised-up to-all produced wonder and the roofs and
οὐχ ἥκιστα μάλιστα πολλοὺς τοὺς θεωμένους καὶ πάντας
not least most many the watchers and all
ἀνέχοντα ἐκκρεμεῖς. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ τοῦ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
holding hanging since and also of-the the autocrat
παρελθεῖν ἐπῆγε καιρός, προηγεῖτο μὲν ἀργύρεον ἐπίχρυσον
to-pass brought (the)-time went-before indeed (a)-silver gilded
τέτρωρον, ἵπποις λευκοῖς ὡς αἱ χιόνων ἀποσπάδες
four-horse(-chariot) by-horses white as the of-snows pieces

ἑλκόμενον, ἵδρυτο δ' ἐπ' αὐτοῦ ἡ εἰκὼν τῆς ἀπροσμάχου
drawn was-set and on it the icon of-the unassailable
συμμάχου καὶ ἀκαταγωνίστου συστρατήγου τῷ βασιλεῖ
ally and unconquerable fellow-general to-the emperor
θεομήτορος. οὐ μέγα δ' ἔβραχεν ἄξων, ὅτι μηδὲ
Mother-of-God not greatly and creaked (the)-axle because not-even
θεὰν ἦγε δεινὴν τὴν ψευδοπάρθενον Ἀθηνᾶν, ἀλλὰ
(a)-goddess it-carried dread the false-virgin Athena but
τὴν ὡς ἀληθῶς παρθένον καὶ ὑπὲρ λόγον διὰ λόγου
the(-one) as truly virgin and beyond reason through word
τὸν λόγον λοχεύσασαν. μετὰ δὲ τοῦτο οἱ καθ' αἷμα
the Word having-borne after and this the(-ones) by blood
τῷ βασιλεῖ περιώνυμοι, καὶ ὅσοι γερουσιάζοντες τὰς
to-the emperor renowned and as-many-as being-senators the
πολιτικὰς διεῖπον ἀρχάς, καὶ οἱ λαμπροὶ τοῖς ἀξιώμασι
civil administered offices and the brilliant in-the dignities
καὶ τῇ τοῦ βασιλέως εὐνοίᾳ περίκλυτοι. ἔπειτα δ'
and by-the of-the emperor goodwill famous then and
ὁ κρατῶν προῄει αὐτός, ἵππῳ ὑψαύχενι ἔποχος,
the ruler went-forward himself on-(a)-horse high-necked mounted
κύδιστος, μέγιστος καὶ κόσμους τοὺς βασιλικοὺς περιφανῶς
most-glorious greatest and ornaments the imperial conspicuously
περικείμενος. παρείπετο δέ οἱ καὶ ὁ τοῦ θριάμβου
wearing followed and him also the of-the triumph
αἴτιος Κοντοστέφανος, ὑμνούμενος τῆς νίκης, τοῦ δεξιοῦ
cause Kontostephanos being-hymned for-the victory of-the right
μακαριζόμενος ἀγωνίσματος. εἰς δὲ τὸν μέγαν νεὼν εἰσιὼν
being-blessed contest into and the great temple entering
καὶ τοῦ παντὸς ἐνώπιον λεὼ τὴν τοῦ κυρίου λαλήσας
and of-the whole before people the of-the Lord having-spoken

αἴνεσιν πρόεισιν ἐκεῖθεν εἰς τὰ βασίλεια. ὥσπερ δὲ τόξον
praise goes-forth thence to the palace as and (a)-bow
ἀνιεὶς ἑαυτὸν τῆς ἄγαν τάσεως διεχεῖτο ἵππων ἀμίλλαις.
loosing himself from-the excessive tension was-cheered with-horses' contests

IV · NEMANJA AND THE EGYPTIAN PLAN

Stephen Nemanja of Serbia seizes Croatia and Kotor. Manuel sends Theodore Padiates against him, then pursues him himself; Nemanja hides in the mountains, then submits in humble guise, and fears Manuel thereafter. Manuel plans to conquer Egypt with Amalric of Jerusalem and sends Andronikos Kontostephanos with over two hundred ships against Damietta; on the way to Cyprus he takes two Egyptian scout ships.

Καὶ τὸ ἐπιόν δὲ ἔαρ εἰς ἄνεσιν ταμιευσάμενος σώματος,
and the coming and spring for relaxation having-reserved of-body
ἐπειδὴ παρίππευσε Καρκίνον καὶ παρῆλθε Λέοντα ἥλιος,
when had-ridden-past (the)-Crab and passed (the)-Lion (the)-sun
ὅ τε Σείριος ὑπέληγε τῶν φλογώσεων, αἱ δὲ χειμέριοι
— and Sirius was-abating from-the blazings the and winter
τροπαὶ ἤδη παρεσκυθρώπαζον, ἔξεισι πρὸς τὰ ἑσπέρια
solstices already were-scowling he-goes-out to the west
καὶ κατὰ τὴν Φιλίππου ἐναυλίζεται. ἠκηκόει γὰρ ὡς ὁ
and at the(-city) of-Philip encamps he-had-heard for that the
τῶν Σέρβων σατράπης (ἦν δὲ τότε ὁ Νεεμᾶν Στέφανος)
of-the Serbs satrap was and then — Nemanja Stephen
ὑπὲρ ὃ δεῖ θρασύτερος γέγονε, καὶ κακόσχολος ὤν
beyond what is-needful more-bold has-become and mischievous being
τις ἥγηται σοφὸν τὸ περίεργον, καὶ τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν τρέφων
someone thinks wise the meddlesome and the desire nourishing
ἀκόρεστον καὶ πρὸς τὰ ἐκεῖ πάντα διαπλωθῆναι
insatiable and to the(-lands) there all to-be-spread

φιλονεικῶν τοῖς ἐκ τοῦ αὐτοῦ φύλου βαρὺς ἐμπίπτει
contending upon-the(-ones) of the same tribe heavy falls
καὶ ξίφει τὸ γένος μέτεισι, μήτε μὴν τὰ οἰκεῖα
and with-(the)-sword the race pursues nor indeed the own
εἰδὼς μέτρα Χορβατίαν ὑποποιεῖται καὶ πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
knowing measures Croatia wins-over and to himself
ἐπισπᾶται τῶν Καττάρων τὴν κυριότητα. διὰ ταῦτα
draws — of-Kotor the lordship because-of these(-things)
τοίνυν πεῖραν εἰληφέναι θέλων τοῦ ἐπὶ τούτοις τῷ
therefore (a)-test to-have-taken wishing of-the at these(-things) —
Νεεμᾶν βουλήματος, στέλλει μετὰ δυνάμεως τὸν Παδιάτην
to-Nemanja will sends with force — Padiates
Θεόδωρον. τῷ δὲ τοπάρχῃ Νεεμᾶν οὕτως ἀναρσίου
Theodore to-the and toparch Nemanja such hostile
μετῆν φρονήματος ὡς εὐθὺς ἐξενεγκεῖν ἀκήρυκτον πόλεμον
was spirit that at-once to-bring-out undeclared war
καὶ Ῥωμαίοις ἐπεισπεσεῖν. βασιλέως δ' αὐτὸν μετελθεῖν
and on-(the)-Romans to-fall (the)-emperor and him to-pursue
κρίναντος, ὀλίγον τῇ μάχῃ παραφανεὶς ἀπεκρύψατο,
having-decided (a)-little in-the battle having-appeared hid
τὰς τῶν ὀρῶν καὶ πάλιν ὑποδὺς καταδύσεις καὶ
the of-the mountains and again having-crept-into hiding-places and
τὰς πέτρας θέμενος εἰς ἀποκρυβήν. ἀεὶ δέ τι
the rocks having-made into concealment always and something
περικόπτων τῆς προλαβούσης ὀφρύος καὶ ὑφαιρῶν,
cutting-off from-the former brow and taking-away
τέλος τοῖς ἐκείνου ποσὶ τὴν οἰκείαν ὑποτέθεικε κεφαλήν,
(at-the)-end to-the his feet the own be-put-under head
μέγας μεγαλωστὶ τεταμένος καὶ περὶ τοῦ μὴ παθεῖν
great greatly stretched-out and about the not to-suffer
κακῶς δεόμενος· ἠγωνία γὰρ μή πως αὐτὸς μὲν
badly begging he-was-in-agony for lest somehow himself indeed

τῆς τῶν Σέρβων παραλυθῇ δυναστείας, τὸ δὲ κράτος
from-the of-the Serbs be-removed lordship the and power
μετενεχθῇ πρὸς τοὺς ἐκείνου ἄρχειν δικαιοτέρους, καὶ
be-transferred to the(-ones) than-him to-rule more-entitled and
οὓς αὐτὸς κατασπάσας εἶχε πρὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν ἀναχθείς.
whom himself having-pulled-down had to the rule having-been-raised
οὕτω δ' εὐμαρῶς μετῄει τοῦτον καὶ πρὸς τὴν ἐκείνου
thus and easily he-pursued him and to the his
πίστιν μετέστρεφεν, εἴ ποτε ἀποπλανώμενον ἑώρα τοῦ
faith turned(-him) if ever wandering he-saw(-him) from-the
εὐθέος καὶ ἐλεύθερον βλέποντα, ἢ τῷ τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν
straight and free looking or to-the of-the Alamans
ῥηγὶ προστιθέμενον ἢ τοῖς Οὔννοις προσνεύοντα καὶ κοινὸν
king attaching(-himself) or to-the Huns inclining and common
ἐκείνοις βαλάντιον καὶ πήραν προσκτώμενον, ὡς οὐδὲ
with-them purse and wallet acquiring as not-even
ποιμὴν ποίμνιον εὐπερίγραπτον. οὕτω δ' ἐδεδοίκει τοῦτον
(a)-shepherd (a)-flock easily-encircled thus and feared him
ὁ Νεεμὰν ὡς οὐδὲ τὸν βασιλικώτατον θῆρα τὰ κνώδαλα·
— Nemanja as not-even the most-kingly beast the wild-creatures
ὅς γε καὶ τὰ ἱππάσιμα μόνα πολλάκις ἐπιφερόμενος
who at-least also the(-horses) riding alone often bringing
καὶ τοῖς δορυφοροῦσιν εἰπὼν „ἕπεσθε," τὰ Ῥωμαίων
and to-the bodyguards having-said follow the of-(the)-Romans
παρήλλαττεν ὅρια, καὶ κατ' αὐτοῦ ἐξορμῶν πρὸς τὸ
passed borders and against him setting-out toward the
οἰκεῖον ἐφετὸν τὰ ἐκεῖθεν μετήμειβε πράγματα.
own desire the(-things) there changed affairs
Ἀλλὰ τίνα τὰ ἐπὶ τούτοις; ἐρᾷ καὶ στρατείας
but what (are)-the(-things) upon these he-loves also of-campaign
ὑπερορίου, καὶ τὸ τῆς Αἰγύπτου ἐνωτιζόμενος πάμφορον,
beyond-the-borders and the — of-Egypt hearing all-bearing

καὶ ὅσα γεωργεῖ Νεῖλος ὁ καρποδότης καὶ εὔσταχυς,
and as-much-as tills (the)-Nile the fruit-giver and fair-eared
τοῖς πήχεσι μετρῶν τὸ εὔδαιμον, ἔγνω ἐν θαλάσσῃ θέσθαι
by-the cubits measuring the prosperity resolved in (the)-sea to-set
χεῖρα αὐτοῦ καὶ ἐν ποταμοῖς δεξιὰν αὐτοῦ, εἴ πως τὰ δι᾽
(the)-hand his and in rivers (the)-right his if somehow the through
ἀκοῆς ἐρώμενα Αἰγύπτια ἀγαθὰ καὶ ὀφθαλμοῖς ἐντράνοις
hearing loved Egyptian good(-things) also with-eyes clear
θεάσαιτο καὶ θείη ληπτὰ ταῖς χερσίν. ἐποίει δ᾽ ἐκεῖνον
he-might-see and might-make graspable with-the hands made and that(-man)
ταῦτα φαντάζεσθαι τὰ ἐν ποσὶν ὑπεραλλόμενον,
these(-things) to-imagine the(-things) at (his)-feet leaping-over
καὶ ταῦτα ἔτι ὠδίνοντα, καὶ τεμνόμενα μὲν καὶ
and these(-things) still in-travail and being-cut indeed and
κατακαιόμενα, οὐκ ἀφαντούμενα δὲ καὶ ἀμαυρούμενα ἀλλὰ
being-burned not vanishing and and being-dimmed but
παλιμφυῆ κατὰ τὴν ὕδραν γινόμενα, φιλοδοξία τις ἄκαιρος
growing-again like the hydra becoming love-of-glory some unseasonable
καὶ τὸ πρὸς βασιλεῖς ἀνθαμιλλᾶσθαι, οἷς τὸ κλέος πολὺ
and the with kings to-vie whose the fame (is)-great
καὶ τὰ σχοινίσματα οὐκ ἀπὸ θαλάσσης μόνον ἕως θαλάσσης
and the measured-lands not from sea only to sea
ὑφαπλούμενα πρὶν παρετέτατο, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκ τῶν ἑῴων
spreading before had-been-stretched-out but from the eastern
ὁρισμάτων μέχρι τῶν ἑσπερίων διικνεῖτο στηλῶν. οὐκοῦν
boundaries up-to the western reached pillars therefore
καὶ τὸ σκέμμα τῷ τῶν Ἱεροσολύμων ῥηγὶ Ἀμερίγῳ
also the consideration with-the — of-Jerusalem king Amalric
κοινωσάμενος, κἀκεῖνον εὑρὼν οὐκ ἀποπεμπόμενον
having-shared and-that(-man) having-found not rejecting
τὸ ἐννόημα, μᾶλλον μὲν οὖν καὶ συλλαβέσθαι οἱ τοῦ
the idea rather indeed then also to-help him in-the

ἐγχειρήματος ὑπισχνούμενον, στόλον καταρτύει βαρὺν κατὰ
undertaking promising (a)-fleet he-equips heavy against
τοῦ Ταμιάθου εἰς νῆας μακρὰς διακοσίας καὶ ἔτι πρὸς
— Damietta to ships long two-hundred and still besides
ἀριθμούμενον, ἐν αἷς κατελέγοντο δέκα μὲν αἱ ἀπὸ
numbered among which were-enrolled ten indeed the(-ones) from
τῆς Ἐπιδάμνου ἀναχθεῖσαι, ἓξ δὲ ταχυναυτοῦσαι ἅπασαι,
— Epidamnos having-put-out six and swift-sailing all
ἃς ἐπλήρουν οἱ Εὐβοεῖς· ἀναδείκνυσι δὲ ναύαρχον τὸν
which manned the Euboeans appoints and (as)-admiral the
μέγαν δοῦκαν τὸν Κοντοστέφανον Ἀνδρόνικον. ἀπὸ δὲ
grand duke — Kontostephanos Andronikos from and
τουτωνὶ τῶν τριηρέων ἑξήκοντα τῷ Μαυροζούμῃ παραδοὺς
these the triremes sixty — to-Mavrozomes having-given
Θεοδώρῳ πρὸς τὸν ῥῆγα ἐξέπεμψε, προκαταγγελοῦντα
Theodore to the king he-sent-off going-to-announce
μὲν καὶ τὴν ὅσον οὐδέπω τοῦ λοιποῦ στόλου ἀναγωγὴν
indeed also the as-much-as not-yet of-the remaining fleet putting-to-sea
καὶ τὴν ἐκεῖσε τοῦ Κοντοστεφάνου ἄφιξιν, διαναστήσοντα
and the there — of-Kontostephanos arrival going-to-rouse
δὲ κἀκεῖνον ὡς εἴη ἑτοιμασάμενος τὰ πρὸς
and also-that(-man) so-that he-might-be having-prepared the(-things) for
τὴν ἔξοδον, ἅμα δ' ἀποκομίσοντά οἱ καὶ τὰ τῶν
the expedition at-once and going-to-carry to-him also the of-the
Ἱεροσολυμιτῶν ἱππέων ὀψώνια, ὅσοι συνεκστρατεύειν
Jerusalemite horsemen pay as-many-as to-campaign-with
ἔμελλον τῷ ῥηγὶ συνεφαπτομένῳ τοῦ πολέμου καὶ κατ'
were-about to-the king taking-part-in the war and against
Αἰγυπτίων τιθεμένῳ τὴν κίνησιν, καθ' ὧν ὁ στόλος ὁ
Egyptians making the movement against whom the fleet the
Ῥωμαϊκὸς συγκεκρότητο. μετ' οὐ πολὺ δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ
Roman had-been-assembled after not much and also himself —

Κοντοστέφανος ἔξεισιν (ἦγε δὲ τότε ὀγδόην μὴν
Kontostephanos goes-out was-bringing and then (the)-eighth(-day) month
ὁ Ἰούλιος), καὶ δὴ πρὸς τὸ Μελίβοτον καταχθείς, καὶ
the July and indeed to — Meliboton having-come-down and
παρὰ τοῦ βασιλέως ἐκεῖσε ἀφιγμένου θεατοῦ τοῦ στόλου
by the emperor there having-arrived (as)-spectator of-the fleet
τὰ πρὸς τὸ ἔργον ὑφηγηθείς, μετὰ δύο ἡμέρας
the(-things) for the deed having-been-instructed after two days
ἀνάγεται, καὶ κατάγεται εἰς τὰ Κοῖλα, ταῦτα δὴ τὰ
puts-out and puts-in to the Hollows these indeed the(-parts)
περὶ Σηστόν τε καὶ Ἄβυδον, καὶ ἐντίθησι ταῖς τριήρεσι
about Sestos both and Abydos and puts into-the triremes
τὸ ἐκ Ῥωμαϊκῶν καὶ ἐθνικῶν ἰλῶν ἀποκριθὲν καὶ
the(-force) from Roman and foreign squadrons picked and
παραδοθέν οἱ στράτευμα. τὸ δ' ἐντεῦθεν, ὡς ἦν τὸ
handed-over to-him (an)-army the(-time) and thence as was the
πνεῦμα φορὸν καὶ οὔριον, τὰ πρυμνήσια λύσας καὶ τὰ
wind following and fair the stern-cables having-loosed and the
ἱστία διαπετάσας τὴν ἐς Κύπρον παρανελέγετο κέλευθον.
sails having-spread the to Cyprus coasted road
κατὰ δὲ τὸν πλοῦν τοῦτον ἓξ ἐγκύρσας ναυσὶν ἃς ὁ τῆς
during and the voyage this six having-met ships which the —
Αἰγύπτου ἀμιρᾶς ἐπεπόμφει πρὸς κατασκόπησιν, τὰς μὲν
of-Egypt emir had-sent for reconnoitering the indeed
δύο συλλαβὼν εἶχεν. αἱ δ' ἄλλαι, αἳ καὶ μὴ ἀγχώμαλα
two having-seized he-held the and others which also not evenly-matched
τὸν πλοῦν ἐτίθεντο, καταταχήσασαι διαδιδράσκουσιν.
the voyage made having-outsped escape

Amalric delays, wasting the time and the fleet's provisions. The allies take two villages and besiege Damietta, whose Saracens flee before the Romans and jeer from the walls. Kontostephanos brings down part of the wall, but Amalric refuses to assault until wooden towers are built from the palms, and the army starves.

Προσωκείλας δὲ τῇ Κύπρῳ τὴν ἄφιξιν αὐτοῦ παρίστησι
having-put-in and — at-Cyprus the arrival his he-presents
τῷ ῥηγί, καὶ πυνθάνεται πρὸς ὅτῳ ἔχει τὸν νοῦν
to-the king and inquires at what he-has the mind
ἐκεῖνος, καὶ εἰ προσμενεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς Κύπρον ἢ τὴν
he and whether he-will-await him at Cyprus or the(-road)
ἐπὶ Ἱεροσολύμων βαδιεῖται οὗτος. ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ κατὰ τὸν
to Jerusalem will-go this(-one) the and king like —
Ἐπιμηθέα, ᾧ τὸ μὲν μέλειν οὐκ εἶναί φασι τὸ
Epimetheus for-whom the indeed to-care not to-be they-say the
δὲ μεταμέλειν, καὶ μάλα τὴν καρδίαν μέσην ἐπλήττετο,
and to-repent and very in-the heart middle was-struck
ὅτι συναρήξειν ὅλως βασιλεῖ κατένευσεν ἢ γοῦν
that to-help-together wholly with-(the)-emperor he-had-agreed or at-any-rate
ἐπώτρυνε τὴν κατ᾽ Αἰγυπτίων μελετῶντα κίνησιν. τῷ
had-urged-on the against Egyptians planning movement for
τοι καὶ ἀναβαλλομένῳ ἐῴκει καὶ σκεπτομένῳ πολλάκις
surely also putting-off he-seemed and considering often
τὸ ποιητέον. ὀψὲ δ᾽ οὖν σημαίνει τῷ Ἀνδρονίκῳ
the to-be-done late and then signals — to-Andronikos
τὴν ἐπὶ Ἱεροσολύμων ἴεσθαι, ὡς ἐκεῖσε συνελθόντες
the(-road) to Jerusalem to-hasten so-that there having-come-together
συνδιασκέψωνται ἀμφότεροι ὃ κοινῶς διαπράξονται. εἶχε
they-might-consider both what in-common they-will-do had

τοίνυν ἡ μὲν Παλαιστίνη τὸν Κοντοστέφανον, τὸν δ'
therefore — indeed Palestine — Kontostephanos — and
Ἀμέριγον αὖθις ἡ μέλλησις, καὶ ὁ μετάμελος πολὺς
Amalric again the delay and the repentance much
ἐγκείμενος ὑπέτυφε τὴν ψυχήν. πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἄλλα
pressing smoldered the soul many and also other(-things)
Πάτροκλον πρόφασιν προτιθείς, οὐδὲν ἧττον ἐπὶ πᾶσι καὶ
(as)-Patroclus (a)-pretext putting-forward no less above all also
τὴν τῶν οἰκείων στρατευμάτων προυβάλλετο συλλογήν.
the of-the own armies he-put-forward collection
Ἀνδρόνικος δ' ἐπὶ τούτοις ἤχθετο μὲν τοῦ καιροῦ
Andronikos and at these(-things) was-vexed indeed the time
τηνάλλως ἐκμετρουμένου, οὗπερ οὐκ ἦν εἰσαῦθις
idly being-measured-out which not was(-possible) again
ἐπιλαβέσθαι ὡς μηδὲ κομῶντος ἐξόπισθεν· ὑπέθραττε δ'
to-seize as not-even having-hair behind troubled and
αὐτὸν πλειόνως ὁ τοῦ ναυτικοῦ πληρώματος ὀψωνιασμὸς
him more the of-the naval complement pay
διακενῆς ἀναλούμενος. ὁ γὰρ βασιλεὺς τριῶν μηνῶν
in-vain being-spent the for emperor of-three months
τῷ στόλῳ σιτηρέσιον ἐπεμέτρησεν ἐκ τοῦ Αὐγούστου
for-the fleet ration had-measured from the August
μηνὸς ἀρξάμενος, ἦν δὲ τότε λήγων ὁ Σεπτέμβριος.
month having-begun was and then ending the September
ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει ἀπαίρειν, τὴν διὰ ξηρᾶς πορείαν
when and it-seemed(-good) to-set-out the through dry(-land) march
ὁ ῥὴξ τοῦ θαλαττίου προτίθησι πλοῦ, καὶ Ἀνδρονίκῳ
the king to-the sea prefers voyage and to-Andronikos
οὑτωσὶ ποιεῖν ὑποτίθησι, φάσκων εὐμαρεστέραν εἰδέναι
thus to-do suggests saying easier to-know
ταύτην πολλῷ καὶ ἀπαθεστέραν τῷ ἑλομένῳ, καὶ
this by-much and more-harmless for-the(-one) choosing(-it) and

ὡς ἐσεῖται ἅμα οὕτως σφίσιν ἐξ ἐφόδου καὶ
that it-will-be(-possible) at-once thus for-them from (the)-assault and
πάρεργον ὁδοῦ παραστήσασθαι τὸ Τουνιόν τε καὶ
(a)-by-work of-(the)-road to-win-over — Tounion both and
τὸ Τενέσιον. τὰ δέ ἐστι κωμύδρια τῷ τῆς Αἰγύπτου
— Tenesion these and are hamlets to-the — of-Egypt
ἀμιρᾷ καθυπείκοντα, οὐ δυσπρόσοδα οὐδὲ δυσέμβολα,
emir yielding not hard-of-access nor hard-to-invade
ἀλλ' ἐφ' ὑπτίου κείμενα πεδίου, καὶ τοὺς πλείστους τῶν
but on (a)-flat lying plain and the most of-the
κατοίκων ἔχοντα γνωριζομένους ἐξ ὀνόματος τοῦ Χριστοῦ.
inhabitants having known by name — of-Christ
ὡς ἀγαθῇ γοῦν τῇ παραιφάσει τοῦ ῥηγὸς πεισθεὶς
as with-good at-any-rate the advice of-the king persuaded
Ἀνδρόνικος, ἣν ᾑρεῖτο οὗτος, ἐτράπετο. τὴν δ' ἐν τῷ
Andronikos which chose this(-one) turned-to the and in the
μεταξὺ πορείαν ἀλύπως ἀνύσαντες, οἷς εἴπομεν φρουρίοις
between march painlessly having-accomplished which we-said forts
προσέβαλον, καὶ ὁμολόγως αὐτὰ χειρωσάμενοι, ὅτι μηδ'
they-attacked and by-agreement them having-subdued because not-even
εἶχον ἔνδοθεν ἀξιόμαχον δύναμιν καὶ χεῖρα ἱκανὴν εἰς
they-had inside fit-to-fight force and (a)-hand sufficient to
ἀντίπαλον μοῖραν χωρεῖν, τοῦ πρόσω εἴχοντο. καὶ
opposing part to-go the(-road) forward they-held and
δὴ τῷ στόλῳ συμμίξαντες ἤδη τὰς κώπας ἐπὶ τοῦ
indeed with-the fleet having-joined already the oars at —
Ταμιάθου σχάσαντι καὶ ἐφορμῶντι, τοῖς πρὸ τῆς πόλεως
Damietta having-rested and lying-at-anchor the(-ones) before the city
εὐθὺς ἐκχυθεῖσι καὶ μεθ' ὅπλων ἐποφθεῖσι Σαρακηνοῖς
at-once poured-out and with arms seen Saracens
συμμίγνυνται. οὕτω δ' ἐξέπληξαν αὐτοὺς Ῥωμαῖοι καὶ
they-engage thus and astounded them (the)-Romans and

διετάραξαν τῷ ἀπτοήτῳ τῆς ἀντιτάξεως ὡς σὺν βοῇ
threw-into-confusion by-the fearlessness of-the counter-array so-that with shout
τε καὶ ταράχῳ συνωθηθῆναι εἴσω πυλῶν, μηδὲ καθαρῶς
both and confusion to-be-thrust-together inside (the)-gates not-even clearly
ἀντιβλέψαι σφίσιν ὑπενεγκόντας. καὶ τοῦτο μὲν οὕτω τῆς
to-look-at them having-endured and this indeed thus of-the
ἡμέρας ἐκείνης πέπρακται, καθ' ἣν αἱ μὲν τριήρεις τῷ
day that has-been-done on which the indeed triremes at-the
Νείλῳ προσώκειλαν, ὁ δὲ ῥὴξ πεζῇ παρεγένετο· τῇ δ'
Nile put-in the and king on-foot arrived on-the and
ὑστεραίᾳ πάλιν οἱ Σαρακηνοὶ συμπλακησόμενοι Ῥωμαίοις
next(-day) again the Saracens going-to-grapple with-(the)-Romans
συνεληλύθεσαν κατὰ τὸ πρὸ τῆς πόλεως κολπῶδες πεδίον
had-come-together in the before the city bay-like plain
καὶ ἐπικαμπὲς ἠρέμα περὶ τὸ τεῖχος. πλὴν οὐδὲ τότε
and curving gently about the wall however not-even then
Ῥωμαίους ὑπέστησαν. τῶν γὰρ πυλῶν ὅσον ἀποσχόντες
(the)-Romans withstood from-the for gates as-much-as having-been-apart
βραχὺ καὶ μηδαμῇ τοῦ προτειχίσματος ἀφιστάμενοι,
(a)-little and nowhere from-the outwork standing-off
οὕτω διετίθουν τὸν πόλεμον· ὡς δ' ἐπ' αὐτοὺς ὥρμηντο
thus they-managed the war as and at them rushed
Ῥωμαῖοι μόνον, τὸ παθεῖν κακῶς φυλαττόμενοι ἐνέκλινον
(the)-Romans only the to-suffer badly guarding-against they-turned
εἰς φυγὴν καὶ διὰ τῶν πυλῶν εἰσεχέοντο, μὴ εὐθύωρον
to flight and through the gates poured-in not straightforward
ἄγειν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους τὴν ἑαυτῶν ἀποθαρροῦντες
to-lead against the enemies the their-own daring
φάλαγγα. καὶ τοῦτο ἐπὶ πολλὰς ἡμέρας ἐγίνετο. ἦν δὲ ἡ
phalanx and this for many days happened was and the
στρατηγία αὕτη μηδὲν ἄλλο δυναμένη, ὡς δέδεικται, ἢ
generalship this nothing else amounting-to as has-been-shown than

Ῥωμαίους κατασοφίζεσθαι, ὅπως εἰκῇ χρονοτριβῶσιν,
(the)-Romans to-outwit so-that at-random they-might-waste-time
ἐλπίσι μὴ περαινομέναις ὑποσυλώμενοι. ἀμέλει τοι τὰς
with-hopes not being-fulfilled being-robbed indeed surely the
ἑλεπόλεις ἐς νέωτα προσαγαγὼν ὁ Ἀνδρόνικος οὐκ
city-takers for the-morrow having-brought-up — Andronikos not
ἀμογητὶ καὶ ἀκινδύνως τὸ τεῖχος ἔτυπτεν· οἱ γὰρ βάρβαροι
without-toil and without-danger the wall struck the for barbarians
τοὺς διαπειρωμένους τῶν μηχανημάτων ἔβαλλον ὑψόθεν
the(-ones) trying of-the engines shot from-above
καὶ τοῦ ἔργου ἀπεκώλυον, βέλη τε νιφάδων ἀφιέντες
and from-the work hindered missiles both than-snowflakes letting-fly
πυκνότερα καὶ ἀντεπινοοῦντες τὰ τῷ τείχει σωτήρια.
thicker and devising-in-turn the(-things) for-the wall saving
ἴσχυσε δὲ καὶ οὕτω κόρσην κατερεῖψαι τείχους, ἐφ' οὗ
was-able and also thus (a)-battlement to-throw-down of-(the)-wall on which
κηώδες ἵδρυτο τέμενος τῇ θεομήτορι ἀνακείμενον. ᾄδετο
fragrant had-been-set (a)-precinct to-the Mother-of-God dedicated was-sung
δὲ τοῖς ἀστοῖς ἐκεῖ που παύσασθαι τοῦ πλάνου τὴν
and by-the townsmen there somewhere to-have-ceased from-the wandering the
μητροπάρθενον σύναμα Ἰωσὴφ τῷ μνήστορι, ὁπότε εἰς
Mother-Virgin together-with Joseph the betrothed when to
Αἴγυπτον ὥρμηντο τὸν παιδοφόνον Ἡρῴδην ἐκκλίνοντες.
Egypt they-had-hastened the child-murdering Herod avoiding
οἱ τοίνυν Σαρακηνοὶ ἀπέσκωπτον ἐς Ῥωμαίους, καὶ
the therefore Saracens jeered at (the)-Romans and
ὕβρεσιν Ἀνδρόνικον ἔπλυνον οἷα μὴ φειδόμενον νεὼ
with-insults Andronikos washed as not sparing (a)-temple
καθ' οὗπερ ἐκκλησιάζοντες τὸ χριστώνυμον τὰ οἰκεῖα
in which assembling the Christ-named(-people) the own
τελοῦνται μυστήρια, πῇ μὲν προσευκτήρια πῇ
perform mysteries in-one-place indeed prayers in-another

δὲ καὶ χαριστήρια ᾄδοντες. ὡς δὲ οὐδ᾽ οὕτω τὰ
and also thanksgivings singing as and not-even thus the(-things)
κατὰ νοῦν Ἀνδρόνικος ἐξεπέραινε, διὰ προσβολῆς
according-to mind Andronikos accomplished through attack
ἰσχυροτέρας ἔγνω πειράσασθαι τῶν ἐντός. καὶ δὴ
stronger resolved to-try the(-men) inside and indeed
τῷ ῥηγὶ πρὸς λόγους ἐλθὼν ἐνῆγε κἀκεῖνον, πολὺς
with-the king to words having-come he-urged also-that(-man) much
ἐγκείμενος, ἐξαγαγεῖν τὴν στρατιὰν καὶ τὸ τεῖχος ἅπαν
pressing to-lead-out the army and the wall all
διαλαβεῖν, κἂν εἰ προχωροίη τὰ τοῦ ἔργου, καὶ
to-encompass and if should-advance the(-things) of-the work also
κλίμαξι χρήσασθαι καὶ τοὺς ἀναρριχωμένους διαφεῖναι.
ladders to-use and the(-ones) climbing to-send-through
ὁ δὲ ἐπῄνει μὲν τὰ λεγόμενα καὶ τῶν εὐμεθόδων
he and praised indeed the(-things) said and for-the well-methodized
βουλευμάτων ἀπεθείαζε τὸν Ἀνδρόνικον, οὐκ ἄλλως δὲ
plans deified — Andronikos not otherwise and
τῷ πράγματι ἐγχειρήσειν διεβεβαιοῦτο καὶ διετείνετο, τὸν
the thing he-will-attempt he-affirmed and insisted the
τοῦ Χριστοῦ τάφον εἰς ὅρκον παραλαμβάνων, εἰ μὴ
— of-Christ tomb for oath taking-up if not
πρότερον πύργοι τεκτονηθήσονται ξύλινοι καὶ τούτους
first towers will-be-built wooden and these
ἐπιστήσει τοῖς τείχεσι. καὶ ταῦτα λέγων ἐπέταττε
he-will-set-against the walls and these(-things) saying he-ordered
τοὺς τῇ πόλει παραπεφυκότας φοίνικας καθαιρεῖν καὶ
the at-the city growing palms to-take-down and
εἰς πύργων ἀποξέειν ὑψώματα. οἱ μὲν οὖν εὐυψεῖς
into of-towers to-plane heights the indeed then lofty
καὶ ἀκρόκομοι φοίνικες ἀπετέμνοντο, καὶ τὰ ἄλση τῶν
and leafy-topped palms were-cut-down and the groves of-the

δένδρων ἀπεκενοῦτο, καὶ ἐψιλοῦτο ἅπας παράδεισος, τὰ
trees were-emptied and was-stripped every orchard the
δὲ τῶν πύργων δοκανώματα καὶ ἡ τούτων ἁρμογὴ καὶ
and of-the towers beams and the their fitting and
ἀπάρτισις ἐξεπεραίνετο οὐδαμοῦ· ὁ γὰρ ῥὴξ ἐς ἡλίους
completion was-accomplished nowhere the for king to suns
μακροὺς ἀπετίθει τὸ γενησόμενον ἐς αὔριον ἀεί πως
long put-off the(-thing) going-to-be to tomorrow always somehow
ἀναβαλλόμενος μηδὲ τὰ δεδογμένα πληρῶν. ταῦτα
postponing nor the(-things) decided fulfilling these(-things)
δ' ὁρῶν Ἀνδρόνικος ἤχθετο μέν, ὃ λειπόμενον ἦν,
and seeing Andronikos was-vexed indeed which remaining was
καὶ κατῴκτειρε τὴν στρατιὰν σιτίων ἤδη σπανίζουσαν
and pitied the army of-food already lacking
καὶ λιμῷ θανεῖν κινδυνεύουσαν, καὶ τοὺς μὲν μηδ'
and by-famine to-die in-danger and the(-ones) indeed not-even
ὀβολοῦ εὐποροῦντας ὡς ἔχοιεν τὰ πρὸς τὸ
of-(an)-obol having-plenty so-that they-might-have the(-things) for the
ζῆν ἐξωνούμενοι, τοὺς δὲ δυσχεραίνοντας ὡς οἰκείαν
living buying the(-ones) and being-annoyed as own
μὴ ἔχοντες ἀγοράν, πλεῖστα τοῖς ἐπὶ τῆς σιτηγίας
not having market very-much to-the(-men) over the grain-supply
κατατιθέμενοι τοῦ ῥηγός, ὀλίγων ηὐπόρουν τῶν πρὸς
paying of-the king few had-plenty-of of-the(-things) for
ἑστίασιν. καὶ ὁ συντεθειμένος δὲ χρόνος τῇ στρατείᾳ
feasting and the agreed and time for-the campaign
πάλαι ἐκμετρηθεὶς σχετλιάζειν ἐποίει καὶ δυσφορεῖν,
long-ago having-been-measured-out to-complain made and to-be-discontented
πρὸ δὲ πάντων ἡ κενὴ καὶ ἀνόνητος προσεδρεία, ἡμέρας
before and all the empty and unprofitable siege days
ὑπερβᾶσα πεντήκοντα.
having-exceeded fifty

Kontostephanos addresses the army: the Latin king has been bought or drugged by the Egyptians and will not fight. He proposes a direct assault under cover of their shields, promising to lead it himself and to share every danger.

εἰς ἑτέραν δὲ μὴ ἔχων ἀπιδεῖν ἐργασίαν, ὅτι μηδὲ
to another and not being-able to-look-to work because not-even
εἴων αὐτὸν τὰ τοῦ βασιλέως γράμματα ὅλως ἐγχειρεῖν
allowed him the of-the emperor letters at-all to-attempt
ἃ μὴ εἴη ἀσπάσια τῷ ῥηγί, καθῆστο καραδοκῶν
what-things not might-be welcome to-the king he-sat awaiting
τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦ ῥηγὸς ἐνδόσιμον. ἐπεὶ δ' οὐδέν τι χρηστὸν
the from the king cue when and nothing at-all good
οὐδὲ μέτριον ἐκ τῶν πραττομένων κατελάμβανε τὸν
nor moderate from the (things)-done found the
ἄνδρα διανοούμενον μήτε μὴν προσλαμβάνοντα καὶ
man intending nor indeed helping and
συμμογοῦντα, καὶ εἰς δεινὰ δὲ καὶ ἀμήχανα πολλὰ
toiling-with and into terrible(-straits) and also helpless many
ἐμπεπτωκέναι τὴν στρατιὰν ὁρῶν κινδυνεύουσαν οἷα
to-have-fallen the army seeing in-danger as
τοῦ λιμοῦ ἐπιβρίθοντος καὶ δεινῶς ἐπιβοσκομένου, ὡς
the famine pressing and terribly feeding-on(-them) so-that
ἅπτεσθαι τῶν ἀπηγορευμένων σιτίων τινάς, πάντας
to-touch the forbidden foods some all
δ' ὁμῶς ῥιζοφαγεῖν καὶ τὰς τῶν φοινίκων δρέπεσθαι
and alike to-eat-roots and the of-the palms to-pluck
κόμας καὶ δεῖπνον ἕψοντας παρατίθεσθαι, οὐκ ἀγαθὰ
foliage and (a)-dinner boiling to-serve not good
δὲ καὶ φῆμαι προσέβαλλον, ὅσον οὔπω ξενολογίαν
and also reports struck(-him) as-much-as not-yet (a)-hired-force

τοῖς πολιορκουμένοις ἀφίξεσθαι ἔκ τε τοῦ σουλτάνου
for-the besieged to-arrive from both the sultan
τῆς Αἰγύπτου καὶ τῶν πρὸς ἀνίσχοντα ἥλιον Ἀράβων,
— of-Egypt and of-the toward rising sun Arabs
καὶ Ἀσσυρίαν δὲ ἵππον ἐωνημένην πολλὴν ἄγχιστα
and Assyrian too horse bought much nearest
εἶναι, ἀφεὶς πρὸς οὓς νεκρῷ διαλέγεσθαι καὶ τὴν
to-be having-let-go with whom with-(a)-corpse to-converse and the
Λατινικὴν ἐξουδενώσας κόρυζαν ἐπαποδύσασθαι καὶ μόνος
Latin having-set-at-naught drivel to-strip(-for-the-fight) and alone
τὴν τοῦ πολέμου κέκρικεν ἅμιλλαν. ἐκκλησιάσας τοίνυν
the of-the war has-decided contest having-assembled therefore
τὴν στρατιὰν „καὶ τὸ ἐνθάδε" φησὶν „ἐπὶ πολὺ
the army and the(-thing) here he-says for long
μένειν ἀνιαρόν, καὶ τὸ μηδέν τι δεδρακότας κακόν, καθ'
to-remain (is)-grievous and the nothing at-all having-done evil against
ὧν ἐπήλθομεν, χερσὶν ἐπανηκέναι κεναῖς αἴσχιστον·
whom we-came with-hands to-have-returned empty (is)-most-shameful
χεῖρον δ' ἀμφοῖν τούτων καὶ μὴ νῷ διοικουμένων
worse and than-both these and not by-mind governed
ἄντικρυς ἔργον τὸ πείθεσθαι ἀνδρὶ οὐχ ὅπως κατ' οὐδὲν
outright (a)-deed the to-obey (a)-man not only in nothing
ξυγκειμένῳ τὴν γνώμην Ῥωμαίοις, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν
agreed in-the mind with-(the)-Romans but also than-the
ἐχθρῶν οὔκουν διακειμένῳ ἄμεινον. οὐ συνίετε ὅπως
enemies not disposed better not you-understand how
ὁ ῥὴξ τὸν οἰκεῖον χάρακα τοῦ ἡμετέρου βαλὼν
the king the own palisade from-the our having-pitched
ἄποθεν πρόεισιν οὐδ' ὅλως ἐκεῖθεν ὁ συναγωνιστής, ὁ
apart goes-forward not-even at-all thence the fellow-fighter the
σύμμαχος, καθάπερ εἰς ἑόρτιον ἄνεσιν παρ' ἡμῶν καὶ
ally as-if to (a)-festal relaxation by us also

θεατὴς προσληφθείς, οὐκ ἐργάτης Ἄρεος ἔργων; οὐχ
(as)-spectator taken-in not (a)-worker of-Ares deeds not
οὕτω καὶ οὗτοι δρῶσιν οἱ ἀντίπαλοι, ὅταν τὴν μάχην
thus also these do the opponents whenever the battle
ὑπέρθωνται, οὐδὲ μαχούμενοι ἐξίασι τῶν πυλῶν; ὥστε
they-postpone not-even going-to-fight they-come-out-of the gates so-that
τὸ ἀπὸ τοῦδε οὐ τοῦτό μοι ἔπεισι δεδιέναι, μὴ οὐδὲν
the(-time) from this not this to-me comes to-fear lest nothing
χρηστὸν κατωρθωκότες ἀπίωμεν, ἀλλ' εἴ πως οὐχ ἱκανοὶ
good having-achieved we-go-away but if somehow not able
ἐσοίμεθα τὰς ἡμετέρας ἐκσῶσαι ψυχάς. ἀλλ' οὐδ' ἐκεῖνό
we-shall-be the our to-save souls but not-even that
μοι διὰ μελέτης καὶ σκέψεως, ὅπως σὺν ἡμῖν μαχεῖται
to-me through care and consideration how with us will-fight
ὁ ῥήξ, ἀλλ' ὅπως τὰς αὐτοῦ δολοφροσύνας διαδράντες,
the king but how the his deceits having-escaped
οὐκ ἐγκρυφιάζοντος ἤδη μήτε μὴν παραπετάσματι
not hiding already nor indeed with-(a)-curtain
συσκιάζοντος τὰ ἐνδόμυχα, ἀπείρατοι κακῶν ἐνθένδε
shading the(-things) within untried by-evils from-here
ἀπάρωμεν, τὸν ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς διακρουσάμενοι κίνδυνον.
we-may-depart the in (our)-eyes having-beaten-off danger
τάχα καὶ νῦν Αἰγυπτίοις προσεξεύρηνται φάρμακα τῶν
perhaps also now for-Egyptians have-been-further-found drugs than-the
πάλαι παρ' αὐτοῖς ἰσχυρότερα, ἃ καὶ μὴ κοιμίζειν
of-old among them stronger which also not to-lull
μόνον λύπας ἔχουσι καὶ τὸ δεδηγμένον τῆς ψυχῆς
only griefs have(-power) and the bitten(-part) of-the soul
ἀπροσδοκήτοις διαιτᾶν διαχύσεσιν, ὡς ἐκεῖνο πρώην τὸ
with-unexpected to-treat cheerings as that formerly the
φάρμακον ὃ δεδώκει τῇ Λακαίνῃ Θώνου παράκοιτις
drug which had-given to-the Laconian(-woman) of-Thon (the)-wife

νηπενθές, κακῶν ἁπάντων ἐπίληθες, ἀλλὰ καὶ πολεμικοὺς
sorrow-banishing of-evils all forgetful but also warlike
ἄνδρας ἐκθηλύνειν καὶ ποιεῖν ἀλκῆς ἐπιλήσμονας. καὶ
men to-unman and to-make of-strength forgetful and
τούτων, οἶμαι, τῶν φαρμάκων Ἀμερίγῳ προύτειναν
of-these I-think the drugs to-Amalric held-out
σκύφον Αἰγύπτιοι, καὶ γοητευθείς, ὡς ἔοικε, τῷ ποτῷ
(a)-cup Egyptians and bewitched as it-seems by-the drink
καὶ μετασχὼν ἐς μέθην τῆς κύλικος πρὸς κάρον
and having-partaken to drunkenness of-the cup to stupor
ἀποδεδίχμωται χρόνιον. τῷ τοι παρὰ πάσσαλον μὲν
has-been-bent long for surely beside (a)-peg indeed
αὐτῷ ἡ ἀσπίς, τὸ δὲ ξίφος καθυπνώττει τῷ κουλεῷ, ἐπὶ
for-him the shield the and sword sleeps in-the sheath on
δὲ σαυρωτῆρος τὸ δόρυ πέπηγεν. ἢ τοῦτο μὲν οὐδαμῶς,
and (the)-butt-spike the spear is-fixed or this indeed in-no-way
ἀργύρῳ δὲ φαρμαχθεὶς τὰς φρένας ἠλλοίωται καὶ χρυσίῳ
with-silver and having-been-drugged in-the wits has-been-changed and with-gold
τὰ ὦτα βέβυσται, καὶ τούτῳ κνώμενος πρὸς τὸ δυσήκοον
the ears are-stuffed and by-this being-tickled to the hard-of-hearing
μετεσκεύασται. καὶ νῦν φροῦδαι μὲν αἱ ξυνθῆκαι ἃς ὑπὲρ
is-changed and now gone indeed the covenants which for
τοῦ συμμαχήσειν Ῥωμαίοις βασιλεῖ δέδωκε, χείλεσι
the to-fight-with with-(the)-Romans to-(the)-emperor he-has-given with-lips
μόνοις ἐκεῖνον τιμῶν, τῇ δὲ καρδίᾳ πόρρω φερόμενος·
alone that(-man) honoring in-the and heart far being-borne
ἡμεῖς δὲ τηλίκοις δεινοῖς περιστοιχιζόμεθα, εἴγε πόλεμος
we and by-so-great terrors are-surrounded since war
ὁμοῦ καὶ λιμὸς ἡμᾶς δαπανᾷ, καὶ τὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐφ' ἡμῖν
at-once and famine us consumes and the of-(the)-Romans over us
αὐχήματα οἴχεται, τὰ δὲ λαμπρὰ τῶν κατορθωμάτων
boasts are-gone the and brilliant(-things) of-the successes

ἠφάντωται. κρεῖσσον ἦν μὴ ὅρμοις τοῖς ἐνταῦθα
have-vanished better it-was not at-moorings the here
προσσχεῖν, διαμεμετρηκότας πελάγη ἀχανῆ καὶ ἀόριστα,
to-put-in having-measured seas gaping and boundless
ἢ ἀπράκτους ἀπιέναι κατάραντας, ὡς νῦν γε οὐχ ἱστίοις
than unsuccessful to-go-away having-put-in as now at-least not with-sails
λευκοῖς τὰς ναῦς πτερῶσαι ἡμῖν, ὡς οἶμαι, γενήσεται,
white the ships to-wing for-us as I-think it-will-be
ὁποίοις ἐκ Βυζαντίδος ἀνήχθημεν, ἀλλὰ φαιοῖς
such-as from Byzantis we-put-out but with-dark(-ones)
ἀτεχνῶς διὰ τὸ τῆς αἰσχύνης μελάνωμα. ἀλλ᾽ ἄνδρες
simply because-of the of-the shame blackening but men
ὁμογενεῖς καὶ συστρατιῶται, καὶ ὅσον ἐνταυθοῖ ξενικόν,
kinsmen and fellow-soldiers and as-much-as here (is)-foreign
ἀποκριθέντες τῶν Παλαιστίνηθεν ἱππotῶν τῶν γαύρων
having-separated-from the from-Palestine knights the haughty
τούτων καὶ ὑψαυχένων καὶ Ῥωμαίοις ὡς ἔδειξαν ἀπίστων
these and high-necked and to-(the)-Romans as they-showed faithless
προσβάλωμεν τοῖς βαρβάροις, τειχομαχίαν στησώμεθα,
let-us-attack the barbarians wall-fighting let-us-set-up
ἀγωνισώμεθα ὡς τὸ πόλισμα τοῦτο ληψόμεθα, καὶ ὡς
let-us-contend as the town this we-shall-take and as
ἤδη ἔχοντες ἐν χερσὶ τὸν ἔνδον πλοῦτον ἁμιλληθῶμεν. εἰ
already having in hands the inside wealth let-us-vie if
τεῖχος τοῖς βαρβάροις τὸ πρόβλημα καὶ ἀφ᾽ ὕψους τῶν
(a)-wall for-the barbarians (is)-the defense and from height of-the
ἀμυντηρίων ἡ ἄφεσις, ἀλλ᾽ εἰσὶ καὶ παρ᾽ ἡμῖν ἀσπίδες,
defenses the discharge but are also with us shields
αἳ οὐκ ἀνδράσι ῥᾳδίως ἀνέχονται (ὑπὲρ γὰρ τὸ σάκος
which not by-men easily are-held beyond for the shield
εἰσὶ τὸ Αἰάντειον ἐκεῖνο τὸ ἑπταβόειον) ἀλλ᾽ ὡς πύργοι
they-are the Ajax's that the seven-oxhide but as towers

ἀντιπροβέβληνται, οὐ μόνον ἀτίνακτοι βέλεσι καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ
they-are-set-against(-them) not only unshaken by-missiles and by-the from
χειρῶν οὐτήμασιν ἀδιάρρηκτοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῶν ἀπὸ
hands wounds unbreakable but also than-the(-missiles) from
μηχανῶν ἀφιεμένων πάντων δήπουθεν στεγανώτεραι. ταύτας
engines let-fly all surely more-watertight these
ἀντιστήσαντες ὡς πυργοβάρεις, ὀλίγα τοῦ τείχους καὶ
having-set-against as tower-heavy little(-things) of-the wall and
τῶν ἀπ᾽ αὐτοῦ μαχομένων φροντίσωμεν. εἰ δὴ δίκαια
of-the(-ones) from it fighting let-us-care if indeed just(-things)
ποιεῖν αἱρεῖσθε, ὥρα μοι πείθεσθαι, ἐπεὶ καὶ αὐτὸς ὅ
to-do you-choose (it-is)-time me to-obey since also I what
τι ἂν δέῃ σὺν ὑμῖν ἀσμένως πείσομαι· μηδὲ γὰρ
— — *may-be-needful with you gladly will-suffer not for*
εἴη τινὰ ἐρεῖν ὡς Ἀνδρόνικος ὑπαγαγέσθαι μὲν
might-it-be(-possible) anyone to-say that Andronikos to-lead-on indeed
λόγοις καὶ παραθῆξαι πρὸς Ἄρεα ἱκανώτατος, ἀρχηγὸς
with-words and to-whet toward Ares most-able (a)-commander
δ᾽ ἀχρεῖος μηδ᾽ ἀποκρούσασθαι εἰδὼς τὸ πολέμιον. ἀλλὰ
but useless not-even to-beat-off knowing the enemy but
τὸ τῆς ἐμῆς κόρυθος μέτωπον ὄψονται πρὸ ὑμῶν οἱ
the of-the my helmet front they-will-see before you the
ἀντίμαχοι. καὶ πρόμαχος ὤν, δέον οὕτω ποιεῖν, καὶ
opponents and (a)-front-fighter being needful thus to-do and
οὐραγὸς ἐσοίμην ὑμέτερος, εἰ καὶ τοῦτο δίδωσιν ὁ καιρός.
(a)-rearguard I-shall-be your if also this gives the occasion
θεὸς δὲ περαίνοι τὰ βεβουλευμένα, καὶ τράποιτο
God and may-accomplish the(-things) planned and may-turn
πᾶν ἀπαίσιον κατὰ κεφαλῆς ὧν τὴν χώραν κείρομεν."
every ill-omen upon (the)-head of-whom the land we-ravage

The Romans storm the walls, but as the ladders go up, Amalric halts the attack, saying the city will surrender, and makes peace with the Saracens. The Roman sailors burn the engines and rush to the ships in disorder, and the fleet scatters in a winter storm; many ships are lost. Kontostephanos returns by way of Jerusalem and Ikonion.

Ταῦτ᾽ εἰπὼν αὐτός τε ὡπλίσατο, καὶ οἱ λοιποὶ
these(-things) having-said himself both armed(-himself) and the rest
διαλυθέντες τοῦ συλλόγου τὰς πανοπλίας ἐνεδύσαντο. ἐπεὶ
having-dispersed from-the assembly the panoplies put-on when
δὲ τό τε ἦμαρ ηὐξάνετο ὡς ἐς τρίτην ὥραν προβεβηκέναι
and the both day was-increasing so-that to (the)-third hour to-have-advanced
καὶ τὰ τάγματα ἐξῄεσαν, ἄρας ἐκεῖθεν προῄει
and the units went-out having-set-out thence he-went-forward
σὺν κόσμῳ, τοῦ παντὸς προαφεστὼς στρατεύματος. οἱ
with order of-the whole standing-before army the
δὲ Σαρακηνοὶ τὰς πύλας διαλαβόντες κλεισὶ καὶ ὀχεῦσι,
and Saracens the gates having-secured with-keys and bars
καί τινα προπετάσαντες μηχανήματα τούτων ἐρύματα,
and some having-spread-before engines of-these (as)-defenses
ἔμενον ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν, παντοίοις ὅπλοις τοὺς ἐπιόντας
remained on the walls with-all-kinds-of arms the(-ones) attacking
ἀποκρουόμενοι, καὶ τὸν βέλους ἐντὸς ἅπαντα χῶρον
beating-off and the missile within every place
τιθέντες ἀδιεξόδευτον οἷς τε ἀπεσφενδόνουν ἐκ τῶν
making impassable with-what both they-slung from the
ἐπάλξεων καὶ οἷς ἐκ τόξων ἠφίεσαν. ἀλλὰ καίπερ
battlements and with-what from bows let-fly but although
οὕτω τῶν ἔνδον ἀμυνομένων, αὐτός τε τὸν ἵππον
thus the(-men) inside defending himself both the horse

ἐπελάσας κατὰ τῆς πύλης Ἀνδρόνικος τὸ δόρυ ἴθυνε,
having-driven at the gate Andronikos the spear aimed
καὶ οἱ τοξόται καὶ ἅπας ἕτερος ἐνεργεῖς ἐδείκνυντο,
and the archers and every other effective were-shown
αἵ τε σάλπιγγες πυκνὰ ἐνεπνέοντο, τὸ παρακλητικὸν
the both trumpets often were-blown the exhortation
ἐς μάχην παρακελευόμεναι, καὶ ἐβαρυήχει τὰ κύμβαλα,
to battle urging and boomed the cymbals
ὡς τοὺς εἰς τὰ τείχη καὶ τὰς βάρεις ἐκπλαγῆναι
so-that the(-men) on the walls and the towers to-be-astounded-at
τὴν τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἀθρόαν ἐμβολὴν καὶ ἐπέλευσιν καὶ
the of-the Romans massed charge and onset and
τὰ ἐκ παντοίων ὀργάνων ἀφέματα. ἤδη δὲ τῶν
the from all-kinds-of engines discharges already and the
κλιμάκων προσαγομένων καὶ κατὰ πολλὰ μέρη τοῦ
ladders being-brought-up and in many parts of-the
τείχους ἐρειδομένων, ἡ τῶν γινομένων ἀγγελία παίει
wall being-planted the of-the(-things) happening message strikes
τὸν ῥῆγα διανταίαν πληγήν. ὁ δὲ ὡς αὐτός τι μέγα
the king (a)-direct blow he and as himself some great
κακὸν καὶ ἀπαράκλητον πεπονθώς, ἢ τὸ λογιζόμενον
evil and inconsolable having-suffered or the reasoning(-part)
πρηστῆρι παρακοπείς, ἐνεὸς ἦν ἐφ᾽ ἱκανόν. μόλις δ᾽
by-(a)-thunderbolt deranged speechless was for sufficient(-time) barely and
ἀνενεγκὼν τοῦ ἰλίγγου, αἰτήσας ἵππον καὶ ἀναπηδήσας
having-recovered from-the dizziness having-asked (a)-horse and having-leapt-up
ἐφίσταται τῷ Ῥωμαϊκῷ στρατεύματι μετὰ τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν
stands-by the Roman army with the under him
ἐπιλέκτων, καὶ τὰς ἁπάντων ἀνακόψας ὁρμὰς ὑποτίθησι
picked and the of-all having-checked rushes suggests
μὴ διαμάχεσθαι ἀνθρώποις πάλαι διαμεμηνυκόσιν αὐτῷ ὡς
not to-fight-it-out with-men long-ago having-signified to-him that

ἑαυτοὺς ἀναιμωτὶ καὶ τὴν πόλιν βασιλεῖ παραδώσουσι.
themselves bloodlessly and the city to-(the)-emperor they-will-hand-over
καὶ ὁ μὲν λόγος οὗτος οἷά τις νάρκη τὰς Ῥωμαίων
and the indeed word this like some numbness the of-(the)-Romans
χεῖρας ἐπέδησε καὶ ἐγγὺς ἤδη τοῦ πορθεῖν τὴν πόλιν
hands bound and near already to-the sacking the city
γεγενημένους ἔπαυσεν· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ ῥὴξ ἐς συμβάσεις
having-come stopped(-them) himself and the king to agreements
τραπόμενος ἀσπασίους μᾶλλον τοῖς ἐκ τῆς Ἄγαρ
having-turned welcome rather to-the(-ones) from — Hagar
ἢ Ῥωμαίους κυδαινούσας τὰς ξυνθήκας εἰργάσατο. οἱ δ'
than (the)-Romans glorifying the covenants made the and
οὖν στρατιῶται μηδ' ὅλως ὁποῖα τὰ τῆς εἰρήνης
then soldiers not-even at-all of-what-sort the(-terms) of-the peace
κατεξετάσαντες, ἀλλὰ καὶ πρὸς μόνην τὴν ταύτης ἀκοὴν
having-examined but even at only the its hearing
νόστου μνησάμενοι, τὴν ναυτικὴν ἀπαιδευσίαν πράγμασιν
of-return having-bethought the naval lack-of-discipline by-facts
αὐτοῖς καθυπέδειξαν δραστικωτέραν πυρός, καὶ ἀταξίας
themselves showed more-active than-fire and with-disorder
εὐθὺς ἐνέπλησαν τὰ στρατόπεδα. αἵ τε γὰρ ἑλεπόλεις ὑπ'
at-once filled the camps the both for city-takers by
αὐτῶν ἐπυρώθησαν γνώμης ἄτερ τοῦ στρατηγοῦντος,
them were-burned mind without of-the(-one) commanding
καὶ τὰς πλείστας ἀποφορτισάμενοι τῶν ὁπλίσεων πρὸς ταῖς
and the most having-unloaded of-the armaments at the
κώπαις ἐγένοντο καὶ ἐπὶ πόντον ἔβλεψαν τὸν ἀτρύγετον,
oars they-became and to (the)-sea looked the barren
μανικώτερον εἰς τὰς ναῦς ἐφορμῶντες, μηδὲ τὸ τοῦ καιροῦ
more-madly to the ships rushing not-even the of-the season
δυσχείμερον καὶ τὸ τοῦ πλοῦ ἔξωρον ἐννοοῦντες· τετάρτην
stormy and the of-the voyage unseasonable considering (the)-fourth

γὰρ ἦγεν ὁ Δεκέμβριος μήν. ἦν οὖν ἰδεῖν
for was-bringing the December month it-was(-possible) then to-see
τὸν πολύνεων ἐκεῖνον στόλον καὶ τὴν ἐπὶ λιμένων μίαν
the many-shipped that fleet and the into harbors one
καταγωγὴν καὶ τὴν ἐκ τούτων αὖθις ἀναγωγὴν εἰς μυρία
putting-in and the from these again putting-out into countless
σκεδασθεῖσαν τμήματα, ἄλλων ἀγαπησάντων ἕτερον πλοῦν
scattered sections others having-loved another voyage
καὶ πάντων πρὸς τὰς πατρίδας οἰακοστροφούντων τὰς
and all toward the fatherlands steering the
ναῦς, ὡς μόλις ἓξ ἔτι ναυλοχεῖσθαι τριήρεις, αἳ ἤμελλον
ships so-that barely six still to-be-anchored triremes which were-about
ἀνακομίσειν Ἀνδρόνικον. ὁ δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ Ἱεροσολύμων ἅμα
to-bring-back Andronikos he and the(-road) to Jerusalem with
τῷ ῥηγὶ τραπόμενος κἀκεῖθεν ἁρμοζόντως παραπεμφθείς,
the king having-turned and-from-there fittingly escorted
τὸ Ἰκόνιον παραλλάξας, ἐς Βυζάντιον παρεγένετο. τῶν
— *Ikonion having-passed to Byzantium arrived of-the*
δὲ πολλῶν ἐκείνων νηῶν αἱ μὲν ἀνέμων ἀντιπνοίαις
and many those ships some indeed of-winds by-contrary-blasts
περιπεσοῦσαι κατέδυσαν αὖτανδροι, αἱ δὲ κλύδωνι
having-fallen-in sank with-their-men others and by-surge
θαλαττίῳ διασπαρεῖσαι ὀψὲ καὶ ἔαρος ἐπιφαίνοντος τοῖς
of-the-sea scattered late also (the)-spring appearing to-the
νεωσοίκοις τῆς πόλεως ἀπεδόθησαν. οὐκ ὀλίγαι δὲ καὶ τῶν
dockyards of-the city were-returned not few and also of-the
ἐπιβατῶν κενωθεῖσαι καθάπαξ ἐπιλαβομένων τῆς γῆς ὡς
passengers emptied once-for-all having-taken-hold-of the land as
Χαρώνεια πορθμεῖα τοῖς τῶν κυμάτων διαύλοις ἀφείθησαν
Charonian ferries to-the of-the waves courses were-let
φέρεσθαι, ὡς βραχείας περιλειφθῆναι, βρασμὸν θαλάσσης
to-be-borne so-that few to-be-left (the)-tossing of-(the)-sea

καὶ ναυτῶν διαδράσας ἀμέλειαν. οἱ δὲ Σαρακηνοὶ τὴν ἐς
and of-sailors having-escaped neglect the and Saracens the toward
αὐτοὺς ὁδὸν τῶν Ῥωμαίων, ὡς ἔδειξαν, ἀποδειλιάσαντες
them road of-the Romans as they-showed having-turned-coward-at
καὶ τὸν ἐσέπειτα πλοῦν ἀποτρέποντες πρέσβεις ἐς βασιλέα
and the afterward voyage averting envoys to (the)-emperor
ἔστειλαν, καὶ δῶρα τὰ παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς τιμώμενα ἔπεμψαν,
sent and gifts the(-things) among them honored sent
καὶ τὴν εἰρήνην ἐκράτυναν.
and the peace strengthened

VIII · THE BIRTH OF ALEXIOS II

The empress Marie bears a son, Alexios, and the astrologers foretell his fortune. Manuel names him from the oracle AIMA, read as Alexios, John, Manuel, and Alexios. The oaths to Maria and Bela are transferred to the child; Bela is betrothed instead to the empress's sister and becomes king of Hungary. Maria, much courted, remains unmarried until thirty, and then marries a son of the marquis of Montferrat.

Ἤδη δὲ ὠδινούσης τῆς βασιλίδος καὶ τεκεῖν ἐγγιζούσης
already and being-in-labor the empress and to-bear drawing-near
σεσάρωτο μὲν τὸ οἴκημα καὶ διηυτρέπιστο ἀκριβῶς
had-been-swept indeed the chamber and had-been-made-ready exactly
τὰ πρὸς τὴν κύησιν τοῦ παιδὸς καὶ τὴν ὑποδοχὴν
the(-things) for the bearing of-the child and the reception
τῆς μητρός· ὡς δὲ κατήπειγον αἱ Εἰλείθυιαι, ὁ πορφύρεος
of-the mother as and pressed the Eileithyiai the purple
δόμος εἶχεν ἐντὸς τὴν ἐπίτοκον. ἠγωνία μὲν οὖν
house held inside the(-woman) in-labor was-in-agony indeed then
ἐπὶ τῇ γαμετῇ παρὼν βασιλεύς, καὶ τὰς ὀδύνας ἐκούφιζεν
over the wife present (the)-emperor and the pains lightened

ὀπτανόμενος, τὸ πλέον δὲ τοῦ βλέμματος ἐχαρίζετο
being-seen the more and of-the look he-gave
τῷ σκεπτομένῳ τοὺς ἀστέρας καὶ τοῖς κατ᾽
to-the(-one) observing the stars and the(-things) in
οὐρανὸν διαχαίνοντι. ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ τεχθὲν ἐξώλισθε
heaven gaping-at when and the(-thing) born slipped-out
τῆς νηδύος καὶ ἦν ἄρσεν καὶ ἡ τέχνη ἐδίδασκεν
from-the womb and was male and the art taught
ὄλβιον καὶ μοιρηγενὲς καὶ τῆς πατρῴας ἀρχῆς διάδοχον,
blessed and fate-born and of-the paternal rule (a)-successor
θεῷ τε φωναὶ ἀπεδίδοντο χαριστήριοι καὶ ἅπας ἦν
to-God both voices were-rendered of-thanks and everyone was
ἐν κρότοις καὶ χαρμοναῖς. ὑπεξαίρων δὲ τὴν γενέθλιον
in applause and joys exalting and the birth
καὶ ὀνομαστήριον τοῦ παιδὸς ἡμέραν, ὡς εἴθισται παρὰ
and naming of-the child day as is-customary among
τοῖς βασιλεῦσι Ῥωμαίων τοὺς ἐντιμοτέρους τῶν πολιτῶν
the emperors of-(the)-Romans the more-honorable of-the citizens
μετὰ κλάδων θαλιῶν εἰς τροφὴν ἐκάλει, καὶ Ἀλέξιον τὸν
with branches flowering for food he-called and Alexios the
παῖδα ὠνόμασεν, οὐχ ἁπλῶς τὴν κλῆσιν ἀπολεξάμενος,
child named not simply the name having-chosen
οὐδὲ τὸν παῖδα τιμῶν τῷ τοῦ τεκόντος τὸν
nor the child honoring with-the of-the(-one) having-begotten the(-one)
γεγεννηκότα ἐκεῖνον ὀνόματι, ἀλλὰ προσέχων τὸν νοῦν
having-begotten that(-man) name but applying the mind
προρρήματι πρὸς τὴν ὑποβληθεῖσαν ἐρώτησιν ἐξενεχθέντι,
to-(a)-prophecy for the put-forward question given-out
ἥτις ἦν ἐς ὅσον ἡ τοῦ βασιλέως Ἀλεξίου τοῦ Κομνηνοῦ
which was to how-far the of-the emperor Alexios the Komnenos
παραταθείη σειρά, τὸ δὲ προαγόρευμα αἷμα, ὃ τῆς
might-be-extended line the and prediction AIMA which by-the

συλλαβῆς διστάμενον καὶ κατὰ στοιχεῖον ἀναλεγόμενον
syllable being-separated and by letter being-read-off
διὰ μὲν τοῦ Α σαφῶς ὑπέγραφε τὸν Ἀλέξιον, διὰ δὲ
through indeed the A clearly sketched — Alexios through and
τοῦ Ι τὸν Ἰωάννην, διὰ δὲ τῶν ἐφεξῆς δύο γραμμάτων
the I — John through and the following two letters
τὸν Μανουὴλ καὶ τὸν ἐξ ἐκείνου πάλιν παραληψόμενον
— Manuel and the(-one) from him again going-to-take-over
τὴν ἀρχήν. ὡς οὖν ὁ παῖς τὴν ἡλικίαν προέκοπτε καὶ
the rule as then the child in-the stature advanced and
κατὰ εὐθαλὲς καὶ πῖον νεόφυτον εἰς αὔξην ἀνέτρεχεν,
like (a)-flourishing and rich new-plant into growth ran-up
ἕτερος σκοπὸς ἀνῆκε τὸν βασιλέα· καὶ δὴ μετατίθησι
another aim moved the emperor and indeed transfers
τοὺς ὅρκους πρὸς τὸν υἱόν, οὓς ἐπὶ τῇ θυγατρὶ Μαρίᾳ
the oaths to the son which on the daughter Maria
καὶ τῷ μνήστορι ταύτης Ἀλεξίῳ τῷ Παίονι πρώην εἶχε
and the betrothed her Alexios the Paeonian formerly he-had
τετελεκώς. ὅθεν αὐτόν τε τὸν βασιλέα, καὶ ἐφ' ὃν οἱ
having-performed whence himself both the emperor and on whom the
ὅρκοι, καὶ τοὺς ἀποδώσοντας τούτους τὸ ἐν Βλαχέρναις
oaths and the(-ones) going-to-render them the in Blachernai
εἰσεδέχετο τῆς θεομήτορος μέγα καὶ περίπυστον τέμενος.
received of-the Mother-of-God great and famous precinct
καὶ διὰ τῆς τελεσιουργίας τῶν ὅρκων εἰς τὸν ἐξ
and through the performance of-the oaths to the(-one) from
ὀσφύος αὐτοῦ τὴν σκηπτουχίαν, ὡς ᾤετο, μεταθέμενος,
(the)-loins his the scepter as he-thought having-transferred
μετὰ βραχὺ τοῦ μνήστορος Ἀλεξίου τὸ θυγάτριον
after (a)-little from-the betrothed Alexios the little-daughter
ἀποζεύγνυσι, καὶ αὐτῷ μὲν εἰς γυναῖκα ἐγγυᾶται τὴν τῆς
he-unyokes and to-him indeed as wife betroths the of-the

γυναικός οἱ ὁμόσπορον, ἄρτι σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ Βαλδουίνῳ
wife his sister just with the brother Baldwin
τῆς Ἀντιοχείας ἀπάρασαν. ὡς δὲ κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον
— from-Antioch having-set-out as and at the time that
ὁ τῆς Οὐγγρίας ἀπέθανε ῥήξ, εὐτύχημα τὸν τούτου
the — of-Hungary died king (a)-piece-of-luck the his
θάνατον ὁ Μανουὴλ ἡγησάμενος πέμπει τὸν Ἀλέξιον
death — Manuel having-considered sends — Alexios
εὐθὺς μετὰ λαμπρᾶς δορυφορίας καὶ βασιλείου πλείστης
at-once with brilliant bodyguard and imperial very-much
παρασκευῆς, τὴν Παιονικὴν παραληψόμενον δυναστείαν καὶ
preparation the Paeonian going-to-take-over lordship and
βασιλεύσοντα τῶν ὁμοεθνῶν. καὶ εἶχε τοῦτον ἀταλαιπώρως
going-to-reign-over the fellow-nationals and had him without-hardship
ἡ Παιονία ταινίᾳ ῥηγικῇ διαδούμενον καὶ τοῦ γένους
— Paeonia with-(a)-fillet royal crowned and of-the race
ὅλου ἀνενδοιάστως δεσπόζοντα. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὖθις
whole without-doubt being-lord the and emperor again
ἀνηρεύνα ἐπιμελῶς τὸν τῇ ἐκείνου θυγατρὶ συζευξόμενον.
searched-for carefully the(-one) to-the his daughter going-to-be-yoked
καὶ Ῥωμαίων ἀθερίζων ὅσοι πρὸς γένους ἐπίδοξοι,
and (the)-Romans slighting as-many-as by family (were)-notable
ἐφιλοκρίνει τοὺς δυνάστας ἐθνῶν, ὁπόσοι μὴ ζυγῖται, καὶ
he-chose-among the lords of-nations as-many-as not yoked and
τοὺς ὅσοι παίδων γονεῖς τὴν πατρῴαν διαδεξομένων
the(-ones) as-many-as of-children parents the paternal going-to-succeed-to
μετὰ πότμον τῶν γειναμένων τούτους ἀρχήν. καὶ
after fate of-the(-ones) having-begotten these rule and
ἐπειδήπερ ἔπιπτε τὸ πρωτεῖον πρὸς τὸν κρατοῦντα
since fell the first-place to the ruling
Σικελίας Γιλίελμον, ἄλλος ἐπ᾽ ἄλλῳ πρέσβυς εἰς ἐκεῖνον
Sicily William another on another envoy to him

ἐστέλλοντο, καὶ παρ᾽ ἐκείνου αὖθις τὸ κῆδος πρεσβεύοντος
were-sent and from him again the alliance proposing
ἐπάλληλα ἦν τὰ κηρύκεια, καὶ ἦν ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν τὰ
successive were the heralds and were for sufficient(-time) the
τῶν γάμων λογολεσχούμενα προεισόδια. ἀμφιτάλαντον
of-the marriage talked-over preliminaries wavering
δὲ τὴν ἐπὶ τούτοις καὶ τὰ πρῶτα ἔχων ὁ βασιλεὺς
and the on these(-things) also the first having the emperor
ῥοπὴν καὶ οἷον κυμαίνουσαν καὶ πολλὰς μεταβολὰς
inclination and as-it-were surging and many changes
λαμβάνουσαν καὶ τροπάς, ὀψέ ποτε μεθίσταται τοῦ
taking and turns late at-last he-moves-away from-the
σκοποῦ, Ῥωμαίοις κρίνας ἀσύμφορα τὰ μετὰ τοῦ ῥηγὸς
aim for-(the)-Romans judging unprofitable the with the king
Σικελίας μνηστεύματα. ἦν οὖν ἡ κόρη πολυμνήστη
of-Sicily betrothals was then the girl much-wooed
βασίλεια, καὶ κατὰ τὴν Ἀγαμεμνόνειον Ἠλέκτραν ἄλεκτρος
(a)-princess and like the Agamemnonian Electra unwedded
ἐπὶ πολὺ τοῖς ἀνακτόροις ἀλύουσα, καὶ κατ᾽ ἀχερωΐδα
for long in-the palace roaming and like (a)-white-poplar
ὑδρηλὴν ὑψηλὴ καὶ κοίτης ἀνδρώας ἱμείρουσα. συνέζευκτο
by-the-water lofty and for-(a)-bed of-(a)-husband longing had-been-yoked
δ᾽ οὖν ὅμως μετὰ πολλὴν τοῦ βασιλέως προμήθειαν
and then nevertheless after much of-the emperor forethought
ὕστερον ἑνὶ τῶν τοῦ μαρκεσίου Μόντης φεράντης υἱῶν,
later to-one of-the of-the marquis Monte Ferrat sons
χαρίεντι τὴν ὄψιν καὶ ἰδεῖν ἡδίστῳ καὶ τὴν κόμην ἡλιῶντι
graceful in-the face and to-see most-pleasant and in-the hair sun-bright
καὶ εὐπρεπεῖ καὶ μήπω φύοντι γένειον, αὐτὴ τὸ τριακοστὸν
and seemly and not-yet growing (a)-beard herself the thirtieth
ὑπεραναβᾶσα ἔτος καὶ ἀνδρικὴ τυγχάνουσα τὴν ἰσχύν.
having-passed year and manly being in-the strength

Niketas describes the Venetians, insolent through their wealth and privileges. Manuel has them all arrested on one day throughout the empire and their goods confiscated. Some escape in a great ship. Venice sends a fleet against Euboea and Chios, but Kontostephanos pursues it. Venice then allies with Sicily, and Manuel restores the Venetians' privileges and agrees to pay them fifteen centenaria of gold in compensation.

Ἀλλ' ἐνταῦθα τῆς ἱστορίας γενόμενος καὶ ταῦτα τοῖς
but here of-the history having-come also these(-things) to-the(-things)
εἰρημένοις προσεπαγάγω. ἔστι τις θαλάττιος κόλπος
said let-me-add is (a)-certain sea-like gulf
ἑσπέριος, Ἀδρίας λεγόμενος, ἀναχωρῶν μὲν τοῦ Σικελικοῦ
western Adriatic called withdrawing indeed from-the Sicilian
πελάγους καὶ οἷά τι ἐξέραμα τοῦ Ἰονίου ῥοῦ, καθ' ἑαυτὸν
sea and as some outpouring of-the Ionian stream by itself
ἰδιάζων καὶ πρὸς Βορρᾶν ἄνεμον ἐπὶ πολὺ συρόμενος.
being-apart and to (the)-North wind for long dragged
τούτου δὴ τὰ μυχαίτατα Ἐνετοὶ νέμονται, οὓς καὶ
of-this indeed the innermost(-parts) Enetoi inhabit whom also
Βενετίκους εἴποι τις ἂν κατὰ γλώττης ἰδιότητα, ἄνδρες
Venetians would-call anyone — by tongue's peculiarity men
θαλάττης τρόφιμοι, κατὰ Φοίνικας ἀγύρται, πανοῦργοι τὸ
of-(the)-sea nurslings like Phoenicians vagabonds villainous in-the
φρόνημα. ἀλλ' οὗτοι Ῥωμαίοις εἰσποιηθέντες κατὰ χρείαν
mind but these by-(the)-Romans adopted for need
ἦν ὅτε ναυμαχικήν, κατὰ σμήνη καὶ φατρίας τὴν
(there)-was when naval in swarms and clans the(-city)
Κωνσταντίνου τῆς οἰκείας ἠλλάξαντο, ὅθεν ἁπανταχοῦ
of-Constantine for-the own exchanged whence everywhere
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαίων ἐπικρατείας διασπαρέντες, καὶ μόνον
of-the of-the Romans dominion scattered and only

τὸ ἀπὸ γένους ὄνομα παραμεμενηκὸς αὐτοῖς ἔχοντες, τὰ
the from race name having-remained to-them having the
δ' ἄλλα σύμφυλοι ὄντες καὶ φίλοι πάνυ Ῥωμαίοις
and other(-respects) of-the-same-tribe being and friends very to-(the)-Romans
ηὐξάνοντό τε καὶ ἐχυδάϊζον. οὐκοῦν καὶ περιβαλλόμενοι
grew both and poured-forth therefore also gathering
πλοῦτον πολὺν αὐθάδειάν τε καὶ ἀναίδειαν μετεδίωκον,
wealth much self-will both and shamelessness pursued
ὡς μὴ μόνον ἀναρσίως ἔχειν Ῥωμαίοις ἀλλὰ καὶ
so-that not only hostilely to-be to-(the)-Romans but also
τῶν βασιλικῶν ἀνεπιστρόφως ἀπειλῶν τε καὶ ἐντολῶν.
of-the imperial unheedingly threats both and commands
μεταλλοιοῖ τοίνυν τὰς ἐπ' αὐτοῖς ῥοπὰς βασιλεύς, καὶ
he-changes therefore the toward them inclinations (the)-emperor and
νῦν μὲν τοῦ κατὰ Κέρκυραν μεμνημένος ἐμπαροινήματος,
now indeed the at Corcyra remembering drunken-insult
νῦν δ' ἄλλου πεῖραν λαμβάνων κακοῦ, αὖθις δ' ἑτέρου
now and of-another experience taking evil again and of-another
καὶ χείρονος πανουργεύματος τὴν ἐκείνου διαρριπίζοντος
and worse villainy the his fanning
ψυχήν, εἰς θυμὸν ἐρρόχθησεν ὥσπερ ὑπὸ Καικίου ἢ
soul into wrath he-roared as by Kaikias or
ἀπαρκτίου ἄλμη καταιγιδῶδες καὶ ἄγριον πνέοντος. καὶ
north-wind (the)-brine stormy and wild blowing and
ἐπειδὴ τὰ τούτων ἀτοπήματα ὑπέραντλά οἱ ἐδέδοκτο,
since the their outrages overflowing to-him had-seemed
γράμματα ἐφοίτων κατὰ πᾶσαν ἐπαρχίαν Ῥωμαϊκὴν τὴν
letters went through every province Roman the
τῶν Βενετίκων κατάσχεσιν ἐπιτείνοντα, καὶ τὴν ἡμέραν
of-the Venetians seizure enjoining and the day
διασημαίνοντα καθ' ἣν ἔδει τοῦτο γενέσθαι καὶ τὰ
indicating on which it-was-needful this to-happen and the

ἐκείνων ἐσεῖσθαι δημόσια χρήματα. ἐνστάσης οὖν τῆς
their to-be public money having-come then the
προθεσμίας ἅπας συνείληπτο, καὶ τῶν κτημάτων ἐκείνοις
appointed-day everyone had-been-seized and of-the possessions their
τὰ μὲν εἶχε τὸ βασιλικὸν θησαυροφυλάκιον ξυνενεχθέντα
the(-ones) indeed held the imperial treasury collected
ὁπόθεν, τὰ πλείω δὲ οἱ τοπαρχοῦντες ἐξιδιώσαντο. οἱ
whence the more and the toparchs appropriated the
δ' ἐν τῇ πόλει τὰς οἰκήσεις ἔχοντες Βενέτικοι, καὶ
and in the city the dwellings having Venetians and
τούτων μάλιστα οἱ μὴ γάμοις ὠμιληκότες, δρασμὸν
of-these especially the(-ones) not with-marriages having-consorted escape
βουλεύονται, καὶ ἐπειδὴ τοῖς νεωρίοις ἐνώρμει τῆς πόλεως
plan and since in-the dockyards lay-at-anchor of-the city
ναῦς τῶν τριαρμενίων, ἧς δὴ πολυχανδεστέραν
(a)-ship of-the three-masted than-which indeed more-capacious
ἢ μᾶλλον τὸ μέγεθος προφερεστέραν οὔ ποτε καιροῦ
or rather in-the size more-excellent not ever in-time
ναυλοχήσειν ἐλέγετο, ταύτης νυκτὸς ἐπιβάντες τάς τε
to-be-anchored was-said this by-night having-boarded the both
ἀγκύρας ἀνίμησαν καὶ τὰ λαίφη τοῖς ἀνέμοις διαπετάσαντες
anchors drew-up and the sails to-the winds having-spread
ἀπενόστησαν. κατεδίωξαν μὲν οὖν ὀπίσω τούτων νῆες
returned-home pursued indeed then behind them ships
πυρφόροι καὶ τριήρεις βασιλικαὶ πλήρεις ἀνδρῶν οἳ
fire-bearing and triremes imperial full of-men who
τοὺς ἑτεροστόμους πελέκεις ἐπὶ τῶν ὤμων ἀνέχουσι. καὶ
the single-edged axes on the shoulders hold-up and
προσήγγισαν μὲν τῷ πλοίῳ, οὐκ ἴσχυσαν δ' ὅ τι καὶ
they-drew-near indeed to-the boat not they-were-able and what — also
δράσαιεν, καὶ τοῦ πνεύματος μὲν τὴν νῆα ἐπείγοντος ὡς
they-might-do and the wind indeed the ship pressing so-that

ἵπτασθαι δοκεῖν, οὐ ναυτίλλεσθαι, ἀπειπόντες δὲ μάλιστα
to-fly to-seem not to-sail having-given-up and especially
πρὸς τὸ τῆς νηὸς ὕψος ἀτεχνῶς ἀναβαῖνον ἀέριον καὶ τὸ
at the of-the ship height simply rising aerial and the
ἀπονενοημένον τῶν ἐμπλεύντων. καὶ τότε μὲν ἡ πατρὶς
desperation of-the(-ones) sailing-in(-it) and then indeed the fatherland
Βενετία εἶχε τούτους εὐθυπλοήσαντας· κατὰ δὲ τὸν ἐπιόντα
Venice had them having-sailed-straight in and the coming
ἐνιαυτὸν στόλον κρατύναντες τὰς νήσους ἐπήρχοντο, ἐς δὲ
year (a)-fleet having-strengthened the islands attacked to and
τὴν Εὔβοιαν εἰσπλεύσαντες ἐπολιόρκουν τὸν Εὔριπον, καὶ
— Euboea having-sailed-in besieged the Euripos and
μέρος τι τούτου κατασχεῖν δεδυνημένοι πῦρ τοῖς οἰκοπέδοις
part some of-it to-hold having-been-able fire to-the house-sites
ὑφῆψαν. ἔαρος δ' ὑποφαίνοντος ἐκεῖθεν ἀνήχθησαν καὶ
set spring and appearing thence they-put-out and
πρὸς τὴν νῆσον τὴν Χίον κατῆραν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πύθοιτο
to the island — Chios put-in when and learned
ταῦτα ὁ βασιλεὺς Μανουήλ, στέλλει τὸν μέγαν δοῦκα
these(-things) the emperor Manuel sends the grand duke
τὸν Κοντοστέφανον Ἀνδρόνικον περί που τὰς ἑκατὸν καὶ
— Kontostephanos Andronikos about somewhere the hundred and
πεντήκοντα τριήρεις ἔχοντα, ὅτι μηδὲ τῶν Βενετίκων ὁ
fifty triremes having because not-even of-the Venetians the
στόλος ἦν ἐνδεέστερος ἢ ἄλλως τὸ κατεσπουδασμένον
fleet was more-deficient or otherwise the(-thing) hastily-done
ἔχων καὶ μὴ κατηκριβωμένον ἐν ἅπασι· πρὸς γὰρ ἀγῶνα
having and not exactly-wrought in all to for (a)-contest
μέγαν καὶ ἀνταγωνιστὰς Ῥωμαίους ἑτοιμασάμενοι εὖ
great and (as)-antagonists (the)-Romans having-prepared well
ἁπανταχόθεν ἡρμόσθησαν, καὶ συμμαχίδας οὐκ ὀλίγας
on-all-sides were-fitted and allied not few

νῆας ἐπήγοντο ἀπὸ τῆς τῶν Σθλαβίνων ἐκπορισθείσας
ships brought from the of-the Slavs furnished
χώρας ἐκείνοις. πρὸς δὲ τὴν πρώτην ἀποκναίσαντες ἀκοὴν
land to-them at and the first having-been-worn-out hearing
τῆς τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν νηῶν ἀποπλοίας παρὰ κώπην ἵζανον
of-the of-the Roman ships sailing-out at (the)-oar sat
πάντες καὶ κατεδάρθανον. τοίνυν λύσαντες ἐκ Χίου πρὸς
all and slept therefore having-loosed from Chios to
ἑτέρας νήσους μετέβαινον, κἀκείνων ἀπανιστάμενοι καὶ
other islands moved and-from-those leaving and
ἀεὶ φεύγοντες ἄλλαις προσέπλεον, ὡς πράγματα ἔχειν
always fleeing to-others sailed so-that trouble to-have
κἀκείνους τὰς νήσους ἀμείβοντας, καὶ Ῥωμαίους ἐν δεινῷ
also-they the islands changing and (the)-Romans in terrible
τίθεσθαι ὅτι μὴ εὐρόησέ σφισιν ὁ πλοῦς ἢ γοῦν
to-reckon(-it) because not flowed-well for-them the voyage or at-any-rate
ἀντίπρωροι τοῖς Βενετίκοις ἐγένοντο. ὡς δὲ μέχρι καὶ
head-on to-the Venetians became as and up-to also
αὐτοῦ Μαλέου πεφθακὼς Ἀνδρόνικος ἦν διώκων ἄντικρυς
itself Malea having-reached Andronikos was pursuing outright
τὰ ἀκίχητα ἢ τῆς Ἀργοῦς ὀπίσω ποντοπορεύων,
the unattainable(-things) or the Argo behind sailing-the-sea
πρύμναν κρουσάμενος τῷ λιμένι προσέσχε τῆς πόλεως. οἱ
(the)-stern having-backed at-the harbor put-in of-the city the
δὲ Βενέτικοι τὸ διὰ πολέμων ἑαυτοῖς ἐπαμύνειν οὔκουν
and Venetians the through wars themselves to-defend not
εἰς ἀγαθὸν προβαῖνον ὁρῶντες μετὰ τοῦ ῥηγὸς ἐσπείσαντο
to good advancing seeing with the king made-treaty
Σικελίας, ἵν' ἐντεῦθεν εὐθυωροῖτο τούτοις τὰ τῆς
of-Sicily so-that thence might-be-directed for-them the(-things) of-the
ἀμύνης καὶ ἔχοιεν τὸν ἐπικουρήσοντα, εἰ Ῥωμαῖοι
defense and they-might-have the(-one) going-to-help if (the)-Romans

κατ᾽ αὐτῶν ἐπίοιεν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἀφροντιστήσας
against them should-attack the and emperor not having-been-heedless
τούτων τῶν ἀκουσμάτων (ᾔδει γὰρ ὡς καὶ φαύλη αἰτία
of-these the hearings he-knew for that also (a)-paltry cause
πολλάκις παρεμπεσοῦσα πολλῶν πραγμάτων ὠδινήκει
often having-fallen-in of-many affairs had-travailed
μεταβολὰς καὶ συμφορὰς ἀπέτεκεν ὑπερόγκους) πρὸς τὰς
changes and disasters bore enormous to the
προτέρας μετὰ τῶν Βενετίκων ξυνθήκας ἀπέβλεψεν, ὡς
former with the Venetians covenants looked as
ἐνῆν μέν, ἠγωνισμένος ἀκυρῶσαι τὰς μετὰ τοῦ ῥηγὸς
was-possible indeed having-striven to-annul the with the king
Σικελίας τούτων σπονδάς, τούτων δὲ μὴ ἀθετουμένων καὶ
of-Sicily their treaties these and not being-set-aside and
οὕτως αὐτοὺς ἐπισπασάμενος, καὶ ἀνεξικακίαν αἰτουμένοις
thus them having-drawn and forbearance asking
καὶ φιλίαν προσεπινείμας. ὅσα τοίνυν ἔθιμα ἦν αὐτοῖς
and friendship having-further-assigned as-many-as therefore customary were for-them
ἰσοπολίταις οὖσι Ῥωμαίοις, ἀνανεωσάμενος, οὐδὲ τοῦ
fellow-citizens being to-(the)-Romans having-renewed not-even from-the
ἀποδοῦναι γοῦν ἀπέσχετο ἅπερ τῆς οὐσίας σφῶν ἡ
to-return at-any-rate refrained what-things of-the property their the
βασίλειος γάζα ἔστεγεν. οἱ δὲ τὴν κερδαλέαν ὡς ἔμποροι
imperial treasure held they and the gainful(-road) as merchants
μηδ᾽ αὐτοῖς καὶ βασιλεῖ ἀργαλέαν τραπόμενοι, τὸν
not-even to-themselves and to-(the)-emperor painful having-turned the
μὲν ἀναδασμὸν τῶν οἰκείων χρημάτων χαίρειν εἴασαν,
indeed redistribution of-the own money to-fare-well let
σοφιστικόν τι καὶ δραστήριον ἐννοήσαντες, ἐκ δὲ
sophistical something and effective having-thought-of from and
συμφώνου συνήλθοσαν δέκα πρὸς τοῖς πέντε χρυσίου
agreement they-came-together ten besides the five of-gold

λήψεσθαι κεντηνάρια ἀνθ' ὧν ἀπώλεσαν χρημάτων
to-receive centenaria instead-of which they-lost money
παντοδαπῶν. καὶ εἶχον ταῦτα οὐχ ἅμα, πολλάκις δὲ
of-all-kinds and had these not at-once often and
χορηγούμενα.
supplied

MANUEL I, BOOK SIX

I · DORYLAION AND MYRIOKEPHALON

Manuel rebuilds Dorylaion, carrying stones himself, despite the sultan's protests, and fortifies Soublaion. When war breaks out again he raises a great army and marches by way of Laodikeia and Chonai, Niketas' own city, past the springs of the Maeander, to Myriokephalon, while the Turks harass the column and foul the water.

Ἀλλ' οὕτω μὲν καὶ ταῦτα διήνυστο τῷ βασιλεῖ
but thus indeed also these(-things) had-been-accomplished by-the emperor
Μανουήλ· ὁ δὲ λόγος προβαινέτω τοῖς ἐφεξῆς, καὶ
Manuel the and narrative let-it-advance to-the(-things) following and
διδότω τῇ ἱστορίᾳ ὡς ἕκαστον ἔχει καὶ χρόνου καὶ
let-it-give to-the history as each holds both of-time and
πράγματος. ἐπεὶ γὰρ οὐκ ἦν ἡσυχίαν τὸν σουλτάνον
of-matter since for not was(-it-possible) quiet the sultan
ἀσπάσασθαι, ἅπαξ ἐπιτήδειον ἑαυτῷ πρὸς χρηματισμὸν καὶ
to-welcome once suitable for-himself for money-making and
τοῖς Τούρκοις δὲ ὅλως ἀνυσιμώτατον γνόντα τὸ ἀεὶ ἐπὶ
for-the Turks and wholly most-effective having-known the always on
τὰ Ῥωμαίων ὅρια ἐκκεχύσθαι, ἔξεισι καὶ πάλιν κατ' αὐτοῦ
the of-(the)-Romans borders to-have-poured-out goes-out also again against him
βασιλεύς. τὰ πλεῖστα μέντοι οὐδ' αὐτὸς εἴα τὸν Περσάρχην
(the)-emperor the most(-part) however not-even himself let the Persian-ruler

καθεύδειν, ἀλλ᾽ ὅσα καὶ θῆρα ὠμηστὴν ἐφυπνώττοντα
sleep but just-as also (a)-beast raw-eating dozing
ἐξηγρίαινεν ὑπονύσσων καὶ τοῦ κοίτου ἀνίστη καὶ
he-made-savage pricking and from-the bed raised and
πρὸς μάχην ἠρέθιζεν. ἀτὰρ οὐδ᾽ ἀνακωχαὶ πολέμων οὐδ᾽
to battle provoked but neither respites of-wars nor
ἐκεχειρίαι τῶν ἀντιτάξεων σπονδαί τε καὶ ξυνθῆκαι καὶ
armistices of-the battle-arrays treaties both and covenants and
διακηρυκεύματα πρέσβεων ἀπεῖργον τὰς κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων
proclamations of-envoys kept-off the against one-another
ἐπελεύσεις καὶ ἀπετείχιζον· ἀλλ᾽ ἄμφω πρὸς θερμουργίαν
attacks and walled-off but both toward hotheadedness
ὄντες ἐπιρρεπεῖς καὶ πρὸς πόλεμον εὐπετεῖς καὶ μικρᾶς
being inclined and to war easy and small
ἐνίοτε παρεισφρησάσης αἰτίας ἀλλήλοις ἀντεπεξῄεσαν,
sometimes having-slipped-in cause against-one-another went-out
καὶ ἦν ἔργον αὐτοῖς τὰ μάλιστα περισπούδαστον
and was (a)-work for-them the(-things) most much-sought
ἡ πανοπλίας περίδυσις καὶ ἡ τῶν ταγμάτων συναγωγὴ
the of-panoply putting-on and the of-the units gathering
καὶ τὸ ταῦτα συμπεσόντα διαπληκτίζεσθαι. κατὰ τοῦτο
and the these having-clashed to-skirmish in this
δὲ ἀλλήλων διήλλαττον, ὅτι ὁ μὲν σουλτάνος ἀεὶ
and from-one-another they-differed that the indeed sultan always
προμηθευτικὸς καὶ βουλευτικὸς ἐδόκει τις εἶναι καὶ τὰ ἔργα
provident and deliberative seemed some to-be and the deeds
ποιῶν μετὰ σκέμματος, καὶ ἐτολύπευε τὰς μάχας διὰ
doing with consideration and wound-up the battles through
τῶν ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν στρατηγῶν πεφυλαγμένως (οὐ γάρ πού
the under him generals cautiously not for anywhere
τις αὐτὸν ἐθεάσατο ἐπὶ μετώπου ἱστάμενον φάλαγγος
anyone him saw on (the)-front standing of-(a)-phalanx

ἢ τὸν κάματον τοῖς στρατιώταις συνδιαφέροντα), ὁ
or the toil with-the soldiers bearing-with the
δὲ βασιλεὺς γενναίαν ἔχων τὴν φύσιν ὀξύρροπος ἐν
and emperor noble having the nature quick-inclining in
τοῖς πολέμοις ἐδείκνυτο, καὶ τὰς διὰ χειρὸς πράξεις
the wars was-shown and in-the through hand deeds
δραστήριος ἦν, καὶ φήμης διαδοθείσης πολλάκις ἐσβαλεῖν
energetic was and (a)-report having-spread often to-have-invaded
που τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ κακῶς τιθέναι τὴν ὑπ' ἐκείνῳ
somewhere the enemies and badly to-treat the under him
ἀρχὴν πρῶτος τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαινε καὶ ἀπεθάρρει τὴν
dominion first the horse mounted and dared the
ἔξοδον. θελήσας οὖν τὸ Δορύλαιον ἀνακτίσαι, προσεξῆψέ
expedition having-wished then — Dorylaion to-rebuild kindled-further
τε καὶ παρέθηξε τὸ βάρβαρον εἰς πόλεμον ἐντεῦθεν, ὅτε
both and whetted the barbarian(-host) to war thence when
καὶ τὴν βασιλέως ἐς τὸ Δορύλαιον ἄφιξιν ἀγνοεῖν
also the of-(the)-emperor to — Dorylaion arrival to-be-ignorant-of
πλαττόμενος, διαπρεσβευσάμενος τὴν αἰτίαν ἐπυνθάνετο
feigning having-sent-envoys the cause he-asked
καὶ παρητεῖτο αὐτὸν ἐκεῖθεν ἀπαναστεῦσαι. ὁ δὲ κέρτομόν
and begged him thence to-depart he and mocking
τι καὶ σεσηρὸς ἐνορῶν οἷς τὰ τοῦ σουλτάνου
something and grinning seeing-in what the of-the sultan
γράμματα διεξῄει, ἐν μέρει δὴ οὐ τοῦ τυχόντος ἐτίθετο
letters went-through in turn indeed not of-the ordinary set
θαύματος ὅπως τὸν μέχρι καὶ Δορυλαίου δρόμον ἐκείνου
wonder how the up-to even Dorylaion course his
ἠγνόησε καὶ τὴν αἰτίαν πλάττεται μὴ εἰδέναι. ἐπεὶ δὲ
he-was-ignorant-of and the cause feigns not to-know since and
καὶ τὴν πόλιν ἀνοικοδομεῖν ἐπεβάλετο, νωτοφορεῖν τοὺς
also the city to-rebuild he-undertook to-carry-on-(his)-back the

λίθους ἀρξάμενος οὕτω καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους ἠρρένωσεν ὡς
stones having-begun thus also the others made-manly so-that
ἀπτέρῳ τάχει τὸ τεῖχος ἀνεγερθῆναι καὶ προσεπιβληθῆναί
with-wingless speed the wall to-be-raised and to-be-added
οἱ χαράκωμα ἔξωθεν καὶ ἀνορυχθῆναι φρεάτια ἔσωθεν
to-it (a)-palisade outside and to-be-dug wells inside
εἰς πλείονας ὑδάτων ἀντλήσεις. ἐν δεινῷ δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι
for more of-waters drawings in terrible and the Persians
τιθέμενοι εἴπερ τῶν Δορυλαίου πεδίων ἀπανασταῖεν,
placing(-it) if from-the of-Dorylaion plains they-should-depart
ἐν οἷς ἐθέριζε τὰ τούτων αἰπόλια καὶ βουκόλια πόαις
in which summered the their goat-flocks and herds in-grasses
ἐνσκιρτῶντα ταῖς λειμωνίτισι, καὶ δομηθήσεται πόλις καὶ
leaping the meadow and will-be-built (a)-city and
φρουρὸς ἐγκαθεσθείη φάλαγξ Ῥωμαϊκή, ὅλαις ἡνίαις
(as)-guard should-be-settled (a)-phalanx Roman with-whole reins
κατὰ Ῥωμαίων ἐφέροντο, καὶ τὰς ἐπὶ σιτισμὸν ἐξόδους
against (the)-Romans rushed and the for foraging expeditions
ἐκείνων τηροῦντες τὴν ξύλευσιν ἀνεῖργον καὶ ἀνῄρουν
their watching the wood-gathering hindered and killed
τοὺς ἐν χερσίν. ὁ βασιλεὺς δὲ τὸ δεινὸν τοῦτο
the(-ones) at hand the emperor and the terrible(-thing) this
ῥᾳόνως ἰάσατο· τακτὸν γὰρ ὁρίσας καιρὸν τοῖς
more-easily healed (an)-appointed for having-fixed time for-the(-ones)
ἐπὶ συλλογὴν ἐξιοῦσι τῶν ἀναγκαίων, αὐτὸς προσημαίνων
for collection going-out of-the necessaries himself signaling
τῇ σάλπιγγι πρῶτος τοῦ χάρακος ἀπανίστατο καὶ
with-the trumpet first from-the palisade departed and
ἡγεῖτο τῆς ἐξόδου. οὐκοῦν οὐδὲ πρὸς βραχὺ τῶν τὰ
led the expedition therefore not-even for (a)-little from-the(-ones) the
ἐπιτήδεια διφώντων μεθιστάμενος ἐνίοτε περὶ βουλυτὸν
necessaries searching moving sometimes about ox-loosing-time

ἢ καὶ βαθεῖαν ἑσπέραν ἐπανέλυεν εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον.
or also deep evening he-returned to the camp
Πέρσαις δ' ἔμελε μὲν καὶ πολέμων πρὸς ταῦτα,
to-Persians and it-was-a-care indeed also of-wars toward these(-things)
καὶ συνεχῶς ἐκονίζοντο· παρεδίδοσαν δὲ καὶ πυρὶ τοὺς
and continually they-were-in-the-dust handed-over and also to-fire the
καρποὺς καὶ τὰς σκηνὰς ἐνεπίμπρων, ὅπως μὴ εὐποροῖεν
crops and the tents burned so-that not might-have-plenty
Ῥωμαῖοι δι' ὧν τραφήσονται. ὁτὲ δὲ πρὸς ἑστίασιν
(the)-Romans through what they-will-be-fed once and to feasting
τραπομένου τοῦ βασιλέως μῆλόν τε Περσικὸν μαχαιρίῳ
having-turned the emperor (an)-apple both Persian with-(a)-knife
ἀπολεπίζοντος ἐπιδρομή τις ἀπήγγελτο Περσικὴ κατὰ
peeling raid some had-been-announced Persian against
τῶν τὰ βιώσιμα συλλεγόντων, καὶ ῥίψας τὴν ὀπώραν
the(-ones) the livelihood collecting and having-thrown the fruit
αὐτίκα καὶ τὸν ἀκινάκην περιζωσάμενος καὶ περιδὺς
at-once and the dagger having-girded and having-put-on
τὸν θώρακα καὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀναβὰς ἐξώρμησε. καὶ
the breastplate and the horse having-mounted rushed-out and
οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ φάλαγγας ἵστασθαι σχηματιζόμενοι
the barbarians in phalanxes to-stand pretending
μετ' οὐ πολὺ τούτου ἐποφθέντος τὴν τάξιν ἔλυον, εἶτ'
after not much he having-been-seen the order loosed then
ἀποδιδράσκειν πλαττόμενοι τοὺς ἐπιόντας ἔπληττον
to-run-away feigning the(-ones) attacking struck
πάλιν ὑποστρεφόμενοι καὶ τὸν τῆς τροπῆς καιρὸν εἰς τὸ
again turning-back and the of-the turning time for the
βάλλειν τὸ ἐπικείμενον καὶ καταβάλλειν διατιθέμενοι.
shooting the(-one) pressing and striking-down arranging
ἵππος γὰρ συχνὰ κεντρίζεται παρὰ Πέρσαις· ὁ δὲ κόπτων
(a)-horse for often is-spurred among Persians it and striking

θαμὰ τὸ δάπεδον ῥαγδαίως φέρεται, καὶ ὁ Πέρσης τὸ
frequently the ground violently is-borne and the Persian the
βέλος ἔχων ἐν ταῖν χεροῖν ὀπίσω τοῦτο ἀφίησι, καὶ τὸν
missile having in the two-hands behind it lets-fly and the
ὁρμῶντα φθάνειν φθάσας αὐτὸς ἀνῄρηκε, καὶ τὸν
rushing to-anticipate having-anticipated himself has-killed and the(-one)
ἤδη καταληψόμενον κατέλαβεν, αἴφνης μεταμειφθεὶς ὁ
already going-to-overtake overtook suddenly changed the
διωκόμενος εἰς διώκοντα. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀνεπόλισε τὸ Δορύλαιον
pursued into pursuer when and he-had-re-founded — Dorylaion
καὶ τὰ εἰς φυλακὴν τούτου τελείως ἀπηκριβώσατο,
and the(-things) for guard its perfectly had-made-exact
ἐκ τῶν ἐκεῖσε μερῶν ἀπανίσταται, εἰς δὲ τὸ Σούβλεον
from the there parts he-departs to and — Soublaion
ὡς εἶχε παραγενόμενος ἀνήγειρέ τε κἀκεῖνο καὶ φρουρᾶς
as he-was arriving raised both that-too and of-garrison
μετέδωκε. καὶ τὰ λοιπά, ὡς ᾤετο, ἀρίστως διαπραξάμενος
gave-a-share and the rest as he-thought excellently having-done
εἰς τὴν βασιλίδα πόλιν ὑπέστρεψεν.
to the imperial city returned
Ἀλλ᾽ οὔπω χρόνος συχνός, καὶ αὖθις κατ᾽ ἀλλήλων τὰς
but not-yet time long and again against one-another the
γνώμας ἐφλέγμαινον. τῷ τοι καὶ ἀλλήλοις ἀντενεκάλουν
minds were-inflamed for surely also one-another accused-in-turn
τε καὶ προσῆπτον, βασιλεὺς μὲν τὸ πρὸς τὸν εὐεργέτην
both and charged (the)-emperor indeed the toward the benefactor
ἀχάριστον καὶ τὸ ἀμνῆμον τῶν προηγησαμένων εὐποιιῶν
ungratefulness and the unmindfulness of-the preceding benefits
καὶ τῆς εἰς τὸ ἄρχειν τῶν ὁμοφύλων ἐκείνῳ παντοίας
and of-the for the ruling of-the kinsmen to-him all-kinds-of
συνάρσεως, ὁ δὲ σουλτὰν τὸ πρόχειρον εἰς παρασπόνδησιν,
help the and sultan the readiness for treaty-breaking

καὶ τὸ φιλίας εὐκόλως ἀποπηδᾶν καὶ συγχέειν ἐκ τοῦ
and the from-friendship easily to-leap-away and to-confound from the
παραυτίκα τοὺς ὑπὲρ εἰρήνης τεθέντας θεσμούς, καὶ τὸ
instant the for peace established ordinances and the
πλείσταις μὲν ἐκεῖνον ἐπαίρειν φιλοδωριῶν ὑποσχέσεσι
with-very-many indeed him to-raise generosities with-promises
καὶ βασιλικαῖς ὑποσημαίνειν ταύτας γραφαῖς καὶ βαφαῖς,
and with-imperial to-signify these writings and dyes
ὀλίγα δὲ χορηγεῖν. διὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν τάς τε οὔσας
little and to-supply because-of these(-things) therefore the both existing
συνεκρότει δυνάμεις ὁ βασιλεύς, καὶ νεωστὶ ἐπὶ
assembled forces the emperor and newly in-addition-to
ταύταις ἄλλας συνέταττεν· ἐστρατολόγει δὲ καὶ ξενικὸν
these others ranged levied and also foreign(-troops)
οὐκ ὀλίγον, καὶ τοῦτο ἐκ τοῦ γένους μάλιστα τῶν Λατίνων
not few and this from the race especially of-the Latins
καὶ ἀπ᾽ αὐτῶν δὴ τῶν παριστρίων Σκυθῶν. καὶ δὴ ἐς
and from themselves indeed the by-the-Ister Scythians and indeed to
μυριάδας τὸ οἰκεῖον ἀριθμήσας στράτευμα ὡς ἀφανίσων
ten-thousands the own having-counted army as going-to-destroy
ἐπῄει τὸ Περσικὸν καὶ αὐτοῖς ἀναρπάσων τείχεσι τὸ
came-on the Persian(-host) and with-the-very going-to-snatch walls —
Ἰκόνιον, καὶ τὸν σουλτάνον ληψόμενος ὑποχείριον, καὶ
Ikonion and the sultan going-to-take under-hand and
κατὰ τοῦ τραχήλου τοῦτον πατήσων ἐν τῷ ὑποθεῖναι
on the neck him going-to-tread in the to-put(-him)-under
δίκην θρανίδος ταῖς βάσεσιν ἑαυτοῦ. ἀμέλει τοι τὰ
like (a)-footstool to-the feet his-own indeed surely the(-things)
πρὸς τὴν ἔξοδον ἑτοιμασάμενος εἴσεισι τὸν μέγαν νεὼν
for the expedition having-prepared he-enters the great temple
ὃς ἀπὸ τῆς θείας καὶ ἀρρήτου σοφίας ὠνόμασται, καὶ
which from the divine and ineffable wisdom has-been-named and

τὸ θεῖον ἐπικαλεῖται συνέριθον, καὶ τὴν νίκην αἰτεῖται μὲν
the divine invokes (as)-helper and the victory asks indeed
ἐκεῖθεν, οὐ δέχεται δέ, ὡς τὸ τοῦ πολέμου πέρας ὑπέφηνε,
thence not receives but as the of-the war end showed
μετατεθεῖσαν πρὸς τὸ ἀντίπαλον ἀνεφίκτοις ἡμῖν θεϊκοῖς
having-been-transferred to the opposing(-side) by-unattainable to-us divine
κρίμασιν. ἀπάρας οὖν τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων,
judgments having-set-out then from-the imperial of-the cities
Φρυγίαν τε καὶ Λαοδίκειαν διελθὼν ἀφικνεῖται ἐς
Phrygia both and Laodikeia having-gone-through arrives at
Χώνας, πόλιν εὐδαίμονα καὶ μεγάλην, πάλαι τὰς Κολασσάς,
Chonai (a)-city prosperous and great of-old — Colossae
τὴν ἐμοῦ τοῦ συγγραφέως πατρίδα. καὶ τὸν ἀρχαγγελικὸν
the of-me the writer homeland and the archangelic
ναὸν εἰσιών, μεγέθει μέγιστον καὶ κάλλει κάλλιστον ὄντα
church entering in-size greatest and in-beauty most-beautiful being
καὶ θαυμασίας χειρὸς ἅπαντα ἔργον, ἐκεῖθεν ἐξελάσας
and of-wonderful hand all (a)-work thence having-ridden-out
εἰς Λάμπιν ἵκετο καὶ πόλιν Κελαινάς, ἔνθα τοῦ Μαιάνδρου
to Lampis came and (the)-city Kelainai where of-the Maeander
εἰσὶν αἱ ἐκδόσεις καὶ ὁ Μαρσύας ῥεῖ ποταμὸς ἐμβάλλων εἰς
are the outflows and the Marsyas flows river emptying into
Μαίανδρον, καὶ ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἐκδεῖραι Μαρσύαν ἐκεῖ που
(the)-Maeander and — Apollo to-flay Marsyas there somewhere
λέγεται καθάπερ μύωπι οἰστρηθέντα βιαίῳ καὶ περὶ τῆς
is-said as-if by-(a)-gadfly stung violent and about the
ἀοιδῆς ἐρίζειν ἀρξάμενον πρὸς Ἀπόλλωνα. κἀκεῖθεν εἰς τὸ
singing to-contend having-begun with Apollo and-from-there to —
Χῶμα ἐλθὼν τῷ Μυριοκεφάλῳ ἐφίσταται. φρούριον δὲ
Choma having-come — at-Myriokephalon stands (a)-fort and
τοῦτο παλαιὸν καὶ ἀοίκητον, προκληθέν, οἶμαι, ὃ ἐγένετο,
this old and uninhabited called-in-advance I-think what it-became

ἢ γεγονὸς ὃ προεκλήθη· περὶ γὰρ αὐτὸ πολλάκις
or having-become what it-was-called-before about for it often
μυρίαις κεφαλαῖς Ῥωμαίων ἐβλήθη θάνατος, ὡς λέξων
to-countless heads of-(the)-Romans was-cast death as going-to-say
ἔρχομαι. ἀεὶ δὲ σὺν κόσμῳ καὶ τάξει τοὺς σταθμοὺς ὁ
I-come always and with order and arrangement the camps the
βασιλεὺς ἐτίθετο, βάλλων χάρακας καὶ τὰς ἀπάρσεις σὺν
emperor set pitching palisades and the departures with
λόγῳ ποιούμενος καὶ μεθόδοις στρατηγικαῖς χρώμενος, εἰ
reason making and methods of-generalship using even-if
καὶ τὴν πορείαν εἶχε σχολαίαν διὰ τὰ τὰς μηχανὰς
also the march he-had slow because-of the the engines
ἀνέχοντα ὑποζύγια καὶ τοὺς ἐπὶ τούτοις τεταγμένους,
carrying beasts-of-burden and the(-men) over these appointed
πολλοὺς ὄντας καὶ ἀπομάχους πάντας. ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ
many being and unwarlike all but also the
Πέρσαι παραφαινόμενοι δι' ἀκροβολισμῶν ἐπέκειντο, καὶ
Persians appearing through skirmishes pressed and
προϊππεύοντες τὴν πόαν ἔκειρον τὴν ἐνόδιον, ὡς μὴ
riding-ahead the grass cut the(-grass) by-the-road so-that not
εἶεν τοῖς Ῥωμαίων ἵπποις χιλοί, καὶ τὰ ὕδατα ἠχρείουν,
might-be for-the of-(the)-Romans horses fodders and the waters spoiled
ὡς μὴ καθαροῦ σπῷεν Ῥωμαῖοι ὕδατος. αὐτοὶ μέντοι
so-that not of-clean might-drink (the)-Romans water themselves however
Ῥωμαῖοι κοιλιακῷ συνισχόμενοι νοσήματι κακῶς ἔπασχον,
(the)-Romans by-(a)-bowel held disease badly suffered
καὶ ἦν νοσηλεία αὕτη ἐπιβοσκομένη μάλα τὸ στράτευμα.
and was sickness this feeding-on greatly the army

The sultan sues for peace, but Manuel, persuaded by young kinsmen against the advice of the veterans, refuses. He leads the army into the pass of Tzybritze without clearing the heights; the vanguard passes, but the Turks come down on the ranks behind it. Baldwin, the empress's brother, is killed, the wagons block the road, and Andronikos Vatatzes' head is shown to the army on a spear.

ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις ἐμέλησε μὲν τῷ σουλτάνῳ καὶ τοῦ
at and these(-things) it-was-a-care indeed to-the sultan also of-the
πολέμου, καὶ ξυμμαχικὸν συνεπορίσατο ἱκανὸν ἀπό τε τῆς
war and (an)-allied(-force) he-procured sufficient from both the
μέσης τῶν ποταμῶν καὶ τῶν ἄνω συμφύλων βαρβάρων·
middle of-the rivers and of-the upper kindred barbarians
διαπρεσβευσάμενος δὲ καὶ εἰς βασιλέα τὰς πρὸς εἰρήνην
having-sent-envoys and also to (the)-emperor the for peace
συνθήκας ᾐτεῖτο, καὶ τῶν ἐκείνῳ βουλητέων, ὁποῖα
covenants he-asked and of-the(-things) to-him to-be-wished whatever
ἂν καὶ ὦσιν, ἐπένευε τὴν περάτωσιν. ἅπαντες τοίνυν
— also might-be he-agreed the fulfillment all therefore
ὅσοι πολέμων οὐκ ἀμελέτητοι, καὶ μάλιστα δὴ
as-many-as of-wars (were)-not unpracticed and especially indeed
τῶν Περσικῶν, καὶ χρόνῳ προήκοντες, ἐξελιπάρουν τὸν
of-the Persian(-wars) and in-time advanced besought —
Μανουὴλ ἁρπάσαι τὴν τοῦ Πέρσου πρεσβείαν καὶ μὴ
Manuel to-snatch the of-the Persian embassy and not
τῷ κύβῳ τοῦ πολέμου τὰς ἐλπίδας ὅλας ἀποχαρίζεσθαι,
to-the die of-the war the hopes whole to-give-away
ἀφορῶντα μὲν καὶ πρὸς τὸ τοῦ ἀγῶνος μέγιστον καὶ
looking indeed also to the of-the contest greatest(-hazard) and
τὰ μὴ βάσιμα ῥᾳδίως τῶν τόπων, ἃ οἱ ἀντίπαλοι
the not passable easily of-the places which the opponents

προλοχίσουσιν, ὑποβλεπόμενον δὲ οὐχ ἧττον καὶ τὴν
will-occupy-with-ambushes suspecting and no less also the
τῶν Τούρκων ἀκμαιοτάτην πᾶσαν καὶ εὔιππον δύναμιν, μὴ
of-the Turks most-vigorous all and well-horsed force not
παρατρέχοντα δὲ καὶ τὴν νόσον ἣ πιέζει τὸ στράτευμα.
passing-over and also the disease which presses the army
ὁ δὲ τοῖς παρὰ τῶν πρεσβυτέρων λεγομένοις μηδ' ὅλως προσσχών, τὴν δ' ἀκοὴν ὅλην ἀναπετάσας τοῖς
he and to-the(-things) by the elders said not-even at-all having-attended the and hearing whole having-spread to-the(-ones)
ἐξ αἵματος αὐτῷ προσήκουσι, καὶ τούτων μάλιστα ὁπόσοι
by blood to-him related and of-these especially as-many-as
σάλπιγγος ἐνυαλίου ἦσαν ἀπεριήχητοι καὶ τὴν κόμην
of-(the)-trumpet warlike were unechoed and in-the hair
ἀγλαοὶ καὶ φαιδροὶ τὰ πρόσωπα καὶ κλοιοῖς χρυσέοις
splendid and bright in-the faces and with-collars golden
καὶ περιδερραίοις διαφανέσιν ἐκ λίθων τηλαυγῶν καὶ
and necklaces translucent of stones far-shining and
μαργαρίδων τιμαλφῶν τοὺς τραχήλους περιδεόμενοι, τοὺς
of-pearls precious the necks binding-round the
πρέσβεις ἀπράκτους ἀπέπεμψεν. ὁ δὲ σουλτάνος οὐκ
envoys unsuccessful sent-away the and sultan not
ἀνῆκεν αὖθις τὰ πρὸς εἰρήνην διαλεγόμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ
ceased again the(-things) for peace discussing when and
ἑώρα μὴ προχωρούσας τὰς συμβάσεις ἀλλὰ καὶ βασιλέα
he-saw not advancing the agreements but also (the)-emperor
αὐτὸν κατὰ τὸ Ἰκόνιον ἀποκρινεῖσθαί οἱ μεγαλαυχοῦντα,
himself at — Ikonion going-to-answer him boasting
προκαταλαμβάνει τὰς δυσχωρίας αἳ κλεισοῦραι τοῦ
he-seizes-first the rough-places which (the)-defiles —
Τζυβρίτζη κατονομάζονται, ἃς καὶ ἤμελλον Ῥωμαῖοι
of-Tzybritze are-named which also were-about (the)-Romans

μετὰ τὴν ἀπὸ Μυριοκεφάλου παριέναι ἄπαρσιν, κἀκεῖσε
after the from Myriokephalon to-pass departure and-there
τὰς οἰκείας παραβύει φάλαγγας, ὡς ἀντιτάξαιντο
the own crams phalanxes so-that they-might-array-against
Ῥωμαίοις αὐτίκα δὴ παριοῦσιν. ἔστι δὲ ὁ τόπος οὗτος
(the)-Romans at-once indeed passing is and the place this
ἐπιμήκης αὐλών, ἔχων ὀρῶν ὑπερβολάς, κατὰ μὲν
(a)-long valley having of-mountains heights on indeed
τὸ βόρειον κλίμα ὑποκαταβαίνων τοῦ ἀνάντους ἠρέμα
the northern side coming-down from-the steep gently
εἰς γήλοφα καὶ πρὸς εὐρείας κοιλαινόμενος φάραγγας,
into hillocks and to broad being-hollowed ravines
κατὰ δὲ θάτερον μέρος εἰς προτομὰς προνεύων πετρῶν
on and the-other side to projections leaning of-rocks
καὶ εἰς κρημνώδεις σύμπας ἀναστάσεις περιερρωγώς. ἐπὶ
and into precipitous altogether risings broken-round on
τοιαύτης οὖν μέλλων ἐλαύνειν ὁδοῦ οὐδέν τι τῷ στρατῷ
such then being-about to-drive road nothing at-all for-the army
συνοῖσον προμηθευσάμενος φαίνεται· οὔτε γὰρ τὸ πολὺ
going-to-profit having-provided appears neither for the greater-part
τῶν σκευοφόρων ἀπεσκευάσατο, ἢ γοῦν τὰς ἁμάξας
of-the baggage he-unloaded or at-any-rate the wagons
ἐκποδὼν ἔθετο αἳ τὰς τειχομάχους ἔφερον μηχανάς, οὔτε
out-of-the-way put which the wall-fighting carried engines nor
μὴν ἀπεπειράσατο σὺν εὐζώνῳ τάγματι ἀπώσασθαι τοὺς
indeed tried with light-armed (a)-unit to-push-away the
Πέρσας πρότερον ἐκ τῶν ἀμφιλαφῶν ἐκείνων καὶ ὀρείων
Persians first from the thick those and mountain
παρόδων καὶ λειᾶναι οὕτω τῷ στρατῷ τὴν δίοδον.
passes and to-smooth thus for-the army the passage
ἀλλ᾽ ὡς εἶχεν ἐπὶ πεδινῶν ποιούμενος τὴν πορείαν, οὕτω
but as he-was on plains making the march thus

κἀπὶ τῆς τρυμαλιᾶς ἐκείνης συνθλίβεσθαι εἵλετο, καίπερ
also-in the hole that to-be-squeezed he-chose although
ἀκοῇ προειληφώς, μετὰ βραχὺ δὲ ἔχων καὶ τοὺς
by-hearing having-learned-beforehand after (a)-little and having also the
ὀφθαλμοὺς αὐτοπείρως πιστουμένους τὰ ἀκουόμενα, ὡς
eyes by-own-experience confirming the(-things) heard that
οἱ βάρβαροι προκατειληφότες τὰς ἀκρωρείας ἐπίθωνται,
the barbarians having-seized-first the heights will-attack
καὶ ὡς πᾶσαν μὲν φαρέτραν ἐκπωματίσουσι πᾶν δὲ
and that every indeed quiver they-will-empty every and
βέλος ἀφήσουσιν, ὅπως Ῥωμαίους τροπωσάμενοι τοῦ
missile they-will-let-fly so-that (the)-Romans having-routed from-the
πρόσω προβαίνειν ἐπίσχωσιν. ἐπῆγεν οὖν οὕτω τὰς
forward to-advance they-may-check led then thus the
φάλαγγας βασιλεύς, ἦν δὲ τότε μὴν ὁ Σεπτέμβριος.
phalanxes (the)-emperor was and then (the)-month the September
προηγοῦντο δὲ τοῦ στρατοῦ μετὰ τῶν οἰκείων τάξεων οἱ
led and the army with the own ranks the
δύο υἱοὶ τοῦ Ἀγγέλου Κωνσταντίνου, ὅ τε Ἰωάννης καὶ
two sons — of-Angelos Constantine — both John and
ὁ Ἀνδρόνικος, ὁ Μακροδούκας ἐπ᾽ αὐτοῖς Κωνσταντῖνος
— Andronikos — Makrodoukas after them Constantine
καὶ ὁ Λαπαρδᾶς Ἀνδρόνικος. μετὰ δὲ τούτους τὸ μὲν
and — Lapardas Andronikos after and these the indeed
δεξιὸν ἐπεῖχε κέρας ὁ τοῦ βασιλέως γυναικάδελφος
right held wing the of-the emperor wife's-brother
Βαλδουῖνος, τὸ δ᾽ ἀριστερὸν ὁ Μαυροζώμης Θεόδωρος.
Baldwin the and left — Mavrozomes Theodore
ἐπὶ τούτοις εἵποντο τὰ σκευοφόρα καὶ τὸ οἰκετικὸν τοῦ
after these followed the baggage and the servant(-train) of-the
στρατεύματος αἵ τε φέρουσαι τὰς ἑλεπόλεις ἅμαξαι,
army the both carrying the city-takers wagons

μετὰ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς καὶ ὅσον ἐπίλεκτον, μεθ'
after and (the)-emperor himself and as-much-as (was)-picked after
οὓς ὀπισθοφύλαξ ὢν Ἀνδρόνικος ὁ Κοντοστέφανος.
whom rearguard being Andronikos the Kontostephanos
ἐπεὶ δὲ ἥψαντο τῶν δυσβάτων πορειῶν, τὰ μὲν περὶ
when and they-touched the impassable roads the indeed about
τοὺς υἱοὺς τοῦ Ἀγγέλου καὶ τὸν Μακροδούκαν καὶ τὸν
the sons — of-Angelos and — Makrodoukas and —
Λαπαρδᾶν τάγματα διεληλύθεισαν ἀπείρατα κακῶν· αἱ γὰρ
Lapardas units had-gone-through untried by-evils the for
πεζικαὶ δυνάμεις προβεβλημέναι διεσόβουν τοὺς βαρβάρους
infantry forces put-forward scared the barbarians
ἐκ τῶν γηλόφων ἀνασειράζουσαι, ἐφ' ὧν ἀπὸ τοῦ
from the hillocks pulling-back on which from the
ὄρους καθηκόντων ἐπιστάντες ἐμάχοντο, κἀπὶ τὸ ἄναντες
mountain coming-down having-stood they-fought and-up the steep
παλίμποδας ἀνεστοίβαζον. τάχα δ' ἂν καὶ τὰ ἐφεπόμενα
back-footed they-piled(-them) perhaps and — also the following
τούτοις στρατεύματα παρήλθοσαν ἀπαθῶς τὰς τῶν Περσῶν
these armies would-have-passed unharmed the of-the Persians
ἐπισυστάσεις, εἴπερ ἔργον ἔθεντο Ῥωμαῖοι συμφράξασθαι
onsets if-indeed (a)-work had-made (the)-Romans to-close-ranks
καὶ τοῖς προηγουμένοις συναπτῶς ἐφέπεσθαι τάγμασι, καὶ
and to-the leading continuously to-follow units and
διὰ τῶν τοξοτῶν ἀνέκοπτον τῶν ἐπικειμένων Περσῶν τὰ
through the archers checked of-the pressing Persians the
ὁρμήματα. νῦν δὲ αὐτοί τε τῆς συνεχείας κατημελήκασι,
rushes now and themselves both the continuity have-neglected
καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι πλείονες ἐπιβρίσαντες, ἀπό τε τῶν ὑψηλῶν
and the Persians more having-pressed-on from both the heights
ἐπὶ τὰ ταπεινὰ καὶ πρὸς τὸ πρανὲς ἐκ τῶν γηλόφων
to the low(-parts) and to the slope from the hillocks

ὑποκαταβάντες, διαζευγνύουσι τὰς τάξεις συρραγέντες
having-come-down separate the ranks having-clashed
παραβολώτερον, καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς περὶ τὸν Βαλδουῖνον,
more-recklessly and rout the(-ones) about — Baldwin
καὶ πολλοὺς μὲν τιτρώσκουσιν, οὐκ ὀλίγους δὲ ἀναιροῦσιν.
and many indeed wound not few and kill
ἔνθα δὴ ὁ Βαλδουῖνος πονηρὰ τὰ καθ' αὐτὸν ὁρῶν
where indeed — Baldwin bad the about him seeing
πράγματα καὶ τὰ στρατεύματα ἀτονώτερα ὥστε διελεῖν
affairs and the armies weaker than to-break-through
τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ παρελθεῖν, καὶ πάντοθεν πιεζόμενος,
the enemies and to-pass and from-all-sides being-pressed
ἀναλαβὼν ἱππέας τινὰς εἰς τὰς φάλαγγας διελᾷ τῶν
having-taken-up horsemen some into the phalanxes drives of-the
Περσῶν, κυκλωθεὶς δὲ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων αὐτός τε
Persians having-been-encircled and by the enemies himself both
κατακαίνεται καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ πίπτουσιν ἅπαντες,
is-killed and the(-ones) with him fall all
ἀλκῆς ἔργα καὶ χειρὸς γενναίας παράδειγμα ἐνδειξάμενοι.
of-strength deeds and of-hand noble (an)-example having-shown
ἐκ δὲ τούτου πλεῖον ἐπαρθὲν τὸ βάρβαρον ἀπόρους
from and this more having-been-elated the barbarian(-host) impassable
πάντῃ Ῥωμαίοις ἐποίουν τὰς τροχιάς, καὶ βύζην
wholly for-(the)-Romans made the tracks and crammed-full
νενησμένοι ἀπεῖργον τὴν πάροδον. οἱ δὲ Ῥωμαῖοι οἷα
packed shut-off the passage the and Romans as
ἐν στενῷ χωρίῳ εἰλούμενοι καὶ ἀλλήλοις περιπίπτοντες
in (a)-narrow place being-rolled and on-one-another falling
οὐ μόνον δρᾶσαί τι κακὸν οὐκ εἶχον τοὺς πολεμίους,
not only to-do anything evil not were-able the enemies
ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῖς ἐπιπορευομένοις προσιστάμενοι ἀχρείους
but also to-the(-ones) coming-after obstructing useless

κἀκείνους ἐποίουν εἰς τὸ ἀμύνεσθαι. ὅθεν καὶ ῥᾷον
those-too they-made for the defending whence also more-easily
ὑπὸ τῶν ἐπικειμένων αὐτοῖς ἔθνησκον, καὶ ἦν οὐδὲ
by the(-ones) pressing them they-died and was not-even
μία τις ἐπιβοήθησις ἀπὸ τῶν οὐραγούντων ταγμάτων
one any help from the rear-guarding units
ἢ ἐκ βασιλέως αὐτοῦ, ἢ ὑποχώρησις καὶ παρέκκλισις
or from (the)-emperor himself or withdrawal and turning-aside
ἐπὶ θάτερα· αἱ γὰρ ἅμαξαι κατὰ μέσον ἑλισσόμεναι
to the-other-side the for wagons in (the)-middle winding
ὑπονοστῆσαι μὲν οὐδαμῶς εἴων τὰς προηγουμένας τάξεις
to-go-back indeed in-no-way allowed the leading ranks
καὶ μετατάξασθαι πρὸς τὸ χρήσιμον, τοῖς δὲ μετὰ τοῦ
and to-re-form for the useful to-the and with the
αὐτοκράτορος στρατεύμασιν ὥσπερ ἀντίφραγμα γινόμεναι
autocrat armies as (a)-barrier becoming
τὴν ἐς τὰ πρόσω πορείαν ἀπετείχιζον. ἔπιπτε τοίνυν
the to the forward march walled-off fell therefore
βοῦς ἐκ τοξεύματος Περσικοῦ, καὶ παρ᾽ αὐτῷ βοώτης
(an)-ox from (an)-arrow Persian and by it (the)-ox-driver
ἀπέψυχεν. ἵππος καὶ ἀναβάτης ὁμοῦ κατεβέβληντο.
expired (a)-horse and rider together had-been-thrown-down
αἱ σήραγγες μεσταὶ σωμάτων προυφαίνοντο. τὰ ἄλση
the hollows full of-bodies appeared the groves
τῶν πεσόντων πεπλήρωτο. αἱμάτων ῥύακες προύβαινον
of-the fallen had-been-filled of-bloods torrents advanced
κελαρύζοντες. αἷμα συνεφύρετο αἵματι, τῷ τῶν
babbling blood was-mixed with-blood with-the(-blood) of-the
ὑποζυγίων τὸ βρότειον. οὕτως ἦν δεινὰ τὰ ἐκεῖ καὶ
beasts-of-burden the human thus were terrible the(-things) there and
πᾶσαν ὑπερβαίνοντα συγγραφήν. ὡς οὖν οὔτε προχωρεῖν
all surpassing writing as then neither to-advance

ἐξῆν καὶ τὸ ἀναζεῦξαι δὲ ἄλλως ἀδύνατον (οἱ γὰρ
was-possible and the to-turn-back and otherwise impossible the for
Πέρσαι καὶ κατὰ νώτου ἐγένοντο καὶ τὰ πρόσω ἐποίουν
Persians also at (the)-back became and the forward made
ἄβατα), ὅσα καὶ θρεμμάτων ἀγέλαι Ῥωμαῖοι περὶ σταθμοὺς
impassable just-as also of-cattle herds (the)-Romans about folds
τὰς δυσχωρίας ἐκείνας ἐφθείροντο. ἀλλὰ καὶ εἴ τί
the rough-places those were-destroyed but also if anything
που γενναίου φρονήματος ἐπῆν εἰσέτι αὐτοῖς ἢ θυμοῦ
somewhere of-noble spirit was-present still in-them or of-anger
κατὰ τῶν ἀντιπάλων ὑπολέλειπτο ζώπυρον, καὶ τοῦτο
against the opponents had-been-left (a)-spark also this
σβεσθὲν ἀφῄρητο, καὶ ἀπέλιπεν αὐτοὺς τὸ πρόθυμον
quenched had-been-taken-away and left them the eagerness
τέλεον, ἐκ τοῦ τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπ᾽ ὄψιν ἄγειν αὐτοῖς
wholly from the the enemies before (the)-eyes to-bring for-them
ἕτερον συμφορᾶς ἐπεισόδιον, αἰχμῇ περιπαρεῖσαν τὴν
another of-disaster episode on-(a)-spear-point fixed the
τοῦ Ἀνδρονίκου τοῦ Βατάτζη κεφαλήν. ἦν δὲ οὗτος
— of-Andronikos the Vatatzes head was and this(-man)
ἀδελφιδοῦς μὲν τῷ βασιλεῖ Μανουήλ, ἀπέσταλτο δὲ
nephew indeed to-the emperor Manuel had-been-sent and
μετὰ στρατιᾶς ὅσηπερ ἐκ Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς ἐν
with army as-much-as from Paphlagonians and the in
Πόντῳ Ἡρακλείας ἐστρατολόγητο τοῖς Ἀμασεῦσι Τούρκοις
Pontus Herakleia had-been-levied the Amasean Turks
ἀντιταξόμενος. φήμαις τοίνυν τοιαύταις ὁ βασιλεὺς καὶ
going-to-array-against by-reports therefore such the emperor and
ἀπευκτέοις τοιοῖσδε θεάμασι τὸ λογιζόμενον συγχυθείς, καὶ
abominable such sights the reasoning(-part) confounded and
τὴν τοῦ ἀνεψιοῦ προτεινομένην ὁρῶν κεφαλήν, καὶ τὸ
the of-the nephew held-out seeing head and the

τοῦ κινδύνου ἐν ᾧ συνείληπτο προορώμενος μέγεθος,
of-the danger in which he-had-been-caught foreseeing greatness
ἀθυμίᾳ συνείχετο, καὶ ἀφασίᾳ πέσσων τὸ ἄλγος
by-despondency was-held and by-speechlessness digesting the pain
καὶ κωφοῖς (ὃ λέγεται) δάκρυσι τὸ πένθος ἀφοσιούμενος
and with-dumb as is-said tears the mourning discharging
τὸ μέλλον ἐκαραδόκει, καὶ τὴν γνώμην ἀμφιρρεπὴς
the future he-awaited and in-the mind wavering
ἐδείκνυτο. τὰ δέ γε προπορευθέντα Ῥωμαίων τάγματα,
was-shown the and at-least having-gone-ahead of-(the)-Romans units
τὰς ἐπισφαλεῖς ἐκείνας ἀτραποὺς ἀπαθῶς διελθόντα,
the precarious those paths unharmed having-gone-through
ἐνηυλίσαντό που καὶ χάρακα ἔβαλον, γηλόφου λαβόμενα
encamped somewhere and (a)-palisade pitched (a)-hillock having-seized
ἀσφάλειαν ἐκ μέρους βραβεύοντος.
security from part arbitrating

III · THE ROUT AT MYRIOKEPHALON

The Turks press on the emperor. Manuel fights his way through, wounded, his shield full of arrows; the army, choked in the valley, is slaughtered, and in a dust storm friend kills friend. Manuel rests under a pear tree, where a soldier helps him, and he fights off Turks who try to take him.

Οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι τὸ πᾶν εἰσέφερον τῆς σπουδῆς τὰ
the and Persians the all brought-in of-the zeal the
περὶ τὸν βασιλέα καταπαλαῖσαι στρατεύματα, ὡς εἰ
about the emperor to-wrestle-down armies as if
τὸ πλεῖστον κατατροπωθείη καὶ κράτιστον, κἀκεῖνα
the most(-part) should-be-routed and strongest also-those
ῥᾳδίως παραλύσειν οἰόμενοι, καθὰ καὶ ἐπὶ δράκοντος
easily to-dissolve thinking as also with (a)-serpent

ὁρῶμεν γινόμενον (τῆς γὰρ κεφαλῆς συντριβείσης καὶ
we-see happening the for head having-been-crushed also
ὁ λοιπὸς συννεκροῦται ὁλκὸς τοῦ σώματος) ἢ καὶ ἐπ᾽
the remaining dies-with trail of-the body or also with
ἀκροπόλεως· ταύτης γὰρ ἐξαιρεθείσης καὶ ἡ λοιπὴ
(an)-acropolis this for having-been-taken also the remaining
πόλις ὡς κατάκρας ἁλοῦσα τὰ οἴκτιστα πέπονθε.
city as utterly captured the most-pitiable(-things) has-suffered
καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν πολλάκις ἀπεπειράσατο τῶν ἐκεῖσε
and (the)-emperor indeed often tried from-the there
δυσπαρόδων ὁδῶν τοὺς βαρβάρους μεταστῆσαι, καὶ πολὺς
hard-to-pass roads the barbarians to-remove and much
ἦν ἐγκείμενος τοῖς ὑπ᾽ αὐτὸν ἐξομαλίσειν τὴν δίοδον·
was pressing on-the(-men) under him to-smooth the passage
οὐχ ὁρῶν δὲ τὰ κατὰ σκοπὸν προβαίνοντα, καὶ
not seeing and the(-things) according-to aim advancing and
ὡς ἀπολεῖται οὐδὲν μεῖον μένων κατὰ χώραν οἷα τῶν
that he-will-perish nothing less remaining in place as the
Περσῶν ἐπικρατεστέρων ἀεὶ γινομένων ὡς ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων
Persians more-prevailing always becoming as from higher-ground
μαχομένων, ἐσβάλλει πρὸς τοὺς ἐνώπιον αὐτῷ πολεμίους
fighting he-charges against the before him enemies
μετ᾽ ὀλίγων τῶν ἀμφ᾽ ἐκεῖνον, καὶ τοῖς λοιποῖς δὲ
with few of-the(-men) about him and to-the rest and
ὑποτίθησι σώζειν σφᾶς ὡς ἕκαστος δύναται· μηδὲν γὰρ
suggests to-save themselves as each can nothing for
χρηστὸν ἐκ τῶν ἐν ὄψει κατανοεῖν. καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν
good from the(-things) in sight to-perceive and (the)-emperor indeed
ὡς ἐκ γαλεάγρας τῆς τότε αὐτὸν διειληφυίας βαρβαρικῆς
as from (a)-weasel-trap the then him having-enclosed barbarian
ἐξώλισθε φάλαγγος μετὰ τραύματα πολλὰ καὶ μώλωπας
slipped-out-of phalanx after wounds many and bruises

συνεχεῖς, οὓς ἀπὸ ξιφῶν ἐπλήγη καὶ σιδηρέων κορυνῶν
continual which from swords he-was-struck and iron maces
ὑπὸ τῶν περιστάντων αὐτὸν Περσῶν τυπτόμενος, ἐπεὶ καὶ
by the surrounding him Persians being-beaten since also
οὕτω δι' ὅλου τοῦ σώματος τετραυμάτιστο ὡς τὸν μὲν
thus through whole the body he-had-been-wounded that the indeed
θυρεὸν περί που τοὺς τριάκοντα ἔχειν ἐμπεπηγότας
shield about somewhere the thirty to-have fixed
διψητικοὺς αἵματος ὀϊστούς, αὐτὸν δὲ μηδ' ἀνορθῶσαι
thirsty of-blood arrows himself and not-even to-straighten
ὅλως δύνασθαι περιτραπεῖσαν τὴν κόρυθα. πλὴν καὶ οὕτω
at-all to-be-able turned-round the helmet however also thus
παρὰ δόξαν τὰς τῶν βαρβάρων διέδρα λαβάς, ὑπὸ θεοῦ
beyond expectation the of-the barbarians escaped grips by God
φρουρηθεὶς τοῦ καὶ ἐπὶ κεφαλὴν πάλαι Δαβὶδ ἐν ἡμέρᾳ
guarded the(-one) also over (the)-head of-old (of)-David in (the)-day
πολέμου ἐπισκιάζοντος, ὡς αὐτός φησιν ὁ φιλόψαλμος.
of-war overshadowing as himself says the psalm-lover
τὰ δ' ἄλλα Ῥωμαϊκὰ τάγματα χειρόνως ἔπασχον ἀεὶ
the and other Roman units worse suffered always
δόρασι περισταδὸν λελογχωμένοις νυσσόμενα καὶ βέλεσιν
by-spears round-about speared being-pricked and by-missiles
ἐκ τοῦ σχεδὸν διαμπερὲς ἐλαυνόμενα καὶ ὑπ' ἀλλήλων ἐν
from the near through driven and by one-another in
τῷ συμπίπτειν διαφθειρόμενα. εἰσὶ δ' οἳ καὶ ταύτην
the falling-together being-destroyed are and (those)-who also this
μὲν ἀπαθεῖς παρῆλθον τὴν φάραγγα καὶ τοὺς ἐπ' αὐτῆς
indeed unharmed passed the ravine and the(-ones) on it
ἱσταμένους Πέρσας ἐσύβησαν, προελθόντες δὲ καὶ τῆς
standing Persians scared having-advanced and also the
μετ' ἐκείνην ἁψάμενοι σήραγγος ὑπὸ τῶν ἐκεῖσε πολεμίων
after that having-touched hollow by the there enemies

ἀπώλοντο. εἰς γὰρ ἑπτὰ κοιλάδας ταφρώδεις πάσας καὶ
perished into for seven valleys trench-like all and
ἀγχιτέρμονας ἡ πάροδος ἐκείνη διέσχιστο, εὐρυνομένη
near-bordering the passage that had-been-split widening
βραχὺ καὶ συμπτυσσομένη πάλιν πρὸς τὸ στενόπορον·
(a)-little and folding again into the narrow-pass
καὶ ἦσαν αὗται παρὰ τῶν Τούρκων ἀκριβῶς ἐφεστώτων
and were these by the Turks exactly standing-over
τηρούμεναι. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδ᾽ ὁ λοιπὸς χῶρος τῶν πολεμίων
watched but not-even the remaining space of-the enemies
ἐσπάνιζε καθαρῶς, ἀλλ᾽ ἅπας τούτων πεπλήρωτο. τότε
lacked clearly but all of-these had-been-filled then
δὲ καὶ ἀνέμου πνεύσαντος καὶ θῖνα βαθεῖαν ἐκ τῆς
and also wind having-blown and (a)-heap deep from the
ἐκεῖσε ψαμμώδους μετεωρίσαντος γῆς σύρδην ἐμπίπτουσαν
there sandy having-raised earth sweeping falling-in
ἀμφότερα συμπεσεῖν ἐγένετο τὰ στρατεύματα, καὶ ὡς ἐν
both to-clash happened the armies and as in
νυκτομαχίᾳ καὶ σκότει ψηλαφητῷ ἀλλήλοις προσφερόμενα
night-battle and darkness palpable on-one-another being-borne
τοῖς ἐχθροῖς τοὺς φίλους ἐπικατέσφαττον, καὶ οὐκ
with-the enemies the friends slaughtered-besides and not
ἦν ἐξ ὁμοφύλου διακρίνειν ἀλλόφυλον, ἀλλὰ Πέρσαι
was(-possible) from kinsman to-distinguish foreigner but Persians
καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι συμβεβλημένοι καὶ καθ᾽ ὁμογενῶν ἐσπῶντο
and (the)-Romans thrown-together also against kinsmen drew
τὰ ξίφη καὶ τὸν προσιόντα κατέκαινον ὡς πολέμιον,
the swords and the approaching killed as enemy
ὡς τὰς τάφρους τάφον ἕνα γενέσθαι καὶ πάμμικτον
so-that the trenches (a)-tomb one to-become and all-mixed
πολυάνδριον καὶ σκήνωμα κοινὸν Ῥωμαίων τε καὶ
common-grave and tent common of-(the)-Romans both and

βαρβάρων καὶ ἵππων καὶ βοῶν καὶ ὄνων ἀχθηφορούντων.
barbarians and horses and oxen and asses burden-bearing
ἔπεσον οὖν ἀριθμῷ πλείους Ῥωμαῖοι, καὶ μάλιστα τῶν
fell then in-number more (the)-Romans and especially of-the(-ones)
ἐκ τοῦ γένους τῷ βασιλεῖ, καὶ τούτων οἷς πολὺ
from the family to-the emperor and of-these to-whom much
τὸ ἐπίσημον. ὡς δὲ ἡ κόνις ἐλώφησεν ἥ τε ἀχλὺς
the distinction as and the dust abated the both mist
ἐκείνη καὶ ἀορασία διεσκέδαστο, ὠπτάνοντό τινες (φεῦ
that and blindness had-been-dispersed were-seen some alas
τοῦ ἀπευκτέου πράγματος καὶ δράματος) ἕως ἰξύος καὶ
for-the abominable thing and drama to waist and
τραχήλου συνισχημένοι τοῖς πτώμασιν, οἳ καὶ χεῖρας μὲν
neck held by-the corpses who also hands indeed
ἱκέτιδας ὤρεγον καὶ σχήμασιν ἐλεεινοῖς καὶ φωναῖς γοερὸν
suppliant stretched-out and with-gestures pitiable and voices mournfully
ὑπηχούσαις προυκαλοῦντο τοὺς παριόντας εἰς ἀρωγήν,
sounding called the(-ones) passing for help
οὐδένα δὲ τὸν ἀμύνειν δυνάμενον εἶχον οὐδὲ τὸν
nobody and the(-one) to-help being-able they-had nor the(-one)
σώζοντα· πάντες γὰρ οἷς ἔπασχον ἐκεῖνοι τὴν οἰκείαν
saving all for from-what suffered those the own
προτυπούμενοι συμφοράν, τὸν περὶ ψυχῆς τρέχοντες,
picturing disaster the(-race) for life running
ἀκούσιοί τινες ἦσαν ἀνοικτίρμονες, καὶ ὡς τάχους εἶχον
unwilling some were pitiless and as of-speed they-had
σώζειν ἑαυτοὺς ἔσπευδον. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς Μανουὴλ
to-save themselves hastened the and emperor Manuel
σκιὰν ὑπελθὼν ἀχλαδηφοροῦντος δένδρου ἀνελάμβανεν
(the)-shade having-gone-under of-(a)-pear-bearing tree recovered
ἑαυτὸν καὶ καμοῦσαν συνέλεγε τὴν ἰσχύν, μὴ ἔχων
himself and weary collected the strength not having

ὑπασπιστὴν συνιστάμενον, μὴ δορυφόρον ἐπισπόμενον μηδὲ
shield-bearer standing-by not bodyguard following nor
σωματοφύλακα ἐφεπόμενον. ἰδὼν δέ τις αὐτὸν καὶ
body-guard attending having-seen and someone him and
οἰκτείρας ἐκ τοῦ τῶν ἱππέων τάγματος, καὶ οὗτος τῶν
having-pitied from the of-the horsemen unit and this(-one) of-the
ἀφανῶν καὶ πολλῶν Ῥωμαίων, ἐφίσταταί οἱ προθύμως
obscure and many Romans stands-by him eagerly
κατὰ προαίρεσιν καὶ διακονεῖν αἱρεῖται τὰ δυνατά,
by choice and to-serve chooses the(-things) possible
ὅθεν καὶ τὴν κυνέην ἑτέρωσε βαλλομένην τῇ ἐκείνου
whence also the helmet the-other-way thrown on-the his
ἐφήρμοσε κεφαλῇ. ἐν ᾧ δὲ καθ' ὃ εἰρήκειμεν δένδρον
fitted head in which and by which we-had-mentioned tree
ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀνεκώχευεν, ἐπιδραμών τις Πέρσης ἐφεῖλκε
the emperor was-resting having-run-up some Persian dragged
τοῦτον τοῦ χαλινοῦ κατὰ πολλὴν τοῦ κωλύσοντος
him by-the bridle in much of-the(-one) going-to-prevent
ἐρημίαν· ὁ δὲ πλήξας αὐτὸν κατὰ κεφαλῆς τῷ τοῦ
absence he and having-struck him on (the)-head with-the of-the
δόρατος τμήματι ὃ εἶχεν ἔτι ἐν ταῖν χεροῖν, εἰς γῆν
spear piece which he-had still in the two-hands to (the)-ground
ἔβαλλε. μετ' οὐ πολὺ δ' ἕτεροι Πέρσαι ζωγρίαν ἑλεῖν
threw after not much and other Persians alive to-take
ὀριγνώμενοι ἐπ' αὐτὸν ἵενται, ῥᾳδίως δὲ καὶ τούτους
reaching at him rush easily and also these
ἐώσατο· βασιλεὺς μὲν γὰρ τὸ τοῦ συνεστῶτος ἱππότου
pushed-off (the)-emperor indeed for the of-the standing-by knight
δόρυ ἀγκοινησάμενος διαπείρει ἕνα τῶν ἐπιόντων ἕως
spear having-taken-in-arm pierces one of-the(-ones) attacking as-far-as
καὶ εἰς αὐτὸν θάνατον, αὐτὸς δ' ὁ ἱππότης τὸ ξίφος
also to itself death himself and the knight the sword

σπασάμενος ἀποκαρατομεῖ ἕτερον. συναλισθέντων δὲ καὶ
having-drawn beheads another having-been-gathered and also
περὶ τὸν βασιλέα ἑτέρων ὁπλοφόρων δέκα Ῥωμαίων ἐκεῖθεν
about the emperor other armed-men ten Romans thence
μετέβαινε, συμμῖξαι γλιχόμενος τοῖς προηγησαμένοις
he-moved to-join longing the(-ones) having-gone-ahead
τάγμασιν. ἀλλ' αὖθις μικρόν τι προβὰς ὑπό τε
units but again little something having-advanced by both
Τούρκων τῆς πρόσω πορείας εἴργεται, καὶ τοῖς τῶν
Turks from-the forward march is-barred and by-the of-the
πεσόντων οὐχ ἧττον νεκροῖς ἀπερύκεται, οἳ περὶ τὰς
fallen no less corpses is-kept-off which about the
ὁδοὺς αἰθριάζοντες ἀπέφραττον αὐτὰς σωρηδὸν προκείμενοι.
roads lying-in-the-open blocked them in-heaps lying

IV · THE NIGHT AFTER

Manuel sees John Kantakouzenos fall, beats off the Turks, and reaches the vanguard. Thirsty at the river, he drinks water mixed with blood and laments; a soldier retorts that he has long drunk Christian blood by fleecing his subjects. He bears the rebuke. That night the army waits in despair as the Turks call their kinsmen in the Roman ranks to desert.

μόλις δὲ τὰ ἐκεῖσε δυσπόρευτα χωρία καὶ τὸν ἐγγύς που
barely and the there hard-to-traverse places and the near somewhere
παραρρέοντα ποταμὸν διελθών, ἐνιαχοῦ τῶν θνησιμαίων
flowing-by river having-gone-through in-places on-the dead
ἐπιβαίνων καὶ τούτων ὕπερθεν ἱππαζόμενος, ἀθροίζει καὶ
stepping and of-these above riding he-gathers also
ἄλλο τι στῖφος Ῥωμαϊκὸν κατὰ θέαν αὐτοῦ συνδραμόν,
another some troop Roman at (the)-sight of-him having-run-together

ὅτε καὶ ἀναβλέψας ὁρᾷ τοῖς ὀφθαλμοῖς τὸν ἐπ᾽ ἀνεψιᾷ
when also having-looked-up he-sees with-the eyes the by niece
γαμβρόν, τὸν Καντακουζηνὸν Ἰωάννην, ἕνα πρὸς πλείους
in-law — Kantakouzenos John one against more
διαμιλλώμενον καὶ ἀνδρείως αὐτοῖς προσφερόμενον, καὶ
contending and manfully at-them charging and
περιβλεπόμενον μὲν εἴ τις ἐπαρήξων ἐκείνῳ ἐλεύσεται,
looking-around indeed if anyone going-to-help him will-come
ἐκ δὲ τοῦ μηδένα τὸν ἀμύνοντα παρεστάναι μετὰ βραχὺ
from and the nobody the defending to-stand-by after (a)-little
πίπτοντά τε καὶ σκυλευόμενον. οἱ δὲ τοῦτον ἀπεκτονότες
falling both and being-despoiled the and him having-killed
Πέρσαι ὡς εἶδον παριόντα τὸν αὐτοκράτορα (οὐδὲ γὰρ
Persians as they-saw passing the autocrat not for
ἦν λαθεῖν), συγκροτηθέντες εἰς σπεῖραν ὡς εἰς
was(-it-possible) to-escape-notice having-gathered into (a)-company as for
θήραμα μέγα τὸν βασιλέα ἐπῄεσαν· ᾤοντο γὰρ αὐτίκα δὴ
(a)-prey great the emperor came-on they-thought for at-once indeed
μάλα τοῦτον αἱρήσειν ἢ ἀναιρήσειν. ἦσαν δ᾽ οὗτοι πάντες
very him to-take or to-kill were and these all
Ἀραβίοις ἔποχοι ἵπποις καὶ κατὰ θέαν τῶν πολλῶν
on-Arabian mounted horses and in appearance than-the many
ὑπερφέροντες· ὁπλισμοῖς τε γὰρ ἐκπρεπέσιν ἐκάζοντο,
excelling in-armaments both for conspicuous they-excelled
καὶ τοὺς ἵππους ἠσκημένους εἶχον ἄλλοις τε κόσμοις
and the horses equipped had with-other both ornaments
λαμπροτάτοις, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ἐπαυχενίοις ἀγλαΐσμασιν ἐκ
most-brilliant but indeed also with-neck splendors of
τριχῶν συγκειμένοις ἱππείων, ἐς ἱκανὸν καθιεμένων
hairs composed of-horse to sufficient(-length) hanging-down
καὶ περιηρτημένους ἐχουσῶν ἠχητικοὺς κώδωνας. βασιλεὺς
and hung-round having sounding bells (the)-emperor

δ᾽ ἀναστήσας τὰ τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν φρονήματα τὴν
and having-raised the of-the(-men) about him spirits the
τῶν πολεμίων ἐπέλευσιν εὐπετῶς ἀποκρούεται, ἀεὶ δὲ
of-the enemies attack easily repels always and
κατὰ βραχὺ προβαίνων τοῖς ἔμπροσθεν, καὶ νῦν μὲν
by little advancing to-the(-ones) ahead and now indeed
πολέμου νόμῳ ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ καὶ ἀναιμωτὶ παριππεύων τοὺς
of-war by-law in-places and also bloodlessly riding-past the
Πέρσας, ἄλλους ἐπ᾽ ἄλλοις συνιόντας καὶ πάντας συλλαβεῖν
Persians others on others coming-together and all to-seize
αὐτὸν σπεύδοντας, τρισάσμενος ἐφίσταται καὶ ἀσπάσιος
him hastening thrice-gladly arrives and welcome
τοῖς προωδευκόσι τάγμασιν, οὐ μᾶλλον περὶ αὐτοῖς
to-the having-gone-ahead units not more about themselves
δυσχεραίνουσιν ἢ ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ μὴ φαινομένῳ ἀγωνιῶσιν.
being-vexed than over him not appearing being-in-agony
οὔπω δὲ συμμίξας τούτοις, ἀλλ᾽ ἐκεῖσε ἔτι ὢν ἔνθα
not-yet and having-joined these but there still being where
ποταμὸν παραρρέειν ὁ λόγος εἴρηκε, δίψει συνέχεται, καὶ
(a)-river to-flow-by the narrative has-said by-thirst is-held and
δὴ αἰτεῖται τῶν παρεστώτων τινὰ λαβόντα ὑδρεῖον
indeed asks of-the(-ones) standing-by someone having-taken (a)-water-pot
ὕδωρ ἀρύσασθαι καί οἱ ἀποκομίσαι πιεῖν. σπάσας
water to-draw and to-him to-bring to-drink having-drawn
τοίνυν τοῦ ὕδατος ὅσον ἂν τὴν ἐκείνου ἐδίανεν ὑπερώην,
therefore of-the water as-much-as — the his moistened palate
τὸ λοιπὸν ἐξέχεεν οἷα μὴ τοῦ ποθέντος ἡδέως διὰ
the rest he-poured-out as not the(-water) drunk pleasantly through
τοῦ οἰσοφάγου κατολισθαίνοντος. πολυπραγμονήσας δὲ τὸ
the gullet slipping-down having-examined and the
ποτὸν καὶ λυθρῶδες τοῦτο κατανοήσας ᾤμωξε, καὶ εἶπε
drink and gory it having-perceived he-groaned and said

μὴ εὐτυχῶς ἀπογεύσασθαι τοῦ τῶν Χριστιανῶν αἵματος.
not fortunately to-have-tasted of-the of-the Christians blood
παρεστὼς δέ τις ἀνὴρ ἰταμὸς καὶ θρασύς, ὡς ἔδειξε, καὶ
standing-by and some man reckless and bold as he-showed and
τοῦ τότε καιροῦ δυσκολώτερος, ἀνερυθριάστως ἔφησεν
than-the then time more-surly unblushingly said
„ἄπαγε, βασιλεῦ, οὔκουν ταῦτα, οὐχί· οὐ γὰρ νῦν
away emperor not these(-things) not not for now
πρώτως, ἀλλὰ πάλαι καὶ πολλάκις καὶ εἰς κραιπάλην καὶ
first but long-ago and often and to drunkenness and
ἀκραιφνῶς Χριστιανικῶν αἱμάτων κρατὴρ ἐκεράσθη σοι,
purely of-Christian bloods (a)-bowl was-mixed for-you
καλαμωμένῳ τε καὶ ἐπιφυλλίζοντι τὸ ὑπήκοον.” οὕτω
plundering both and gleaning the subject(-people) thus
δ’ ἱλαρῶς τὸν κατήγορον ἐκεῖνον καὶ λοίδορον ὑπήνεγκεν
and cheerfully the accuser that and reviler he-bore
ἄνθρωπον, ὡς εἰ μὴ ἦν ἀκούων μηδ’ ἔχων ἐλεγμοὺς ἐν
(a)-man as if not he-were hearing nor having rebukes in
τῷ στόματι. ὁρῶν δὲ καὶ τοὺς θησαυροφύλακας θυλάκους
the mouth seeing and also the treasury sacks
διασπωμένους ὑπὸ Περσῶν καὶ κατὰ γῆς χεόμενον καὶ
torn-apart by Persians and on (the)-ground poured and
ἁρπαζόμενον τὸν εἰς νόμισμα κεκομμένον χρυσόν τε καὶ
snatched the into coin struck gold both and
ἄργυρον, ἐνῆγε τοὺς συνόντας Ῥωμαίους ἐπεισπεσεῖν τοῖς
silver he-urged the with(-him) Romans to-fall-on the
βαρβάροις καὶ κτήσασθαι τὰ χρήματα Περσῶν δικαιότερον.
barbarians and to-acquire the money than-Persians more-justly
συστὰς δὲ αὖθις ὁ λῆρος ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ διελοιδορεῖτο
having-stood-up and again the babbling that man reviled
ἀναιδῶς βασιλεῖ τοιαῦτα κελεύοντι, „ἐχρῆν” λέγων
shamelessly at-(the)-emperor such(-things) ordering it-was-needful saying

„ἑκουσίως καὶ πρότερον διδόναι Ῥωμαίοις ταυτί, οὐχὶ
willingly and before to-give to-(the)-Romans these(-things) not
δὲ πάντως νυνί, ὁπότε ἡ κτῆσις δυσχερὴς καὶ μεθ'
and by-all-means now when the acquiring (is)-hard and with
αἵματος. εἰ δ' αὐτὸς ἀνήρ ἐστιν ἰσχύος, ὁποῖος εὔχεται
blood if and himself (a)-man is of-strength such-as he-boasts
εἶναι, ἢ γοῦν ἀναξυρίδα περίκειται, τοῖς χρυσοσύλαις
to-be or at-any-rate trousers wears with-the gold-plunderers
συρραγεὶς Πέρσαις καὶ συγκόψας τούτους θαρραλεώτερον
having-clashed Persians and having-cut-down them more-boldly
ἐπανασωσάτω Ῥωμαίοις τὰ ἁρπαζόμενα." ἐσιώπα
let-him-recover for-(the)-Romans the(-things) being-snatched was-silent
δὲ καὶπὶ τούτοις τοῖς ῥήμασι, μὴ ὑπ' ὀδόντα γρύζων μηδὲ
and even-at these the words not under (the)-tooth grumbling nor
τονθορύζων, ἀλλὰ φέρων τὴν τοῦ κερτόμου προπέτειαν
muttering but bearing the of-the mocker rashness
ὡς Δαβὶδ πάλαι Σεμεεὶ τὴν αὐθάδειαν. ὀψὲ δὲ καὶ ὁ
as David of-old (of)-Shimei the self-will late and also —
Κοντοστέφανος Ἀνδρόνικος ἀβλαβὴς παρῆν, ὃς ἡγεῖτο
Kontostephanos Andronikos unharmed was-present who led
τῶν τελευταίων τάξεων, καὶ ἕτεροι τῶν δυναμένων
the last ranks and others of-the(-ones) being-powerful
μέγα παρὰ τῷ Μανουὴλ ἀπλῆγες συνδεδραμήκασιν.
greatly with — Manuel unwounded have-run-together
Ἐπεὶ δὲ νὺξ ἐπῆλθε καὶ σκότος ἡμέρας διάδοχον τὸν
when and night came-on and darkness of-day (as)-successor the
πόλεμον ἔπαυσεν, ἀδημονῶν ἅπας καθῆστο ὑπτίῳ τῷ
war stopped being-distressed everyone sat on-upturned the
τῆς χειρὸς κοίλῳ ῥίψας τὴν κεφαλήν, καὶ τὸν ἐνεστῶτα
of-the hand hollow having-thrown the head and the present
κίνδυνον φανταζόμενος οὐ τοῖς ζῶσι συνέταττεν ἑαυτόν,
danger imagining not with-the living ranked himself

καὶ μάλισθ᾽ ὅτι τὸν χάρακα περιτρέχοντες διαπρυσίοις
and especially because the palisade running-round with-piercing
ἀνεκάλουν φωναῖς οἱ βάρβαροι τοὺς ὁμοεθνεῖς αὐτοῖς,
called voices the barbarians the of-the-same-nation with-them
οἳ κατὰ χρείαν ἢ μετάθεσιν πίστεως πρὸς Ῥωμαίους
who for need or change of-faith to (the)-Romans
προυχώρησαν πάλαι, καὶ παρῄνουν ἐξελθεῖν αὐτονυχὶ
had-gone-over long-ago and urged to-go-out on-that-very-night
τοῦ στρατηγίου ὡς ἀπολουμένων ἄρδην ἕωθεν αὐτίκα
from-the camp as going-to-perish utterly at-dawn at-once
τῶν ἐν αὐτῷ. διενυκτέρευον οὖν Ῥωμαῖοι κατὰ
of-the(-ones) in it passed-the-night then (the)-Romans by
φρήτρας καὶ λογάδας τοῖς φύλοις φῦλα συναγειρόμενοι,
brotherhoods and select-bands to-the tribes tribes gathering
βαπτόμενοι πρὸς ὦχρον ὑπὸ δέους, εἰς οἷον τὰ πέταλα
being-dipped to paleness by fear to such-as the leaves
τῶν δένδρων κατὰ καιρὸν τὸν φυλλοχόον μεταμορφάζεται.
of-the trees at (the)-time the leaf-shedding is-changed

V · THE TREATY

Manuel proposes to flee secretly, but a common soldier protests aloud. God moves the sultan to mercy: he sends Gabras with a horse and a sword and offers peace, demanding the demolition of Dorylaion and Soublaion. Manuel returns by the road of the dead, a sight of horror, and Niketas recalls the dreams that foretold the disaster.

αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ κρατῶν ἀγενεστάτας βουλὰς ὤδινεν. ὡς δὲ
himself and the ruler most-ignoble counsels was-in-labor-with as and
ταύτας ἀποτεκὼν εἰς ἀκοὴν τῶν σὺν ἐκείνῳ ἐξέφερε,
these having-brought-forth into hearing of-the(-ones) with him brought-out

καὶ ἦν τὸ ὑφηγούμενον λαθραία φυγὴ καὶ τοσούτων
and was the(-thing) suggested secret flight and of-so-many
ψυχῶν εἰς αἰχμαλωσίαν καὶ θάνατον ἔκδοσις, ἐκπλήττει
souls to captivity and death (a)-surrender astounds
τοὺς ἀκροωμένους, καὶ μᾶλλον τὸν Κοντοστέφανον, ὡς
the hearers and more — Kontostephanos as
ἀνδρὸς ἀλλοφρονοῦντος καὶ περιστρεφομένου σκοτοδίνῃ
of-(a)-man deranged and spun by-dizziness
ἀτεχνῶς φθεγγόμενος ῥήματα. οὐ μόνον δὲ οἱ πρὸς
simply speaking words not only and the(-ones) for
σκέψιν τοῦ ποιητέου συνελθόντες βαρέως ἤνεγκαν τὰ
consideration of-the to-be-done having-come-together heavily bore the(-things)
ἠνωτισμένα, ἀλλὰ καί τις ἔξωθεν ἑστὼς τῆς σκηνῆς
heard but also someone outside standing of-the tent
ἐκ τῶν ἀγνώστων καὶ τῶν πλείστων στρατιωτῶν, ὡς τὸ
of the unknown and of-the very-many soldiers as the
βασιλικὸν ἐς οὖς ἐδέξατο σκέμμα, ὑψώσας τὴν φωνὴν
imperial into (his)-ear received thought having-raised the voice
καὶ διωλύγιον ἀνοιμώξας „φεῦ" εἶπεν, „ὁποῖα δὴ καὶ ὁ
and loudly having-groaned alas said what-things indeed also the
βασιλεὺς Ῥωμαίων εἰς νοῦν ἐβάλετο." καὶ πρὸς ἐκεῖνον
emperor of-(the)-Romans into mind has-cast and to him
τὴν τοῦ λόγου στρέψας ὁρμὴν „οὐχὶ σύ" φησιν „ὁ διὰ
the of-the speech having-turned rush not you he-says the(-one) through
τῆς ἐρήμης ταύτης καὶ στενῆς ὁδοῦ ἐκθλίψας ἡμᾶς καὶ εἰς
the desert this and narrow road having-squeezed us and into
ἀπώλειαν διηθήσας, ἢ μᾶλλον οἱονεί τινι ὅλμῳ ἐκπιέσας
destruction having-strained or rather as-if in-some mortar having-pressed-out
τοῖς συμπίπτουσι τούτοις σκοπέλοις καὶ τοῖς πεσοῦσιν
by-the falling-together these crags and by-the fallen
ἀτεχνῶς ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ὄρεσι; τί ἡμῖν καὶ τῇ κοιλάδι ταύτῃ
simply on us mountains what to-us also to-the valley this

τοῦ κλαυθμῶνος καὶ τῷ στομίῳ τοῦ ᾅδου ἄντικρυς καὶ
of-the weeping and to-the mouth of-the Hades outright and
τῷ παρελθεῖν τὰς ἀνωμάλους ταύτας καὶ τραχείας τροχιάς;
to-the to-pass the uneven these and rough tracks
ἢ τί ἴδιον ἐπάγειν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἐπίκλημα εἴχομεν, οἳ
or what own to-bring to-the barbarians charge had-we who
τοὺς χώρους τούτους τοὺς στενούς τε καὶ βιαίους καὶ
the places these the(-ones) narrow both and forced and
σκολιοὺς περικαθίσαντες ἡμᾶς ἐσαγήνευσαν; καὶ νῦν ὅπως
crooked having-surrounded us have-netted and now how
καταπροδίδως ὡς πρόβατα σφαγῆς τοῖς ἐχθροῖς;" τούτοις
you-betray as sheep for-slaughter to-the enemies these
μαλαχθεὶς τὴν ψυχὴν εἴτ' οὖν ἕως καρδίας δηχθεὶς εἰς ἑτέραν
softened in-the soul or then to (the)-heart bitten to another
ἐτράπετο καὶ τὴν κατὰ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον ἐλᾶν εἵλετο.
turned and the(-road) at the time that to-drive he-chose
Ἀλλ' ὁ σπέρμα ἐγκαταλείπων πάλαι τῷ Ἰσραήλ,
but the(-one) (a)-seed leaving of-old — to-Israel
ἵνα μὴ εἰς τέλος ἀφαντωθείη τὸ ἐκείνου κληρούχημα
that not to (the)-end might-be-made-to-vanish the his allotment
ὡς Σόδομα γεγονὸς καὶ ὁμοιωθὲν ὡς Γόμορρα,
as Sodom having-become and having-been-likened as Gomorrah
ὁ παιδεύων καὶ πάλιν ἰώμενος, ὁ πατάσσων
the(-one) chastening and again healing the(-one) striking
καὶ ζῆν ποιῶν, ὁ μὴ τὴν ῥάβδον τῶν ἁμαρτωλῶν
and to-live making the(-one) not the rod of-the sinners
ἐπὶ τὸν κλῆρον τῶν δικαίων εἰς τέλος ἐῶν, οὗτος καὶ
on the lot of-the righteous to (the)-end allowing this(-one) also
τότε τὸ ἅγιον ἔθνος κατοικτειρήσας καὶ μὴ ἀπώσασθαι
then the holy nation having-pitied and not to-thrust-away
θελήσας ἐπίπαν κάμπτει τὴν τοῦ σουλτάνου ψυχὴν
having-wished wholly bends the of-the sultan soul

εἰς ἀξύμφυλον ἔλεον τὸ καινότατον, καὶ ὃς τὴν τοῦ
to foreign-to-his-nature mercy the newest(-thing) and he the of-the
βασιλέως ἀρετὴν αἰδούμενος πρότερον, τότε καὶ ταῖς
emperor virtue respecting before then also at-the
ἐκείνου συμφοραῖς ἐπικλᾶται. ἢ γοῦν ὁ διὰ Χουσὶ
his misfortunes is-broken or at-any-rate the(-one) through Hushai
τὴν Ἀχιτόβελ ἀκυρώσας βουλήν, καὶ τὰς φρένας ἀλλοιώσας
the Abithophel's having-annulled counsel and the wits having-altered
τοῦ Ἀβεσαλὼμ ὡς τοῖς καθ' ἑαυτοῦ καὶ χείροσιν
— of-Absalom so-that the(-things) against himself and worse
ἐπαγγέλλεσθαι, αὐτὸς καὶ τότε τὸν Περσάρχην ἐξέκρουσε
to-be-announced himself also then the Persian-ruler knocked-off
τοῦ καθήκοντος. παρασυρεὶς γὰρ οὗτος ταῖς
from-the(-thing) fitting swept-along for this(-man) by-the
τῶν μεγιστάνων αὐτοῦ ὑποθημοσύναις, οἵπερ ἀπήντλουν
of-the magnates his suggestions who drew-out
ἀμφοτέραις ἐκ βασιλέως κατὰ τὸν τῆς εἰρήνης καιρὸν τὰ
with-both(-hands) from (the)-emperor in the of-the peace time the
χρήματα, πέμψας πρεσβείαν εἰρηνικὰ διαλέγεται καὶ τὴν
money having-sent (an)-embassy peaceful(-things) discusses and the
συνομολογίαν ὡς πρώην αὖθις ἐπιζητεῖ, προφθάνων οἷον
agreement as formerly again seeks anticipating as-it-were
προαιρετῶς, τοῦ κρείττονος ἐποτρύνοντος, τὸν ἀναγκαστῶς
by-choice the stronger urging the by-necessity
ἐς τὰς συμβάσεις βλέψαντα ἄνακτα. οἱ δὲ δὴ Πέρσαι
to the agreements having-looked lord the and indeed Persians
μήπω τῶν κατὰ σκοπὸν τῷ σουλτάνῳ ἐκφανθέντων
not-yet of-the(-things) according-to aim to-the sultan having-been-shown
ἅμα ἕῳ προσήλαυνον ὡς κυκλωσόμενοι Ῥωμαίους καὶ
at-once with-dawn drove-on as going-to-encircle (the)-Romans and
ὥσπερ ὄψον εὐτρεπὲς καὶ καθ' ὁρμὴν μίαν, οἷα θῆρες,
as relish ready and in rush one as beasts

λαφύξοντες, ἢ ὡς ἐγκαταλελειμμένα ᾠὰ καὶ νοσσιὰν
going-to-gulp-down or as abandoned eggs and (a)-nest
ἐρήμην ἀπάξοντες. περιστείχοντες τοίνυν τὸν χάρακα τοὺς
deserted going-to-carry-off walking-around therefore the palisade the(-ones)
ἐντὸς κατετόξευον, κύκλῳ περιελαύνοντες καὶ βαρβαρικῶς
inside shot-down in-(a)-circle driving-round and barbarously
ἀλαλάζοντες. βασιλεὺς οὖν ἐγκελεύεται Ἰωάννῃ τῷ τοῦ
raising-the-war-cry (the)-emperor then orders John the —
Ἀγγέλου Κωνσταντίνου υἱῷ μετὰ τοῦ συνόντος ἐκείνῳ
of-Angelos Constantine son with the with him
τάγματος τοῖς Πέρσαις προσβαλεῖν· ὁ δὲ κατὰ τὴν
unit the Persians to-attack he and according-to the
βασιλικὴν ἐπιταγὴν ἀναστελεῖν τοὺς Τούρκους πειρᾶται,
imperial order to-check the Turks tries
οὐδὲν δέ τι καὶ δράσας γενναῖον παλίνστροφος γίνεται.
nothing and anything also having-done noble back-turning becomes
ἐκ δὲ τούτου ὁ Μακροδούκας Κωνσταντῖνος τὴν ὑπ᾽
from and this — Makrodoukas Constantine the under
αὐτὸν ἐξάγει στρατιὰν ἐκ τῶν ἑῴων στρατολογουμένην
him leads-out army from the eastern levied
ταγμάτων· ἀλλὰ καὶ οὗτος μικρόν τι φανεὶς
units but also this(-one) little something having-appeared
ὑπενόστησεν. ὁ δέ γε σουλτάνος πέμπει πρὸς βασιλέα
went-back the and at-least sultan sends to (the)-emperor
Γαβρᾶν τὰ πρῶτα τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτῷ καὶ τετιμημένον τὰ
Gabras the first of-the(-ones) with him and honored the
μέγιστα· τὸ δ᾽ ἀπὸ τοῦδε οἵ τε Τοῦρκοι ἐκ παραγγελίας
greatest the(-time) and from this the both Turks from (an)-order
τοῦ προσβάλλειν περιστάδην ἀπέστησαν καὶ Ῥωμαῖοι
from-the attacking round-about stood-off and (the)-Romans
τοῦ ὑπεξέρχεσθαι λήγουσιν. ὀφθῆναι δὲ τῷ βασιλεῖ
from-the slipping-away cease to-be-seen and to-the emperor

μέλλων Γαβρᾶς βαθεῖαν καὶ βαρβαρικὴν ἀπονέμει τιμὴν
about Gabras deep and barbaric assigns honor
καὶ προσκύνησιν, καὶ ἅμα ἵππον προσάγει δῶρον Νισαῖον
and obeisance and at-once (a)-horse brings (as)-gift Nisaean
ἀργυροχάλινον, ἐκ τῶν φατνιζομένων εἰς πομπάς, καὶ
silver-bridled from the(-ones) stall-kept for processions and
περιμήκη ἀμφήκη μάχαιραν, καὶ λόγον κινεῖ περὶ σπονδῶν,
(a)-very-long two-edged sword and word moves about treaties
διομαλίσας πρότερον λύγοις ἁπαλοῖς τὴν ἐπὶ τοῖς συμβᾶσιν
having-smoothed first with-withies soft the at the events
ὑπεμφαινομένην ἀχθηδόνα τοῦ βασιλέως, καὶ καταστείλας
showing vexation of-the emperor and having-calmed
τὸ τοῦ πάθους φλεγμαῖνον οἷά τισιν ἐπᾴσμασιν, οἷς
the of-the passion inflamed(-part) as with-some incantations which
πρὸς τὸ οὖς ἐκείνῳ ὑπεψιθύρισε ῥήμασι. θεασάμενος δὲ
to the ear to-him he-whispered words having-seen and
Γαβρᾶς ἣν εἶχε στολάδα ἐπὶ τοῦ θώρακος βασιλεύς, τὴν
Gabras what he-had (a)-garment on the breastplate (the)-emperor in-the
χροιὰν χολοβάφινον, „οὐκ εὐσύμβολον τὸ χρῶμα τοῦτό"
color gall-dyed not well-omened the color this
φησιν, „ὦ βασιλεῦ, ἀλλὰ καὶ λίαν κατὰ τὴν ὥραν τοῦ
he-says O emperor but also very at the hour of-the
πολέμου ταῖς ἀγαθαῖς τύχαις ἀντιπρᾶττον." αὐτὸς δ' ἐπὶ
war to-the good fortunes working-against himself and at
τοῖς εἰρημένοις τούτοις βραχύ τι καὶ βεβιασμένον
the(-things) said these little something and forced
μειδιάσας, τὴν ἐπιθωράκιον στολὴν ἀποδὺς ἐκείνῳ
having-smiled the breastplate garment having-stripped-off to-him
δίδωσι πορφύρᾳ καὶ χρυσῷ διηνθισμένην. τὸν δ' ἵππον
gives with-purple and gold flowered the and horse
καὶ τὸ ξίφος δεξάμενος ἐγγράφους τίθεται τὰς σπονδάς,
and the sword having-received in-writing puts the treaties

καὶ τὴν χεῖρα τούτοις βραβεύει. ἐνῆν δὲ τῷ γραμματίῳ
and the hand to-these arbitrates was-in and in-the little-document
καὶ ἄλλα μὲν ὅσα ὁ καιρὸς ἐπέταττε κατὰ μηδὲν
also other(-things) indeed as-many-as the time ordered in nothing
ἀκριβολογούμενος, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τὸ καταστραφῆναι τὰ
being-exact but indeed also the to-be-demolished the
φρούρια τό τε Δορύλαιον καὶ τὸ Σούβλεον.
forts — both Dorylaion and — Soublaion
Οὕτως οὖν εὑρηκὼς τὸν βάρβαρον τὰ πρὸς εἰρήνην
thus then having-found the barbarian the(-things) for peace
ἀληθῶς λαλήσαντα καὶ μὴ ἐπ᾽ ὀργὴν δόλους διαλογιζόμενον,
truly having-spoken and not for anger tricks devising
αἱρεῖται δι᾽ ἄλλης ὁδοῦ πορευθῆναι καὶ μὴ τὴν αὐτὴν
he-chooses through another road to-go and not the same
ἀναμετρήσειν αὖθις ἣν ἐβάδισε πρότερον, ἐκκλῖναι τοὺς
to-measure-back again which he-had-gone before to-avoid the
πεσόντας βουλόμενος. οἱ δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ ἡγεμόνες κατ᾽ αὐτὸ
fallen wishing the and of-the road guides for this
τοῦτο μᾶλλον ἐπὶ τὴν ἐκεῖσε προῆγον, ἵν᾽ ὀφθαλμοῖς
very rather to the there led so-that with-eyes
οἰκείοις ἐπόψοιτο βασιλεὺς τὰ οἰκτρότατα ἐκεῖνα θεάματα.
own might-look-upon (the)-emperor the most-pitiable those sights
καὶ γὰρ ἦν ἀληθῶς δακρύων ἄξια τὰ ὁρώμενα, ἢ
and for was truly of-tears worthy the(-things) seen or
ἀληθέστερον εἰπεῖν μείζω τοῦ ἀνακλαυσθῆναι διὰ τὸ
more-truly to-say greater than-the to-be-wept-for because-of the
τοῦ κακοῦ μέγεθος. αἵ τε γὰρ φάραγγες εἰς ἰσόπεδον
of-the evil greatness the both for ravines to (a)-level
ἀνέβαινον, καὶ αἱ κοιλάδες εἰς κολωνοὺς ἀνηγείροντο, καὶ
rose and the valleys into mounds were-raised and
τὰ ἄλση τοῖς θνησιμαίοις ἐκεκάλυπτο. ἅπας δὲ κείμενος
the groves with-the dead had-been-covered every and lying(-man)

ἀποσυρεὶς ἦν τὸ δέρμα τῆς κεφαλῆς, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ τοὺς
stripped was (of)-the skin of-the head many and also (of)-the
ἰθυφάλλους ἀπεκαυλίσθησαν. ἐλέγετο δὲ τοὺς Πέρσας τοῦτο
genitals were-cut-off was-said and the Persians this
τεχνάσασθαι, ἵνα μὴ τοῦ ἀκροβύστου ὁ ἐμπερίτομος
to-have-contrived that not from-the uncircumcised the circumcised
διαστέλλοιτο καὶ ἡ νίκη οὕτως εἴη ἀμφιπαλὴς
might-be-distinguished and the victory thus might-be doubtful
καὶ ἀμφήριστος, ὡς ἐξ ἑκατέρων τῶν στρατοπέδων
and disputed as from both the armies
καταβληθέντων πολλῶν. οὐδεὶς τοίνυν χωρὶς δακρύων καὶ
having-been-thrown-down many no-one therefore without tears and
στεναγμῶν ἀντιπαρῆλθεν, ἀλλὰ μέγα πάντες ἀνέκλαυσαν καὶ
groans passed-by but greatly all wept and
ὀνομαστὶ τοὺς ἀπολωλότας ἑταίρους καὶ συνήθεις ἐκάλεσαν.
by-name the lost companions and familiars called
Ἀλλ' ἐνταῦθα τοῦ λόγου γενόμενος ἐκεῖνο ἔχω εἰπεῖν, ὡς
but here of-the narrative having-come that I-have to-say that
δυσφύλακτον τὸ μέλλον τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἡμῖν, καὶ οὐκ ἄν
hard-to-guard-against (is)-the future to-the men us and not —
τις ῥᾳδίως ἐξαναλύξῃ τὸ ἐπιόν, εἰ μή τῳ τὸ θεῖον
anyone easily may-escape the(-thing) coming if not for-someone the divine
ἐκ λιπαρίας ἱλεωθὲν ἀπώσαιτο τὰ δεινὰ ἢ ἐκ τούτου εἰς
from importunity propitiated should-push-away the terrors or from this to
τοῦτο μετακλινεῖ, καταμιγνύον τὸ τῆς κινήσεως ἀκραιφνὲς
that will-incline mixing-down the of-the movement unmixed
καὶ τῷ φιλανθρώπῳ καπηλεῦον τὸ ἄκρατον. βασιλεὺς
and with-the humane adulterating the undiluted (the)-emperor
γὰρ ἡνίκα ἦν κατὰ Περσῶν ἐκστρατεύειν προθέμενος,
for when he-was against Persians to-campaign having-purposed
ἐδόκει καθ' ὕπνους ὁρᾶν ὡς εἰς στρατηγίδα νῆα ἐμβὰς
seemed in sleeps to-see that into (a)-general's ship having-embarked

αὐτός τε καὶ συχνοὶ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων τὴν Προποντίδα
himself both and many of-the intimates the Propontis
ἀνελέγετο, αἴφνης δὲ συμπεσεῖν τὰ ἐξ Εὐρώπης καὶ Ἀσίας
was-coasting suddenly and to-clash the from Europe and Asia
ὄρη, ὡς ἀφανισθῆναι μὲν τῆς νηὸς θραυσθείσης
mountains so-that to-vanish indeed the ship having-been-shattered
τὸ ἐμπλέον ἅπαν, αὐτὸν δὲ μόλις ἐκδοθῆναι τῇ χέρσῳ
the(-crew) sailing-in all him and barely to-be-delivered to-the dry-land
ταῖς χερσὶ νηχόμενον. καθ' ἣν δὲ ἡμέραν τῶν ἐπισφαλῶν
with-the hands swimming on which and day the precarious
ἐκείνων ἐπέβαινε τρίβων, ἀνήρ τις προσελθὼν αὐτῷ
those he-entered paths man some having-approached him
δίγλωττος, τὸ γένος Ῥωμαῖος, τοὐπίκλην Μαυρόπουλος,
bilingual in-the race Roman by-surname Mavropoulos
δόξαι οἱ ἔφατο κατ' ὄναρ τὸν ἐκ τοῦ Κύρου παρώνυμον
to-seem to-him he-said in (a)-dream the from — Kyros named
ναὸν εἰσελθεῖν, ἐν δὲ τῷ ἱλεοῦσθαί οἱ τὴν εἰκόνα
church to-enter in and the to-propitiate to-him the icon
τῆς θεομήτορος φωνὴν ἐξικνουμένην ἐκεῖθεν ἐνωτισθῆναι,
of-the Mother-of-God (a)-voice reaching thence to-hear
λέγουσαν ὡς „ἀρτίως ἐν μεγίστοις μάλιστα κινδύνοις ὁ
saying that just-now in greatest especially dangers (is)-the
βασιλεύς, καὶ τίς ἀπελεύσεταί μοι τούτῳ συνέριθος;"
emperor and who will-go-away for-me for-this-one (as)-helper
εἰρηκότος δέ τινος ἀοράτως „ἀπελθέτω Γεώργιος" „νωθὴς
having-said and someone invisibly let-go George sluggish
οὗτος" εἰπεῖν, κἀκείνου δὲ πάλιν ἐπενεγκόντος „ἀπίτω
this(-one) to-say and-that(-one) and again having-added let-go
Θεόδωρος" καὶ πρὸς τοῦτον ἀπανήνασθαι, τέλος δὲ
Theodore also to this(-one) to-refuse (at-the)-end and

μετὰ περιαλγείας φθέγξασθαι ὡς οὐδεὶς προφθάσει τὸ
with grief to-utter that nobody will-anticipate the
φυόμενον ἐκείνῳ κακόν. καὶ ταῦτα μὲν οὕτω.
growing for-him evil and these(-things) indeed thus

VI · THE RETURN AND THE RAIDS

The Turks harass the retreating army. Manuel's messengers to the City liken him to Romanos Diogenes and boast of the treaty; he demolishes Soublaion but not Dorylaion, quoting the Pythia's line that death awaits the oath-keeper too and leaving out the lines on perjury's punishment. The sultan sends Atapakos with twenty-four thousand men to raid the Maeander valley and the coast, taking Tralleis and other towns.

Μετὰ δὲ τὸ ὑποκαταβῆναι τὰς δυσχωρίας ἐνέκειντο
after and the to-come-down-from the rough-places pressed
καὶ πάλιν οἱ Πέρσαι Ῥωμαίοις ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν
also again the Persians on-(the)-Romans from the rear
ἐπιφαινόμενοι· μεταμέλῳ γὰρ ἐλέγετο πληγῆναι τὸν
appearing by-repentance for was-said to-have-been-struck the
Πέρσην ὅτι τὸ ἐν χερσὶ παρῆκε θήραμα, κἀντεῦθεν
Persian that the in hands he-let-go prey and-from-here
ἐνδοῦναι τοῖς οἰκείοις ἐκεῖνα ἐπιοῦσιν ἐνδείκνυσθαι
to-have-allowed to-the own(-men) those(-things) attacking to-show
ὅσα καὶ πρὸ τῶν σπονδῶν ἐξῆν διαπράττεσθαι. οὐ
as-many-as also before the treaties was-possible to-do not
πανσυδὶ δὲ καὶ ὡς ἡνίκα τὰ δυσέμβολα χωρία Ῥωμαῖοι
with-all-their-force and and as when the hard-to-invade places (the)-Romans
διήρχοντο, οἱ Τοῦρκοι παρείποντο, ἀλλὰ κατὰ διαλειπούσας
went-through the Turks followed but by intermittent
συμμορίας ἐπηκολούθουν· οἱ γὰρ κράτιστοι καὶ πλεῖστοι
companies they-followed the for strongest and most

ταῖς τῶν σκύλων ὠφελείαις ἔμφορτοι γενόμενοι τῆς
with-the of-the spoils gains laden having-become the(-road)
οἴκαδε φερούσης ἥψαντο. πλὴν καὶ οἱ παρεπόμενοι
homeward leading touched however also the(-ones) following
ἐκεῖνοι πολλοὺς διέφθειρον, καὶ τούτους μάλιστα ὁπόσοι
those many destroyed and these especially as-many-as
τραυματίαι τε καὶ ἀπόμαχοι, καίπερ τοῦ βασιλέως τοὺς
wounded both and unfit-for-war although the emperor the
πολεμικοὺς τῶν ἡγεμόνων καὶ δραστηρίους οὐραγεῖν
war-like of-the commanders and energetic to-guard-the-rear
ἐπιτάξαντος. ὡς δὲ κατὰ τὰς Χώνας παρεγένοντο, ἄσμενοι
having-ordered as and at — Chonai they-arrived gladly
ἐκεῖσε τὸ γόνυ ἔκαμψαν, ὡς οὐκέτι τοὺς πολεμίους
there the knee bent as no-longer the enemies
ὀψόμενοι. βασιλεῖ δὲ καὶ τούτου ἐμέλησεν, ἑκάστῳ
going-to-see to-(the)-emperor and also this was-a-care to-each
καχεκτοῦντι στατῆρα διαδοῦναι ἀργύρεον, νοσοκομίας
being-in-ill-health (a)-stater to-distribute silver of-nursing
ἐφόδιον πρόσκαιρον. καταβὰς δὲ εἰς Φιλαδέλφειαν
(a)-provision temporary having-gone-down and to Philadelphia
ἡμέρας τινὰς ἐκεῖσε διέτριψε, τὴν τοῦ σώματος διάθεσιν
days some there he-spent the of-the body condition
ἀνακτώμενος, καθῃρημένην οἷς ἐπεπόνθει κατὰ τὸν
recovering reduced by-what he-had-suffered in the
πόλεμον. προεκπέμψας δ' ἀγγέλους τὰ συμβεβηκότα ταῦτα
war having-sent-ahead and messengers the events these
τοῖς Κωνσταντινουπολίταις παρίστα, νῦν μὲν ταυτοπαθῆ
to-the Constantinopolitans presented now indeed of-the-same-experience
πως ἑαυτὸν Ῥωμανῷ τῷ Διογένει κατονομάζων, ἐπεὶ
somehow himself with-Romanos the Diogenes naming since
καὶ οὗτος ὁ βασιλεὺς κατὰ τῶν Τούρκων ἐξενεγκών
also this the emperor against the Turks having-brought-out

ποτε πόλεμον τό τε πολὺ τῆς στρατιᾶς ἀπεβάλετο
once war the both greater-part of-the army lost
καὶ αὐτὸς συλληφθεὶς ἀπήχθη αἰχμάλωτος, νῦν δὲ τὰς
and himself having-been-seized was-led-away (a)-captive now and the
μετὰ τοῦ σουλτάνου σπονδὰς ὑπεξαίρων, καὶ κάτωθεν
with the sultan treaties exalting and from-below
τῆς ἑαυτοῦ σημαίας μεγαλορρημονῶν αὐτὰς περατῶσαι,
the his-own banner boasting them to-have-concluded
ἀνέμῳ ἀναπεπταμένης καὶ πρὸς τὸ τῶν ἀντιπάλων
by-(the)-wind spread and toward the of-the opponents
ἀφορώσης μέτωπον ὡς φόβον ἀντιπίπτειν καὶ τρόμον
looking front so-that fear to-fall-against and trembling
αὐτοῖς. οὐ μὴν ἀλλὰ τὸ μὲν Σούβλεον ἐπιπαριὼν
on-them not indeed but — indeed Soublaion passing-by
κατὰ τὸ σουλτάνῳ δοκοῦν αὐτὸς καθαιρεῖ, τὸ δέ γε
according-to the to-(the)-sultan seeming himself demolishes — and at-least
Δορύλαιον οὐδαμοῦ. ὅθεν στείλας ὁ σουλτάνος πρεσβείαν
Dorylaion nowhere whence having-sent the sultan (an)-embassy
τῶν τε συνθηκῶν αὐτὸν ἀνεμίμνησκε, καὶ θαυμάζειν
of-the both covenants him reminded and to-wonder
ἔλεγεν ὅπως μὴ ἐς δεῦρο καθῄρηται τὸ Δορύλαιον. ὁ
said how not to here has-been-demolished — Dorylaion he
δὲ ὀλίγα τοῖς κατ᾽ ἀνάγκην γενομένοις τὸν νοῦν
and little to-the(-things) by necessity having-happened the mind
προσέχειν εἰπών, κατεδαφίσαι δὴ τὸ Δορύλαιον οὐδ᾽
to-attend having-said to-raze indeed — Dorylaion not-even
ἄκροις ὠσὶ παρεδέχετο, ἐκεῖνο ἀτεχνῶς τῶν τῆς Πυθίας
with-tips-of ears received that simply of-the of-the Pythia
πρὸς τὸν Ἐπικυδίδην ἐπῶν ἀποτεμόμενος καὶ αἰνέσας
to — son-of-Epikydes verses having-cut-off and having-approved
„ὄμνυ, ἐπεὶ θάνατός γε καὶ εὔορκον μένει ἄνδρα,"
swear since death at-least also (the)-oath-keeping awaits man

τὰ δὲ ἐφεξῆς, ἅ φασιν οὕτω, παρεπισχών, „ἀλλ'
the and following(-verses) which they-say thus having-held-back but
ὅρκου παῖς ἐστὶν ἀνώνυμος· οὐδ' ἔπι χεῖρες οὐδὲ πόδες,
of-Oath (a)-child is nameless nor on(-it) hands nor feet
κραιπνὸς δὲ μετέρχεται, εἰσόκε πᾶσαν συμμάρψας ὀλέσῃ
swift and pursues until whole having-seized he-destroys
γενεὴν καὶ οἶκον ἅπαντα. ἀνδρὸς δ' εὐόρκου γενεὴ
(the)-race and house all of-(a)-man and oath-keeping (the)-race
μετόπισθεν ἀμείνων," ὁ δέ γε Πέρσης μοῖραν ἀπόλεκτον
afterward (is)-better the and at-least Persian (a)-part picked
τῆς ὅλης αὐτοῦ στρατιᾶς ἀποδιελών, εἰς χιλιάδας εἴκοσι
of-the whole his army having-separated to thousands twenty
πρὸς ταῖς τέσσαρσι μετρουμένην, καὶ στρατηγὸν αὐτῇ
besides the four measured and (a)-general over-it
τὸν Ἀτάπακον ἐπιστήσας πέμπει τὰς ἄχρι θαλάττης
— Atapakos having-set sends the to (the)-sea
πόλεις καὶ χώρας πορθήσοντα, φείσασθαι μηδαμῇ μηδεμιᾶς
cities and lands going-to-sack to-spare in-no-way none
ἐπισκήψας, ἀποκομίσαι τε αὐτῷ ὕδωρ θαλάττιον καὶ
having-enjoined to-bring both to-him water of-the-sea and
κώπην καὶ ψάμαθον. ὁ δὲ τὰ ἐπιτεταγμένα διδοὺς
(an)-oar and sand he and the(-things) ordered giving
πέρατι, τὰς Μαιανδρικὰς ἐπιὼν πόλεις ἐδήου οἰκτρῶς,
to-end the Maeandrian attacking cities ravaged pitiably
ἐσβολὰς ἀκηρύκτους καὶ ἐφόδους ἀπροόπτους τιθέμενος.
invasions undeclared and attacks unforeseen making
παρεστήσατο δὲ καὶ τὰς Τράλλεις τὴν πόλιν καὶ τὴν κατὰ
won-over and also — Tralleis the city and the in
Φρυγίαν Ἀντιόχειαν, τὰ Λοῦμά τε καὶ τὸν Πεντάχειρα καὶ
Phrygia Antioch — Louma both and — Pentacheir and

ἕτερ᾽ ἄττα ἐρύματα κατάκρας ἑλὼν ἐσκύλευσεν. ὁδῷ
other some fortifications utterly having-taken plundered on-(the)-road
δὲ προϊὼν καὶ τὰς παραθαλαττιδίους ἐλυμήνατο χώρας.
and advancing also the seaside ruined lands

VII · THE TURKISH DEFEAT ON THE MAEANDER

Manuel sends John Vatatzes, Constantine Doukas, and Michael Aspietes against Atapakos. They ambush the Turks at the crossing of the Maeander; the Turks are drowned or slain, and Atapakos is killed by an Alan. Aspietes is killed when his horse, struck in the face, throws him into the river.

Βασιλεὺς δὲ ταῦτα ἐνωτισάμενος ἄλλαις τε πλείσταις
(the)-emperor and these(-things) having-heard other both very-many
μεθόδοις ἐχρήσατο καὶ δὴ καὶ τῷ μὴ ἐπὶ βυκάναις
methods used and indeed also the not with horns
καὶ σάλπιγγι τῆς σκηνῆς προϊέναι, „οὐ χρεία" λέγων
and trumpet from-the tent to-go-forth not (is)-need saying
„τοιούτων ἄρτι τινῶν, ἀλλὰ τόξων καὶ δοράτων, ἵνα τοὺς
of-such now some but of-bows and spears that the(-ones)
μισοῦντας ἡμᾶς, οἳ (κατὰ Δαβὶδ εἰπεῖν) ἤχησαν καὶ ἦραν
hating us who as David to-say roared and raised
κεφαλάς, τῶν Ῥωμαϊκῶν ἀποπεμψώμεθα χωρῶν." καὶ
heads from-the Roman we-may-send-away lands and
αὐτὸς μὲν τὴν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους ἀπᾶραι οὐδαμῶς
himself indeed the(-march) against the enemies to-set-out in-no-way
ἐδικαίωσε, στέλλει δὲ τὸν ἀνεψιὸν Ἰωάννην τὸν Βατάτζην,
deemed-right sends and the nephew John the Vatatzes
τῷ δραστηρίῳ ἐν δέοντι χρώμενον, καὶ τὸν δούκαν
the energy in need using and — Doukas
Κωνσταντῖνον, νεανίαν ἄρτι ὑπηνήτην καὶ κατὰ τῶν φυτῶν
Constantine (a)-youth just with-first-beard and like the plants

τὰ εὐγενῆ καρπογονεῖν πρὸ ὥρας ἐπαγγελλόμενον, ἔτι
the noble to-bear-fruit before (the)-season promising still
δὲ τὸν Ἀσπιέτην Μιχαήλ, πολλὰ παραινέσας αὐτοῖς σὺν
and — Aspietes Michael much having-exhorted them with
εὐβουλίᾳ καὶ τάξει τὸ πραχθησόμενον ἅπαν ποιεῖν, πρὸ δὲ
good-counsel and order the to-be-done all to-do before and
τούτων μὴ προσπελάσαι παντάπασι τοῖς βαρβάροις, εἰ μὴ
these not to-approach at-all the barbarians if not
πείρᾳ γνοῖεν ἀκριβεῖ πρότερον ὁπόσοι εἶεν τὸ
by-experience they-should-know exact first how-many they-were in-the
πλῆθος καὶ ὡς νικῷεν αὐτοὺς μαχεσάμενοι. καὶ Πέρσαι
number and that they-would-conquer them having-fought and Persians
μὲν πέρας τῆς ἐφόδου τὴν θάλατταν θέμενοι μετὰ πλείστης
indeed (as)-end of-the attack the sea having-set with very-much
ὅτι λείας ἀνέλυον, κἀκεῖνα κείροντες οἷς κατὰ τὴν κάθοδον
as booty returned also-those ravaging which on the descent
οὐ προσέβαλον· οἱ δ' ἀμφὶ τὸν Βατάτζην τὰς δυνάμεις
not they-had-attacked they and around — Vatatzes the forces
ἀναλαβόντες, ὅσαις τε αὐτοὺς ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐφωδίασε καὶ
having-taken-up as-many-as both them the emperor supplied and
ὅσαι κατὰ πάροδον ξυνελόγησαν, ἤλαυνον εὐθὺ τοῦ
as-many-as along (the)-way they-collected drove straight-to —
Ὑελίου καὶ τοῦ Λειμμόχειρος τῶν πολιχνίων, καθ' ὃ περὶ
Hyelion and — Leimmocheir the townlets at which about
ποταμῷ τῷ Μαιάνδρῳ πάλαι ποτὲ γέφυρα περιήγετο.
(the)-river the Maeander of-old once (a)-bridge was-carried-round
ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ σκοποί, οὓς ἄρα ὁ Βατάτζης κατέστησε κατὰ
when and the scouts whom then — Vatatzes had-set on
πάσας τὰς ὁποιοῦν φερούσας ὁδούς, ἀπήγγελλον τὴν
all the whichever-way leading roads announced the
τῶν Τούρκων ἀνάζευξιν καὶ ὡς οὐ πρόσω ἤδη εἰσὶν
of-the Turks return and that not far already they-are

ἐφορμῶντες, εἰς δύο ἀποτμηματίσας τὴν στρατιὰν τὸ μὲν
pressing-on into two having-cut the army the indeed
πλέον ταύτης εἰς λόχους καθίστησι κατὰ τὰς ὁδοὺς ἃς
greater-part of-it into ambushes sets along the roads which
ἤμελλε τέμνειν τὸ πολέμιον, τὸ δὲ λοιπὸν ἐς τὰς μετὰ
was-about to-cut the enemy the and rest to the after
τὴν παλαιὰν γέφυραν ἐκβάσεις τοῦ ποταμοῦ διασπείρας
the old bridge outlets of-the river having-scattered
προσμένειν ἐκέλευε μερίδος τινὸς ἀπὸ τῶν Τούρκων μετὰ
to-await he-ordered of-(a)-part some of the Turks with
τῆς αἰχμαλωσίας περαίωσιν, καὶ τηνικαῦτα μηδ' ὅλως
the captivity crossing and then not-even at-all
κατορρωδεῖν ἀλλὰ θαρραλέως προσυπαντᾶν. καὶ ὁ μέν,
to-dread but boldly to-meet and he indeed
ὡς ἄμεινόν οἱ δέδοκτο, οὕτω δὴ τὸ οἰκεῖον διεσκεύασε
as better to-him it-had-seemed thus indeed the own arranged
στράτευμα· οἱ δὲ Τοῦρκοι ὡς εἴχοντο τοῦ διαβαίνειν,
army the and Turks as they-held-to the crossing
ἐξ ὑπερδεξίων βαλλόμενοι εἰς τὸν ποταμὸν συνωθοῦντο
from higher-ground being-struck into the river were-thrust
καὶ ἀπεπνίγοντο. ὁ δέ γε Ἀτάπακας μετὰ τῶν ἀμφ'
and were-drowned — and at-least Atapakos with the(-men) around
αὐτὸν εὐοπλοτάτων εἰς λόχον συσπειραθεὶς καὶ συστραφεὶς
him best-armed into (a)-body having-gathered and having-rallied
ἀγχωμάλως Ῥωμαίοις συμπλέκεται, καὶ τὸ ἀντίμαχον
evenly with-(the)-Romans grapples and the opposing(-side)
ἐντεῦθεν κακῶσαι βουλόμενος καὶ τοῖς ὁμογενέσιν ἐκεχειρίαν
thence to-harm wishing and to-the kinsmen respite
διδόναι τῆς τοῦ ποταμοῦ περαιώσεως, ὡς μὴ φθάνειν
to-give of-the of-the river crossing so-that not to-anticipate
ἑκάστου προθυμουμένου βραδεῖα μὲν ἡ διάβασις γίνοιτο,
each being-eager slow indeed the crossing might-be

δεινὴ δὲ ἡ τῶν σφαλλομένων ἀπώλεια. ἐφ᾽ ἱκανὸν
terrible and the of-the(-ones) stumbling destruction for sufficient(-time)
μὲν οὖν ἀντισχὼν ἐκθύμως ἐμάχετο, ἀνδρείου φρονήματος
indeed then having-held-out furiously he-fought of-manly spirit
καὶ χειρὸς γενναιοτάτης ἔργα δεικνύς. ὡς δὲ μάθοι καὶ
and of-hand most-noble deeds showing as and he-learned also
κατὰ τὴν περαίαν τοῦ ποταμοῦ Ῥωμαίους ἐφεστάναι καὶ
on the opposite-bank of-the river (the)-Romans to-stand and
ἀναιρεῖν τὸ διαβαῖνον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος,
to-kill the(-part) crossing of-the Persian army
κατακλᾶται τὸ πρόθυμον, καὶ τοῦ ἀκμαίου ἐκείνου
is-broken the eagerness and from-the vigorous that
μεθαρμοσθεὶς λήματος τὴν σωτηρίαν ἑαυτῷ διατίθησι,
having-been-changed spirit the safety for-himself arranges
καὶ δὴ τὴν προκειμένην παραλλάξας πορείαν ἀνωτέρω
and indeed the lying-before having-changed march higher-up
μεταχωρεῖ, ἀναδιφῶν ἑτέραν περαίωσιν. ὡς δὲ ἄπορος ἦν
he-moves searching-for another crossing as and impassable was
ὁ ποταμὸς πανταχόθεν, τοὺς ἐπιδιώκοντας δεδιώς, τὴν
the river everywhere the pursuers fearing the
ἀσπίδα ὑποθεὶς τῷ ὕδατι ὡς κελητίῳ ταύτῃ ἐχρῆτο,
shield having-put-under to-the water as (a)-skiff this he-used
ἀρίστως ἀντικαταστὰς τῷ τῆς ἀνάγκης ὀξεῖ. καὶ τοίνυν
excellently having-stood-against the of-the necessity sharpness and therefore
τῇ μὲν λαιᾷ τὸν ἵππον κατέχων παρανηχόμενον, τῇ
with-the indeed left(-hand) the horse holding swimming-alongside with-the
δεξιᾷ δὲ τὴν σπάθην γυμνὴν δεδωκώς, καὶ προσποιῶν
right and the sword bare having-given and making
ἐν τῷ παραυτίκα ταύτην εἰς οἴακα, ἐσάλευεν οὕτω κατὰ
on the instant it into (a)-rudder he-swayed(-it) thus by
βραχὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ διαπλέων τὸ πέλαγος. οὐ μὴν ἐς τέλος
little of-the river sailing-across the sea not indeed to (the)-end

ἐξέπλευσε τὸ θανεῖν. εἰς γὰρ τὸ ἀντιπέραν ἤδη γενόμενος
he-sailed-out-of the dying to for the opposite(-bank) already having-come
ἐπί τι γήλοφον ἄνεισιν, ἑαυτὸν ὅστις ἐστὶν εὐφημῶν καὶ
onto some hillock he-goes-up himself who he-is proclaiming and
μεγάλης γλώττης κόμπῳ χρώμενος, ὅπως συναχθῶσι καὶ
of-great tongue boast using so-that might-be-gathered also
ἕτεροι Τοῦρκοι μετ' αὐτοῦ· οὐδενὸς δὲ τῶν ἐπισήμων καὶ
other Turks with him nobody and of-the notable and
αὐτὸν εἰδότων Ῥωμαίων προσπελάσαντος, ἀλλά τινος τῶν
him knowing Romans having-approached but some of-the
ἐπικούρων Ἀλανῶν ἐπιδραμόντος ὅπου τὴν καινὴν εἰρεσίαν
auxiliary Alans having-run-up where the new rowing
σχάζειν ἔμελλεν, ἀναιρεῖται ἀμφιστόμῳ κνώδοντι. ἐκ δὲ
to-rest he-was-about is-killed by-two-edged sword from and
τούτου ἀκόσμως τε Πέρσης ἕκαστος ἀπεδίδρασκε καὶ
this disorderly both Persian each ran-away and
Μαίανδρος τοὺς πλείονας εἰσεδέχετο, ὡς βραχεῖς ἐκ
(the)-Maeander the more received so-that few out-of
τῶν τοσούτων χιλιάδων διασωθῆναι. καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἔργον,
the so-many thousands to-be-saved and this the deed
εἴπερ τι ἄλλο, ἀνέρρωσε μὲν τὰ Ῥωμαίων πράγματα,
if anything else strengthened indeed the of-(the)-Romans affairs
καθεῖλε δὲ τὰ Περσῶν φρυάγματα· ὡς γὰρ οὐ δεξομένων
pulled-down and the of-Persians snortings as for not going-to-receive
σφᾶς τῶν Ῥωμαίων γεγηθότες ἐπῄεσαν, καὶ ὡς πᾶσαν
them the Romans rejoicing they-came-on and as all
ἀφανίσοντες μικροῦ τὴν Φρυγίαν καὶ φθεροῦντες ὁπόσην
going-to-destroy by-little — Phrygia and going-to-ravage as-much-as
ἔπεισι Μαίανδρος ἀγκυλορρόας, ἐσβάλλων εἰς θάλασσαν.
comes-to (the)-Maeander crooked-flowing emptying into (the)-sea
πίπτει δὲ κατὰ τοῦτον τὸν πόλεμον Ἀσπιέτης ἐξ αἰτίας
falls and in this the war Aspietes from cause

τοιᾶσδε. Πέρσης ἀντικαταστὰς Ἀσπιέτῃ, πλήττειν οὐκ
such (a)-Persian having-stood-against Aspietes to-strike not
ἔχων κατὰ τοῦ σώματος (τὰ γὰρ ὅπλα ἦν ἰσχυρὰ καὶ
being-able on the body the for arms were strong and
ἡ ἀσπὶς ἐς πόδας καθήκουσα) ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ᾧ ἦν
the shield to (the)-feet reaching on the horse on-which was
Ἀσπιέτης ἔποχος θυμῷ φέρεται· καὶ δὴ ὡς ἐπλήγη
Aspietes mounted with-wrath rushes and indeed as it-was-struck
καιρίαν κατὰ τῶν προσώπων ὁ ἵππος, εἰς τοὐπίσω
(a)-mortal(-blow) on the face the horse to the-back
τε ἀναχάζεται, καὶ τοὺς πρόσθεν πόδας μετεωρίσας
both shies and the front feet having-raised
ἐπικαταβάλλει τὸν ἀναβάτην εἰς τὸν ποταμόν.
throws-down the rider into the river

VIII · THE LAST CAMPAIGNS

Manuel attacks the Turks at Lakerion and Panasion; Andronikos Angelos flees from the Turks at Charax, and only Manuel's love for his family saves him from disgrace. Niketas' kinsman, a deacon of Chonai, carries his booty calmly through the rout. Manuel rides by night through Bithynia to relieve Klaudioupolis, sleeping on the ground, and the Turks flee.

Ἐπὶ δὲ τῷδε τῷ ἔργῳ καὶ ἕτερον ὁ βασιλεὺς ἀνύσαι
on and this the deed also another the emperor to-accomplish
προθέμενος, ἔξεισι κατὰ μέρος κατὰ τῶν ἐν Λακερίῳ καὶ
having-purposed goes-out in turn against the in Lakerion and
Πανασίῳ κατασκηνούντων Περσῶν. καὶ δὴ ἀναστήσας
Panasion encamping Persians and indeed having-dislodged
τοὺς κατὰ τὸ Πανάσιον, τοὺς ἐν Λακερίῳ μέτεισιν
the(-ones) at — Panasion the(-ones) in Lakerion pursues

ἔπειτα. πρὸ δὲ τοῦ τῶν χώρων ἐντὸς γενέσθαι καθ'
then before and the the places within to-come in
οὓς ηὐλίζοντο οἱ πολέμιοι, στέλλει τὸν Λαοδικέα Κατίδην
which encamped the enemies he-sends the Laodikeian Katides
ἐν οἷς ἐστὶ τὰ τῶν Τούρκων κατασκεψόμενον
in what-things are the(-things) of-the Turks going-to-spy-out
καὶ τάχος ἐκείνῳ ἀπαγγελοῦντα τὸ ὁραθέν. ὁ δὲ
and quickly to-him going-to-report the(-thing) seen he and
διασοβεῖ τοὺς Πέρσας, ἐς οὓς ἐξώρμα ὁ βασιλεὺς ὡς εἰς
scares the Persians at whom rushed the emperor as to
λείαν ἑτοίμην καὶ ὅτι ἐγγύτατον θήραμα, καὶ τὴν αὐτοῦ
booty ready and as nearest prey and the his
παρουσίαν δήλην ἐκείνοις τίθησι, διαθροῆσαι θέλων τοὺς
presence plain to-them makes to-alarm wishing the
Πέρσας τῷ βασιλέως ὀνόματι. καὶ τῷ μὲν χαλεπήνας
Persians by-the emperor's name and to-him indeed having-been-angry
ἐκεῖνος καὶ πρὸς ὀργὴν ἐξενεχθεὶς δίκην ἐπέθηκε τὴν
he and to wrath carried-away (as)-penalty imposed the
ἐκτομὴν τῆς ῥινός· αὐτὸς δὲ μηδὲ βραχύ τι γοῦν
cutting-off of-the nose himself and not-even little at-all at-any-rate
ἀναδύς, ἀλλ' ἐπιταχύνας ὡς εἶχεν, οὐ κατόπιν ἥκει
having-drawn-back but having-hastened as he-was not behind comes
καὶ οὕτω τῶν πολεμίων. ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄλλοτέ ποτε δι'
and thus the enemies but also at-other-time once through
Ἀνδρονίκου τοῦ Ἀγγέλου τοῖς Τούρκοις ἐπέθετο, κἂν οὐχ
Andronikos the Angelos the Turks he-attacked even-if not
ὡς ἄριστα καὶ τότε τὰ κατὰ τὸν πόλεμον αὐτῷ
as best also then the(-things) in the war for-him
ὑπηντίασε. τῷ γὰρ ἀνδρὶ τούτῳ τῶν ἑῴων ταγμάτων ὅ
turned-out to-the for man this of-the eastern units what
τί περ κράτιστον παραδούς, καὶ συνεκπέμψας αὐτῷ τὸν
— — strongest having-given and having-sent-with him —

Καντακουζηνὸν Μανουήλ, ἄνδρα περὶ τὰς πράξεις ἀγαθὸν
Kantakouzenos Manuel (a)-man in the deeds good
καὶ γενναῖον, καὶ ἑτέρους τῶν ἐπὶ δόξης Ῥωμαίων, κατὰ
and noble and others of-the in glory Romans against
τῶν ἐν τῷ Χάρακι Τούρκων ἀφίησι· κεῖται δὲ ὁ Χάραξ
the in — Charax Turks he-sends-off lies and — Charax
οὗτος μεταξὺ Λάμπης καὶ τοῦ τῆς Γραὸς Γάλακτος.
this between Lampe and — the Old-Woman's Milk
τὰς δυνάμεις τοίνυν ἀναλαβὼν Ἀνδρόνικος πρῶτα μὲν
the forces therefore having-taken-up Andronikos first indeed
εἰς τὸ τῆς Γραὸς παρεμβάλλει Γάλα, ἔπειτα δ' ἐκεῖσε
to — the Old-Woman's encamps Milk then and there
τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὴν ἄλλην ἀποσκευὴν καταθέμενος
the beasts-of-burden and the other baggage having-deposited
ἄνεισιν ἐς νέωτα πρὸς τὸν Χάρακα, κούφως ὡπλισμένην
goes-up for the-morrow to — Charax lightly armed
ἔχων τὴν στρατιάν. οὐ γενναῖον δέ τι δράσας οὐδ'
having the army not noble and anything having-done nor
ἄξιον τοῦ τοσούτου στρατεύματος, ὃ τηνικαῦτα ἐπήγετο,
worthy of-the so-great army which then he-led
ἀλλὰ συμμετρήσας τὸ ἔργον βοσκημάτων ἁρπαγαῖς καὶ
but having-measured the deed of-cattle by-seizures and
ποιμνίταις ὀλίγοις Τούρκοις, περιδεὴς ἐκεῖθεν ἀπονοστεῖ.
shepherd few Turks terrified thence returns
ἐπιφανέντων γὰρ ἐκ τῶν ὄπισθεν νυκτὸς βαρβάρων
having-appeared for from the rear by-night barbarians
τινῶν καὶ βοησάντων, μὴ ἀναμείνας ἢ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν
some and having-shouted not having-waited either the multitude of-the
ἐπιόντων κατεξετάσαι ἢ τοὺς ὑπ' αὐτὸν εἰς μάχην
attackers to-examine or the(-men) under him into battle
καταστησάμενος, ἀνεὶς τὸν ὑπεκφέροντα ἵππον καὶ
having-set having-loosed the carrying-(him)-off horse both

χερσὶ καὶ ποσὶ καὶ φωνῇ πρὸς τὸ φέρεσθαι ὀξέως
with-hands and feet and voice to the to-be-borne swiftly
διήγειρεν, οὐ τὴν ἐς στρατήγιον φέρουσαν ὁδεύων ἀλλ'
he-roused not the(-road) to (the)-camp leading traveling but
εὐθὺ τῆς τῶν Χωνῶν ὡρμηκὼς πόλεως. ἰδὼν δὲ
straight-for the — of-Chonai having-rushed city having-seen and
τὸν ἵππον καὶ πορρωτέρω χωρεῖν ἔχοντα οὐδ' ἐκεῖσε
the horse also farther to-go being-able not-even there
τὸν δρόμον ἵστησιν, ἀλλ' ἐς τὴν ἐν Φρυγίᾳ Λαοδίκειαν
the course he-stops but to — in Phrygia Laodikeia
ὅλον συντείνει τὸ πρόθυμον. τὸ δὲ στράτευμα πρὸς τὴν
whole he-strains the eagerness the and army at the
ἀθρόαν τοῦ ἡγεμόνος ἀφάντωσιν ἐκταραχθὲν διαλύεται
sudden of-the commander vanishing thrown-into-confusion is-dissolved
τῆς συντάξεως καὶ σὺν οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ τρέπεται πρὸς
from-the formation and with no order turns to
φυγήν, τῶν θρεμμάτων καὶ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων ἀφέμενον.
flight the cattle and the captives having-let-go
τάχα δ' ἂν καὶ ἑαυτοῖς συμπεσόντες ἐμαχέσαντο
perhaps and — also with-themselves having-clashed would-have-fought
Ῥωμαῖοι νυκτὸς ἔτι οὔσης, εἰ μὴ ὁ Καντακουζηνὸς
(the)-Romans by-night still being if not — Kantakouzenos
Μανουὴλ ὡς ἐξ ἀντιπάλου συστὰς καὶ σπασάμενος
Manuel as from opposing(-side) having-stood-up and having-drawn
μάχαιραν ἔπαιε τῷ ταύτης πλατεῖ τοὺς δραπέτας,
(a)-sword struck with-the its flat the runaways
„στῆτε" λέγων· „οὐδένων ἐπικειμένων ποῖ φέρεσθε;" καὶ
stand saying nobody pressing where are-you-borne and
οὕτως ἔληξάν ποτε πρὸς μικρὸν τῆς ἀλόγου ἐκείνης
thus they-ceased at-last for (a)-little from-the irrational that
ἀπάρσεως καὶ τοῦ ὅλῳ ῥυτῆρι κατά τε πρανῶν κατά
departure and the with-whole rein down both slopes down

τε φαράγγων καὶ γηλόφων ἴεσθαι. πρὸς ἣν ἀκλεᾶ
both ravines and hillocks to-hasten at which inglorious
τοῦ Ἀνδρονίκου φυγὴν βαρυαλγήσας ὁ βασιλεὺς ἐγγὺς
— of-Andronikos flight having-been-grieved the emperor near
ἦλθε τοῦ διὰ τῶν ἀμφόδων τῆς πόλεως ἐκφαυλίσαι
came to-the through the streets of-the city to-disgrace
Ἀνδρόνικον γυναικείαν στολὴν περικείμενον. φιλοικεῖος δ'
Andronikos (a)-woman's robe wearing family-loving and
ὢν καὶ ἀεὶ ἐνδιδοὺς πρὸς τὸ αἷμα καθεῖλε τὸν χόλον,
being and always yielding to the blood he-put-down the wrath
καὶ ἄλλως μαθὼν ὡς βράχιστοι Ῥωμαίων ἐν τῷ
and otherwise having-learned that very-few of-(the)-Romans in the
πολέμῳ τούτῳ πεπτώκασιν. ἠρίστευσαν δὲ οὐδένες
war this have-fallen distinguished-themselves and none
κατὰ ταύτην τὴν ἔφοδον, οἷα τῆς ἐς τοὺς βαρβάρους
in this the attack as the to the barbarians
ἀνόδου γενομένης ὀξείας καὶ τῆς ἐς τοὐπίσω αὖθις ὀξυτέρας
ascent having-been swift and the to the-back again swifter
μεταχωρήσεως. Πέρσης δέ τις τηνικαῦτα τόπου ἀνάντους
withdrawal Persian and some then of-(a)-place steep
λαβόμενος κἀνταῦθα ὑφιζήσας πολλοὺς τῶν παριόντων
having-taken-hold and-there having-sat-down many of-the passing
Ῥωμαίων ἀνήρει, θανάσιμα πάντα καὶ κατάγοντα ἐς ᾅδου
Romans killed deadly all and leading-down to Hades
βέλεμνα πέμπων· διὰ γὰρ ἀσπίδος διήει καὶ θώρακος,
missiles sending through for shield it-went and breastplate
καὶ ἦσαν ἀμαιμάκετον κακόν. ἐπὶ τοῦτον πολλοὶ μὲν
and they-were (an)-irresistible evil against this(-man) many indeed
ὅσοι ἀρετῆς ἀντεποιοῦντο ἐπισυνέστησαν, καὶ ἀγχοτάτω
as-many-as to-virtue laid-claim stood-together and nearest
παραγενόμενοι ἔβαλλον βέλεσι καὶ ἔπειρον δόρασι, θυμῷ
having-come shot with-missiles and pierced with-spears with-anger

πολλῷ χρώμενοι. ὁ δὲ πυρριχίζων ἄντικρυς ἐξωρχεῖτο
much using he and dancing-the-war-dance outright danced-off
πάντα τὰ ἐς αὐτὸν φερόμενα βλήματα καὶ στροφάδην
all the at him borne missiles and whirling
τοὺς ὑπαντιάζοντας ἔκτεινεν, ἕως ὁ Ξηρὸς Μανουὴλ
the(-ones) meeting(-him) killed until — Xeros Manuel
ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου κατεπήδησε καὶ τὴν ἀσπίδα προβεβλημένος
from the horse leapt-down and the shield having-put-forward
ξιφήρης τὴν χεῖρα τῷ Πέρσῃ ἐπῆλθε, τὰ βέλη πάντα
sword-armed in-the hand at-the Persian came the missiles all
τῷ σάκει δεχόμενος, καὶ κατὰ κεφαλῆς καιρίαν
with-the shield receiving and on (the)-head (a)-mortal(-blow)
ἔπληξε, καὶ ἀνῄρηκεν. οὕτω δὲ τὸν Ξηρὸν ἀπέχοντα εὗρεν
struck and has-killed thus and — Xeros far found
ὁ Πέρσης τοῦ ἐκεῖνον ἀπεκτονέναι καὶ πρὸς τὴν αὐτοῦ
the Persian from-the him to-have-killed and to the his
περὶ τοῦ μὴ θανεῖν δέησιν ἀκαμπῆ καὶ σκληρὸν ἀληθῶς καὶ
about the not to-die entreaty unbending and hard truly and
ἀνένδοτον, ὡς καὶ δευτέραν πληγὴν ἐπὶ τῇ προτέρᾳ
unyielding so-that also (a)-second blow on-top-of the first
λαβεῖν οἷς καὶ παρακαίρια ἔβαζε, φιλανθρώπων τυχεῖν
to-receive at-which also untimely(-things) he-prattled humane(-things) to-obtain
δεόμενος ὢν αὐτὸς κακὸν ὀλέθριον ἦν.
begging to-whom himself (an)-evil deadly was
Τότε καὶ ἐμὸς συγγενής, τῷ κλήρῳ μὲν τῆς πόλεως
then also my kinsman among-the clergy indeed of-the city
κατειλεγμένος Χωνῶν, Λευίτης τὴν τάξιν, λήματος δ’
enrolled of-Chonai (a)-Levite in-the rank of-spirit and
ἀνδρείου πλήρης, συνανελθὼν τῷ λοιπῷ στρατεύματι
manly full having-gone-up-with the rest army
ἐς τὸν Χάρακα μετὰ σκευῆς πολεμικῆς, καὶ σκυλεύσας
to — Charax with gear war-like and having-plundered

εἴ τί που ἐφεῦρεν ἡ χεὶρ ἐν τοῖς τῶν Τούρκων
if anything somewhere found the hand in the of-the Turks
σκηνώμασιν, οὐκ ἀπεφορτίσατο κατ᾽ αὐτὸ τὸ δεινὸν τὰ
tents not unloaded in very the terror the
λάφυρα, ἀλλὰ ταῦτα φέρων, ἃ καὶ ἦσαν στολαὶ
spoils but these(-things) carrying which also were robes
Περσικαὶ πήρας ἐντὸς καὶ ὄϊς πηγεσίμαλλος, βάδην
Persian (a)-wallet within and (a)-sheep thick-fleeced at-a-walk
ἐπορεύετο, ἐπιστρέφων τὰς ἁπάντων ὄψεις εἰς ἑαυτόν,
went turning the of-all eyes toward himself
καὶ ὑπὸ μὲν τῶν ὡς ἀδεὴς ἐν τοῖς περιστατικοῖς καιροῖς
and by indeed some as fearless in the critical moments
εὐφημούμενος καὶ κορυφαῖος κρινόμενος ἄντικρυς τῶν
praised and chief judged outright of-the(-ones)
κατ᾽ ἐκεῖνο στρατευσάντων καιροῦ, ὑπὸ δὲ τῶν τωθαζόμενος
at that having-campaigned time by and others jeered
ὡς προβατίου ἀρνύμενος θάνατον. αὐτὸς μέντοι καὶ οὕτω
as for-(a)-little-sheep incurring death himself however also thus
τὴν ὁδὸν ἤνυεν, ὅπῃ παρείκοι, τοὺς δραπέτας βάλλων
the road completed where it-allowed the runaways pelting
ὀνείδεσιν ὡς μηδενὸς διώκοντος ἀγεννῶς ἀπαίροντας.
with-reproaches as nobody pursuing ignobly departing
Οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον χρόνῳ τὴν ἐκ Κλαυδίου Καίσαρος
not much and later in-time the from Claudius Caesar
παρώνυμον πόλιν οἱ Τοῦρκοι περικαθίσαντες πρῶτα μὲν
named city the Turks having-surrounded first indeed
οὐδὲ προελθεῖν ὅλως εἴων τοὺς ἀποτεταγμένους εἰς τὴν
not-even to-come-forth at-all allowed the assigned for the
ταύτης φρουρὰν Ῥωμαίους, ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ πολιορκεῖν
its garrison Romans then and also to-besiege
ἐπεβάλοντο, ὅθεν οἱ ἔσωθεν, εἰ μή τις αὐτοῖς
undertook whence the(-men) inside if not anyone them

ἐπαρήξειεν ἔξωθεν, σφᾶς τε αὐτοὺς καὶ τὴν πόλιν
should-help from-outside them both selves and the city
καταπροδώσειν ἠπείλουν, ὡς μὴ χρόνια λιμώττειν στέγοντες
would-betray threatened as not long to-starve enduring
ἔτι, καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀποτρέψασθαι ὅλως οὐκ ἔχοντες.
still also the enemies to-turn-away at-all not being-able
μὴ ἀναμείνας οὖν τὴν τελείαν τοῦ κακοῦ ἀγγελίαν ὁ
not having-waited then the complete of-the evil message —
Μανουήλ, ἀναστὰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν, ᾗ τάχους εἶχεν, ἐπὶ
Manuel having-risen the next(-day) with-what speed he-had to
τὴν Κλαυδίου διὰ τῆς Νικομήδους ἤλαυνε, μὴ αὐλαίαν
— Claudius(-city) through the(-land) of-Nikomedes drove not curtain
ἀνακτορικήν, μὴ κλίνην, μὴ στιβάδα μήτε τινὰ ἄλλην σκευὴν
imperial not bed not mattress nor any other gear
τρυφῶσαν ἀρχικὴν ἐπαγόμενος, μόνα δὲ τὰ ἱππάσιμα
luxurious princely bringing only and the(-horses) for-riding
φέρων καὶ στολὰς φολίσι σιδηραῖς ὑφαντάς. ἐπέτεινεν οὖν
carrying and robes with-scales iron woven he-lengthened then
τοὺς σταθμούς. τοσοῦτον δ' ἦν ἐκείνῳ τὸ πρόθυμον φθάσαι
the stages so-great and was for-him the eagerness to-anticipate
τοὺς πολιορκοῦντας ποθοῦντι πρὸ τοῦ παθεῖν τι τοὺς
the besiegers longing before the to-suffer anything the(-men)
ἔνδον δεινόν, ὁποῖον οὐκ ἔστι λόγῳ περιηγήσασθαι.
inside terrible such-as not is(-possible) in-word to-describe
οὐκοῦν τὰς νύκτας ἴαυεν ἀΰπνους καὶ πρὸς τὴν πορείαν
therefore the nights he-passed sleepless and for the march
ἐχρᾶτο φωτὶ ποιητῷ βαδίζων διὰ τῆς Βιθυνῶν· ἡ δὲ
used light made walking through the of-Bithynians it and
ὡς ἐπίπαν ταῖς ξυναγκείαις πεπύκνωται, καὶ ἄπορός ἐστι
as wholly with-the thickets is-packed and impassable is
πολλαχῇ τῷ τῆς ὕλης συνηρεφεῖ. εἰ δέ που καὶ χρείας
in-many-places by-the of-the wood overshadowing if and somewhere also of-need

ἱκανούσης ἐδεῖτο διαναπαύεσθαι, γήϊνον εἶχε τὴν καθέδραν,
sufficient he-needed to-rest earthen he-had the seat
καὶ κάρφη ὑποβεβλημένη καὶ φορυτὸς ὑποκείμενος ἐκείνῳ
and stalks spread-under and litter lying-under for-him
τὴν στρωμνὴν ἐσχεδίαζεν. ὁτὲ δὲ ὑετοῦ κατενεχθέντος καὶ
the bedding improvised once and rain having-come-down and
τοῦ σταθμοῦ γενομένου κατὰ φάραγγα τεναγώδη ἄνωθέν
the camp having-been-made in (a)-ravine marshy from-above
τε ταῖς σταγόσιν ἐτέγγετο καὶ τὸν ὕπνον διεσπᾶτο
both with-the drops he-was-soaked and the sleep was-broken
τῷ τὴν στιβάδα ὑποτρέχοντι νάματι. κἀπὶ τοῖς τοιούτοις
by-the the mattress running-under stream and-at the such(-things)
ἠγαπᾶτο μᾶλλον καὶ ἠγᾶτο ἢ ὅτε διαδήματι ἐταινιοῦτο
he-was-loved more and admired than when with-(a)-diadem he-was-crowned
καὶ περιέκειτο τὴν ἁλουργίδα καὶ τὸν ἵππον ἀνέβαινε τὸν
and wore the purple and the horse mounted the
χρυσοφάλαρον. ὡς δὲ ἤγγισεν οὗ ἐπορεύετο καὶ ὤπτο
gold-trapped as and he-drew-near where he-was-going and was-seen
τοῖς περὶ τὴν Κλαυδιούπολιν ἐσκηνωκόσι βαρβάροις, οἱ
by-the about — Klaudioupolis encamped barbarians they
μὲν ἐς φυγὴν ἐκεῖθεν αὐτίκα ὥρμησαν, ἐγνωκότες τὴν
indeed to flight thence at-once rushed having-recognized the
αὐτοῦ ἔλευσιν ἔκ τε τῶν σημείων τῶν ταγμάτων καὶ
his coming from both the signs of-the units and
τῆς τῶν ὅπλων λαμπρότητος, αὐτὸς δ' ἐπέκειτο διώκων
the of-the arms brilliance himself and pressed pursuing
ἐς ὅσον ἦν ἐφικτὸν ὡς προσωτάτω τῆς μάχης. οὕτω
to as-much-as was possible as farthest from-the battle thus
δ' ἀσπάσιος ἐπέστη τοῖς ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ πόλει Ῥωμαίοις
and welcome he-arrived to-the in that the city Romans
ἀπειρηκόσιν ἤδη πρὸς τὰ τῶν Τούρκων φρονήματα,
having-given-up already against the(-things) of-the Turks spirits

ὡς οὐδὲ ναύταις οὖρος προσκεκμηκόσι ταῖς κώπαις
as not-even to-sailors (a)-fair-wind having-toiled at-the oars
καὶ πλεῖστον αὐταῖς ἐνιδρώσασι, καὶ ἔαρ ἥδιστον μετὰ
and very-much at-them having-sweated and spring sweetest after
χειμῶνος κατήφειαν, ἢ ἕτερόν τι τῶν ὅσα ἐκ
winter's gloom or other anything of-the(-things) as-many-as from
λυπηρῶν ἀρχῶν εἰς χρηστοτέραν μεταβαίνει κατάστασιν.
painful beginnings to better passes condition

MANUEL I, BOOK SEVEN

I · MANUEL AND THE WEST

Fearing a union of the Western peoples against the empire, Manuel buys friends in Venice, Genoa, Pisa, and Ancona, and backs the Italian cities against Frederick Barbarossa, whom he keeps from being crowned at Rome. He rebuilds the walls of Milan and wins the marquis of Montferrat, whose son Conrad captures Frederick's chancellor. The Anconitans, besieged by Frederick, resist and are rewarded.

Δοτέον τῷ λόγῳ κἀκεῖνα. ὁ βασιλεὺς οὗτος μὴ ἔχων
let-be-given to-the narrative also-those the emperor this not being-able
νόμῳ πολέμου κατὰ τῶν ἐθνῶν ἐπελθεῖν ὁπόσα κόλπον
by-law of-war against the nations to-come as-many-as (the)-gulf
ἀμφινέμεται τὸν Ἰόνιον, ἢ μᾶλλον τὴν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων
inhabit-around the Ionian or rather the against (the)-Romans
ἔφοδον τούτων πρὸ ὀφθαλμῶν ἔχων ἀεὶ καὶ κρίνων
attack of-these before (the)-eyes having always and judging
φοβερὰν καὶ δυσάντητον, οἷα εἰδὼς τὰς τῶν Ῥωμαίων
fearful and hard-to-face as knowing the of-the Romans
δυνάμεις ἀπροσφυεῖς ἐξ ἀντιπάλου στῆναι ταῖς ἑσπερίαις
forces unfitted from opposition to-stand against-the western(-ones)

καὶ ἄντικρυς χύτρας πρὸς λέβητας, ὡς ἐξὸν καὶ τὸ θέσθαι
and outright pots against cauldrons as possible also the to-make
διαθήκην κατὰ Ῥωμαίων καὶ συμφρονήσειν ὅλως τοὺς
(a)-covenant against (the)-Romans and to-agree wholly the
δυσμόθεν καὶ πρὸς μίαν τραπέσθαι σύμπνοιαν ὑπεβλέπετο,
westerners and to one to-turn concord he-suspected
καὶ παντοίως ἀσφαλιζόμενος πόρρωθεν τοὺς μὲν κατὰ
and in-every-way securing(-himself) from-afar the indeed in
τὴν ἕω βαρβάρους ἐξεῖναί οἱ ἔφασκε χρήμασι πρὸς
the east barbarians to-be-possible for-him he-said with-money to
φιλίαν ὑπάγεσθαι καὶ διὰ μάχης συμπειθεῖν τῶν οἰκείων
friendship to-bring-under and through battle to-persuade from-the own
ὅρων μὴ ἐκκεχύσθαι, τήν γε μὴν ἑσπερίαν δεδιέναι
borders not to-pour-out the at-least indeed western to-fear
πολλαχῶς ἐθνικὴν πολυσπέρειαν· ὑψαυχενεῖν τε γὰρ
in-many-ways national dispersion to-be-high-necked both for
τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ τὸ φρονεῖν εἶναι ἀταπεινώτους, τό
the men and in-the thinking to-be unhumbled the
τε φιλαίματον διὰ μελέτης ἔχειν ἀεί, καὶ μὴ μόνον
both blood-thirst through practice to-have always and not only
πλοῦτον περιβεβλῆσθαι πολὺν καὶ σιδηροφορεῖν πάντας
wealth to-have-gathered much and to-bear-iron all
εἰς πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ δύσνουν τρέφειν κατὰ Ῥωμαίων
for war but also the ill-will to-nourish against (the)-Romans
ἀκοίμητον καὶ φιλεχθρεῖν ἀεὶ κατὰ τούτων καὶ λοξὸν
sleepless and to-love-enmity always against these and askance
ὁρᾶν καὶ σφοδρύνεσθαι. ἀμέλει Βενετίαν καὶ Γένουαν
to-look and to-be-violent indeed Venice and Genoa
Πίσαν τε καὶ τὸν Ἀγκῶνα, καὶ ὅσα παρὰ θάλατταν
Pisa both and — Ancona and as-many-as along (the)-sea
ἔθνη ἕτερα διακέχυται, φίλια Ῥωμαίοις ἐτίθει κατεμπεδῶν
nations other are-spread friendly to-(the)-Romans he-made confirming

ὅρκοις καὶ παντοδαπαῖς φιλοφροσύναις ὑποποιούμενος, καὶ
with-oaths and all-kinds-of kindnesses winning-over and
καταγωγαῖς αὐτὰ δεξιούμενος ἐν τῇ ἀρχούσῃ τῶν πόλεων.
with-lodgings them welcoming in the ruling of-the cities
ὑφορώμενος δὲ μήπως τῶν παρ᾽ αὐτοῖς λεγομένων
suspecting and lest-somehow of-the among them called
ῥηγῶν ἰσχύν τις περιδὺς μείζονα εἶτα κατὰ Ῥωμαίων
kings strength anyone having-put-on greater then against (the)-Romans
ἐπίῃ, χρημάτων ἀνελάμβανε δόσεσιν, ἐσωμάσκει τε
should-attack of-money he-took-up by-gifts trained both
καὶ ἐπέθηγε πρὸς ἀνθόπλισιν τὸ ὑποπίπτειν κινδυνεῦον
and whetted for counter-arming the to-be-subjected endangered
γένος ἄρχοντι ὑπερέχοντι. Ἰταλιώτας οὖν πολλάκις κατὰ
race to-(a)-ruler superior Italians then often against
τοῦ ῥηγὸς Ἀλαμανίας τοῦ Φρεδερίχου ἀνθώπλισεν. ὁ μὲν
the king of-Alamannia — Frederick armed-against he indeed
γὰρ ὑποκλιθῆναί οἱ τούτους καὶ τὰ καθ᾽ αὐτοὺς
for to-be-subjected to-him these and the(-things) concerning them
ἐπιτρέψειν ἐκείνῳ διὰ πλείστου ἐτίθετο· ὁ δὲ Μανουὴλ
to-entrust to-him for most set — and Manuel
πέμπων ἐνίσχυεν ἐκείνους καὶ κραταιοῦσθαι ὑπετίθει, καὶ
sending strengthened them and to-be-strong suggested and
τὰς τοῦ ῥηγὸς δολοφροσύνας ἐνῆγε φυλάττεσθαι. ἀλλὰ
the of-the king deceits urged to-guard-against but
καὶ τὴν πρεσβυτέραν Ῥώμην εἰσιέναι καὶ στεφθῆναι
also the elder Rome to-enter and to-be-crowned
τὸν αὐτὸν ῥῆγα πολλάκις ἐπιβαλόμενον ἀπεῖρξε τοῦ
the same king often having-attempted he-kept-off from-the
ἐγχειρήματος, „μὴ δώσεις ἑτέρῳ τὴν δόξαν σου"
undertaking not you-shall-give to-another the glory your
γράφων τῷ πάπᾳ, „μηδὲ πατέρων ὅρια μέταιρε, μή
writing to-the pope nor of-fathers boundaries remove lest

πως τὸ ἀπρομήθευτον ὕστερον ἔργοις αὐτοῖς ὁποῖόν
somehow the improvidence later by-deeds themselves of-what-sort
ἐστιν ἐπιγνοὺς τηνικαῦτα πλήττῃ τὴν ψυχὴν μεταμέλῳ
it-is having-recognized then you-be-struck in-the soul with-repentance
διὰ τὴν τοῦ εἰκότος ὀλιγωρίαν, ὁπότε τὸ κακὸν
because-of the of-the fitting neglect when the evil
παντάπασιν ἀθεράπευτον." καὶ ἦν ἐκ τούτου τῆς
(is)-altogether incurable and was from this from-the
μεγαλοδόξου Ῥώμης ἀποκλειόμενος, καθά τις ἄοπλος,
glorious Rome shut-out like some unarmed(-man)
ὁ μυριάσι γαυριῶν στρατευμάτων. ἔστι δ' ὅτε τὰ
the(-one) with-ten-thousands exulting of-armies is and when the
μὲν τείχη Μεδιολάνων ὑπ' Ἀλαμανῶν κατεστράφησαν, οἱ
indeed walls of-Milan by Alamans were-overthrown the
δὲ τῆς πόλεως ταύτης οἰκήτορες κατασοφισάμενοι τοὺς
and of-the city this inhabitants having-outwitted the(-ones)
ἔνορκον ἀνάγκην σφίσιν ἐπενεγκόντας μὴ ἂν τὸ τεῖχος
sworn necessity on-them having-imposed not — the wall
ἀναδομήσειν ποτέ, τὰ μὲν πρῶτα ἐπὶ τάφρῳ ᾤκουν
to-rebuild ever the indeed first(-time) on (a)-ditch dwelt
βαθείᾳ καὶ ὀρυκτῇ, μὴ ἐπιορκεῖν ἐκ τοῦδε λέγοντες, ἔπειτα
deep and dug not to-be-perjured from this saying then
δὲ ὡς πρότερον τὰ τείχη ἀνεκαίνισαν τοῦ βασιλέως τοῦδε
and as before the walls renewed the emperor this
γενομένου συλλήπτορος. ἐπὶ τούτοις γε μὴν τὸν Μόντης
having-become helper at these at-least indeed the Monte
Φεράντης μαρκέσιον, εὐγενείᾳ καὶ εὐτεκνίᾳ κομῶντα καὶ
Ferrat marquis in-nobility and in-fine-offspring flourishing and
μέγα δυνάμενον, εἰς φίλον Ῥωμαίοις ἐγγράψας τοῦτο
greatly being-powerful as (a)-friend to-(the)-Romans having-enrolled partly
μὲν δωρήμασιν ἁδροῖς τοῦτο δὲ τῷ τὸν υἱὸν αὐτοῦ τὸν
indeed with-gifts rich partly and by-the the son his the

νεώτερον συνευνάσαι τῇ οἰκείᾳ θυγατρὶ τῇ Μαρίᾳ, ὡς
younger to-bed-with the own daughter — Maria as
ὀλίγῳ πρότερον εἴπομεν, ἔτι μᾶλλον ἠκύρου τὰ διαβούλια
(a)-little before we-said still more he-annulled the designs
τοῦ ἀρχηγοῦντος Ἀλαμανῶν. ὥστε ὁ μὲν τὸν οἰκεῖον,
of-the leading(-man) of-Alamans so-that he indeed the own
ὡς ἡ Λατίνων βούλεται φωνή, καγκελάριον, ὡς δ'
as the of-Latins wishes speech chancellor as and
Ἕλληνες εἴποιεν, λογοθέτην (ἦν δὲ οὗτος ὁ Μαγέντζης
Greeks would-say logothete was and this(-man) — Mainz
ἐπίσκοπος) πέμψας μετὰ πλείστης δυνάμεως τὰς Ἰταλικὰς
bishop having-sent with very-great force the Italian
ὑπεποιεῖτο πόλεις, ἀποσπῶν αὐτὰς ἐκ τοῦ πάπα καὶ κατὰ
won-over cities tearing them from the pope and with
παρρησίαν ἀνεύθυνον ὑπονοσφιζόμενος· βασιλεὺς δὲ τὸν
freedom unaccountable appropriating (the)-emperor and the
μαρκέσιον χρημάτων ὑποσχέσεσιν ἐλαφρίσας πείθει τῷ
marquis of-money with-promises having-lightened persuades to-the
Μαγέντζης ἀντίπαλον διαφεῖναι τὸν οἰκεῖον υἱὸν Κορράδον,
Mainz(-bishop) (as)-opponent to-send the own son Conrad
καλὸν ὄντα ἰδεῖν καὶ τὴν ὥραν εὐπρεπῆ, ἀνδρείας τε καὶ
fair being to-see and in-the bloom comely of-courage both and
συνέσεως ἐς ὅτι κράτιστον καὶ ἀκρότατον ἥκοντα, καὶ
of-understanding to as strongest and highest come and
ἀκμάζοντα ῥώμῃ σώματος. καὶ συμπλοκῆς γενομένης
flourishing in-strength of-body and (an)-engagement having-happened
τοὺς Ἀλαμανοὺς ἀπεκρούσατο ἱππομαχίᾳ τρεψάμενος, ἐνίων
the Alamans repelled in-cavalry-battle having-routed of-some
δὲ καὶ κρατήσας, ἐν οἷς ἠριθμεῖτο καὶ ὁ Μαγέντζης
and also having-mastered among whom was-counted also — Mainz
ἐπίσκοπος. τάχα δ' ἂν οὗτος καὶ ἐς Βυζάντιον ἦν
bishop perhaps and — this(-one) also to Byzantium would-have-been

ἀναπεμφθείς, εἰ μὴ βασιλεὺς ἐξ ἀνθρώπων ἐγένετο.
sent-up if not (the)-emperor from men had-become(-gone)
ἀλλ᾽ οὐδέ τις ἦν τῶν Ἰταλιωτίδων ἢ τῶν ἔτι πορρωτέρω
but not-even any was of-the Italian or of-the still farther
πόλεων καθ᾽ ἣν ὁ βασιλεὺς οὗτος οὐκ εἶχεν ὁμότην
cities in which the emperor this not had (a)-confidant
οἰκεῖον καὶ φρονοῦντά οἱ πιστά. ἀμέλει καὶ ὅσα
own and minding to-him faithful(-things) indeed also as-many-as
εἰς τὰ ταμιεῖα τῶν ταμιείων εἰσιόντες ἐν κρυπτῷ ἐτύρευον
into the storerooms of-the storerooms entering in secret contrived
καὶ ἐτύρβαζον ὁπόσοι τῶν ἐκεῖ Ῥωμαίοις ἀντίφρονες,
and stirred-up as-many-as of-the(-men) there to-(the)-Romans contrary-minded
ἀκουστὰ ἦν ἐκείνῳ καὶ ἔκπυστα. ἄλλοτε δέ ποτε κατὰ
audible were to-him and known at-other-time and once at
τὸν Ἀγκῶνα ἦκον ἐκ βασιλέως τινές, δεῆσαν
— Ancona came from (the)-emperor some it-having-been-needful
οὕτω, κατὰ χρείαν πραγμάτων. οἱ μὲν οὖν τὰ
thus by need of-affairs they indeed then the(-things)
κατὰ σκοπὸν ἐξεπέραινον καὶ τὰ διατεταγμένα
according-to aim accomplished and the(-things) ordered
σφίσιν ἐδίδοσαν πέρατι, εἴτε τὸ εἰς φιλίαν ἐκείνου
to-them gave to-end whether the into friendship his
ἑλκύσαι τινὰς ἦν, οὓς λιζίους φασίν, εἴ τέ τι ἕτερον
to-draw some was whom liegemen they-call if or anything other
Ῥωμαίοις ὠφέλιμον· ὁ δέ γε ῥὴξ τῶν Ἀλαμανῶν
for-(the)-Romans useful the and at-least king of-the Alamans
θυμοῦ ὑποπίμπλαται, καὶ πέμπει τοὺς τὸν Ἀγκῶνα
with-wrath is-filled and sends the(-men) — Ancona
πορθήσοντας καὶ τισομένους τοὺς ἐκεῖ καὶ κολάσοντας,
going-to-sack and going-to-punish the(-ones) there and going-to-chastise
οἷς σπένδονται Ῥωμαίοις καὶ κατὰ τὴν ἑαυτῶν
because they-make-treaty with-(the)-Romans and into the their-own

εἰσδέχονται πρέσβεις οὐδὲν ἕτερον ὅτι μὴ τὰ κατ᾽
receive envoys nothing other except — the(-things) against
αὐτοῦ δηλαδὴ μετιόντας καὶ πόλεις τὰς ἐκεῖ μεθιστῶντας
him that-is pursuing and cities the there moving
τῆς ἐς αὐτὸν εὐνοίας καὶ πίστεως. καὶ τὸ μὲν πεμφθὲν
from-the toward him goodwill and faith and the indeed sent
ἐκ ῥηγὸς στράτευμα ὡς πολεμίους τοὺς Ἀγκωνίτας
from (the)-king army as enemies the Anconitans
μετήρχοντο, καὶ περιζώσαντες τὴν πόλιν ἀπήτουν ἐκδοῦναί
pursued and having-surrounded the city demanded to-hand-over
σφισι τοὺς πρέσβεις Ῥωμαίων· οἱ δ᾽ Ἀγκωνῖται οὕτως
to-them the envoys of-(the)-Romans the and Anconitans so
ἦσαν εὐγνώμονες ἀκροαταὶ τῶν ἠπειλημένων ἢ τῷ
were considerate hearers of-the(-things) threatened or by-the
βληθέντι παρὰ τῶν πολεμίων ἐξέστησαν χάρακι ἢ τῷ
thrown by the enemies were-astonished palisade or by-the
ἀρεϊκῷ ἐκείνῳ πρὸς δέος συνεπιλήθησαν περιζώματι, ὥστε
warlike that for fear forgot-themselves girdle so-that
οὐ μόνον οὐ προύδωκαν οὓς οἱ Ἀλαμανοὶ ἐπέκειντο
not only not they-betrayed whom the Alamans pressed
ἐξαιτούμενοι, ἀλλὰ καὶ μακρὰν χαίρειν εἴασαν γενναίως
demanding but also far to-fare-well let nobly
τὸν παρόντα διαφέροντες κίνδυνον, ἐπιτεινομένης δὲ τῆς
the present bearing danger being-intensified and the
πολιορκίας καὶ χρονιζόντων τῶν πολεμίων ἥψαντο τῶν
siege and lingering the enemies they-touched the(-things)
ἀήθων καὶ πρὸς ἃ μὴ θέμις τρεχεδειπνεῖν σιτοφαγεῖν
unaccustomed and at what not (is)-lawful to-run-to-dinner to-eat-grain
εἰωθότα ἄνθρωπον. οἱ τοῦ βασιλέως τοίνυν τὸ πλῆθος
accustomed (a)-man the(-men) of-the emperor therefore the multitude
ἐκκλησιάσαντες, εἰ ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς ἐπικουρίαν εἰσενεγκεῖν
having-assembled whether it-is-possible for-them help to-bring

ἐπυνθάνοντο. τῶν δὲ εἰπόντων ἐξεῖναι μέν, χρημάτων
asked they and having-said to-be-possible indeed of-money
δ' αὐτόθεν μὴ εὐπορεῖν, αὐτοὶ διετείνοντο καὶ θεὸν τοῦ
and from-there not to-have-plenty themselves insisted and God of-the
λόγου πεποίηντο μάρτυρα καὶ μὴ μέλλειν ἐνῆγον, ὡς
word had-made witness and not to-delay urged as
βασιλεὺς ἅπαν καταθήσει τὸ τοῦ πολέμου δαπάνημα,
(the)-emperor all will-pay the of-the war expense
ἢ μὴν ἀπεκδέχεσθαι σφᾶς τὰ ἀνύποιστα προύλεγον
or indeed to-await them the unbearable(-things) foretold
ὑπὸ τῶν τὴν πόλιν διειληφότων, παίδων μὲν καὶ
from the(-men) the city having-encompassed children indeed and
γυναικῶν ἀπαγομένων, χρημάτων δὲ καὶ πραγμάτων
women being-led-away money and and goods
ἁρπαζομένων. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ μετάπεμπτόν τινα τιθέασι
being-snatched whence surely also summoned (a)-certain they-make
κόμητα Γιλίελμον τοὔνομα καὶ γυναῖκα τῶν εὐγενῶν οὐ
count William by-name and (a)-woman of-the nobles not
πρὸ πολλοῦ μὲν θανάτῳ σπανιζομένην τοῦ ὁμευνέτου,
before long indeed by-death bereft of-the bedfellow
γενικὴν δὲ τὴν ἰσχὺν καὶ τὴν ἐκείνου κληρουμένην ἀρχήν,
family and in-the strength and the his inheriting rule
καὶ τούτοις ἁδρὰ τὰ δόματα στήσαντες, κἀντεῦθεν σὺν
and to-these rich the gifts having-set and-from-here with
οὐδενὶ πόνῳ τὸ πολέμιον ἀποτρεψάμενοι, ὡς ἐκ βάθους
no toil the enemy having-turned-away as from (the)-depth
θαλάσσης τῆς αὐτῶν ἀνανηξαμένης πόλεως ἔχαιρον τὴν
of-(the)-sea the their having-swum-up city they-rejoiced the
ἐλευθερίαν ἀνασωσάμενοι. βασιλεὺς δ' ἐπὶ τούτοις ὅσα
freedom having-recovered (the)-emperor and at these(-things) as-much-as
εἰκὸς εὐφρανθεὶς τούς τε Ἀγκωνίτας ἐπαίνοις τῶν
(is)-likely having-been-cheered the both Anconitans with-praises for-the(-things)

γεγονότων ἀμείβεται, καὶ τοῖς ἰσοπολίταις τῷ γένει
done requites and with-the fellow-citizens in-the race
Ῥωμαίων ἐγκρίνας ἅπαντα ὑπισχνεῖται παρέξειν,
of-(the)-Romans having-ranked(-them) all promises to-provide
ὅσα οἱ ἀμεμφῆ τε καὶ δυνατὰ κἀκείνους δέον αἰτεῖν.
as-many-as to-him blameless both and possible also-those needful to-ask
ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ χρυσίον πολλαπλάσιον πέπομφε. καὶ εἰς τόδε
but also the gold manifold he-has-sent and to this
μὲν τῶν Ἀγκωνιτῶν ἐτελεύτα τὰ πράγματα, φύσει τὸ
indeed of-the Anconitans ended the affairs by-nature the
πιστὸν ἔχειν δοξάντων καὶ μὴ πρὸς τὸ συμπῖπτον τῆς
faithfulness to-have having-seemed and not to the chance of-the
τύχης τὰς γνώμας μετακυβεύεσθαι. εἴπῃ γὰρ ἄν τις
fortune the minds to-shift would-say for — anyone
ὅπως τοῦ μὲν ἐκ γειτόνων αὐτοῖς δυνάστου καὶ κατάρχειν
how of-the indeed from neighbors to-them lord and to-rule
ἀξιωτέρου παρηγκωνίσαντο τὸ ἐπίταγμα, ὅς ἐστιν ὁ τῶν
more-worthy they-elbowed-aside the command who is the of-the
Ἀλαμανῶν ῥήξ, τὸν δὲ μετὰ πολλὴν ὀπτανόμενον γῆν καὶ
Alamans king the and after much seen land and
ὄρη σκιόεντα Ῥωμαίων ἄνακτα ἠγαπήκεσαν, εἰ μή τις
mountains shadowy of-(the)-Romans lord they-had-loved if not some
αὐτοῖς ἐμπεφυκυῖα ἦν αὐτόφυτος συνείδησις τἀγαθοῦ κἀν
in-them inborn was self-grown consciousness of-the-good and-in
τοῖς δεινοῖς ἀπτόητος ὅρμησις καὶ πρὸς τὸ τῶν πραγμάτων
the terrors fearless impulse and toward the of-the affairs
οὐχ ὅμοιον ἀεὶ βεβηκυῖα καὶ μὴ εὐτίνακτος. εἴη δ' ἂν
not like always going and not easily-shaken might-be and —
ἕτερον τούτοις οὐκ ἀρεσκόμενον ἀνθυπενεγκεῖν ὡς ἥττονες
another to-these not pleased to-retort that weaker
ὄντες κέρδους οἱ Ἀγκωνῖται καὶ ἀγυρτεύοντες καὶ πρὸς τὸ
being than-gain the Anconitans and begging and to the

λαβεῖν χεῖρα προτείνοντες ἀπέστησαν μὲν τοῦ χθές
to-take (the)-hand holding-out stood-away indeed from-the(-one) yesterday
τε καὶ πρώην ἐς ἡγεμόνα σφῶν ἀποτεταγμένου, ὀπίσω
both and the-day-before for leader their appointed behind
δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἄλλου, ὃς ἤνεγκεν αὐτοῖς τὴν ἐπιθυμίαν
and went another who brought them the desire
καὶ τὸ κερδαλέον καὶ κάπηλον ἐθεράπευσε τοῦ φρονήματος.
and the gainful and huckster courted of-the spirit

II · THE TREASURY AND THE FOREIGNERS

Manuel's subjects complain of his taxes and of his spending on foreigners, but Niketas defends him: he feared the Latins. He enriched his relatives, eunuchs, and half-barbarian servants, and set foreigners over provinces and courts, with Romans as their assistants, so that little reached him and much was embezzled.

Τῷ δὲ βασιλεῖ ταῦτα οὕτω διοικουμένῳ χλευασμοὶ παρὰ
on-the and emperor these(-things) thus managing mockeries by
Ῥωμαίων ἐπετρίβοντο ὡς ὑπερορίους δῆθεν ἐπιθυμίας
(the)-Romans were-rubbed as excessive supposedly desires
διὰ τὸ φίλαυτον τρέφοντι καὶ ὀφθαλμοὺς ἐπ' ἄκρα
because-of the self-love nourishing and eyes to (the)-ends
γῆς ἐκτείνοντι, καὶ ὅσα θερμὰ καὶ τολμηρά, ταῦτα
of-earth stretching and as-many-as hot and daring these(-things)
διαπραττομένῳ, καὶ τῶν ἀξόνων βάλλοντι πόρρωθεν οὓς
doing and the axles(-laws) throwing far-off which
οἱ πρώην ἔτεμον βασιλεῖς, καὶ πρὸς χρήσιμον οὐδὲν
the former cut emperors and for useful nothing
ἀπαντλοῦντι τὰ χρήματα ἃ συλλέγει τὸ ὑπ' ἀρχὴν
drawing-off the money which collects the under (his)-rule
καλαμώμενος ἀπογραφαῖς τε καὶ φόροις ἐκδαπανῶν
plundering with-registrations both and taxes spending

ἀσυνήθεσιν. οὐ καλῶς δὲ παντάπασιν ἐκείνῳ τὰ τοιάδε
unaccustomed not well and altogether at-him the such(-things)
προσέρριπτον, ὅτι μηδ' ἦν καινοτομία τις ἄλογος ἐς τὸ
they-threw because not-even it-was innovation some irrational to the
παντελὲς τὰ πραττόμενα, ἀλλὰ τὰ τῶν Λατίνων γένη
complete the(-things) done but the of-the Latins races
ὁρῶν ἄμαχον ἰσχὺν περικείμενα ἐδεδίει τὸ σύμπνουν, ὡς
seeing invincible strength wearing he-feared the concord as
ἔφην, μὴ κατακλύσειε τὰ ἡμέτερα, ὥσπερ καὶ χείμαρρος
I-said lest might-flood the ours as also (a)-torrent
ἐξ ὀλίγου μέγας φανεὶς παρασύρει γήδια γεωργῶν. διά
from little great appearing sweeps-away small-fields of-farmers through
τοι τοῦτο καὶ τὸ μικρὸν ὑφορώμενος ἔναυσμα ὡς πυρσοῦ
surely this also the small suspecting spark as of-(a)-blaze
παραίτιον, ἐνιαχοῦ δὲ καὶ εἰς μεγίστην προβαῖνον πυρκαϊὰν
(a)-cause in-places and also to greatest advancing conflagration
καὶ εἰς ἐμπρησμὸν ἔκτοτε, ἢν εὐπρήστου ὕλης τύχῃ
and to burning thence if of-inflammable wood it-should-happen
λαβόμενον, καὶ πρὸς μόνην ὑποψίαν φυομένην τὴν
having-taken-hold and at only suspicion growing the
τῶν λυπούντων ἀρχὴν ἀπεμάχετο κατὰ τοὺς ἀρίστους
of-the(-things) grieving beginning he-fought-off like the best
τῶν γηπόνων, οἳ τὰς ἀκάνθας τὰς τὴν πρασιὰν
of-the farmers who the thorns the(-ones) the garden-bed
λυμαινομένας νεαρὰς ἔτι ἐκσπῶσι καὶ καταστρέφουσιν
ruining young still pull-up and overturn
ἀρτιθαλῆ τῶν δένδρων τὰ μὴ κηπεύσιμα. καὶ τοῦτο
just-sprouted of-the trees the(-ones) not fit-for-gardens and this
σαφῶς ὑπέδειξε τὰ μετέπειτα, ἡνίκα τὴν μὲν ἐνταῦθα
clearly showed the(-things) afterward when the indeed here
ζωὴν αὐτὸς μετηλλάχει, τὰ δέ γε πράγματα κυβερνήτην
life himself had-exchanged the and at-least affairs (a)-helmsman

ἀποβαλόντα σοφὸν μικροῦ τὸ τῆς βασιλείας σκάφος
having-lost wise by-little the of-the empire hull
ἐβάπτισε. τὸ δ᾽ οὖν τῶν δασμῶν ἐπιτεταμένον οὐδ᾽
sank the and then of-the taxes intensification not-even
αὐτὸς ὡς μετεδίωκεν ἀποκρύψομαι. ἀλλ᾽ οὐδ᾽ ὅτι αἱ
I as he-pursued(-it) will-hide but not-even that the
ἀρχαὶ δημοσιώναις προυβέβληντο παραδράμοιμι, ὥσπερ
offices to-tax-farmers had-been-put-forward would-I-pass-over as
καὶ τὸ ποθεῖν νεώματα ἐν ἀρούραις καὶ τῷ ἑαυτοῦ
also the to-long-for fallow-lands in fields and with-the his-own
ἀρότρῳ διασχίζειν αὔλακας, ἐξ ὧν αὐτῷ ἀνδρομεγέθης
plow to-split furrows from which for-him man-sized
ἀνέβλαστεν ἄσταχυς. ἦν δὲ τὰ συλλεγόμενα χρήματα
grew (an)-ear were and the collected money
οὐ τοσοῦτον ἀποθήκαις ἀποτιθέμενα ἢ μυχῷ γῆς
not so-much in-storehouses laid-up or in-(the)-depth of-earth
ἐγκατορυττόμενα, ὅσον ἀμφοτέραις ἀποκενούμενα καὶ
buried as-much-as with-both(-hands) emptied and
ἀφειδῶς παρεχόμενα καὶ μοναῖς μὲν καὶ τεμένεσι καὶ
unsparingly given and to-monasteries indeed and precincts and
Ῥωμαίοις ἐλασσουμένοις, τὰ δὲ πλεῖστα ταῖς τῶν ἐθνῶν
to-(the)-Romans being-diminished the and most to-the of-the nations
μεταγγιζόμενα πανσπερμίαις, καὶ μάλιστα ταῖς Λατινικαῖς
poured-off mixtures and especially to-the Latin
ἐκρέοντα ὁμηγύρεσι. φιλοδωρίας γὰρ μεταδιώκων ἐπίδειξιν
flowing-out assemblies of-generosity for pursuing display
ἀσώτως ἐσκόρπιζε καὶ ἀνήλισκεν ἅπερ ἀμφοτέραις
prodigally he-scattered and spent what-things with-both(-hands)
συνέλεγε, τοὺς ἄκρως κερματιστὰς φροντιστὰς τῶν οἰκείων
he-collected the extremely money-changers (as)-stewards of-the own
ἐφιστῶν. μέρος δὲ τῆς δαπάνης καίριον ἦσαν καὶ ὅσοι
setting-over part and of-the expense timely were also as-many-as

καθ᾽ αἷμα συνήπτοντο καὶ ἄλλως ᾠκείωντο. αὐτίκα τοίνυν
by blood were-joined and otherwise were-related at-once therefore
ἡ ἀνεψιὰ Θεοδώρα, ᾗ καὶ (ὡς ἔφημεν) ἐπλησίαζε,
the niece Theodora with-whom also as we-said he-consorted
βασιλικωτάτης μετεῖχε δορυφορίας, καὶ μὴν οὐ διαδουμένη,
most-imperial shared bodyguard and indeed not crowned
καὶ τῶν ἀρχείων βαρουμένων παριέναι ἤθελε, καὶ κατὰ
and with-the palace being-burdened to-pass wished and by
φυσικὴν μὲν ἰδιότητα σοβαρὰν ἕλκουσα τὴν ὀφρὺν καὶ
natural indeed peculiarity haughty drawing the brow and
ἄνω τὸ ὄμμα τείνουσα, τὸ δὲ πλέον ἀγέρωχον βλέπουσα.
upward the eye stretching the and more arrogant looking
καὶ ὁ ἐκ ταύτης δὲ γενόμενος τῷ βασιλεῖ παῖς καὶ ἐφεξῆς
and the from her and born to-the emperor child and in-order
ἕτεροι ὅλας θαλάσσας χρημάτων εἰς ἑαυτοὺς μετωχέτευον.
others whole seas of-money into themselves channeled
εὔκολος δὲ ὢν καὶ εὐχείρωτος τοῖς κατευναστῆρσι καὶ
easy and being and easily-handled by-the bedchamber-attendants and
θαλαμηπόλοις ἐκτομίαις, ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ τοῖς ἀπὸ γενῶν
chamberlains eunuchs but indeed also by-the from races
ἑτερογλώττων ὑποβαρβαρίζουσιν ὑπηρέταις, ὧν ὁ σίελος
of-other-tongues half-barbarous servants whose the spittle
τοῦ λόγου προηκοντίζετο, τοῖς ῥυηφενέσι καὶ τούτους
of-the speech was-shot-forth at-the wealthy and these
ἐνέταττεν εὐπετῶς τὰ πολλὰ τὸ οὖς αὐτοῖς ὑποκλίνων, καὶ
he-ranked easily the most(-part) the ear to-them inclining and
ἅπερ ᾐτοῦντο, ῥαόνως ἐκπερατῶν. τισὶ τοίνυν ἐκ τούτων
what-things they-asked more-easily accomplishing to-some therefore of these
οὕτως εὐρόει τὰ κατὰ βίοτον ὡς σωρείαις χρημάτων
thus flowed-well the(-things) in life that with-heaps of-money
ἐνευθηνεῖσθαι καὶ τοῖς κατὰ κόσμον πᾶσι περιρρεῖσθαι
to-thrive and with-the in (the)-world all to-overflow

λαμπροῖς ἴσα καὶ μεγιστᾶσι μεγίστων ἐθνῶν, καὶ ταῦτα
brilliant(-things) equal also to-magnates of-greatest nations and this
παιδείας ἁπάσης ἐστερημένοις καὶ φωνῆς Ἑλληνίδος τὰ
of-education all deprived and of-voice Greek the
ἴχνη μεταδιώκουσιν ὡς αἱ σκοπιαί τε καὶ αἱ πέτραι πρὸς
traces pursuing as the lookouts both and the rocks to
τὰ τῶν ποιμένων αὐλήματα τὸ τῆς ἠχοῦς ὑστερόφωνον.
the of-the shepherds pipings the of-the echo late-sounding
καὶπὶ τούτοις ὡς πιστοτάτοις αὐτοῦ καὶ θερμοῖς θεράπουσι
and-on these as most-faithful his and hot servants
μάλιστα πεποιθὼς οὐ μόνον αὐτοῖς τὰς μεγίστας ἀρχὰς
especially trusting not only to-them the greatest offices
ἐγχειρίζει, ἀλλὰ καὶ κρίσεσιν ἐφίστα δικαστικαῖς ὧν ὀψὲ
he-entrusts but also over-judgments set judicial which late
καὶ νομοτριβεῖς ἄνδρες ἐφίκοιντο ἄν. δεῆσαν δὲ καὶ
also law-practiced men would-reach — it-having-been-needful and also
τῶν ἐπαρχιῶν τινὰς ἀπογράφεσθαι (τοῦτο δὲ συχνάκις
of-the provinces some to-be-registered this and often
ἐγίνετο) ὁ τοιόσδε χορὸς τοῦ λογίμου προυτίθεντο. εἰ δέ
happened the such chorus to-the eloquent were-preferred if and
που καὶ παρεζεύγνυτό τις αὐτοῖς εὐγενὴς Ῥωμαῖος ἀνήρ,
somewhere also was-yoked-with some to-them noble Roman man
βάπτων ὅλος εἰς νοῦν καὶ γέμων φρονήσεως, κατὰ τοῦτο
dipping wholly into mind and full of-prudence for this
ξυνεπέμπετο, ὅπως ὁ μὲν ἀπογράφων ἔσται καὶ τολυπεύων
he-was-sent-with so-that the one registering will-be and winding-up
τὰς ὑποθέσεις ἐξ ὧν ἤμελλον οἱ φόροι συνάγεσθαι,
the subjects from which were-about the taxes to-be-collected
ὁ δὲ ὡς κερδοσυλλέκτης προεδρεύει καὶ τὰ φασκώλια
the other as gain-collector presides and the purses
σφραγῖδι διασημαίνεται ἃ ἤμελλον εἰσφέρεσθαι βασιλεῖ.
with-(a)-seal marks which were-about to-be-brought-in to-(the)-emperor

τὰ πλεῖστα μέντοι πρὸς τοὐναντίον αὐτῷ περιίστατο, καὶ
the most(-part) however to the-opposite for-him turned-out and
ἠθέτητό οἱ ἐντεῦθεν τὰ σκέμματα· Ῥωμαίους γὰρ ὡς
had-been-set-aside for-him thence the plans (the)-Romans for as
κλεμματιστὰς ἐκτρεπόμενος εἴτε ὑποβλεπόμενος, ἐλάνθανεν
thieves shunning or suspecting he-was-unaware
ἑαυτὸν ἐρασιχρημάτους ὀλβίζων βαρβάρους καὶ εὖ ποιῶν
himself money-loving enriching barbarians and well doing
ἀνδράρια κακοδαίμονα, καὶ τοῦ κατὰ φύσιν καὶ παιδείαν
manikins wretched and from-the by nature and education
χρηστοῦ καὶ πιστοῦ πρὸς τὴν ἀντικειμένην γνώμην τοὺς
good and faithful to the opposed mind the
ἐνδαποὺς καθιστῶν, ἐπεὶ καὶ τὸ εἰς αὐτοὺς καχύποπτον
natives setting since also the toward them suspicion
τοῦ βασιλέως ἐκεῖνοι γνωρίζοντες, καὶ ὡς ὑπηρέται πλέον
of-the emperor they recognizing and as servants rather
καὶ προαγωγοὶ λημμάτων ἤπερ ἀσφαλεῖς τὰ εἰς
and procurers of-gains than secure in-the(-things) for
πίστιν κρινόμενοι τοῖς ἐθνικοῖς συντάττονται, κατὰ σύνδυο
faith judged with-the foreigners are-ranked in pairs
ἐκπεμπόμενοι, ἢ γοῦν ὡς παρήοροι καὶ παράσειροι
sent-out or at-any-rate as side-horses and trace-horses
τοῦ τῆς ἀρχῆς λογίζονται ἅρματος, τὸ διατεταγμένον
of-the of-the rule are-reckoned chariot the ordered
μόνον ἐποίουν, θερίζοντες καὶ δεσμεύοντες ὡς δράγματα
only they-did reaping and binding as sheaves
τὰ κέρματα, καὶ ὡς εἰς ἅλωνα συμφοροῦντες τὸν
the coins and as to (a)-threshing-floor carrying-together the
ἐπὶ πολλῶν καθιστάμενον ἐκεῖνον καὶ πλείστων ἄλλων
over many set that and of-very-many other
Ῥωμαίων ἀντάξιον κρινόμενον βάρβαρον, τὰ δ' ἄλλα
Romans equal judged barbarian the and other(-things)

παρέβλεπον, ἵνα μὴ λέγοιμι ὡς βασιλεῖ μὲν βραχέα
they-overlooked that not I-may-say that to-(the)-emperor indeed little(-things)
καὶ οἷοι ἀφαιρέματα τῶν ἄλλων εἰσήγετο, τὰ δὲ πλείω
and like deductions of-the others were-brought-in the and more
ἐκεῖνοι παρενοσφίζοντο, τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ καὶ πιστοῦ παρὰ
those embezzled of-the good and faithful with
βασιλεῖ δούλου ἐν πρώτοις ἑαυτῷ φύροντος ἐγκρυφίας
(the)-emperor servant among (the)-first for-himself kneading loaves
ἐκ τῶν ἀλοωμένων πυρῶν εἴτ᾽ οὖν χρυσίνων, καὶ
from the threshed wheats or then gold-pieces and
μετέπειτα μεταδιδόντος καὶ τῷ συνάρχοντι.
afterward giving-a-share also to-the fellow-official

III · BUILDINGS AND MONASTERIES

Manuel builds a tower at Damalis, opposite another by the Mangana, to carry a chain across the strait, halls with gold mosaics in the palaces, and summer palaces along the Propontis. He founds a monastery at Kataskepe at the mouth of the Pontus, giving the monks a stipend from the treasury instead of lands, and criticizes monasteries rich in estates.

Ἔργον τοῦ βασιλέως τούτου καὶ ὁ μὴ πολὺ τῆς θαλάσσης
(a)-work of-the emperor this also the not far of-the sea
ἔνδον ἱστάμενος πύργος τῆς προσκλυζούσης τὴν χέρσον,
within standing tower of-the washing-against the dry-land
ἥτις ὠνομάζετο Δάμαλις, τὰ νῦν δὲ Ἄρκλα καλεῖται.
which was-named Damalis the(-times) now and Arkla is-called
ἀλλὰ δὴ καὶ ὁ ἀντίπορθμος οὗτος πύργος τῆς τῶν
but indeed also the opposite-the-strait this tower the —
Μαγγάνων ἄγχιστα δεδομημένος μονῆς. ἦν δὲ σκοπὸς τῷ
of-Mangana nearest built monastery was and (the)-aim for-the

τούτους ἀνεγείραντι ἄνακτι κατὰ καιρὸν ἐπαγωγῆς πλοίων
these having-raised lord at (the)-time of-(an)-attack of-ships
βαρβαρικῶν σιδηρᾶν ἐξ ἑκατέρων ἅλυσιν διατείνεσθαι,
barbarian (an)-iron from both chain to-be-stretched
καὶ ἄβατον ἐντεῦθεν γίνεσθαι ὁπόσα περὶ τὴν ἀκρόπολιν
and impassable thence to-become as-many-as about the acropolis
μέρη τῆς πόλεως καὶ τὸν συρόμενον ἔσωθεν ὁλκὸν ἕως
parts of-the city and the dragged inside trail as-far-as
καὶ ἐς αὐτὰ τὰ ἐν Βλαχέρναις βασίλεια. φιλοκαλίαν δὲ
also to the-very the in Blachernai palace love-of-beauty and
κατηγοροῦσι τοῦδε τοῦ βασιλέως καὶ οἱ κατ᾽ ἄμφω τὰ
accuse of-this the emperor also the in both the
ἀνάκτορα ἐπιμήκιστοι περίστυλοι ἀνδρῶνες, οὓς αὐτὸς
palaces very-long colonnaded halls which himself
ἀνήγειρεν, οἳ ψηφίδων χρυσῶν ἐπιθέσεσι διαυγάζοντες
raised which of-tesserae golden with-applications shining
τυποῦσιν ἄνθεσι βαφῆς πολυχρόου καὶ τέχνῃ χειρῶν
depict with-flowers of-dye many-colored and with-art of-hands
θαυμασίᾳ ὅσα οὗτος κατὰ βαρβάρων ἠνδρίσατο ἢ
wonderful as-many-as this(-man) against barbarians was-manly or
ἄλλως ἐπὶ βέλτιον Ῥωμαίοις διεσκευάκει. ἀλλὰ καὶ τὰς
otherwise for (the)-better for-(the)-Romans had-arranged but also the
πλείστας τῶν κατὰ τὸν πορθμὸν τῆς Προποντίδος λαμπρῶν
most of-the along the strait of-the Propontis brilliant
οἰκοδομιῶν, ἐν αἷς οἱ βασιλεῖς Ῥωμαίων θερίζουσι τὰς
buildings in which the emperors of-(the)-Romans summer the
εὐωρίας μεταδιώκοντες ὡς οἱ πάλαι κρατοῦντες Περσῶν
good-seasons pursuing as the(-men) of-old ruling of-Persians
τὰ Σοῦσά τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα, οὗτος ἀνήγειρε καὶ πρὸς
— Susa both and Ecbatana this(-man) raised and for
κόσμον ὑπεξῆρε πλείονα. καὶ πρὸς τοὺς πόνους γὰρ ἀντεῖχε
ornament raised-up more also for the toils for he-held-out

μάλα, καιροῦ καλοῦντος μοχθεῖν, καὶ ψῦχος ἔστεγε καὶ
very (the)-time calling to-labor and cold he-endured and
πνῖγος ἔφερε καὶ πρὸς ὕπνον ἀπεμάχετο, καὶ ταῖς τρυφαῖς
stifling-heat he-bore and against sleep fought and to-the luxuries
δὲ προσανεῖχε πολέμων ἄγων σχολὴν καὶ ἐνησμένιζε ταῖς
too attended from-wars having leisure and delighted in-the
ἀνέσεσιν. εἰ τοίνυν περιεργότερον τοῦτον ἠθρήκει τις,
relaxations if therefore more-curiously him had-observed someone
ὅπως ἔχαιρε καρυκείαις βρωμάτων καὶ τοῖς πρὸς
how he-rejoiced in-sauces of-foods and to-the(-things) to
λύριον καὶ κιθάραν καὶ συμφωνίαν ᾠδῶν ἔχουσιν οὐκ
lyre and cithara and symphony of-songs having not
ἀπηχθάνετο, εἶπεν ἂν ὡς μόνοις ἐννεάσας ἔχει
was-averse would-have-said — that in-only having-been-occupied he-is
τοῖς τοιούτοις καὶ ἡδονὴν τὸ πέρας ἥγηται τῆς ζωῆς· εἰ
the such(-things) and pleasure the end he-has-thought of-the life if
δὲ τοὐναντίον αὐτῷ προσέβλεψε πρὸς πᾶσαν ἀταπεινώτῳ
and the-opposite at-him he-looked at every unhumbled
γλυκυθυμίαν τυγχάνοντι καὶ τιθεμένῳ παρὰ φαῦλον
sweetness being and putting(-it) at little
ἡδυπάθειαν δυσκόλων ἐπιστάντων καιρῶν, ἐθαύμασεν
luxury hard having-come times he-would-have-wondered
ἂν ὅπως ἐξήλλακτο πρὸς ἀμφότερα. ἐπιβαλόμενος δὲ τὸν
— how he-had-changed toward both having-undertaken and the
πρὸς θάλασσαν τῆς ἁγίας Εἰρήνης οἰκοδομήσειν νεών, ὃν
toward (the)-sea of-the holy Irene to-build temple which
μεγέθει μέγιστον καὶ κάλλει κάλλιστον πάλαι Μαρκιανὸς
in-size greatest and in-beauty most-beautiful of-old Marcian
ὁ πάνυ ἀνήγειρε, πῦρ δὲ ἠθάλωσε, μέρη τινὰ τοῦ
the very(-great) raised fire and burned parts some of-the
τοιούτου τεμένους ἐκ βάθρων δειμάμενος τοῦ λοιποῦ τῆς
such precinct from foundations having-built from-the rest of-the

ναοδομίας ἐπαύσατο. ἱδρύσατο δὲ φροντιστήριον ἱερὸν περί
church-building he-ceased he-founded and (a)-monastery holy about
που τὸ τοῦ Πόντου στόμα, εἰς τόπον τινὰ Κατασκέπην
somewhere the of-the Pontus mouth in place some Kataskepe
λεγόμενον, εἰς ὄνομα τοῦ ἀρχιστρατήγου Μιχαήλ, καθ' ὃ
called in name of-the archistrategos Michael in which
τῶν τότε μοναστῶν ἠθροικὼς τοὺς ὀνομαστοτάτους τε
of-the then monks having-gathered the most-famous both
καὶ ἀκρέμονας πάντη μοναδικὸν καὶ ἀπράγμονα μετιέναι
and topmost wholly solitary and untroubled to-pursue
βίον προεμηθεύσατο. εἰδὼς γὰρ τὸ κτηματικοὺς εἶναι καὶ
life he-provided knowing for the propertied to-be and
τυρβάζεσθαι πάλιν περὶ πολλὰ τοὺς τὸν ἐρημικὸν
to-be-troubled again about many(-things) the(-ones) the solitary
βίον ἀνελομένους τῆς ἡσυχίας σφᾶς μεθιστῶν καὶ τοῦ
life having-taken-up from-the quiet them removing and from-the
κατὰ θεὸν ζῆν ἀπάγον, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ οἰκεῖον αὐτοῖς
according-to God living leading-away this indeed the own to-them
ἐπάγγελμα, οὐδὲν κτησίδιον αὐτοῖς ἀπετάμετο οὔτε μὴν
profession no small-property for-them he-cut-off nor indeed
ἀγροὺς καὶ ἀμπελῶνας τῷ φροντιστηρίῳ ἀπέταξε, πᾶσαν
fields and vineyards to-the monastery assigned all
δὲ τοῖς μοναστα῀ς δίαιταν ἐκ τῶν βασιλικῶν χρυσώνων
and to-the monks livelihood from the imperial gold-chambers
ἐπιμετρήσας ἐκεῖθεν αὐτὴν ἐβράβευεν, ἀνακόπτων, οἶμαι,
having-measured thence it he-dispensed checking I-think
ἐντεῦθεν τὸν πολὺν ἔρωτα τῶν πλείστων περὶ τοῦ μονὰς
thence the much love of-the most about the monasteries
συνιστα῀ν, καὶ παράδειγμα διδοὺς τοῖς μετόπισθεν ὅπως
to-found and (an)-example giving to-the(-ones) after how
χρεὼν νεὼς ἀνιστα῀ν καὶ οἵαν δέον ἑτοιμάζειν τράπεζαν
it-is-needful temples to-raise and what-sort needful to-prepare table

τοῖς ἐρημικοῖς καὶ ἀβίοις καὶ τῆς ὕλης ἑαυτοὺς
for-the solitaries and without-livelihood and from-the matter themselves
ἐκλύσασι. τοσοῦτον δ' ἀπεῖχε τοῦ τὴν νῦν κατάστασιν
having-loosed so-much and he-was-far from-the the now state
ἐπαινεῖν, οἳ μονάζειν μὲν ἐπαγγέλλονται, πολυκτήμονες
to-praise who to-live-as-monks indeed profess very-propertied
δὲ καὶ πολυφρόντιδές εἰσιν ὑπὲρ τοὺς τῇ ἐνταῦθα
and and very-anxious are beyond the(-ones) in-the here
φιληδοῦντας ζωῇ, ὥστε καὶ τὴν νεαρὰν νομοθεσίαν, ἣν ὁ
delighting life so-that also the new legislation which the
βασιλεύτατος τῷ ὄντι Νικηφόρος ὁ Φωκᾶς, ὁ τὴν
most-kingly in-the being Nikephoros the Phokas the(-one) in-the
ἰσχὺν ἡρωϊκὸς καὶ πολὺς τὴν σύνεσιν, ἔθετο παύουσαν
strength heroic and great in-the intelligence enacted stopping
τὰς μονὰς ἐμπλατύνεσθαι κτήσεσι, τεθνηκυῖαν πάλαι
the monasteries to-be-broadened with-possessions having-died long-ago
τῷ χρόνῳ καὶ τὸ κῦρος ἀποθεμένην, τῷ ἐρυθρῷ τῆς
in-the time and the validity having-laid-aside with-the red of-the
βασιλείου βαφῆς ὡς αἵματι ἀναθάλψας ἐζώωσεν. οὐ
imperial dye as with-blood having-warmed he-brought-to-life not
μὴν δὲ ἀλλὰ καὶ τῷ πατρὶ καὶ τῷ πάππῳ καὶ τοῖς
indeed and but also the father and the grandfather and the(-ones)
καθ' αἷμα προσήκουσι λοιποῖς ἅπασιν, ὁπόσοι μονὰς
by blood related remaining all as-many-as monasteries
δειμάμενοι ὅλα πλέθρα γῆς καρποφόρα καὶ λειμῶνας
having-built whole plethra of-land fruitful and meadows
χλοεροὺς αὐταῖς προσεκλήρωσαν, ἐπεγκαλῶν οὐκ ἐπαύετο,
green to-them allotted charging not he-ceased
οὐ κατὰ τοῦτο μεμψιμοιρῶν ἢ μυκτῆρα καταχέων πλατὺν
not for this complaining or (a)-nose pouring-down broad
τῶν ἀνθρώπων, ὅτι τῆς οὐσίας θεῷ τι ἀπένειμαν,
of-the men that of-the property to-God something they-assigned

ἀλλ᾽ ὅτι μὴ καλῶς τὸ καλὸν εἰργάσαντο. δέον γὰρ
but because not well the good they-did needful for
ἐν τόποις δυσερευνήτοις καὶ χωρίοις πανερήμοις καὶ
in places hard-to-search and spots all-deserted and
σπηλαίων ὀπαῖς καὶ ὀρῶν περιωπαῖς τοῖς μονάζουσιν
of-caves holes and of-mountains lookouts for-the monks
ἀποτάξαι τὸ σκήνωμα, καὶ παριδεῖν ταυτηνὶ τὴν ἐφ᾽
to-assign the dwelling and to-overlook this the on
Ἑλλησπόντῳ κειμένην καλλίπολιν ὡς τὸν λωτὸν Ὀδυσσεὺς
(the)-Hellespont lying fair-city as the lotus Odysseus
καὶ Σειρήνεια μέλη τὰ δυσαπόσπαστα, οἱ δὲ τὸν ἐξ
and Siren songs the hard-to-tear-away they and the from
ἀνθρώπων θηρώμενοι ἔπαινον, καὶ τοὺς κεκονιαμένους
men hunting praise and the plastered
ἑαυτῶν τάφους καὶ ψηφῖσι πολυχρώμοις διηνθισμένους
their-own tombs and with-mosaics many-colored flowered
εἰς θέαν τοῖς εἰσιοῦσι τοὺς νεὼς προτιθέντες, καὶ
for sight to-the(-ones) entering the temples setting-forth and
νεκροὶ ἐρῶντες στεφανούμενοι δείκνυσθαι καὶ στιλπνοὶ
dead loving crowned to-be-shown and sleek
καὶ φαιδροὶ τὰ πρόσωπα, ἐπ᾽ ἀγορᾶς τε καὶ τριόδων
and bright in-the faces in marketplace both and crossroads
τὰ θεῖα ᾠκοδόμησαν φροντιστήρια, ἐνλακκεύσαντες ἐν
the divine built monasteries having-pitted in
τούτοις καὶ ἐνσηκάσαντες οὐκ ἐπιλέγδην τὸ ἀρεταῖνον,
these and having-penned not by-choice the virtuous(-thing)
τὸ δὲ μέχρι τριχῶν ἀποβολῆς καὶ τῆς τῶν ἐσθημάτων
the(-one) but up-to of-hairs loss and of-the of-the clothes
μεταβολῆς καὶ τοῦ ἀφειμένου πώγωνος χαρακτηρίζον τὸν
change and of-the let-grow beard characterizing the
μοναστήν. διὰ ταῦτα τοίνυν εἴτε τὴν μοναδικὴν
monk because-of these(-things) therefore whether the monastic

ὑπερείδων σεμνότητα ἤδη ἀφαντουμένην καὶ πρηνῆ ἐπὶ
supporting dignity already vanishing and prone on
στόμα πίπτουσαν, εἴτε μὴν δεδιὼς μὴ ἐσεῖται μέσος
(its)-mouth falling or indeed fearing lest he-will-be in-the-middle
ληφθεὶς ὡς χαίρων οἷς διεβέβλητο, ἑτέραν ἐτράπετο
caught as rejoicing in-what he-had-been-slandered another he-turned(-road)
ἧς οἱ ἐξ αἵματος ἐκείνῳ ἐβάδισαν.
which the(-ones) from blood to-him went

IV · THE PAY OF SOLDIERS

Manuel replaces soldiers' pay with grants of tenants, so that tailors, grooms, and brickmakers buy enlistment with a Persian horse or a few coins, and Romans are made subject to half-barbarians. The army weakens, and Niketas laments the loss of the provinces.

Θεσμοῦ δὲ παρὰ Ῥωμαίοις κειμένου, οἶμαι δὲ καὶ
(a)-law and among (the)-Romans lying I-think and also
παρὰ βαρβάροις αὐτοῖς κρατοῦντος, ὀψώνια τοῖς
among barbarians themselves prevailing pay to-the(-ones)
στρατευομένοις παρέχεσθαι, καὶ τούτων πολλάκις ἔκταξιν
serving to-be-provided and of-these often (a)-review
γίνεσθαι, εἰ εὐοπλοῦσιν, εἰ τῶν ἵππων ἐπιμεμέληνται,
to-happen whether they-are-well-armed whether the horses they-have-cared-for
ἀλλὰ καὶ τοὺς νεωστὶ στρατευομένους πρότερον ἐξετάζεσθαι,
but also the newly enlisting first to-be-examined
εἰ εὐρώστως ἔχουσι τῶν σωμάτων, εἰ τόξων εἰσὶν
whether robust they-are in-the bodies whether of-bows they-are
εἰδήμονες, εἰ κραδαίνειν δόρυ ἐπήσκησαν, εἶθ' οὕτω
knowing whether to-brandish (a)-spear they-have-practiced then thus
τοῖς καταλόγοις ἐγγράφεσθαι, ὁ βασιλεὺς οὗτος τὰ τοῖς
in-the rolls to-be-enrolled the emperor this the to-the

στρατιώταις διδόμενα σιτηρέσια ὡς εἰς δεξαμενὴν ὕδωρ τὰ
soldiers given rations as into (a)-reservoir water the
ταμιεῖα συσχών, ἰᾶτο τὸ δίψος τῶν στρατευμάτων ταῖς
storehouses having-held-together healed the thirst of-the armies with-the
λεγομέναις τῶν παροίκων δωρεαῖς, ἔργῳ καταχρησάμενος
called of-the tenants gifts in-deed having-misused
παρὰ τῶν πρώην ἐφευρημένῳ βασιλέων καὶ σπανίως
by the former devised emperors and rarely
ἐπί τισι γινομένῳ τοὺς πολεμίους πολλάκις συγκόψασιν.
on some happening the enemies often having-cut-down
ἔλαθεν οὖν ἐντεῦθεν καὶ τὸ στρατιωτικὸν ἀτονώτερον
he-was-unaware then thence also the military(-class) weaker
ἐργασάμενος καὶ χρημάτων ἀβύσσους εἰς ἀργὰς γαστέρας
having-made and of-money abysses into idle bellies
ὀχετηγήσας καὶ τὰς Ῥωμαϊκὰς ἐπαρχίας κακῶς διαθέμενος·
having-channeled and the Roman provinces badly having-treated
οἵ τε γὰρ ἀγαθοὶ στρατιῶται τὸ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς φιλότιμον
the both for good soldiers the in the terrors ambition
ἐνθένδε καταλελύκασιν, οὐκέτι τοῦ ὑπονύσσοντος πρὸς
from-here have-dissolved no-longer the(-thing) pricking toward
ἀρετῆς ἀρεϊκῆς ἐπίδειξιν ἰδίου σφίσιν ὡς πρώην μένοντος
of-virtue warlike display own to-them as formerly remaining
ἀλλ' εὐπορίστου προκειμένου τοῖς ἅπασι, καὶ οἱ τὸν
but easy-to-get lying-before to-the all and the the
δημόσιον πάλαι δεσπότην λαχόντες τῶν ἐπαρχιῶν
public of-old (as)-master having-obtained of-the provinces
οἰκήτορες ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιωτικῆς ἀπληστίας πεπόνθασι
inhabitants by the military insatiability have-suffered
τὰ οἰκτρότατα, οὐκ ἀργύριον μόνον καὶ ὀβολὸν
the most-pitiable(-things) not silver only and (the)-obol
ἀφαιρούμενοι ἀλλὰ καὶ τοῦ τελευταίου χιτῶνος ψιλούμενοι,
deprived but also of-the last tunic stripped

ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ τῶν φιλτάτων αὐτῶν ἀποσπώμενοι. ἦν
sometimes and also of-the dearest their torn-away was
τοίνυν διὰ ταῦτα τὸ στρατολογεῖσθαι παντὸς τοῦ
therefore because-of these(-things) the to-be-enlisted of-every the(-one)
βουλομένου, καὶ πολλοὶ ταῖς ῥαφίσι χαίρειν εἰπόντες
wishing and many to-the needles farewell having-said
ὡς ἐπεισκομιζούσαις αὐτοῖς τὰ χρειώδη στενῶς καὶ
as bringing-in to-them the necessaries narrowly and
δυσεκβιάστως, ἄλλοι τὸ ἱπποκομεῖν λάξαντες, καὶ τὴν
hard-to-force others the horse-tending having-kicked-off and the
ἐκ πλινθείας ἰλὺν ἀπονιψάμενοι ἕτεροι, εἰσὶ δ' οἳ
from brick-making mud having-washed-off others are and (those)-who
καὶ τὴν τῶν χαλκείων ἀσβόλην ἀπομορξάμενοι τοῖς
also the of-the smithies soot having-wiped-off to-the
στρατολογοῦσι παρέστησαν, καὶ παρενεγκόντες ἵππον
recruiters presented(-themselves) and having-brought-along (a)-horse
Περσαῖον ἢ χρυσίνους ἀριθμῷ βραχεῖς καταθέμενοι ταῖς
Persian or gold-pieces in-number few having-paid in-the
στρατιώτισι κατελέγησαν ἴλαις ἀβασανίστως, κἀκ τοῦ
military were-enrolled squadrons without-scrutiny and-from the
παραυτίκα βασιλικοῖς ἐφωδιάσθησαν γράμμασι πλέθρα γῆς
instant with-imperial were-supplied letters plethra of-land
δροσερὰ καὶ ἀρούρας σιτοφόρους καὶ Ῥωμαίους ὑποφόρους
dewy and fields grain-bearing and (the)-Romans tributary
βραβεύουσιν, ὡς ὑπηρετεῖν ἐν σχήματι δούλων, ἐνίοτε δὲ
assigning so-that to-serve in (the)-guise of-slaves sometimes and
καὶ κατατιθέναι φόρους ἀνδραρίῳ μιξοβαρβάρῳ, μηδὲ εἰ
also to-pay taxes to-(a)-manikin half-barbarian not-even if
ἔστιν ὅλως ἐγνωκότι παράταξις, Ῥωμαῖον ἄνδρα γεραρὸν
it-is at-all knowing (a)-battle-line (a)-Roman man venerable
τὸ εἶδος καὶ οὕτως εὖ εἰδότα πολέμων καὶ τοσοῦτον τοῦ
in-the form and thus well knowing of-wars and so-much than-the

φορολογοῦντος αὐτὸν ὑπερφέροντα ὡς Ἀχιλλέα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον
tax-collecting him surpassing as Achilles against that(-one)
δοκεῖν, ἢ διτταῖς χερσὶν ὁπλιζόμενον κρίνεσθαι πρὸς τὸν
to-seem or with-double hands armed to-be-judged against the(-one)
μηδετέραν ἀπὸ πάθους ὀρέγοντα. ἐπαξίως οὖν τῆς ἀκοσμίας
neither from injury stretching-out worthily then of-the disorder
ταύτης τῶν στρατευμάτων αἱ Ῥωμαϊκαὶ πεπράγασιν
this of-the armies the Roman have-fared
ἐπαρχίαι, αἱ μὲν πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν ἡμῶν ὑπὸ τῶν
provinces the(-ones) indeed before the eyes our by the
ἀλλοφύλων σκυλευόμεναι καὶ εἰς ἀρχὴν αὐτοῖς ἰδιούμεναι,
foreigners despoiled and into dominion by-them appropriated
αἱ δὲ ὡς ἀλλότριαι τοῖς ἡμετέροις ἀφαντούμεναι
the(-ones) and as foreign to-the our(-men) vanishing
καὶ δηούμεναι. ἀλλ' ἕως πότε, κύριε, τῆς σῆς ἐπιλήσῃ
and ravaged but until when Lord the your will-you-forget
κληρονομίας, καὶ τὸ σὸν ἀποστρέφων ἀφ' ἡμῶν πρόσωπον
inheritance and the your turning-away from us face
ὁδοποιήσεις τρίβον τῇ ὀργῇ σου; πότε ἐπόψει ἐξ
will-you-make-a-road (a)-path for-the wrath your when will-you-look-on from
ἁγίου ἐπιβλέψας κατοικητηρίου σου, καὶ ἰδὼν ἴδῃς
holy having-looked dwelling your and having-seen may-you-see
τὴν ἡμετέραν συνοχήν τε καὶ κάκωσιν, καὶ ῥύσῃ
the our distress both and ill-treatment and will-you-rescue
τῶν ἐφεστώτων κακῶν, ἀπαλλαγὴν δὲ παρέξεις καὶ
from-the present evils release and will-you-provide and
τῶν πολὺ τούτων ἐλπιζομένων χαλεπωτέρων;
from-the much than-these expected harsher(-evils)

Manuel claims to be a theologian. A dispute over the scriptural saying that the incarnate God both offers and is offered leads to the deposition of Soterichos Panteugenos and others; a thunderclap at Pelagonia is read as a sign. Later Manuel imposes his interpretation of the words "My Father is greater than I" at a synod and has it engraved on stone tablets in Hagia Sophia.

Πρὸς δὲ τοῖς εἰρημένοις κἀκεῖνα δοτέον τῇ
besides and the(-things) said also-those must-be-given to-the
ἱστορίᾳ. τοῖς πλείοσι βασιλεῦσι Ῥωμαίων οὐκ ἀνεκτόν
history for-the most emperors of-(the)-Romans not bearable
ἐστιν ὅλως ἄρχειν μόνον καὶ χρυσοφορεῖν καὶ χρῆσθαι
it-is at-all to-rule only and to-wear-gold and to-use
τοῖς κοινοῖς ὡς ἰδίοις καὶ διαδιδόναι ταῦτα καθὼς
the common(-goods) as own and to-distribute these as
ἄρα καὶ οἷς βούλονται, οὐδὲ μὴν ὡς δούλοις τοῖς
then also to-whom they-wish nor indeed as slaves the
ἐλευθέροις προσφέρεσθαι, ἀλλ' εἰ μὴ καὶ σοφοὶ δοκοῖεν
free to-treat but if not also wise they-should-seem
καὶ θεοείκελοι τὴν μορφὴν καὶ ἥρωες τὴν ἰσχὺν καὶ
and godlike in-the form and heroes in-the strength and
ὡς Σολομῶν θεόσοφοι καὶ δογματισταὶ θειότατοι καὶ
as Solomon God-wise and dogmatists most-divine and
κανόνες τῶν κανόνων εὐθέστεροι καὶ ἁπλῶς θείων καὶ
rules than-the rules straighter and simply of-divine and
ἀνθρωπίνων πραγμάτων ἀπροσφαλεῖς γνώμονες, δεινὰ
human affairs unerring judges terrible(-things)
οἴονται πάσχειν. ἔνθεν τοι καὶ δέον τοῖς ἀπαιδευτοτέροις
they-think to-suffer whence surely also needful the more-uneducated
καὶ θρασυτέροις ἐπιτιμᾶν ἐπεισάγουσι νέα καὶ ἀσυνήθη
and more-bold to-rebuke they-bring-in new and unaccustomed

τῇ ἐκκλησίᾳ δόγματα, ἢ γοῦν ἀνατιθέναι ταῦτα οἷς
to-the church dogmas or at-any-rate to-refer these to-whom
ἐπάγγελμα τὰ περὶ θεοῦ εἰδέναι καὶ λέγειν, οἱ
(is-the)-profession the(-things) about God to-know and to-speak they
δὲ οὐδὲ κατὰ τοῦτο τὸ μέρος δευτερεύειν οὑτινοσοῦν
and not-even in this the part to-be-second to-anyone
ἀνεχόμενοι οἱ αὐτοὶ δογμάτων εἰσηγηταὶ καὶ δικασταὶ
enduring the same of-dogmas proposers and judges
τούτων καὶ ὁρισταί, πολλαχοῦ δὲ καὶ κολασταὶ τῶν μὴ
of-these and definers in-many-places and also punishers of-the(-ones) not
συμφωνούντων αὐτοῖς γίνονται. καὶ ὁ βασιλεὺς τοιγαροῦν
agreeing with-them become and the emperor therefore
οὗτος εὐγλωττίαν εὐτυχηκὼς καὶ λόγου ἔμφυτον χάριν
this eloquence having-been-blessed-with and of-speech inborn grace
πεπλουτηκὼς οὐ λαμυρῶς ἐπέστελλε μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ
having-been-rich-in not brilliantly wrote only but also
κατηχητηρίους ὤδινε λόγους, οὕς φασι σελέντια,
catechetical was-in-labor-with speeches which they-call silentia
καὶ εἰς κοινὴν ἀνέπτυσσεν ἀκοήν. ὁδῷ δὲ προϊὼν
and into common unfolded hearing on-(the)-road and advancing
καὶ δογμάτων ἥπτετο θείων καὶ περὶ θεοῦ διελέγετο.
also dogmas touched divine and about God discoursed
ἀμέλει καὶ κατασχηματιζόμενος πολλάκις τὸν ἀποροῦντα
indeed also pretending often the(-one) at-a-loss
γραφικὰς εἰσῆγε ζητήσεις, καὶ περὶ τῶν λύσεων τουτωνὶ
scriptural he-introduced questions and about the solutions of-these
διεπυνθάνετο ξυναγείρων ὅσον ἔχαιρε λογιότητι. ἀλλ᾽
inquired gathering as-much-as rejoiced in-learning but
ἦν ἂν ἐπαινετέος κἂν τούτοις, εἰ μέχρι τούτων τὴν
he-would-be — praiseworthy even in-these if up-to these the
λιχνείαν ἐκτείνων τοῖς δυσεφίκτοις οὐδ᾽ ὅλως προσέβαινε
greed extending to-the hard-to-reach not-even at-all he-approached

δόγμασιν, ἢ καὶ τούτοις ἐφιστάνων τὸν νοῦν οὐκ ἦν
dogmas or also to-these applying the mind not he-was
ἰσχυρογνώμων, οὐδὲ τὸν νοῦν τῶν γραφομένων πρὸς
stubborn nor the sense of-the(-things) written to
τὴν οἰκείαν μεθεῖλκεν ἐν πολλοῖς πρόθεσιν, ὁρίζων καὶ
the own he-drew in many(-things) intention defining and
προσεπάγων ἐξηγήσεις ἐν οἷς πρὸς ὀρθὴν ἔννοιαν οἱ
adding interpretations in which to right meaning the
πατέρες ἐφθέγξαντο, ὡς εἴπερ ὅλον αὐτὸν συνείληφε τὸν
fathers spoke as if whole him he-has-grasped —
Χριστὸν καὶ ὑπ᾽ αὐτοῦ μεμύηται τὰ περὶ αὐτοῦ
Christ and by him has-been-initiated-in the(-things) about him
τρανότερον καὶ θειότερον. ζητήσεως οὖν γενομένης περὶ
more-clearly and more-divinely (a)-question then having-arisen about
τοῦ γραφικοῦ ῥητοῦ ὅ φησι τὸν σεσαρκωμένον θεὸν
the scriptural saying which says the incarnate God
προσφέρειν τε ὁμοῦ καὶ προσφέρεσθαι, καὶ τῶν τότε
to-offer both at-once and to-be-offered and of-the then
λογίων ἀνδρῶν εἰς ἐναντίας μοίρας ἀποκριθέντων, ἐφ᾽
learned men into opposing parts having-been-separated for
ἱκανὸν τὰ τῆς ἐξετάσεως παρετάθησαν, ῥήσεις
sufficient(-time) the(-things) of-the examination were-extended statements
τε καὶ ἀντιρρήσεις ἐξ ἑκατέρων ἐχύθησαν τῶν μερῶν.
both and counter-statements from both were-poured the parts
ὀρθοτομηθέντος δὲ τοῦ ζητουμένου, καὶ τῇ δόξῃ
rightly-divided and the(-thing) sought and to-the opinion
προστεθέντος τοῦ βασιλέως τῇ θεοφιλεῖ τε καὶ κρείττονι,
having-been-added of-the emperor the God-loved both and better
καθαίρεσιν ὑπέστησαν ὡς ἀντίφρονες ὁ Ὑποψήφιος
deposition underwent as contrary-minded the elect
τῆς Θεουπόλεως, μεγάλης Ἀντιοχείας Σωτήριχος ὁ
— of-God's-city great Antioch Soterichos the

Παντεύγενος, ὁ Δυρραχίου Εὐστάθιος, ὁ τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης
Panteugenos — of-Dyrrachion Eustathios — — of-Thessalonike
Μιχαὴλ τὸν ῥητορικὸν κοσμῶν θρόνον καὶ τὸν εὐαγγελικὸν
Michael the rhetorical adorning throne and the evangelical
ἀναβαίνων ὀκρίβαντα, ὁ Βασιλάκης Νικηφόρος τὰς
mounting stage — Basilakes Nikephoros the
τοῦ Παύλου ἀναπτύσσων ἐπ' ἐκκλησίας ἐπιστολὰς καὶ
— of-Paul unfolding in church epistles and
διαλευκαίνων τῷ τῆς καλλιρρημοσύνης φωτὶ ὅσαι τῶν
clarifying with-the of-the eloquence light as-many-as of-the
ἀποστολικῶν ῥήσεων τῇ ἀσαφείᾳ ὑπομελαίνονται καὶ
apostolic sayings with-the obscurity are-darkened and
τῷ βάθει τοῦ πνεύματος ἐπιφρίσσουσι. λέγεται δὲ ὡς τοῦ
at-the depth of-the spirit bristle it-is-said and that the
δόγματος τούτου ὑποκινουμένου καὶ εἰς κοινὴν ἐπικρινομένου
dogma this being-stirred and into common being-judged
προτεθῆναι βάσανον, ἐξώρως ἐκραγῆναι βροντὴν ἐξαισίαν,
to-be-put-forward test out-of-season to-have-burst thunder prodigious
ὑφ' ἧς καὶ περικτυπηθῆναι τὰς ἀκοὰς τὸ συνὸν
by which also to-be-deafened the ears the(-company) being-with
ἅπαν τῷ βασιλεῖ κατὰ Πελαγονίαν διατρίβοντι τότε,
all the emperor at Pelagonia spending-time then
ὡς ἀπὸ τοῦ κτύπου πολλοὺς εἰς γῆν καταπίπτειν·
so-that from the crash many to (the)-ground to-fall-down
καί τινα τῶν λόγου τροφίμων, Ἠλίαν τοὔνομα, τὴν
and some of-the of-learning nurslings Elias by-name the
τύχην ὑπὲρ τοὺς πολλούς, τοῦ στρατοῦ φύλακα, βίβλον
fortune beyond the many of-the army guardian (a)-book
ἀναπτύξαντα περὶ βροντῶν καὶ σεισμῶν διεξιοῦσαν, καὶ
having-opened about thunders and earthquakes going-through and
τὰ περὶ τὸν καιρὸν ἐκεῖνον καθ' ὃν ἐβρόντησεν
the(-things) about the time that in which it-thundered

ἐπελθόντα, φάσκοντα εὑρεῖν οὑτωσὶ „πτῶσις σοφῶν.” οὐ
having-come saying to-find thus (a)-fall of-wise(-men) not
μόνον τοίνυν οἱ ῥηθέντες ἄνδρες, τῶν τηνικαῦτα σοφῶν
only therefore the mentioned men of-the then wise
ὄντες οἱ κράτιστοι, τῆς ἐκκλησίας ἀπεσφενδονήθησαν
being the strongest from-the church were-slung
καὶ πάσης ἱερᾶς ὑπηρεσίας ἐξωστρακίσθησαν, ἀλλὰ σὺν
and from-all holy service were-ostracized but with
αὐτοῖς καὶ ἕτεροι τῶν ἱερῶν καὶ θείων περιβόλων
them also others from-the holy and divine precincts
ἀποσηκασθέντες ἠλάθησαν. μετὰ χρόνους δέ τινας τὴν
fenced-off were-driven after years and some the
„ὁ πατήρ μου μείζων μού ἐστι” τοῦ θεανθρώπου
the father my greater than-me is of-the God-man
φωνὴν προθεὶς εἰς ἐξέτασιν, ὀλίγα ταῖς τῶν πατέρων
saying having-put-forward for examination little to-the of-the fathers
προσσχὼν ἐξηγήσεσι, καὶ ταῦτα διαφόροις οὔσαις καὶ
having-attended interpretations and this varied being and
ἱκαναῖς πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ζητουμένου παράστασιν καὶ
sufficient for the of-the(-thing) sought demonstration and
σαφήνειαν, ἐφερμηνεύσεις οἰκείας εἰσήνεγκε, φιλονείκως
clarity interpretations own he-brought-in contentiously
τῶν ἅπαξ δοξάντων περιεχόμενος, καὶ πρὸς τὸ οἰκεῖον
the(-things) once seeming(-good) clinging-to and to the own
ἀνθέλκων βούλημα, καὶ ὃ κυρώσειν προέθετο, τὰς μηδὲν
drawing will and what to-ratify he-purposed the nothing
τῇ ἀληθείᾳ λυμαινομένας ἀλλὰ θεοσόφως λεχθείσας ῥήσεις
to-the truth ruining but God-wisely spoken sayings
τῶν μακαρίων διδασκάλων τῆς οἰκουμένης. τῶν μὲν
of-the blessed teachers of-the world of-the(-ones) indeed
γὰρ λεγόντων τῷ αἰτίῳ εἰρῆσθαι μείζονα, τῶν δὲ
for saying with-the cause to-have-been-said greater of-the(-ones) and

κατὰ τὸ ἀνθρώπινον ἐξειληφότων καὶ τῷ προσλήμματι,
in the human having-understood and to-the assumption
οὐ τῷ λόγῳ τὴν φωνὴν ταύτην ἀπονειμαμένων, ὥσπερ
not to-the Word the saying this having-assigned as
καὶ τὸ πρὸς τὸν πατέρα πορεύεσθαι καὶ τὸ ἔρχεσθαι
also the to the father to-go and the to-come
τοῦ κόσμου τὸν ἄρχοντα καὶ ἐρευνῶντα μηδὲν ὅλως
of-the world the ruler and searching nothing at-all
εὑρίσκειν ἐν αὐτῷ, τινῶν δὲ περὶ τοῦ λόγου τὸ μεῖζον
to-find in him of-some and about the Word the greater
ἐκλαβομένων, οὐχ ἁπλῶς δὲ καὶ κατ᾽ οὐσίαν ἀλλὰ διὰ
having-taken not simply and and in essence but because-of
τὴν ἐν τῷ ἐνανθρωπῆσαι ἄκραν κένωσιν καὶ ταπείνωσιν,
the in the to-become-man utmost emptying and humbling
καὶ ἄλλων ἄλλως εὐσεβῶς μέντοι ἐκδεξαμένων, ταύτας
and others otherwise piously however having-understood these
οὐκ οἶδ᾽ ὅπως ἀποστέρξας ὡς οὐχ ἱκανῶς περὶ τοῦ
not I-know how having-rejected(-them) as not sufficiently about the(-thing)
προκειμένου εἰπούσας, καὶ ἑτέρως αὐτὸ διήρμηνευεν. ἀμέλει
lying-before having-spoken and otherwise it he-interpreted indeed
καὶ σύνοδον συγκροτήσας καὶ ἅπαν ὅσον τοῖς θείοις
also (a)-synod having-assembled and all as-much-as in-the divine
ἔχαιρε δόγμασι συναθροίσας, ἐνῆγεν ἕκαστον ἐν τόμῳ
rejoiced dogmas having-gathered he-urged each in (a)-volume
δογματικῷ ὑπογράφειν ὁρίζοντας οὑτωσὶ „ἀποδέχομαι μὲν
dogmatic to-subscribe defining thus I-accept indeed
καὶ τὰς περὶ τοῦ ὁ πατήρ μου μείζων μού ἐστι τῶν
also the about the(-word) the father my greater than-me is of-the
θεοφόρων πατέρων φωνάς, λέγω δὲ εἰρῆσθαι τοῦτο καὶ
God-bearing fathers sayings I-say and to-have-been-said this also
κατὰ τὴν ἐν αὐτῷ κτιστὴν καὶ παθητὴν σάρκα.” τοῦτο
in-respect-of the in him created and passible flesh this

δὲ οὐκ οἶδ' ὅπως τὸ ἔλαττον πρὸς τὸν πατέρα τῷ
and not I-know how the lesser in-relation-to the father to-the
υἱῷ σαρκοφορήσαντι περιτίθησιν, ὡς εἴπερ ἀπωλίσθησε τῆς
son having-borne-flesh he-attributes as if he-slipped-from the
ἰσότητος διὰ τὴν τῆς ἀνθρωπίνης φύσεως πρόσληψιν
equality because-of the of-the human nature assumption
καὶ τὴν πρὸς ἡμᾶς ἐπιδημίαν, μὴ τὴν ἰδίαν καὶ
and the to us sojourn not the own and
οὕτως ἀνασώζων δόξαν, τοῖς δὲ τῆς κενώσεως μέτροις
thus preserving glory in-the and of-the emptying measures
ἐναπομείνας, ἢ μὴ θεώσας καὶ ὑψώσας τὸ ταπεινὸν καὶ
having-remained or not having-deified and having-exalted the lowly and
τῶν οἰκείων αὐχημάτων μέτοχον ἀναδείξας ἐξ αὐτῆς
of-the own boasts (a)-partaker having-shown-forth from very
τῆς ἑνώσεως, ἀλλ' ὑπ' αὐτοῦ τοὐναντίον ταπεινωθείς,
the union but by it on-the-contrary humbled
ὅπερ ἄτοπον. ἀμέλει καὶ γραφαῖς ἐρυθραῖς ὡς φλογίνῃ
which (is)-absurd indeed also with-writings red as with-(a)-flaming
ῥομφαίᾳ τὸ δόγμα τοῦτο διειληφώς, ἀπειλούσαις θάνατον
sword the dogma this having-encompassed threatening death
καὶ ἀποκήρυξιν πίστεως τῷ προσεμβλέψαι ὅλως
and renunciation of-faith to-the(-one) to-look-at at-all
ἔνδον τολμήσαντι καὶ κατὰ πρώτην τοῦ νοῦ κίνησιν,
inside having-dared and at (the)-first of-the mind movement
πολλῷ δέω εἰπεῖν ἐπιλαβομένῳ καὶ ὑποτονθορύσαντι,
by-much I-lack to-say having-laid-hold and having-muttered
ἔπειτα καὶ λιθίναις πλαξὶν ἐγχαράξας ὑποθήκαις τινῶν
then also on-stone tablets having-engraved by-suggestions of-some
τῶν ἐπακολουθούντων αὐτῷ καὶ κολακευόντων ἐπὶ νεὼ
of-the following him and flattering in (the)-temple
τοῦ μεγίστου ἀνέθετο. ὑφωρῶντο γὰρ τὴν τῶν
the greatest he-dedicated(-it) they-suspected for the of-the(-things)

κυρωθέντων ἀνάλυσιν ὡς εἰς αὐτὸν τὸν λόγον διὰ μέσης
ratified dissolution as to itself the Word through middle
τῆς σαρκὸς ἀποφερόντων τὸ ἔλαττον, καὶ μάλισθ' ὅτι
the flesh carrying-back the lesser and especially because
τὴν κένωσιν καὶ τὸ κατὰ τὸ ἀνθρώπινον νοούμενον
the emptying and the(-thing) in-respect-of the human understood
παρεβλέψαντο.
they-had-overlooked

VI · THE GOD OF MUHAMMAD

Near his death Manuel seeks to remove the anathema against the god of Muhammad from the catechism. The patriarch Theodosios and the bishops resist, and Eustathios of Thessalonike protests boldly. Manuel is angry but finally accepts a compromise: the anathema is moved to Muhammad himself and his teaching.

Οἷον δὲ καὶ τόδ' ἔρεξεν ἀνὴρ οὑτοσὶ περὶ τὸ πέρας τῆς
such and also this did (the)-man this about the end of-the
αὐτοῦ βιοτῆς. ἔγκειται τῷ κατηχητικῷ πυκτίῳ μεθ' ἑτέρων
his life lies-in the catechetical book with other
ἀφορισμῶν καὶ τὸ ἀνάθεμα τῷ θεῷ τοῦ Μωάμετ,
excommunications also the anathema — to-the-god — of-Muhammad
περὶ οὗ λέγει „οὔτε ἐγέννησεν οὔτε ἐγεννήθη," καὶ
about whom he-says neither he-begot nor was-begotten and
ὅτι ὁλόσφυρός ἐστι. τὸν τοιοῦτον τοίνυν ἀναθεματισμὸν
that solid-hammered he-is the such therefore anathematization
ἀπαλεῖψαι τῶν ὅλων κατηχητηρίων βίβλων προέθετο,
to-erase from-the all catechetical books he-purposed
ἀπ' αὐτῆς τῆς ἐν τῇ μεγάλῃ ἐκκλησίᾳ πυκτίδος ἀρξάμενος.
from itself the in the great church book having-begun
καὶ ἡ πρόφασις ὡς μάλα εὐπρόσωπος· ἔφασκε γὰρ ὡς
and the pretext as very specious he-said for that

εἰς σκάνδαλον πρόκειται τῶν μετατιθεμένων Ἀγαρηνῶν
for (a)-stumbling-block it-lies of-the converting Hagarenes
εἰς τὴν καθ' ἡμᾶς θεοσεβῆ πίστιν τὸ βλασφημεῖσθαι ὅλως
to the among us God-fearing faith the to-be-blasphemed at-all
θεόν. οὐκοῦν μετάκλητον τίθησι τὸν μέγιστον Θεοδόσιον, ὃς
God therefore summoned makes the greatest Theodosios who
διεῖπε τηνικαῦτα καὶ ἐκόσμει θρόνου τὸν πρώτιστον, καὶ
administered then and adorned (the)-throne the very-first and
τῶν κατὰ τὴν πόλιν ἐνδημούντων ἀρχιερέων τοὺς λόγῳ
of-the in the city residing high-priests the(-ones) in-learning
καὶ ἀρετῇ διαπρέποντας, καὶ κοινοῦται τούτοις τὸ σκέμμα
and virtue excelling and shares with-these the plan
μετ' ὀγκηρῶν προεισοδίων τῆς ὑποθέσεως. ἀνανεύοντας δὲ
with pompous preambles of-the subject refusing but
πάντας εὑρὼν καὶ μηδ' ἄκροις παραδεχομένους ὠσὶ
all having-found and not-even with-tips-of receiving ears
τὰ εἰσηγούμενα ὡς ἀπόφημα καὶ τῆς εἰς θεὸν
the(-things) proposed as (an)-abomination and from-the to God
ἀληθεστάτης δόξης ἀπάγοντα, ἐξηγουμένους δὲ θεοφιλῶς
truest belief leading-away explaining and God-lovingly
τὸ εἰς σκάνδαλον δῆθεν καὶ πρόσκομμα κείμενον,
the(-thing) for stumbling-block supposedly and offense lying
καὶ διασαφοῦντας μὴ ὅλως θεὸν οὐρανοῦ καὶ γῆς ποιητὴν
and making-clear not at-all God of-heaven and earth maker
καθυποβάλλεσθαι ἀναθέματι ἀλλὰ τὸν παρὰ τῷ λήρῳ καὶ
to-be-subjected to-anathema but the in the babbling and
δαιμονιώδει Μωάμετ ἀναπλαττόμενον ὁλόσφυρον θεὸν καὶ
demonic Muhammad fabricated solid-hammered god and
μήτε γεννηθέντα μήτε γεννήσαντα (παρὰ Χριστιανοῖς μὲν
neither begotten nor having-begotten among Christians indeed
γὰρ δοξάζεσθαι πατέρα θεόν, αὐτὰ δὲ τὰ ἀπόβλητα
for to-be-glorified (a)-father God themselves and the rejected

τοῦ Μωάμετ ληρήματα τοῦτο ἀπαγορεύειν ὅλως· καὶ
— of-Muhammad drivels this to-forbid wholly and
ἄλλως δὲ μὴ συνιέναι ἀκριβῶς ὁποῖόν τί ἐστι τὸ
otherwise too not to-understand exactly what-sort something is the
ὁλόσφυρον), αὐτοὺς μὲν φθινύθειν εἴασεν ἐν στήθεσιν ἔχων
solid-hammered them indeed to-waste-away let in breast having
νόον ἀκήλητον, καθ' ἑαυτὸν δ' ἐκτίθησι τόμον, ὑπουργοῖς
(a)-mind unmoved by himself and sets-out (a)-volume (as)-assistants
εἰς τοῦτο χρησάμενος οὓς ᾔδει τῶν ἐκ τῆς βασιλείου
for this having-used whom he-knew of-the from the imperial
αὐλῆς τὸν καιρὸν κολακεύοντας καὶ λόγου μετέχοντας,
court the time flattering and of-learning partaking
ὑπερηγοροῦντα μὲν τῆς τοῦ Μωάμετ μωρολογίας (οὐ
pleading-for indeed the — of-Muhammad foolish-talk not
γὰρ ἂν εἴποιμι θεολογίας), καθαπτόμενον δὲ λαμπρῶς
for — I-would-say theology attacking and openly
τῶν πρότερον βασιλέων καὶ τῶν ἐκ τοῦ καταλόγου
the former emperors and the(-men) from the roll
τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὡς ἀμαθῶς καὶ ἀπερισκέπτως ἀνεχομένων
of-the holy as ignorantly and thoughtlessly tolerating
ὑπὸ ἀνάθεμα τίθεσθαι θεὸν τὸν ἀληθινόν. καὶ τοῦτον
under anathema to-be-put God the true and this(-volume)
εἰς κοινὴν ἀκρόασιν ἐπὶ τῶν ἱερῶν ἀρχείων ἐκδίδωσι,
for common hearing in the holy palace he-publishes
συνεκπεπομφὼς οἷον τοῦ τόμου προοδευτὰς καὶ νεολαίαν
having-sent-with as-it-were of-the volume forerunners and (a)-youth
κροτοῦσαν τὰ γεγραμμένα ὅσοι τῆς συγκλήτου
applauding the(-things) written as-many-as of-the senate
βουλῆς καὶ τῆς γερουσίας ἦσαν κεφάλαιον, καὶ τοὺς
council and of-the elders were (the)-head and the(-ones)
ἐκ γένους ἐκείνῳ λογιότητι χαίροντας. τοσοῦτον δὲ τὸ
from family to-him in-learning rejoicing so-much and the

πιθανὸν ὁ λόγος ἐπλούτει, οὐκ ἐν διδακτοῖς πνεύματος
persuasiveness the speech was-rich-in not in taught of-(the)-spirit
βρίθων ῥήμασιν ἀλλ᾽ ἐν πειθοῖ σοφίας ἀνθρωπίνης κομῶν,
being-heavy words but in persuasion of-wisdom human flourishing
ὡς μικροῦ δεῖν ἀπαιωρῆσαι τῶν ὤτων μὴ μόνον
so-that by-little to-lack to-hang from-the ears not only
ὅσον ἀφεώρα πρὸς τὴν ποικίλην τούτου περιβολὴν
as-much-as looked to the varied its clothing
καὶ τὸ ἐπίχαρι τοῦ πτερώματος, ἀλλὰ καὶ αὐτὸ τὸ
and the grace of-the plumage but also itself the(-part)
μεταλλεῦον τῶν γεγραμμένων τὸν νοῦν. καὶ τάχ᾽ ἂν
mining of-the(-things) written the mind and perhaps —
ἦν ὡς ἀληθὴς θεὸς δοξαζόμενος ὁ παρὰ τῷ Μωάμετ
he-would-be as true God glorified the by — Muhammad
ὁστισοῦν κληρούμενος ὁλόσφυρος θεός, εἰ μὴ ὁλοσχερῶς
whoever being-allotted solid-hammered god if not utterly
ὁ πατριάρχης ἀντέβη· οὔτε γὰρ οὗτος τοῖς
the patriarch had-opposed neither for this(-man) to-the(-things)
γραφομένοις τὸν νοῦν προσέσχηκεν ὡς ἐπισφαλῆ καὶ νέα
written the mind has-applied as precarious and new
ἐπεισάγουσι δόγματα, καὶ τοὺς λοιποὺς δὲ ὡς δηλητηριώδη
bringing-in dogmas and the others too as poisonous
ταῦτα ὑφορᾶσθαι παρέπειθεν. ὁ δὲ ὥσπερ τι δεινὸν
these to-suspect persuaded he and as-if something terrible
πεπονθὼς ὀνείδεσιν ἔπλυνε τοὺς ἀρχιερεῖς, καὶ μωρὰ τοῦ
having-suffered with-reproaches washed the high-priests and fools of-the
κόσμου τούτους ὠνόμαζεν, ἄλλως τε καὶ νόσῳ τότε
world them named besides — and with-disease then
προσπαλαίων δεινῇ, ὑφ᾽ ἧς καὶ τὸν βίον ἀπέλιπε, καὶ
wrestling terrible by which also the life he-left and
ἐπίχολος ἐντεῦθεν γινόμενος. οὐκοῦν ὅσα τῷ προτέρῳ
irritable thence becoming therefore as-many-as in-the former

τόμῳ ἐμπλατυνόμενος εἴρηκεν, ἀπηρτισμένῃ κατασκευῇ
volume broadening he-has-said with-finished preparation
καὶ μεθόδοις ῥητορικαῖς χρησάμενος, ταῦτα ἐπιτεμὼν καὶ
and methods rhetorical having-used these having-cut-short and
τὸ τοῦ δόγματος αὖθις περιθεὶς δέλεαρ ἕτερον τόμον
the of-the dogma again having-put-round bait another volume
ἐξέθετο. καὶ ἐπεὶ ἔτυχε τότε τοῖς κατὰ Δάμαλιν ἀρχείοις
he-set-out and since it-happened then in-the at Damalis palaces
ἐναυλιζόμενος, ἃ Σκουτάριον ὀνομάζονται, τὴν τοῦ ἀέρος
lodging which Skoutarion are-named the of-the air
εὐκρασίαν μεταδιώκων καὶ τῆς πολυοχλίας ἀπανιστάμενος
mildness pursuing and from-the crowd departing
καὶ ἅπας τῆς νοσοκομίας γινόμενος, διαπλωΐζονται ἐκεῖσε
and wholly of-the nursing becoming sail-across there
βασιλικῷ ἐπιτάγματι ὅ τε τῶν ἀρχιερέων σύλλογος καὶ
by-imperial command the both of-the high-priests assembly and
ὅσοι τὸ πρεσβεῖον ἐκ τῶν λόγων ἐκτήσαντο. ἀλλ᾽
as-many-as the precedence from the learning had-acquired but
οὔπω καθαρῶς τῶν λεμβαδίων ἀπέβησαν, καί τις τῶν
not-yet clearly from-the little-boats had-disembarked and someone of-the
παρὰ τῷ βασιλεῖ παρρησίαν ἐχόντων καὶ τὰ μέγιστα
with the emperor freedom-of-speech having and the greatest
δυναμένων ὑπογραμματέων ἐφίσταται. ὁ Ματζούκης ἦν
being-powerful under-secretaries stands-by — Matzoukes was
οὗτος Θεόδωρος, καὶ πρός τε τὸν πατριάρχην καὶ τὴν
this(-man) Theodore and to both the patriarch and the
τῶν ἀρχιερέων ὁμήγυριν τὸν λόγον ἀποτεινάμενος τὴν
of-the high-priests assembly the speech having-directed the
μὲν ἐς τὸν βασιλέα πάροδον μὴ εἶναι ἔφησε νυνὶ ἐφικτὴν
indeed to the emperor access not to-be said now attainable
διά τι παρεισφρῆσαν ἐκ τῆς νόσου ἐμπόδιον, τῇ δὲ
because-of some having-slipped-in from the disease hindrance to-the and

τούτων ἀναγνώσει προσέχειν χρεών, τοὺς χάρτας δείξας
of-these reading to-attend needful the papers having-shown
αὐτοῖς τοὺς ἐν χεροῖν. ἦν δὲ ὁ μὲν περὶ τοῦ προκειμένου
them the(-ones) in (his)-hands was and the one about the lying-before
δόγματος διαλαμβάνων, ὅν, ὡς εἰρήκαμεν, ὑπογράψαι
dogma treating which as we-have-said to-sign
τοὺς συνελθόντας ἀρχιερεῖς διὰ σπουδῆς ὁ αὐτοκράτωρ
the assembled high-priests in earnest the autocrat
ἐτίθετο· ὁ δ' ἕτερος τὸν βασιλέα ἔχων διαλεγόμενον τῷ
set the and other the emperor having conversing with-the
ἀρχιποίμενί τε Θεοδοσίῳ καὶ τῇ συνόδῳ οὐδὲν μέτριον οὐδὲ
chief-shepherd both Theodosios and the synod nothing moderate nor
χάριεν διεξῄει, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῇ ἐνστάσει τοῦ πατριάρχου καὶ
graceful went-through but also at-the resistance of-the patriarch and
τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ἀρχιερέων ὡς μὴ κατὰ λόγον γενομένῃ
of-the with him high-priests as not according-to reason having-happened
ἐπιμεμφόμενος διηπειλεῖτο μείζονος συνόδου συγκρότησιν,
complaining threatened of-(a)-greater synod assembling
καὶ τὴν μετ' αὐτοῦ τοῦ πάπα τῆς πρεσβυτέρας Ῥώμης
and the with himself the pope of-the elder Rome
τῶν προκειμένων ἐπώμνυτο διάσκεψιν. „ἀγνώμων
of-the(-things) lying-before swore examination ungrateful
γὰρ ἂν εἴην" ἔλεγε „καὶ ἀλόγιστος, εἰ μὴ πολλοστὸν
for — I-would-be he-said and thoughtless if not (the)-smallest
ἀντιδοίην μέρος τῷ ἐμῷ βασιλευτῇ καὶ βασιλεῖ τῶν ὅλων
I-should-repay part to-the my fellow-king and king of-the all
θεῷ, ὧν ἐκεῖθεν κρειττόνως ἔσχηκα, πᾶσαν σπουδὴν
God of-what thence better I-have-had all zeal
εἰσενεγκὼν ὥστε μὴ τοῦτον ἀναθέματι καθυποβάλλεσθαι
having-brought so-that not this(-one) to-anathema to-be-subjected
ἀληθινὸν ὄντα θεόν." τοσοῦτον δὲ τοῦ διαθροηθῆναι τοῖς
true being God so-much and from-the to-be-alarmed by-the

τοιούτοις ἀπεῖχον οἱ ἀκροώμενοι κομπάσμασιν, ὥστε καὶ ὁ
such were-far the hearers boasts that also the
τῆς Θεσσαλονίκης πρόεδρος, ὁ πολὺς καὶ μέγας ἐν λόγοις
— of-Thessalonike president the great and mighty in words
Εὐστάθιος, ζήλου ἐπὶ τοῖς ἀνεγνωσμένοις πλησθεὶς
Eustathios with-zeal at the(-things) read filled
καὶ μὴ ἐνεγκὼν θεὸν ἀληθινὸν δοξάζεσθαι ὁλόσφυρόν τι
and not having-borne God true to-be-glorified solid-hammered some
διανοίας ἀνάπλασμα κακοδαίμονος, „ἐσοίμην ἄν" ἔφη
of-mind fabrication wretched I-should-be — he-said
„καταπεπατημένον τοῖς πτέρναις φορῶν τὸν ἐγκέφαλον,
trodden-down in-the heels carrying the brain
καὶ τοῦ σχήματος τούτου παράπαν ἀνάξιος" τὸν ἐπὶ
and of-the habit this wholly unworthy the on
τῶν ὤμων δείξας μανδύαν, „εἰ θεὸν ἡγοίμην ἀληθινὸν
the shoulders showing mantle if (as)-God I-should-consider true
τὸν παιδεραστὴν καὶ καμηλώδη καὶ πάσης πράξεως
the pederast and camel-like and of-every deed
μυσαρᾶς ὑφηγητὴν καὶ διδάσκαλον." ἐπεπήγεσαν οὖν ἐπὶ
abominable guide and teacher were-frozen then at
τοῖς εἰρημένοις τούτοις οἱ ἀκηκοότες μικροῦ· ἦν
the(-things) said these the(-ones) having-heard by-little he-was
γὰρ καὶ διατόρως ταῦτα φθεγγόμενος καὶ προδήλως
for also piercingly these(-things) uttering and plainly
χαρακτηρίζων τὸν ζήλῳ εὐσεβείας πυρούμενον. ὁ δὲ
characterizing the(-man) by-zeal of-piety burning the and
τοῦ γράμματος ὑπαγορευτής, στὰς ἐπὶ βραχὺ ἐννεὸς
of-the document dictator having-stood for (a)-little speechless
καὶ τὰ χείλη μύσας, παλίμπους εἶτα εἰς τὸν αὐτοκράτορα
and the lips having-closed back-footed then to the autocrat
εἴσεισι. καὶ ὃς τὰ λαληθέντα ἐνωτισάμενος, οἷον
goes-in and he the(-things) spoken having-heard as-if

περιψοφηθείς, ποικίλος ἦν τὸν ἀπόλογον, τὸ μακρόθυμον
deafened varied was in-the defense the long-suffering
ἐπῃνεκὼς ὡς οὐδέποτε. καὶ ἑαυτὸν γὰρ τοῖς ἄγαν
having-praised as never and himself for among-the extremely
ὀρθοδοξοῦσι Χριστιανοῖς ἐνέταττε, καὶ πατέρων ὡμολόγει
orthodox Christians ranked and of-fathers confessed
πανευσεβῶν προελθεῖν, τοὺς φιλαιτίους ἐκκλίνων καὶ
most-pious to-have-come-forth the fault-finders avoiding and
φιλοσκώμμονας. καὶ τὴν μετὰ τοῦ Θεσσαλονίκης κρίσιν
jest-loving and the with the(-man) of-Thessalonike judgment
πολὺς ἐνέκειτο ἐξαιτούμενος· ἢ γάρ, φησί, δικαιωθεὶς ὡς
much pressed demanding either for he-says justified as
μὴ θεῷ πιστεύων παιδεραστῇ μηδὲ εἰσάγων παραχάραγμα
not in-God believing (a)-pederast nor introducing (a)-counterfeit
πίστεως δικαίαν ἐπιθήσει δίκην τῷ κατὰ Χριστοῦ
of-faith just will-impose penalty on-the(-one) against Christ
κυρίου ἐρυγγάνοντι βλάσφημα, ἢ κατακριθεὶς ὡς ἕτερον
(the)-Lord belching blasphemies or condemned as another
δοξάζων θεὸν παρ' ὃν οἱ ἐκ Χριστοῦ καλούμενοι
glorifying god besides whom the(-ones) from Christ called
σέβονται μεταμαθήσεται τὴν ἀλήθειαν, καὶ χάριν εἴσεται
worship will-learn-anew the truth and gratitude will-know
οὐ μικρὰν τῷ τῆς χείρονος αὐτὸν μεταστήσαντι
not small to-the(-one) from-the worse him having-moved
δόξης καὶ μυήσαντι τὴν ἀλήθειαν. μετὰ βραχὺ
opinion and having-initiated(-him-into) the truth after (a)-little
δὲ τοῦ πατριάρχου εἰς θέαν ἐκείνῳ ἐληλυθότος καὶ
and the patriarch into sight to-him having-come and
κατεπάσαντος τὰ εἰκότα τοῦ τε θυμοῦ ἔληξε, καὶ
having-charmed(-him-with) the fitting(-things) from-the both wrath he-ceased and
τῷ Εὐσταθίῳ συγγνώμην παρέσχετο ἐφ' οἷς παρεφθέγξατο,
— *to-Eustathios forgiveness granted for what he-had-said-amiss*

ἐνδεδωκὼς αὐτῷ ὅσα ἠρεῖτο ἀπολογήσασθαι, τελευταῖον
having-granted him what-things he-chose to-plead at-the-last
δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειπὼν ὡς „δεῖ σε σοφὸν ὄντα μὴ
and also himself having-added that needful you wise being not
αἰσχρορρήμονα δείκνυσθαι μηδὲ θρασυστομεῖν παρακαίρια.”
foul-mouthed to-be-shown nor to-speak-boldly unseasonable(-things)
ἐπὶ δὲ τούτοις εἰς κοινὴν δοθέντος ἀκρόασιν τοῦ περὶ
on and these(-things) for common given hearing of-the about
τοῦ δόγματος τόμου, καὶ πάντων ἐπαινεσάντων τὰ
the dogma volume and all having-praised the(-things)
γεγραμμένα ὡς εὐσεβῶς ὀρθοτομηθέντα, καὶ περιχαρῶς
written as piously rightly-divided and joyfully
ἐν αὐτῷ ὑπογράψαι καταθεμένων, ὁ σύλλογος διελέλυτο.
in it to-sign having-agreed the assembly had-been-dissolved
καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀπήεσαν ἀγαλλόμενοι ὡς τῇ οἰκείᾳ
and they indeed went-away exulting as by-the own
ἐνστάσει τὸν βασιλέα νενικηκότες· ὁ δὲ ἔχαιρεν ὡς τῇ
resistance the emperor having-conquered he and rejoiced as to-the
ἑαυτοῦ καθυποκλίνας τούτους βουλῇ, καὶ σχὼν διὰ
his-own having-bent these will and having-had through
βραχυλογίας οὗπερ διὰ τοῦ πολυστίχου πρότερον τόμου
brevity what through the many-lined formerly volume
οὐδαμῶς ἐφίκετο. κατὰ δὲ τὴν μετ’ ἐκείνην ἡμέραν εἰς
in-no-way he-reached on and the after that day into
τὴν πατριαρχικὴν ἑστίαν ἡ σύνοδος ἀθροισθεῖσα, ὅπως
the patriarchal residence the synod having-been-gathered so-that
κατὰ τὰ συμφωνηθέντα δράσωσιν (ἅμα γὰρ ἕῳ
according-to the(-things) agreed they-might-act at-once for with-dawn
παρῆσαν οἱ ἐκ βασιλέως αὐτοὺς εἰς ἕνα ἀθροισμὸν
were-present the(-men) from (the)-emperor them into one gathering
συναγείροντες), οἱ δ’ οὐκέτ’ ἦσαν οἱ αὐτοί, ἀλλ’ ἀνένευον
collecting they and no-longer were the same but refused

πάντες πάλιν καὶ ἀπεπήδων ὡς τῇ ὑπηγορευμένῃ γραφῇ
all again and leapt-away as in-the dictated writing
ἔτι ἐγκειμένων ἐπιληψίμων ῥημάτων τινῶν, καὶ ἤθελον
still lying reprehensible words some and wished
καὶ ταῦτα ὀβελισθῆναι καὶ ἕτερα ἐντεθῆναι τῷ ὀρθῷ
also these(-words) to-be-obelized and others to-be-inserted to-the orthodox
κατὰ μηδέν τι προσιστάμενα δόγματι. ἦν οὖν αὖθις
in nothing at-all opposed dogma was then again
παροξυνόμενος ὁ κρατῶν καὶ ὡς ἀνοηταίνουσι καθαρῶς
being-provoked the ruler and as being-foolish clearly
ἐπεγκαλῶν τὸ τῆς γνώμης ἄστατον καὶ ἀγχίστροφον.
charging the of-the mind instability and quick-turning
ὀψὲ δὲ καὶ μόλις συνήλθοσαν, ἵνα τὸ μὲν ἀνάθεμα
late and also barely they-came-together that the indeed anathema
τῷ θεῷ τοῦ Μωάμετ τῶν κατηχητικῶν βιβλίων
— to-the-god — of-Muhammad from-the catechetical books
ἀπαλειφθῇ, ἐγγραφῇ δὲ ἀνάθεμα τῷ Μωάμετ καὶ πάσῃ
be-erased be-written and (an)-anathema — to-Muhammad and to-all
τῇ αὐτοῦ διδαχῇ καὶ διαδοχῇ. καὶ τοῦτο δογματίσαντες
the his teaching and succession and this having-decreed
καὶ κυρώσαντες τῶν πολλῶν ἐκείνων συνόδων καὶ
and having-ratified from-the many those synods and
συλλόγων ἔληξαν.
assemblies they-ceased

The bishop Niketas of Chonai had foretold that Manuel would go mad at the end of his life, which is taken as fulfilled by the dispute over the god of Muhammad. Manuel falls ill, trusts the astrologers, and insists he has fourteen more years, and dies in September after a reign of thirty-seven years and nine months, in a monk's habit. He is buried in the Pantokrator, beside the red stone of Ephesus.

Ἀλλὰ γὰρ οὐχ ὑπερβήσομαί τι καὶ ἄλλο τῶν ἀξίων
but for not I-shall-pass-over something also other of-the(-things) worthy
εἰρῆσθαι, τοῦ ἱστορεῖν ἐνταῦθα γενόμενος. ἦν τις
to-have-been-said of-the narrating here having-come there-was (a)-certain
εὐνοῦχος ἀρχιερατικῶς προεδρεύων τῆς τῶν Χωνῶν πόλεως,
eunuch high-priestly presiding-over the — of-Chonai city
Νικήτας τοὔνομα, πάσης ἀρετῆς καταγώγιον, οὕτω δὴ
Niketas by-name of-all virtue (a)-lodging so indeed
προφητικὸς καὶ προβλέπων τὰ ἔμπροσθεν ὡς τοῖς
prophetic and foreseeing the(-things) ahead that among-the
μεγίστοις τῶν ὁρώντων ἐγκρίνεσθαι καὶ εἰς θαῦμα κεῖσθαι
greatest of-the seers to-be-ranked and for wonder to-lie
παρ' οἷς ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐγνώριστο, εἴπερ ἡ καθ' ἡμᾶς γενεὰ
among whom the man was-known if-indeed the among us generation
πονηρὰ οὖσα καὶ μοιχαλὶς τοιοῦτον ηὐτύχησεν ἀγαθόν.
wicked being and adulterous such was-blessed-with (a)-good
ἀμέλει καὶ τοῦ βασιλέως τούτου ἐξ Ἀρμενίας παριόντος
indeed also the emperor this from Armenia passing
τὰς Χώνας ἀρτιστεφοῦς καὶ τῆς πατρῴας διαδόχου ἀρχῆς,
— Chonai newly-crowned and of-the paternal successor rule
καὶ τὸν ἀρχαγγελικὸν νεὼν εἰσελθόντος καὶ χειρὶ τοῦ
and the archangelic temple having-entered and by-(the)-hand of-the
ἀρχιερέως τούτου εὐλογηθέντος, ἐπειδὴ καὶ περιώνυμος ἦν
high-priest this having-been-blessed since also renowned he-was

ἐκ τῆς ἀρετῆς καὶ τοῖς ἅπασι διὰ στόματος, ἦσαν οἱ
from the virtue and to-the all through (the)-mouth were the(-ones)
τῶν ἐντρόφων τοῦ βήματος, καὶ τούτων οἱ ἐς νοῦν
of-the nurslings of-the sanctuary and of-these the(-ones) into mind
βάπτοντες, ἐν ἀπόρῳ ἐτίθεντο εἰ νέος ὢν ὁ Μανουὴλ
dipping in perplexity set(-it) whether young being — Manuel
καὶ ἄρτι πρώτως χνοάζων τὸν ἴουλον διακυβερνήσειν ὅλως
and just first growing-downy the beard to-steer at-all
τὴν βασιλείαν δυνήσεται, ἥτις τὸ πολὺ δεῖται ἀνδρὸς πολιοῦ
the empire will-be-able which the much needs of-(a)-man gray
μὲν τὸ φρονεῖν λαχνήεντος δὲ τὸν πώγωνα, ἔτι γε μὴν
indeed in-the thinking shaggy and in-the beard still at-least indeed
εἰ τὸν κασίγνητον καταπαλαίσειεν Ἰσαάκιον δικαιότερον
whether the brother he-would-wrestle-down Isaac more-entitled
ὄντα πρὸς τὴν ἀρχὴν καὶ τῆς βασιλίδος τῶν πόλεων ἔνδον
being to the rule and in-the queen of-the cities inside
ἱζάνοντα. ὁ δὲ μέγας ἐκεῖνος ἀνὴρ καὶ ὄντως ἄνθρωπος τοῦ
sitting the and great that man and truly (a)-man —
θεοῦ, λύων τὸ ἄπορον καὶ διασαφῶν τὸ παρ' ἐκείνοις
of-God loosing the perplexity and making-clear the(-thing) among them
ἀμφιγνοούμενον, „ναί'' φησι, „καὶ τὴν βασιλείαν ὁ μεῖραξ
doubted yes he-says both the empire the stripling
οὗτος διιθυνεῖ, καὶ αὐτῷ ὑποπεσεῖται ὁ ἀδελφός· οὕτω γὰρ
this will-direct and to-him will-fall-under the brother thus for
θεῷ δέδοκται καὶ προώρισται. ἵνα δὲ εἰδῆτε καὶ
by-God it-has-been-decided and has-been-foreordained that and you-may-know also
περὶ ὧν οὐδ' ὅλως με ἤρεσθε, τὸν οἰκεῖον πάππον, λέγω
about what not-even at-all me you-asked the own grandfather I-mean
δὴ τὸν αὐτοκράτορα Ῥωμαίων καὶ προπάτορα ἐκείνῳ
indeed the autocrat of-(the)-Romans and forefather to-him
Ἀλέξιον, ὑπερβήσεται οὗτος βραχύ τι κατὰ τοὺς τῆς
Alexios will-surpass this(-one) little something in the of-the

ζωῆς χρόνους. τῆς δὲ τελευτῆς αὐτῷ ἐγγιζούσης μανήσεται.”
life years of-the and end to-him drawing-near he-will-go-mad
ἦν οὖν ἡ προόρρησις αὕτη καὶ ἐμοὶ τῷ συγγραφεῖ Νικήτᾳ
was then the prophecy this also to-me the writer Niketas
σὺν ἄλλοις πλείστοις γνώριμος, ὅτι καὶ ἐμὸς ὁ προφάντωρ
with others very-many known because also my the prophet
ἀνάδοχος ἐκ τοῦ θείου βαπτίσματος. τίς δὲ ἄρα ἔσται ἡ
(was)-sponsor from the divine baptism what and then will-be the
μανία καὶ οἷος ὁ τρόπος αὐτῆς, οὐδεὶς εἶχεν ἀκριβῶς
madness and of-what-sort the manner of-it nobody was-able exactly
συμβαλέσθαι τῶν εἰδότων τὸ προαγόρευμα· οἱ μὲν
to-conjecture of-the(-ones) knowing the prediction some indeed
γὰρ ἐς τὸ χρυσομανὲς ἀνέφερον τὸ προφοίβασμα, οἱ
for to the gold-madness referred the prophecy others
δ’ ἐς ἄλλο τι σαρκικὸν ἐλάττωμα ᾐχμαλώτιζον. τοῦ δὲ
and to other some fleshly defect captured(-it) of-the and
προσεχῶς εἰρημένου δόγματος κινηθέντος, καὶ παραβόλως
immediately said dogma having-been-moved and recklessly
ἐνισταμένου τὰ πρῶτα τοῦ βασιλέως ἀληθῆ δοξάζειν θεὸν
insisting the first of-the emperor true to-glorify (as)-God
τὸν παρὰ τῷ Μωάμετ ὁλόσφυρον καὶ μὴ γεγεννημένον ἢ
the by — Muhammad solid-hammered and not begotten or
γεννήσαντα θεόν, πέρας εἰληφέναι πάντες τὴν προθέσπισιν
having-begotten god end to-have-received all the prediction
ἔφασκον, ἐπεὶ καὶ μανίαν ἀτεχνῶς ὀρθήν τε καὶ χειρίστην
said since also madness simply downright both and worst
τὴν δόξαν εἶναι ταυτηνὶ ὡς τῆς ἀληθείας ἐπίπαν ἀντίθετον.
the opinion to-be this as of-the truth wholly opposite
Κατήρξατο μὲν οὖν τῷ βασιλεῖ τὰ τῆς νόσου
began indeed then for-the emperor the(-things) of-the disease
πρὸ τοῦ Μαρτίου μηνός, τῆς ἐνισταμένης τότε ιγ′
before the March month of-the current then thirteenth

ἰνδικτιῶνος, ὅτε καὶ τὰ περὶ τοῦ δόγματος ἐπεκύμαινε.
indiction when also the(-things) about the dogma surged
καὶ αὐτὰ μὲν ἀφύβρισαν περί που μῆνα τὸν
and these indeed subsided about somewhere (the)-month —
Μάϊον, ὁ δ' αὐτοκράτωρ ἐπιστάντος τοῦ Σεπτεμβρίου
May the and autocrat having-come the September
τὸ ζῆν ἐξεμέτρησεν. οὐδὲν δ' ἔτι κάλλιστον περὶ τῆς
the life measured-out nothing and still finest about the
βασιλείας διῴκησεν, ἀλλὰ νωθέστερον ἦν διακείμενος πρὸς
empire he-arranged but more-sluggishly was disposed toward
τὴν τῶν μετὰ τὴν μετάστασιν αὐτοῦ γενησομένων
the of-the(-things) after the departure his going-to-be
διαταγήν τε καὶ ὑποτύπωσιν. τὸ δ' αἴτιον, οὐ παρεδέχετο
ordering both and outlining the and cause not he-admitted
ὁπωσοῦν ὡς ἤγγικεν ἐκείνῳ τὸ τελευτᾶν, ἀλλ' εὖ εἰδέναι
in-any-way that has-drawn-near to-him the dying but well to-know
διετείνετο ὡς ἐνιαυτοὶ ζωῆς καὶ ἕτεροι δεκατέσσαρες
he-insisted that years of-life also other fourteen
αὐτῷ ἐπιδαψιλεύονται. καὶ τοῦτο πρὸς αὐτὸν εἴρηκε
to-him are-lavished and this to himself has-said
τὸν σοφὸν καὶ τρισμάκαρα πατριάρχην τὸν Θεοδόσιον,
the wise and thrice-blessed patriarch — Theodosios
ὑποτιθέμενον πατρικῶς φροντίδα τῶν τῆς βασιλείας
suggesting paternally care of-the of-the empire
θέσθαι πραγμάτων, ἕως ἔτι καιρὸς κἀκείνῳ ἔρρωται
to-take affairs while still (there-is)-time and-in-him is-strong
τὸ φρονεῖν, καὶ διφῆσαι τὸν ἀνθεξόμενον ἀκριβῶς τοῦ
the thinking and to-search-out the(-one) going-to-hold-to exactly of-the
τῆς ἀρχῆς κληρονόμου παιδὸς οὔπω παραγγείλαντος εἰς
of-the rule heir child not-yet having-passed into
ἥβην, καὶ πιστῶς προστησόμενον τῆς βασιλίδος καὶ οἷον
youth and faithfully going-to-protect the empress and as-it-were

μητροκομήσοντα. οἱ δὲ παντοδήλητοι ἀστροφένακες καὶ
going-to-nurse-the-mother the and all-mischievous star-cheats and
περὶ ἐρωτικά, κατ᾽ αὐτοὺς εἰπεῖν, τὸν βασιλέα σχολάσειν
about love-matters in their(-way) to-say the emperor will-have-leisure
ἀπετόλμων λέγειν ἀνασφήλαντα τῆς νόσου μετὰ βραχύ,
dared to-say having-recovered from-the disease after (a)-little
καὶ πόλεων ἀλλοφύλων εἰς χῶμα τεθησομένων καθαιρέσεις
and of-cities foreign into (a)-mound going-to-be-put demolitions
ἀπηναιδεύοντο. τὸ δὲ δὴ παραλογώτερον, πρόχειροι τὴν
they-shamelessly-told the and indeed more-incredible ready in-the
γλῶτταν ὄντες καὶ τῷ ψεύδει ἐνειθισμένοι καὶ συγκίνησιν
tongue being and to-the lie accustomed also (a)-commotion
προύλεγον τοῦ παντὸς συνδρομάς τε καὶ συνόδους
foretold of-the universe concourses both and conjunctions
τῶν μεγίστων ἀστέρων καὶ ἀνέμων ἐξαισίων ἐκρήξεις,
of-the greatest stars and of-winds prodigious burstings
καὶ σχεδὸν τοῦ παντὸς μεταστοιχείωσιν προεφοίβαζον,
and almost of-the universe transformation prophesied
ἐγγαστρίμυθοι πλέον ἢ ἀστεροσκόποι δεικνύμενοι. οὐ
ventriloquists more than star-gazers shown not
χρόνους δὲ μόνον καὶ μῆνας ἠρίθμουν καὶ ἑβδομάδας
years and only also months they-counted and weeks
κατέλεγον, ἐφ᾽ ὧν ταῦτα γενήσεται, καὶ βασιλεῖ
enumerated in which these(-things) will-happen and to-(the)-emperor
διεσήμαινον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἡμέρας ἠκριβολόγουν καὶ τὸ τῆς
indicated but also days they-were-exact-about and the of-the
ὥρας ἀκαριαῖον ἐβωμολόχουν, ὡς εἴπερ σαφῶς ᾔδεσαν
hour instant buffooned as if clearly they-knew
ἅπερ ἐν τῇ ἰδίᾳ ἐξουσίᾳ ἔθετο ὁ πατήρ, καὶ περὶ ὧν
what-things in the own authority put the father and about which
ἐπετίμα πυνθανομένοις τοῖς μαθηταῖς ὁ σωτήρ. ἀμέλει
rebuked inquiring the disciples the savior indeed

τοι οὐ μόνον αὐτὸς ὁ βασιλεὺς σπήλαια καὶ καταδύσεις
surely not only himself the emperor caves and hiding-places
ἀλεξηνέμους διηρευνᾶτο καὶ προητοίμαζεν εἰς ἐνοίκησιν,
wind-sheltered searched-out and prepared for dwelling
καὶ οἱ τῶν βασιλικῶν οἰκοπέδων καθῃροῦντο ὕελοι, ὡς
and the of-the imperial buildings were-taken-down windows so-that
εἶεν ἀπαθεῖς ταῖς τῶν ἀνέμων ἐκθησαυριζομέναις
they-might-be unharmed by-the of-the winds stored-up
πνοαῖς, ἀλλὰ καὶ ὁπόσοι τῇ θεραπείᾳ τούτου καὶ συγγενείᾳ
blasts but also as-many-as in-the service his and kinship
ἐνεγράφοντο, καὶ οἳ κολακικῶς αὐτὸν ὑπεισήρχοντο,
were-enrolled and (those)-who flatteringly him crept-into
τοῖς αὐτοῖς ἐπιμελῶς ἐνέκειντο, ὡς τοὺς μὲν γεωρυχεῖν
to-the same carefully pressed so-that the(-ones) indeed to-dig
κατὰ μύρμηκας, τοὺς δὲ σκηνορραφεῖν καὶ σχοινία
like ants the(-ones) and to-stitch-tents and ropes
περιδέειν ἔντριτα καὶ πασσάλους ἀποξύνειν πηχυαίους
to-tie-round triple and pegs to-sharpen cubit-long
εἰς ἀκράδαντον ἔρεισμα τῶν σκηνῶν. ἀλλ' ὅπερ ἔλεγον,
for unshaken support of-the tents but as I-was-saying
ἐπειδὴ τὰ τῆς νόσου τῷ βασιλεῖ ἐπέτεινε, παραβόλως
since the(-things) of-the disease for-the emperor intensified recklessly
βαλανείῳ ἐχρήσατο, καὶ γνοὺς ἔτι πλέον ἐντεῦθεν τὰς
(a)-bath he-used and having-known still more thence the
τοῦ ζῆν ἀπαλειφομένας ἐλπίδας καὶ οἷον καθ' ὑγρῶν
of-the living erased hopes and as-it-were on water
τυπουμένας καὶ τὴν προθεσμίαν ἀνυπεξάλυκτον ἐφεστῶσαν
written and the appointed-day inescapable standing-over
ὀλίγα περὶ τοῦ παιδὸς Ἀλεξίου τοῖς περιεστῶσι
few(-things) about the child Alexios to-the(-ones) standing-around
διείλεκται, κεράσας οἰμωγαῖς τὰ ῥήματα ἐκ τοῦ προορᾶν
he-has-discussed having-mixed with-wailings the words from the foreseeing

οἷον τὰ μετὰ τὴν ἐκείνου συμβησόμενα ἔξοδον. ἀλλὰ
as-it-were the(-things) after the his going-to-happen departure but
καὶ περὶ τῆς ἀστρονομίας ὑποθήκῃ τοῦ πατριάρχου
also about the astrology by-(the)-suggestion of-the patriarch
βραχύν τινα χάρτην ὑπεσημήνατο, πρὸς τὴν ἐναντίαν δόξαν
short some paper he-signed toward the opposite opinion
μεθαρμοσθείς. τέλος δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς τῇ ἀρτηρίᾳ προσάγων
having-been-converted (at-the)-end and also himself to-the artery bringing
τὴν χεῖρα καὶ τὰς κινήσεις τοῦ σφυγμοῦ γνωματεύων,
the hand and the movements of-the pulse judging
βύθιόν τι στενάξας καὶ πλήξας τῇ χειρὶ τὸν μηρὸν
deep something having-groaned and having-struck with-the hand the thigh
τὸ μοναδικὸν σχῆμα ᾔτησε. θορύβου δέ, ὡς εἰκός, ἐπὶ
the monastic habit he-asked uproar and as (was)-likely at
τῷ ῥήματι τούτῳ ἀρθέντος, καὶ τῆς πνευματικωτέρας
the word this having-been-raised and of-the more-spiritual
ἀμφιάσεως ἐχούσης τὸ ἀπαράσκευον, τριβωνίου μέλανος
clothing having the unpreparedness of-(a)-cloak black
οἱ περὶ τὸν βασιλέα ὁθενοῦν εὐπορήσαντες περιδύουσι
the(-men) about the emperor from-somewhere having-provided strip-off
μὲν αὐτὸν τὰ μαλακὰ καὶ ἀρχικὰ ἄμφια, ἐπενδύουσι δὲ
indeed him the soft and princely garments put-on and
τὸ τραχὺ τῆς κατὰ θεὸν πολιτείας ἔνδυμα, εἰς ὁπλίτην
the rough of-the according-to God way-of-life garment into (a)-hoplite
μετημειφότες πνευματικὸν κράνει τε θειοτέρῳ καὶ θώρακι
having-changed(-him) spiritual with-helmet both more-divine and breastplate
σεμνοτέρῳ, τῷ οὐρανίῳ στρατολογήσαντες ἡγεμόνι. τὸ δὲ
more-august for-the heavenly having-enlisted(-him) commander the and
ῥάκος μὴ ποδῆρες ὂν μήτε μὴν δι᾽ ὅλου τοῦ ἡρωϊκοῦ
rag not foot-length being nor indeed through whole the heroic
ἐκείνου καταβαῖνον σώματος εἴα τὰς κνήμας ἀκαλυφεῖς,
that coming-down body let the shins uncovered

ὡς μηδένα τῶν ὁρώντων εἶναι ἀδάκρυτον, ἐν νῷ
so-that nobody of-the(-ones) seeing to-be tearless in mind
βαλλόμενον τὴν ἀνθρωπίνην ἀσθένειαν καὶ τὴν ἐν τῷ
casting the human weakness and the in the
τελευτᾶν τὸν βίον τοῦ σώματος ἀχρειότητα, ὅπερ ἡμῖν ὡς
ending the life of-the body uselessness which to-us as
ὄστρεον περιπλάττεται καὶ συμφύεται τῇ ψυχῇ. τοῦ βίου
(a)-shell is-molded-round and grows-with the soul from-the life
γοῦν οὕτω καὶ τῆς βασιλείας μεθίσταται, τριάκοντα
at-any-rate thus also from-the empire he-departs thirty
καὶ ὀκτὼ χρόνους γεγονὼς ἐν τῇ βασιλείᾳ, λειπόντων
and eight years having-been in the empire lacking
μηνῶν τριῶν. πρὸς ἣν οἶμαι παράτασιν τῆς ἀρχῆς
months three to which I-think extension of-the rule
καὶ τὸ παλαίτατον ἐκεῖνο λόγιον ἀφορᾶν, ὃ διέξεισιν
also the very-old that oracle to-look which goes-through
οὑτωσί, „ἀλλ᾽ ὑστάτη σε κερδανεῖ λαβὴ λόγου·" ἡ γὰρ
thus but last you will-gain (the)-grip of-(the)-word the for
τελευταία τοῦ ὀνόματος συλλαβὴ τὸν ὀκτὼ καὶ τριάκοντα
last of-the name syllable the eight and thirty
διασημαίνεται ἀριθμόν. τέθαπται οὖν παρὰ πλάγιον πλευρὰν
signifies number he-is-buried then by (the)-side flank
τῷ τὸν νεὼν εἰσιόντι τῆς τοῦ Παντοκράτορος μονῆς,
to-the(-one) the temple entering of-the of-the Pantokrator monastery
οὐκ ἐν αὐτῷ τῷ τεμένει ἀλλ᾽ ἐν τῷ περὶ τοῦτον ἡρώῳ. τοῦ
not in very the precinct but in the about it heroon of-the
δὲ τοίχου τοῦ νεὼ εἰς ἀψῖδα περιαχθέντος ἡ περὶ τὴν
and wall of-the temple into (an)-arch having-been-bent-round the about the
σορὸν εὐρεῖα διαστέλλεται εἴσοδος. συνέχει δὲ τοῦτον λίθος
coffin broad is-extended entrance holds and him (a)-stone
τὴν μελανίαν ὑποκρινόμενος καὶ διὰ τοῦτο στυγνάζοντι
the blackness feigning and because-of this to-(one)-gloomy

ἐοικώς, ὃς καὶ εἰς ἑπτὰ διέσχισται λοφιάς. παράκειται δέ
resembling which also into seven is-split crests lies-beside and
οἱ ἐπὶ κρηπῖδος καὶ προσκύνησιν δέχεται λίθος ἐρυθρὸς
to-him on (a)-base and veneration receives (a)-stone red
ἀνδρομήκης, ὃν εἶχε πρότερον μὲν ὁ κατ᾽ Ἔφεσον τὴν
man-long which had formerly indeed the at Ephesus the
πόλιν ναός, ἐκεῖνον εἶναι διαθρυλούμενον ἐφ᾽ οὗ Χριστὸς
city church that(-stone) to-be reported on which Christ
μετὰ τὴν ἀπὸ σταυροῦ καθαίρεσιν νεκροταφίοις εἰληθεὶς
after the from (the)-cross taking-down in-grave-clothes wrapped
ἐσμυρνίσθη, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς οὗτος διακομίσας ἐκεῖθεν,
was-anointed-with-myrrh the and emperor this having-carried thence
καί οἱ τὸν νῶτον ὑποστρώσας ὡς ὁμόθεον σῶμα καὶ
and to-it the back having-put-under as God-co-equal body and
γεγονὸς ὅπερ τὸ χρῖσαν βαστάσαντι, ἐκ
having-become which the(-myrrh) having-anointed for-(the-one)-having-carried from
τοῦ κατὰ τὸν Βουκολέοντα λιμένος εἰς τὸν ἐν τῷ φάρῳ
the at — Boukoleon harbor to the in the Pharos
τοῦ μεγάλου παλατίου νεὼν τοῦτον ἀνήγαγε. μετ᾽ οὐ
of-the great palace temple this brought-up after not
πολλὴν μέντοι ἐν ὑστέρῳ χρόνου περίοδον τοῦ βασιλέως
much however in later of-time period of-the emperor
τὸν βίον ἀπολιπόντος καὶ ὁ λίθος οὗτος ἐξήρθη τῶν
the life having-left also the stone this was-taken-out from-the
ἀνακτόρων, καὶ μετενήνεκται ἔνθα δὴ ἀρτίως ἐμνήσθην,
palace and has-been-transferred where indeed just-now I-mentioned
κεκράξων, οἶμαι, καὶ διατρανωσόμενος ὁπόσα ὁ τῇ
going-to-cry-out I-think and going-to-proclaim as-many-as the(-one) in-the
σορῷ σιωπῶν εἰργάσατό πως καὶ ἠγωνίσατο.
coffin being-silent did somehow and contended
